ERINDALE COLLEGE
3 1761 03401 8101

0 4 1992

HANDBOUND
AT THE
UNIVERSITY OF

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2010 with funding from
University of Toronto

http://www.archive.org/details/militaryantiquit02grosuoft

2P

9233

I

FRONTISPIECE,

The Entrance of a Street defended by a Chain.

MILITARY ANTIQUITIES

RESPECTING

A HISTORY

OF

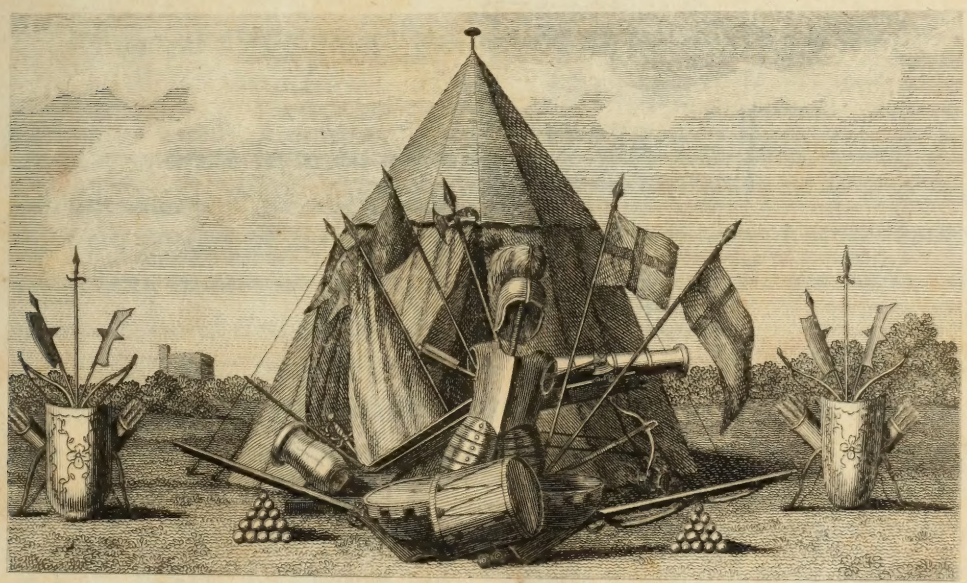
THE ENGLISH ARMY,

FROM

THE CONQUEST TO THE PRESENT TIME.

By Francis Grose Esq.r F.A.S.

A new Edition with material additions & improvements.



VOL. II.

London. Printed for T. Egerton, Whitehall; & G. Kearsley, Fleet Street.

1801.

ERINDALE
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

HISTORY

OF

THE ENGLISH ARMY.

CHAPTER I.

Of antient Fortifications, and the Attack and Defence of Places.

THE antients ſeem to have had but very imperfect ideas of the benefit ariſing from that kind of mutual defence which conſtitutes the very eſſence of our modern fortification. Their chief dependence appears to have been on the height and thickneſs of their walls; they however found that when the enemy was cloſe under them, they could not moleſt them by arrows, darts, or ſtones, unleſs by ſuch as they could let fall perpendicularly on their heads. Hence the kind of defence, called a machicolation, was probably among the firſt diſcoveries on that ſubject. They, however, ſoon found that perſons who could not be ſeen from the main ramparts, might be ſeen and ſhot or thrown at from towers projecting beyond theſe walls. Round towers were

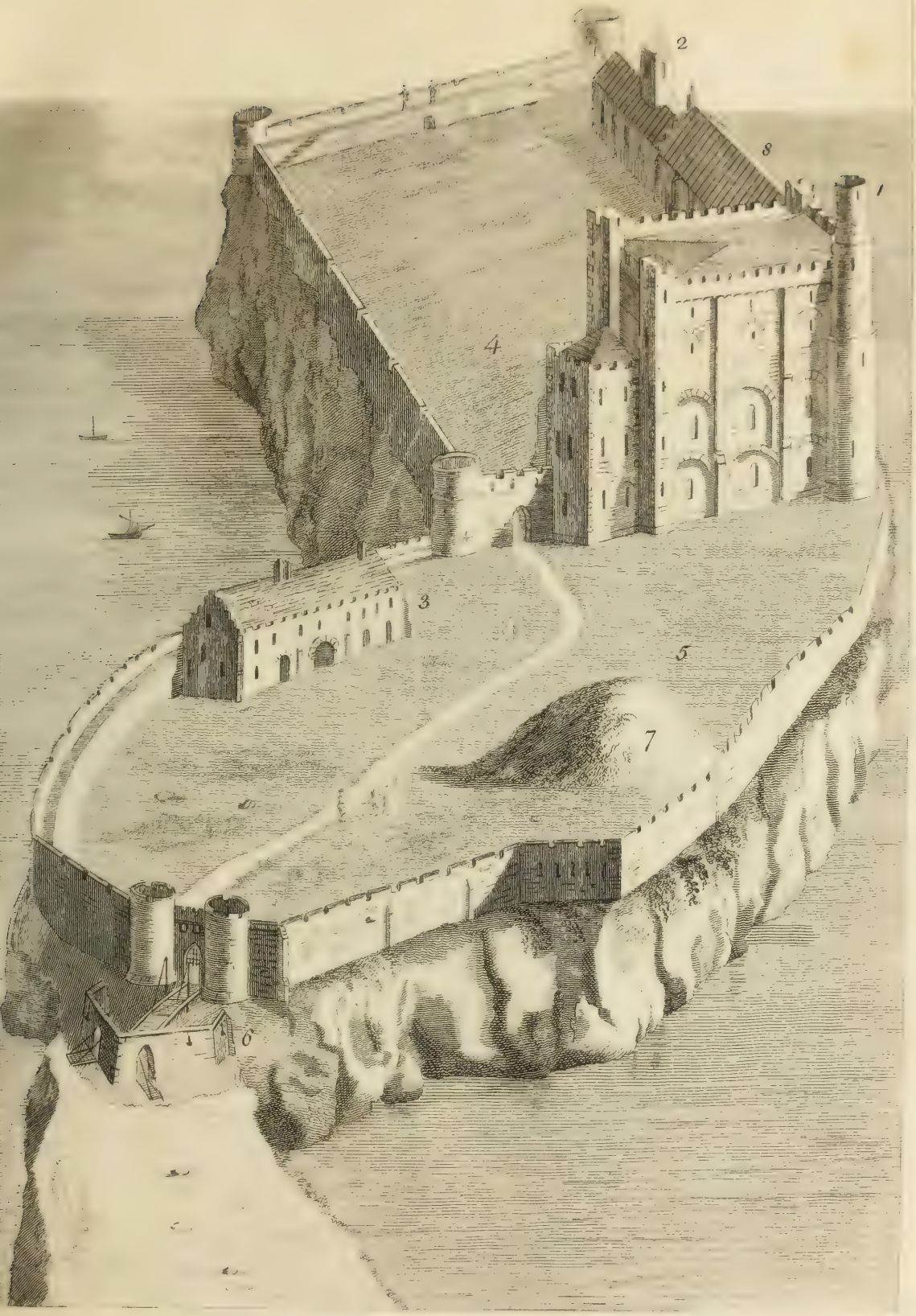
then conſtructed at ſmall diſtances one from the other, and portions of wall between them were built in a right line, ſo that the circle which was probably the original figure of moſt antient towns was changed into a polygon; this, in ſome meaſure, mended the evil complained of, but there ſtill remained parts of and near the tower which could not be ſeen, called dead angles; to remedy theſe, the towers were built ſquare, and ſometimes ſet with one of their angles in the angle of the wall: near as they were to the true ſhape, this contrivance did not do, till at length ſome more lucky thought dictated the method of deſcribing the ſaliant faces of the towers, by right lines drawn from the angles, made by the ſides of the adjoining towers, with the curtain or main wall; this completed the matter, and left no ſpot unſeen or undefended by the oppoſite towers: this will be clearly underſtood by turning to the plate: obvious as this is, round towers continued in uſe even ſo late as the reign of King Henry VIII., many of the forts and block-houſes built by that king for the defence of the coaſt having towers of that form.

To obtain an accurate idea of an antient fortreſs, let us conſider it from without. The firſt work that preſented itſelf was the bayles, a ſpace on the outſide of the ditch commonly ſurrounded by ſtrong palliſades, and ſometimes by a low embattled wall: this is clearly pointed out by the lines in the note (a).

Next the bayle was the ditch, foſs, graff, or mote; generally, where it could be, a wet one and pretty deep; the paſſage over it was by a draw bridge frequently covered by an advanced work, called a Barbican; ſometimes the Barbican was beyond the ditch covering the head of the draw-bridge (b).

(a) Hors des Foſſez a une lice
De trop fort murs, à Creneaux bas,
Si que chevaux ne puiſſent pas
Juſqu'au foſsé venir d'alleé
Qu'il ny eût avant meſleé.

(b) The term Barbican is ſtill preſerved by the ruins of different caſtles; a ſmall ſtone work covering the gate of Bodiham caſtle, in Suſſex, is ſtill called the Barbican. In towns and large fortreſſes the Barbicans were large and ſtrong, frequently having a ditch and draw-bridge of their own.



ANCIENT FORTIFICATION Pl.I.

From an Ancient drawing in the Collection of Joseph Gulston Esq.r

1. The Dungeon. 2. The Chapel. 3. Stable. 4. Inner Bailey
5. Outer Bailey. 6. Barbacan. 7. Mount. 8. Great Le Campo.

The outermoſt walls encloſing towns or fortreſſes were commonly perpendicular, or had a very ſmall external talus; they were flanked by ſemi-circular polygonal or ſquare towers, commonly about forty or fifty yards diſtant from each other; within were ſteps to mount the terre pleine of the walls or ramparts, which were always defended by an embattled or crenellated parapet.

The grand entrance was moſtly through a gate flanked by two large and ſtrong towers, with a projection over the paſſage, called a machicolation, being a contrivance for letting fall great weights, ſcalding water, or melted lead, on the heads of any aſſailants who might have got undiſcovered cloſe to the gate; further to ſecure the entrance there were commonly one or more iron portcullis's faſhioned like harrows, which were drawn up and let down by means of grooves cut in the ſtone. Beſides theſe, there were ſtrong wooden gates of an enormous thickneſs, with a wicket, both ſecured by large bars and bolts of iron, and ſtrengthened with iron plates and large-headed nails driven at a ſmall diſtance from each other.

On entering the outer gate the next part that preſented itſelf was the outer ballium, or bailey, ſeparated from the inner ballium by a ſtrong embattled wall and towered gate; here frequently in old caſtles we ſee large mounts of earth, probably erected as a fort of cavaliers in ſome former ſiege, to equal a moving tower, or command ſome diſtant work of the beſiegers.

To the outer ballium joined the inner ballium, where were commonly the houſes and barracks for the garriſon, the chapel, ſtables and hoſpital; within this, or at one corner of it, ſurrounded by a ditch, ſtood the keep or dungeon (c), generally a large ſquare tower, flanked at its angles by ſmall turrets, having within them one or more wells. This keep was to our old fortreſſes, what the citadel is to modern ones, the laſt retreat or reduit of the garriſon.

(c) Donjon, en fortification eſt un reduit dans un place ou dans une citadelle, où l'on ſe retire quelquefois pour capituler. *Dictionnaire portatif de L'Engenieur. Par Belidor.*

The walls of theſe caſtles were generally of an immoderate thickneſs. The governor's reſidence was uſually in the ſecond or third ſtory from the ground. The tops of theſe keeps are ſurrounded by an embattled parapet, from whence there is a view over the adjacent country. The annexed plate, taken from an antient drawing, will ſhew nearly ſuch a fortreſs as is here deſcribed.

In fortified towns the outworks and external walls were as has here been mentioned, only that inſtead of one, they had ſeveral great gates, beſides ſally ports and poſterns; and a caſtle which in former times, citadel like, was intended to keep the inhabitants in awe, as well as for defence againſt external enemies.

In times of war, or civil diſſention, the ſtreets of towns were often defended by iron chains drawn acroſs them; of theſe, which were always ready, the contrivance is ſhewn by the plate. The avenues of towns and villages were likewiſe frequently barricaded by the machine here delineated.

In the attack of towns and fortreſſes, as the range of the machines then in uſe did not exceed the diſtance of five ſtadia, the beſiegers did not carry on their approaches by means of trenches; but began their operations above ground, with the attacks of the bayles or liſts, where many feats of chivalry were performed by the knights and men at arms, who conſidered the aſſault of that work as particularly belonging to them, the weight of their armour preventing them from ſcaling the walls. As this part was attacked by the knights and men at arms, it was alſo defended by thoſe of the ſame rank in the place, whence many ſingle combats were fought here; this was at the firſt inveſting of the place.

The beſiegers having carried the bayle and liſts, brought up their machines, and eſtabliſhed themſelves on the counterſcarp, began under cover of their tortoiſes, ſows or cats, to drain the ditch, if a wet one, and alſo to fill it up with hurdles and faſcines, and level it for the paſſage of their moveable towers; whilſt this was doing, the archers, attended by young men carrying large ſhields called pavoiſes, attempted with their arrows to drive the beſieged from the towers and

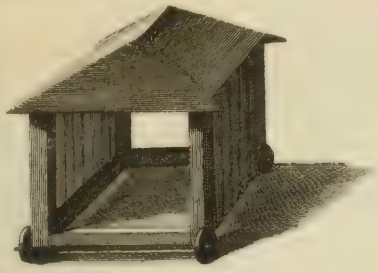


Fig. 1

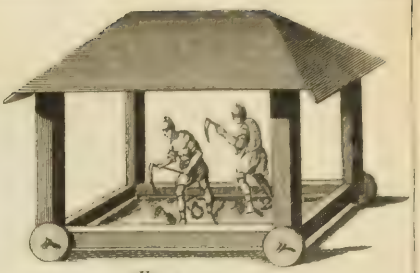


Fig. 2

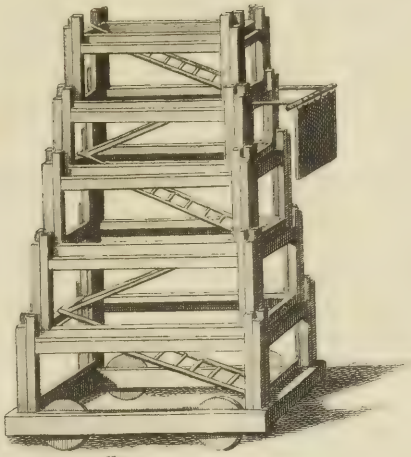


Fig. 3

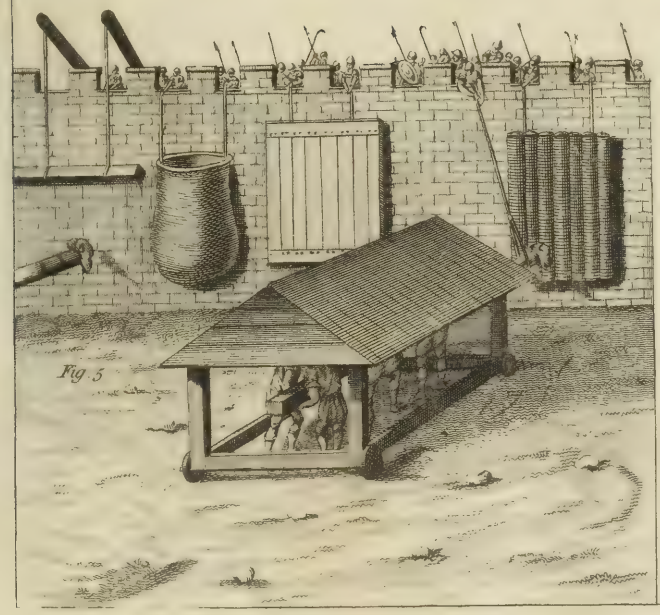


Fig. 5

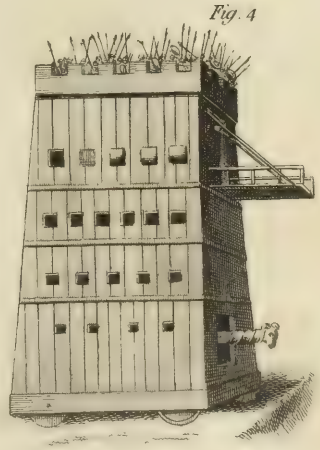


Fig. 4

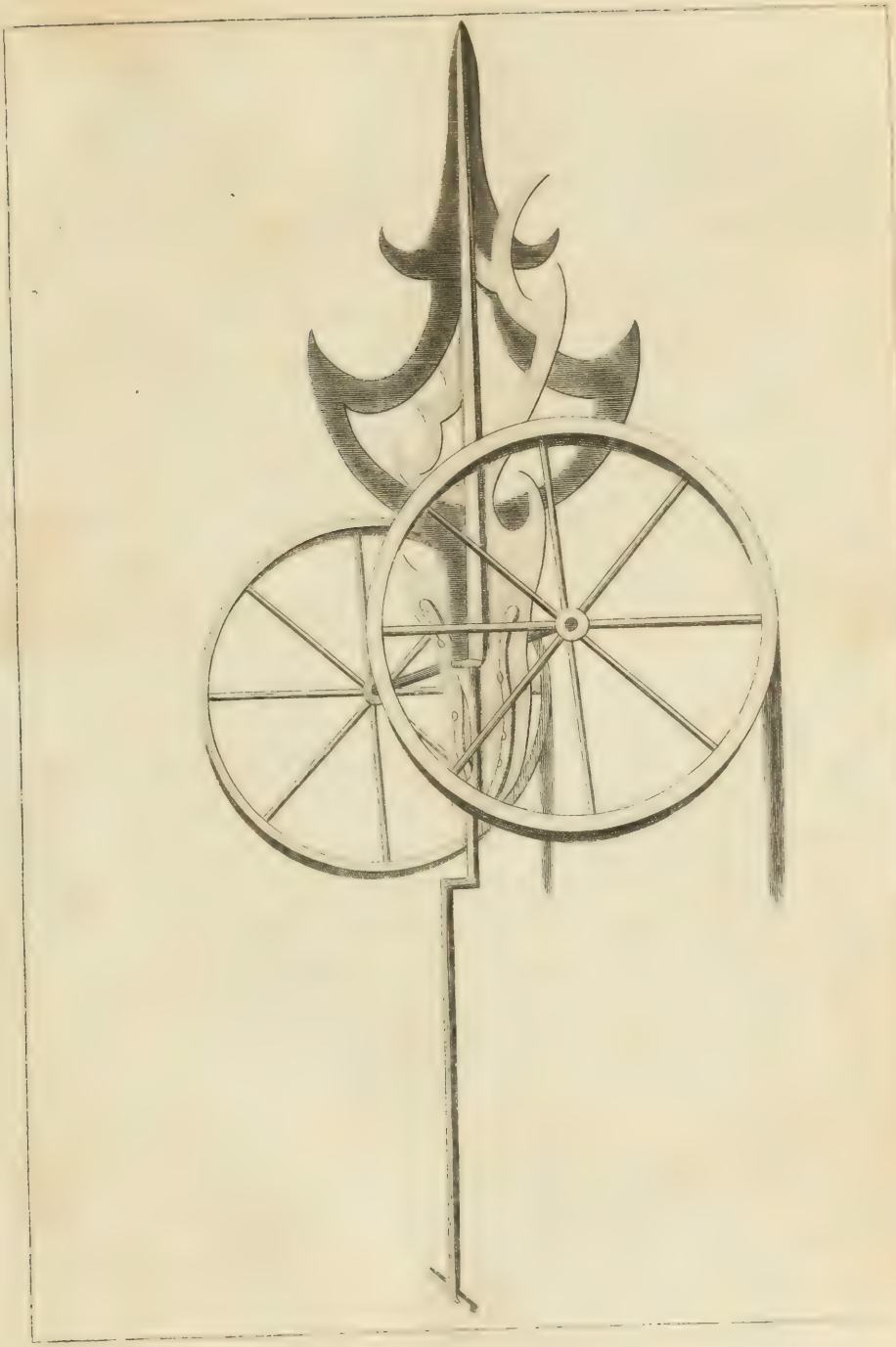
Goodwin sculp.

MACHINES USED IN ANCIENT SIEGES.

BATTERING MACHINES.

J. Newton, fecit

AN ANCIENT MACHINE FOR DEFENDING A PASS.



The Lyonese, a Machine for defending a Breach.

ramparts, being themſelves covered by theſe portable mantlets. The garriſon on their part eſſayed by the diſcharge of machines, croſs and long bows, to keep the enemy at a diſtance.

The moveable towers or belfreys which were brought in pieces being now framed and fitted together, were puſhed forwards acroſs the ditch; theſe the beſieged uſed every means in their power to deſtroy, burn or overthrow.

The cats, ſows, and moveable towers having reached the walls, the beſiegers under them either began to mine, or batter them with the ram; they alſo eſtabliſhed batteries of baliſtas or mangonels on the counterſcarp. Theſe were oppoſed by thoſe of the enemy.

The archers and croſs bow men from the upper ſtories in the moveable towers eſſayed to drive away the garriſon from the parapets, and on a proper opportunity to let fall a bridge, by that means to enter the town. In the bottom ſtory of the tower was often a large ram, with which a breach was attempted.

Against the moveable tower there were many modes of defence; the chief was to break up the ground over which it was to paſs, or by undermining it to overthrow it; attempts were likewiſe made with different fireworks to ſet it on fire, to prevent which it was covered with raw hides, or coated over with alom. Sometimes huge mounts or cavaliers were thrown up to a level with it.

To deaden the ſtrokes of the ram, hurdles, woolſacks, or bags of horſe-hair were let down before the wall, and to deſtroy or ſeize it, a huge beam faſtened by chains to two leavers was let fall on it, or a machine like a pair of ſheers, or a nooſe in a ſtrong rope was employed to lay hold on it. To protect the parapet, machines called hourdeys were made uſe of.

Mines of two kinds were alſo employed in antient ſieges, one merely as a ſubterraneous paſſage into the town, to open in the night in ſome unfrequented place, the other with an intent to throw down the walls and towers, for which purpoſe the miners propped up the incumbent part or roof of the mine till it was completed, after which on drawing away or burning the props, the whole with the

walls and buildings on it tumbled in; the galleries of theſe mines were much larger than thoſe of the preſent times, ſo that the miners of the oppoſite parties often met and fought in them (d); ſometimes under cover of volleys of arrows, quarrels, darts and ſtones, diſcharged by the machines, archers and croſs bow men, the beſiegers attempted to ſcale the walls, or mount the breach; for which purpoſe there were various contrivances and combinations of ladders. The beſieged to prevent them threw down beams, pointed ſtakes, melted lead, and boiling water.

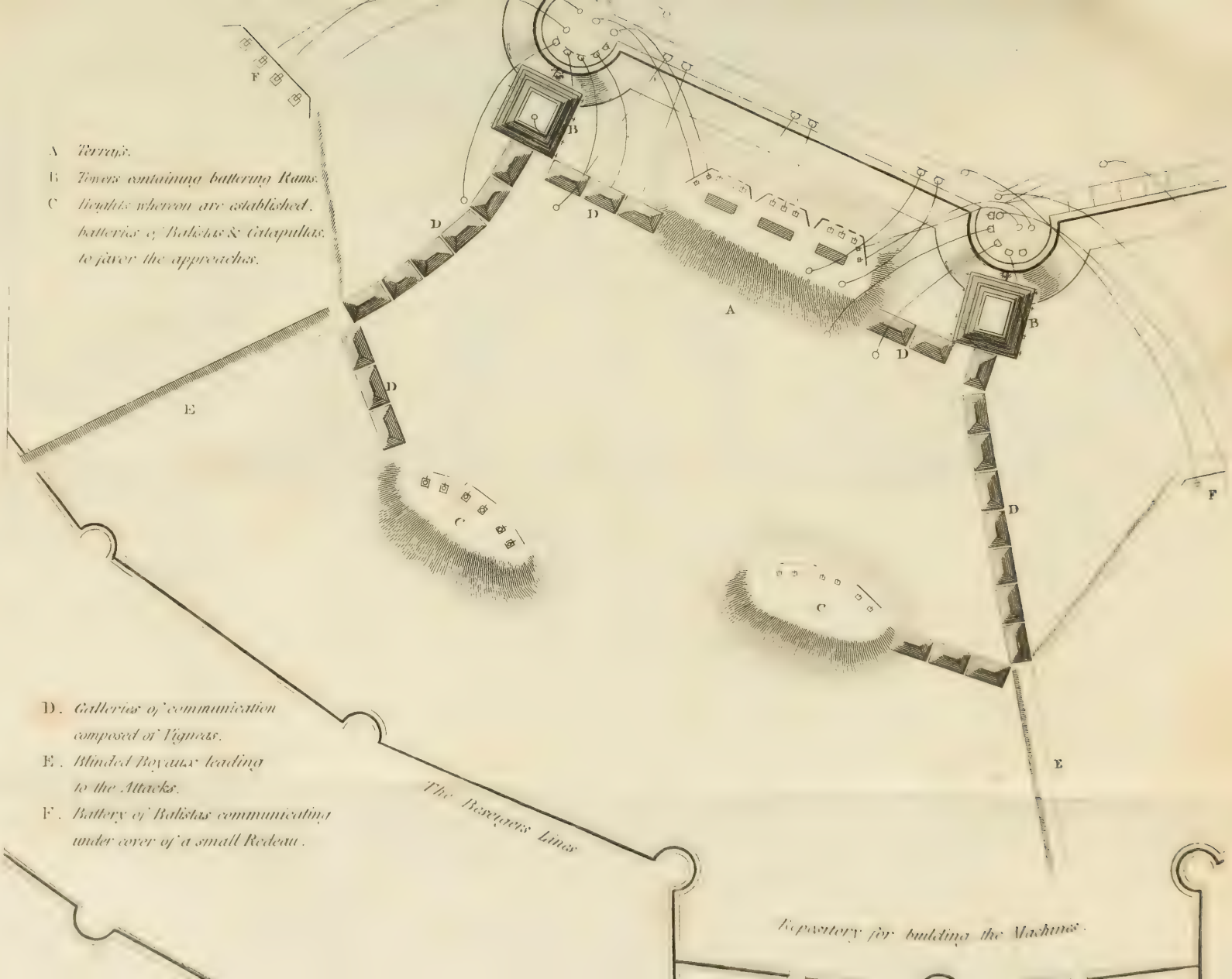
The walls being thus taken, the garriſon retired to the keep or dungeon of the caſtle, where they made the beſt capitulation they could obtain.

In ſieges of large places, not only lines of contra and circumvallation were traced, but complete towns were built round them, as was practiſed by King Edward III. at the ſiege of Calais.

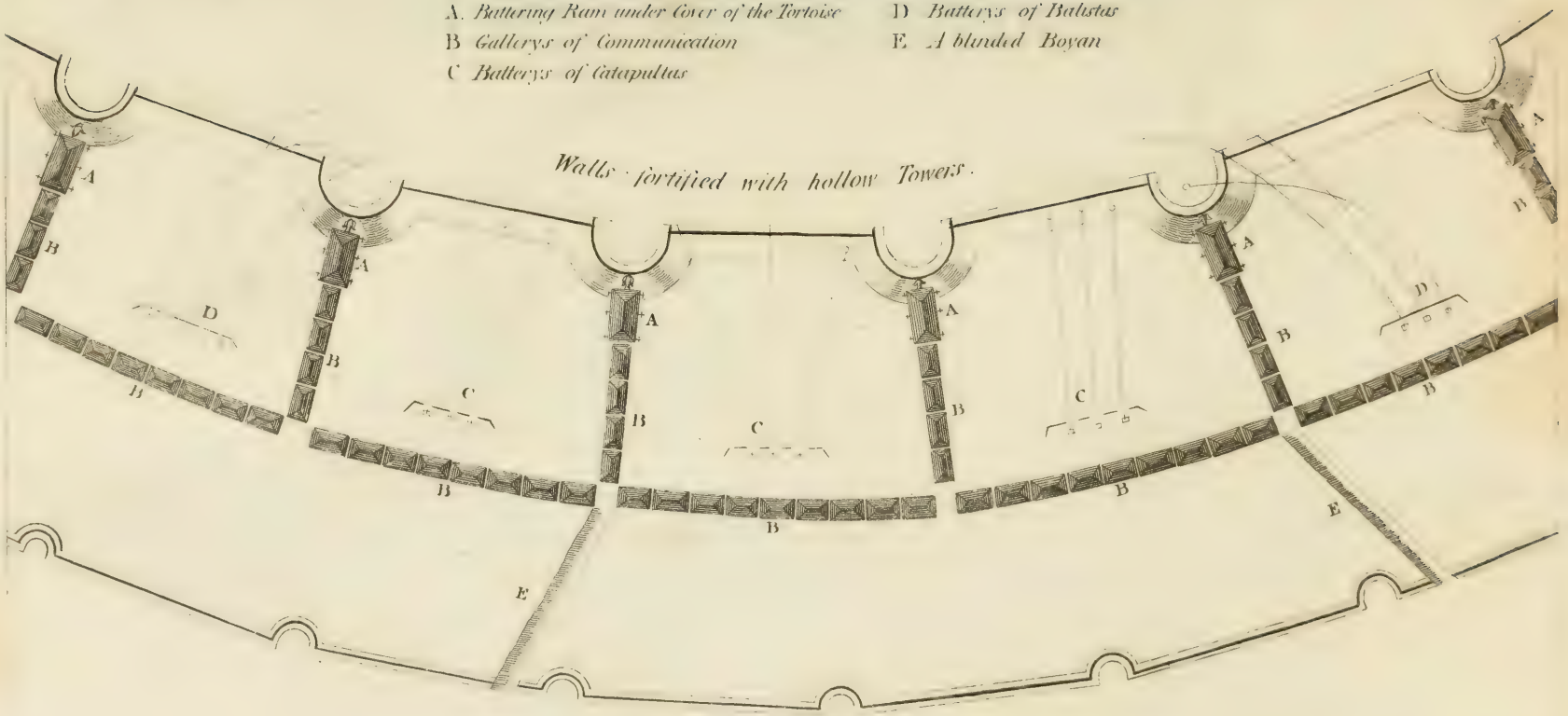
The following deſcription of a ſiege is extracted from the Ro-

---

(d) At the ſiege of Melun by Henry V. King of England and the Duke of Burgundy in the year 1420; the mine on the ſide of the Engliſh was pierced almoſt to the walls; the beſieged, ſays the Hiſtorian (Monſtrelet), countermined in oppoſition to it, and the Engliſh made a barrier where the king and the duke fought with lances againſt two Dauphinois, and ſeveral knights and eſquires came and fought at the ſaid mine." As thoſe combatants were armed from head to foot, it was neceſſary that the galleries of the mine ſhould be at leaſt ſeven feet high and the ſame in breadth, that two men might act with convenience. It often happened that challenges were given to be decided here, and that the manner of fight was agreed upon. At this ſame ſiege of Melun which Barkſun defended, a great Chevron was placed acroſs a mine, to the height of the breaſt, and it was forbidden that any one ſhould paſs over or under it: many champions of both parties ſucceſſively preſented themſelves, and fought with the ſword or battle ax. When a knight was made during a ſiege, and they were at work to undermine the wall of the town, the candidate inſtead of performing his vigil of arms in a chapel according to cuſtom, kept it in the mine, where he paſſed the night with an ancient knight. *Joly de Maizeroy, p.* 239. Gunpowder was firſt unſucceſsfully tried in a mine by the Genoeſe at Serezanella, a town belonging to the Florentines, in 1487: but Peter of Navarre made another eſſay, and ſucceeded at the caſtle of the Eg at Naples in 1503. Paul Jovius ſays he had before tried the experiment at the ſiege of Cephalonia, ſome years before, when the Venetians aſſiſted by the Spaniards took that iſland from the Turks.


A Terrais.
B Towers containing battering Rams.
C Heights wherein are established batteries of Balistas & Catapultas to favor the approaches.
D. Galleries of communication composed of Vignas.
E. Blinded Boyaux leading to the Attacks.
F. Battery of Balistas communicating under cover of a small Redeau.
The Besiegers Lines
Repository for building the Machines

A. *Battering Ram under Cover of the Tortoise*
B *Gallerys of Communication*
C *Batterys of Catapultas*
D *Batterys of Balistas*
E *A blinded Boyan*



Walls fortified with hollow Towers.

Lines of contrevallation & of Circumvallation.

ANCIENT MANNER OF BESIEGING TOWNS

mance of Claris, a manuſcript in the library of the King of France, No. 7534.

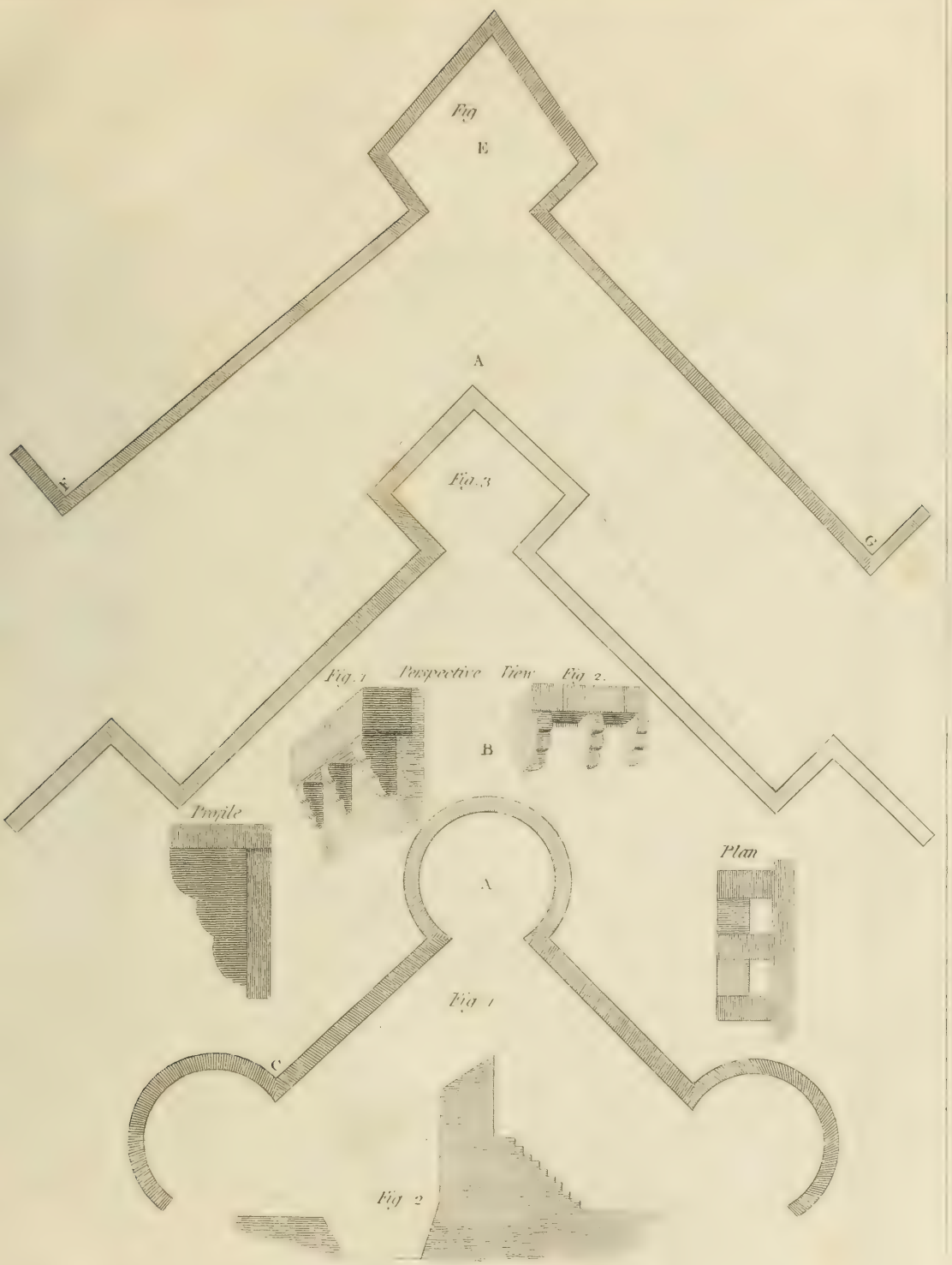
" The king gave orders for a party to go into the foreſt to fell and hew wood to make engines, mangonels, great and ſtrong belfreys, and cats for filling up the ditches.

" The inhabitants on their ſide think of defending themſelves; they make mangonels for throwing ſtones outwards, hourdeys for covering the crenelles, darts and pointed ſtakes to throw at the aſſailants, and to fortify the gates, barbacans, barrs, portcouliſſes, and deep ditches; they then put themſelves in a ſtate of repelling the enemy, who thought them defenceleſs; the king cauſes his engines to be prepared and brought near the town; he cauſes the bibles and mangonels to play, the cats to advance to the ditch, and the belfreys to be conducted to the foot of the walls; the inhabitants have every reaſon to fear when they ſee the engines rolling; they mount upon the walls to defend themſelves againſt the aſſailants; Arthur with his troops marches to the attack, then might you ſee the eſquires advance under the engines (gallerys or vineas), to be under cover; they carry earth, under the cat, and boldly fill up the ditch; the townſmen ſhoot at them with croſs bows, and throw darts, quarrels fly on all ſides; from the top of the belfry, King Arthur's archers, and his moſt expert croſs bowe-men, ſhoot at the defenders of the walls; the king cries to his men, advance, brave knights! in a moment you might behold the cats roll, and already many arrive at the wall; the ſoldiers immediately erect their long and ſtrong ladders, but they (the beſieged) throw on them ſharpened ſtakes, melted pitch, mixed with glue, cauldrons of boiling water, and then ſucceed in repelling them; the next day a new attack, the ſerjeants returned to the engines, the knights to the gates, and the croſs bow-men to the belfroy; the inhabitants alſo remount their walls, they no longer fear any thing, and ſtill believe themſelves certain to conquer; the aſſault recommences, the knights near the gate labour in cutting down the liſts, the townſmen ſally out to defend them; on both ſides they endeavour to behave

well, to diſtinguiſh themſelves, and to maintain the fight with advantage; the confuſion is lively in this part: the attack begins again at the crenelles and the towers, quarrels, ſtakes, and great ſtones fly on all ſides, the petrarys and threatning bibles play without ceaſing, the knights in the mean time fight in crowds at the liſts, every one of them endeavouring to overthrow an enemy; at their head are ſword in hand, Gauvain, Claris, Maſter Yvain, Laris, and Sagramore; they ruſh upon the knights of the town, theſe loſe ground and the liſts, they retire behind the thick bars and there maintain the combat; but ours redouble their efforts, they do not ſleep, and are become carpenters, and in fine ſo well preſerve their advantage, they fight ſo valliantly, that they puſh back the enemy into the town with great loſs; on the other ſide thoſe who were in the belfreys, gained the walls and jumped on them ſword in hand; the attack laſted the whole day till the evening.

"In the night the beſieged hold a council, and ſend a deputy to offer to ſurrender."

Three plates copied from Mr. Joley de Maizeroy's Hiſtory of Sieges, will explain his idea of the ancient mode of attacking a fortified place, and the machines uſed for covering the workmen.



FORTIFICATION.

CHAPTER II.

Of the Cries of War.

IT was formerly the cuſtom of almoſt every nation when joining in battle, to begin the attack with loud ſhouts, called cries of war, or of arms; theſe ſhouts were intended to terrify the enemy, to occupy the ſoldiers, and to prevent them from hearing the ſhouts of their opponents; Froiſſart ſays, "that at the battle of Crecy, fifteen thouſand Genoeſe archers began to yell in a moſt frightful manner to terrify the Engliſh." In theſe cries every nation and almoſt every leader had their peculiar word, or ſentence, which alſo ſerved as a kind of parole to diſtinguiſh friends from foes; cries of arms were likewiſe uſed to rally broken ſquadrons, eſpecially when their banner was in danger.

THE antient Engliſh cry was St. George; this was in ſuch eſtimation that a military writer of the beginning of the laſt century inſerts the obſervance of it among the ordnances or military laws, to the obedience of which he would have all ſoldiers ſworn (e).

ITEM, ſays he, that all ſouldiers entering into battaile, aſſault, ſkirmiſhe, or other action of arms, ſhall have for their common crie and word, ST. GEORGE! ST. GEORGE! forward, or upon them, St. George; whereby the ſouldier is much comforted, and the enemie diſmaide, by calling to mind the auncient valour of England, which with that name hath been ſo often victorious; therefore he that ſhall malicioufly omit it, ſhall be ſeverely puniſhed for his obſtinacie.

ALTHOUGH the cry of St. George has been long diſuſed, war cries are ſtill kept up among our ſailors, who conſtantly accompany their

(e) EDWARD DAVIS, 1619.

firſt broadſide with three huzzas, ſtiled by them three cheers; ſeveral of our modern officers, among them General Wolf, recommend on charging the enemy with fixed bayonets, to give a loud warlike ſhoute (f): Sir James Ware ſays, the antient Iriſh war cry was farrah! farrah! In after ages, each clan made uſe of a different war cry, moſt of them terminating in the word ABOE, derived from an obſolete Iriſh expreſſion, ſignifying cauſe or buſineſs. Thus the Earl of Kildare's cry was crom-aboe, ſuppoſed to have originated from a ſtrong caſtle called crom.

THESE war cries have been long diſuſed among us; and are indeed rather inconſiſtent with that ſtrict order and attention to command, which ſhould prevail in every well-diſciplined army.

(f) THE war-cry of the Spaniards was, á mat; that of the French, montjoye St. Dennis, concerning which the French etymologiſts by no means agree, ſome making it St. Dennis my joy, my hope, my conſolation; ſome conſider montjoye as a diminutive of mount, and that it alluded to the mount of martyrdom on which St. Dennis ſuffered; others ſuppoſed it a corruption of mons Jovis, and to have ſome now forgotten reference to a Pagan temple or a mount dedicated to Jupiter: at preſent the French in aſſaults of the covered way, or any other attack, cry tue, tue.

CHAPTER III.

Of Encampments.

THE antient mode of encamping was undoubtedly under tents, which were in uſe from the moſt remote antiquity. The camp of King Edward II. in his expedition to Scotland, A.D. 1301, is deſcribed in the antient French poem, entitled, the Siege of Caerleverok, before mentioned in this work. From it we may form an idea of an antient encampment. "The army," ſays the poet, "being drawn up, and the mareſchal having marked out the ground, and aſſigned to every one his proportion, then might be ſeen to ariſe houſes of various faſhions, built without the aſſiſtance of carpenters or maſons, and compoſed of white and died linen; there many a cord was ſtretched, and many a pin driven into the earth, and many a large tree felled to build huts, whoſe floors within were ſtrewed with leaves, herbs, and flowers, gathered in the woods." From this we learn that the tents were of different forms, as well as colours, but whether from inattention to uniformity, or as a diſtinction of the ranks of their owners, is not certain; we however find, that each officer had his place and proportion of ground; ſo that, in all probability, ſome regular form of encampment was obſerved; it alſo appears, that beſides the tents, there were many wooden huts erected; theſe, probably, were for the uſe of the private ſoldiers.

FROM ſeveral drawings in the Britiſh Muſeum, of tents uſed by King Henry VIII., it is evident that the encampments of thoſe times were extremely magnificent (g), and this is farther confirmed by a

(g) SEE the plate of royal tents.

curious manuſcript in the Library of the College of Arms; wherein is given the dimenſions of the royal houſes of timber, royal hales, tents and pavillions uſed by the ſame king, A.D. 1513, at the ſieges of Terwyn and Torney, with thoſe of the chief officers and followers of the court, and the number of carriages allotted for tranſporting them; from whence it appears that barracks or huts were then uſed as well as tents (h).

A MANUSCRIPT in the Cotton library, has the plan of one of King Henry VIII.'s camps, here engraved (i), and under it the following directions referring to it.

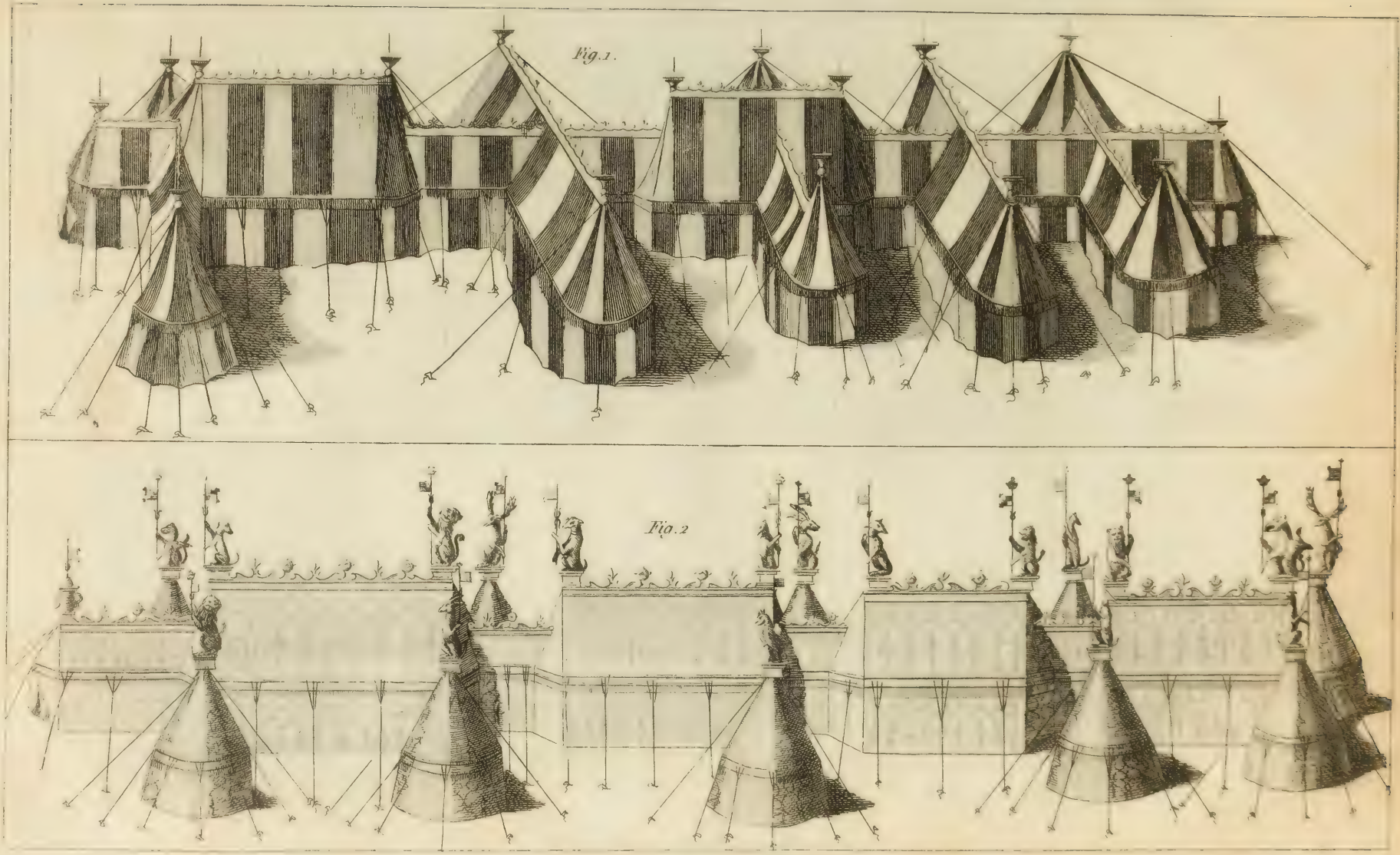
"THE mening of the plat (or plan), ys fyrſt, that no man's tent ſhall be ſett within 200 foote of the kynge's tentes, that is to ſaye, the uttermoſt part of the cordds ſhall not come nere the uttermoſt parte of the cordds of the kynge's tenttes, both for air, and to have ſpace about yt.

ITEM, that the fowre quarters be ſo appoynted, that the kynge's grounde and tentts may be in the midds, and to be betweene corddes, and corddes of every quarter a hundred fote brode, ſo that every ſuch ſpace bytwene the quarters, may come right to the grownde of the kynge's tente, according as it is drawn in the platt:——alſo, yf the kynge's highneſs will have the markett-place, that then the way through the markett-place, to be made as yt is in the platt, and the ſame markett-place to be in the midds, two hundred fote ſquare, with fowre quarters, and between every quarter, a lane fifty fote between corddes and corddes; and the ſaid lanes to come every one to the myddes of the ground of the markett-place.

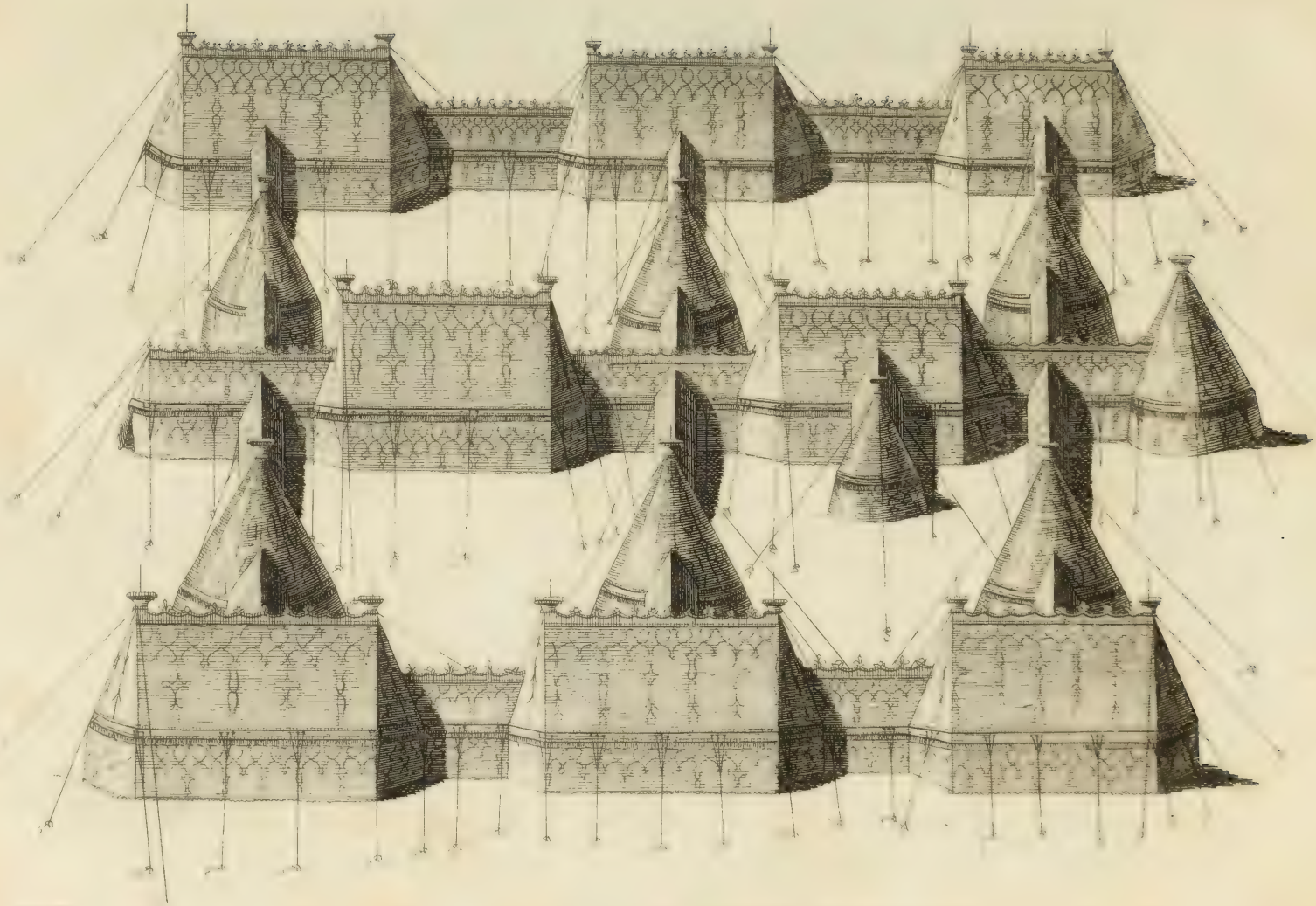
ITEM, for the good orderynge of the ſaid tenttes, accordyng to the platt, there muſt be two as marſhalls, and they to appoynte the ground wher the ſaid tenttes ſhall ſtand, to choſe the grounde as nere as they can to be upon drye grounde, and ſpecyallye the place where the

(h) THIS MS. is marked 2d M. 16. fol. 74.

(i) AUGUSTUS 3. MS. Bib. Cotton; for the plan, ſee plate entitled, "A Royal Encampment, temp. Hen. VIII."



ROYAL TENTS. Pl. I.



ROYAL TENTS. Pl.2.

kynge's highnes tenttes ſhall ſtande; and alſo, to ſee that there may be good water as nigh as can be.

ITEM, theſe marſhalls ſhall appoynte, firſt, the grownde for the kynge's tenttes, and for the ſpace about them, according to the platt: which grownde, the ſaid marſhalls ſhall delyver unto ſuche as ſhall be appoynted to receyve the ſame; and they to ſee the kynge's tenttes to be ſet in order, and appoynte the ground for the ſame.

ITEM, that the ſaid marſhalls ſhall alſo appoynte the grownde for the fowre quarters, accordyng to the platt, to ſuch as ſhall be appoynted to receive the ſame, and they to appoynte grownde and place in theſe quarters to every man, as they be appoynted, and after their degrees; and one marſhal to lye there, and to have yrons for punyſhment of ſuche as ſhall offende.

ITEM, that they that ſhall lodge and appoynte the quarters, have a bill of the names of them that are appoynted to have tenttes in any of the ſaid quarters, which boke muſt be made by the kinge's highneſſe or his counſell, and to be delyvered to them that ſhall have the charge.

ITEM, yf the kynge's highneſſe pleaſure be to have a market-place according to the platt; for the good orderyng of the ſame, firſt, one marſhall muſt lye in the ſaid markett in his tentte, and the clerk of the market allſoe, to ſee good rule and order; and the ſaid marſhall muſt have withynne, bothe yrons and ſtokys for punyſhment of ſuch as do offende: alſo, there muſt be made a proclamation, ſuche as ſhall be thought mete by the kynge's highneſs and hys counſell for good order and quyetnes, and punyſhment for them that ſhall offend contrary to the ſame."

AND in another manuſcript written in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, is the following article on this ſubject (k).

" THE order how a camp ought to be pytched; videlicet, firſt of all, after that the high marſhall hath appointed the ground, both

(k) MS. in Bib. Harl. inſig. 847.

mete and convenient for the campe, havinge both woode and water, and forrage ſufficient for the armie; then muſt the provoſt-marſhall divide the grounde into ſix ſeveral quarters; i. e. three for the footmen, and three for the horſemen, and betwixt the quarters, he muſt appoynte a ſtrete, which muſt be eighty foot broade at the leaſt; then muſt he alſo appoint a large place of aſſemblie, and a market-place, where he muſt place the rerewarde on the left hand of the place of aſſemblie, and the battaile in the nether part of the ſayde aſſemblie, reſerving the ſtreet into it between the two battailes; and to place the rereward upon the right hand of the ſame place of aſſemblie; reſerving alſo another roome for another ſtreete, to goe between the rereward and the battaile, and that all the tent doors open into the ſaid place of aſſemblie; alſo the place of the general's tentte is in the quarter of the battaile, directly in the myddeſt of the ſaid battaile, and the door of his tent muſt open into the place of aſſemblie, a little before the other tents; and in the ſame quarter muſt he appointe the marſhall's tente on the right hand of the treaſurers, or the left hand of the ſaid generals tente: alſo he muſt appointe the ordenaunce before the place of aſſemblie, within the ringe of the ſaid campe, and carriages to impale the ſame as muche as is needful; for in this campe, the horſe campe is not environed with carriages; for that it hath both woode and a great river running by it for the guard thereof, that it needeth no impalement:—the horſe campe is alſo divided into three quarters; firſt, the horſemen of the war-ward, are appointed in the quarter of the war-ward; the horſe and horſemen of the battaile, directly under the battaile; and like wyſe the horſemen of the rereward, under the rereward; there muſt alſo be appointed within the market-place of the campe, a place for the munition of ordinaunce, that muſt be trenched aboute; and a place for the maſter of the ordinaunce, with the office of ordinaunce near unto the artillorie, on the right hande, and the victuelles on the left hand; and for the order of ſetting of watches, both of fotemen and horſemen, ſhall be declared; alſo, commandement muſt be given, that no man pitche anye tente near the ringe of the campe, by ſeven ſcore foote, at the leaſt."

A MANUSCRIPT in the Harleian collection, marked No. 7364, contains the following ſyſtem of caſtrametation, wherein every particular then in uſe appears to have been noticed; its date ſeems much about that of the preceding.

" To everie footman is allowed eight foote in ſquare, in which they are to lodge and build their cabbins.

THE captaine hath allowed him in front as much ground as the front of his quarter doth take up; that is, in a companie of 100, 24 foote; of 150, 40 foote; and of 200, 56 foote; in depth, his allowance is allwaies 36 foote; betweene the captains lodgings and the ſoldiers cabbins, an overthwart ſtreete is to be left of 24 foote broad: in the midſt whereof, right before the enſigne's lodgings, a guarde of eight foote ſquare is to be built; wherein the ſoldiers arms are to be kept from wet and ſpoyle; ſoe, that by this reckoning, there will be eight foote left between the enſignes lodginge and the aforeſaide guarde, and as much between the ſame garde and the captaines lodginge, which is to be kept open, and free for paſſage to and fro.

IN a companie of 100, the ſouldiers are lodged in two rowes of cabbans, with a ſtreet of eight foote running betweene; which row of cabbans containe each of them five and twenty cabbans of eight foote ſquare, which makes, in depth, two hundred foote; in a company of 150, there be three rowes of cabbans and two ſtreetes; in a company of 200, fower rowes of cabbans and three ſtreetes; and ſoe, if your company be ſtronge, you may add to every 50 men a ſtreete and rowe of cabbans more; for every rowe contains 25 cabans, and every caban, two men, which makes 50; but the depth of the ſoldiers cabans muſt never exceede 200 foote.

IN the heade of the rowe of cabans to the right hand, the lieutenant of the companie is to build; and at the head of the rowe, on the left hand, the enſign; their doores opening from the ſoldiers cabbans, towards the captains lodginge, into the croſſe ſtreete of 24 foote; and as the lieutenant and enſigne lodge in the front, ſoe muſt the two ſerjeants doe in the reere, with one of which one of the drummers may lodge, and the other drummer with the enſigne: from the ſerjeants

lodgeings in the reere, is drawn a paralell of 20 foote, ſervinge for a croſſe ſtreete; which ſtreete is called the victuallers ſtreete, and into this ſtreete doe the doores of the ſerjeants cabbans look, that they may the better ſee, and reduſſe the diſorders which uſually happen in that place.

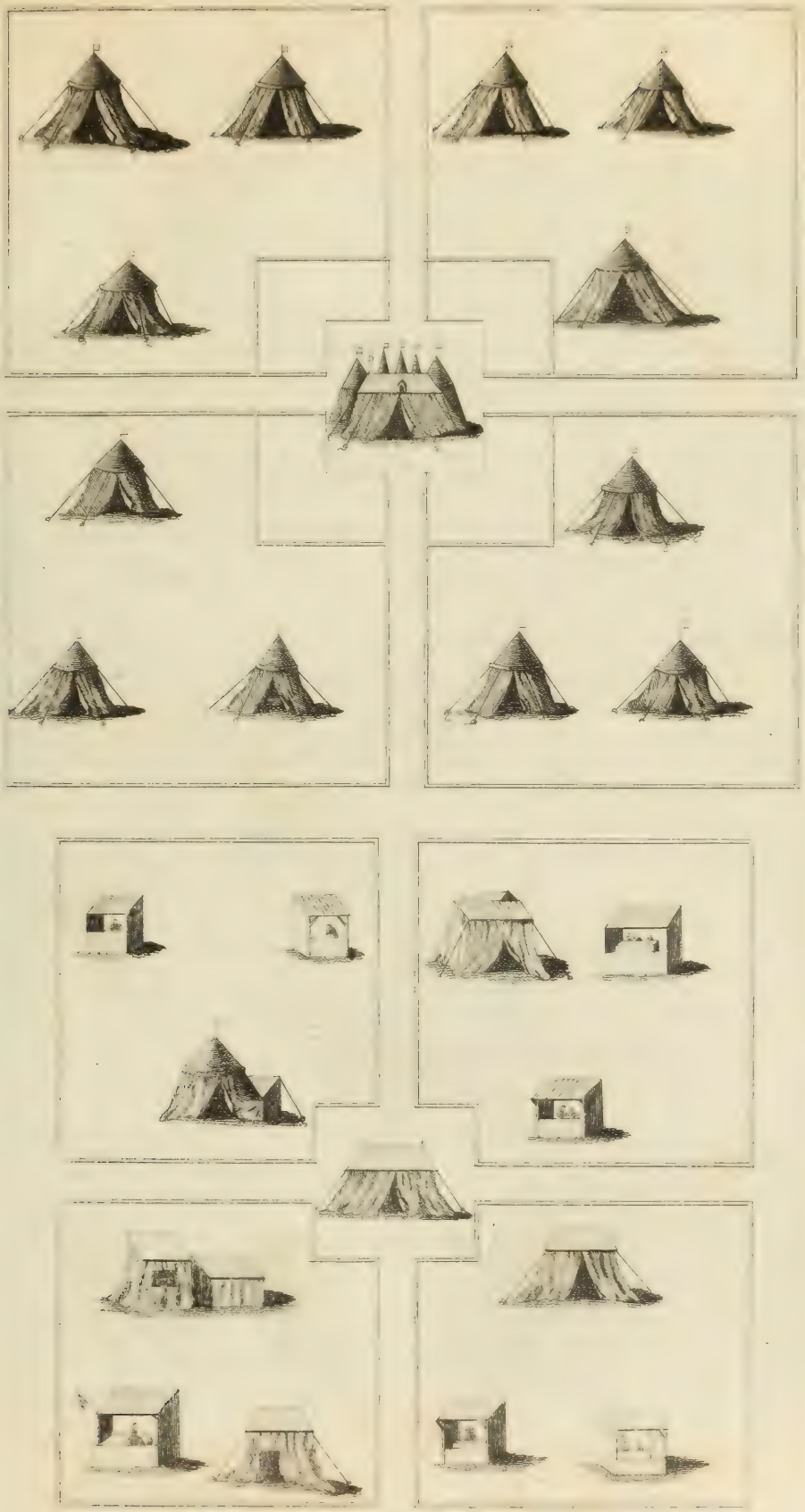
Along this ſtreete, at the further ſide thereof, the ſutlers doe build their doores, lookeing into the quarter, haveing allowed them ten foote in depth, which they muſt not exceede, to build on; in front or breadth, they are not ſo ſtinted, but they may take, more or leſs, accordinge to convenience, and their numbers, by direction from the quarter-maſter; but uſually, there is but one ſutler allowed for a companie, and noe more; though, through an ill cuſtome, or by connivance of officers, ſome of the ſouldiers and their wives doe play the parts of ſutlers, to the neglect of their duties; and in the end, ſpoyle of the ſouldier.

From the ſutlers cabbans ten foote backward is the place appointed for the ſouldiers and ſutlers to make their fires for the dreſſinge of their meate, nearer then which they muſt not be ſuffered to approach, which the quarter maſter muſt diligently looke to, for the preventing the caſualties of fire.

Thus the whole depth of the companies, with the captaine, ſouldiers and ſutlers lodginge, together with the croſs ſtreates, will be three hundred feete, which depth is ever and preciſely to be obſerved in lodgeing both the foote and the horſe alſoe.

Thus you have ſeen particularlie how a companie of foote is lodged; we will now goe forward to ſhew how a regiment of foote is to be lodged, with the officers belonging to it; wherein for examples, we will take the regiment at thirteen companies, as they are now to march with in this employment.

These thirteene companies to make four diviſions, and lodge ſeparated aſunder by ſtreetes, two whereof (to witt), the right and left ſtreetes, are four and twenty foote broade, and the middle ſpace in the regiment ſixty-four foote, wh rein the officers of the regiment, to the depth of one hundred and fifty foote, are to build their lodgeing;



ANCIENT TENTS, and HUTS.

the other one hundred and fifty foot is left for the waggons to ſtande in; on each ſide of this ſixty-four foote, a ſtreete of eight foote broade is left betweene it and the companie next adjoining to it.

Betweene companie and companie, as they lye in their diviſions, ſhall be left a ſtreete of eight foote, the colonel himſelf ſhall lodge right before this ſection of eighty foote, even in front with the captaine's lodgings; his allowance beinge ſixty-foure foote in breadth, and thirty-ſix in depth; when the colonel is lodged, leavinge the ſtreete of twenty-four foote open, which ſtreete runnes croſs-ways, afront the ſoldiers cabbans; the officers of the regiment, as the quarter-maſter and the provoſt, and alſo the preacher and the ſurgeon, are to build in the ſpace of ſixty-four foote, which divides the regiment in the midſt.

When many regiments are lodged together, there muſt be a ſtreete of one hundred foote left betweene every regiment.

The Lodginge of a Companie of Horſe, conſiſtinge of 70 Heads.

The front of the lodgings of a companie of ſeventy horſe, with the ſtreets and rowes, is ſeventy foot, the depth as that of the foote companies, (to witt) 300.

The ſouldiers cabbans are diſtinguiſhed by a ſpace of ffiftie foote, into two rowes, each rowe containing eighteene cabbans or lodgings, and every lodgeinge two ſouldiers; who for their own perſons have allowed unto them ten foote ſquare to build a cabban upon; which cabbans they are to frame in ſuch manner, as that there maye be a convenient ſpace between cabban and cabban for the water to rune off from them; as alſo the better to avoide the harme that may come by caſualty of fire.

The ſpace of ffifty foote, which I ſaid before was left between the ſouldiers cabbans of tenn foote ſquare, the proportion allowed for the perſons of two ſouldiers, is thus divided; five foote thereof, on each ſide inward of thoſe cabbans, is allotted for a ſtreet, between the cabbans and the ſtables; and ten foote more inward, on each ſide from

theſe ſtreets, of five foote, for the ſtandings and ſtables of the horſes, which are to ſtand with their heads towards the doors of the ſouldiers cabbans, which ſhall open into the forementioned ſtreete of five foote; the other twenty foote remayninge of the fifty foote, is to ſerve for a ſtreete runninge longwayes downe through the quarter betweene the ſtables.

THE eighteene lodgings of the ſouldiers forementioned on each ſide, and their horſes, with the two ſtreetes of tenn foote a peece, that runne croſſe or athwart the rowes, and divide every ſix cabbans of the rowes from the other ſix, take up two hundred foote in depth, which is juſt as much as the lodgings of the footmen: then, from the reere of the ſouldiers lodgeings, there is twenty foote allowed backwarde for a ſtreete running croſſe the quarter, which is called the ſutlers ſtreete; along the further ſide whereoff the ſutlers doe builde, who have tenn foote in depth allowed them to build upon, and noe more; in front they maye exceede tenn foote, accordinge to their numbers or commoditie: then meaſuring tenn foote more backward from the ſutlers lodgings, that is the place allotted out, for making of their fires to dreſſe their meate.

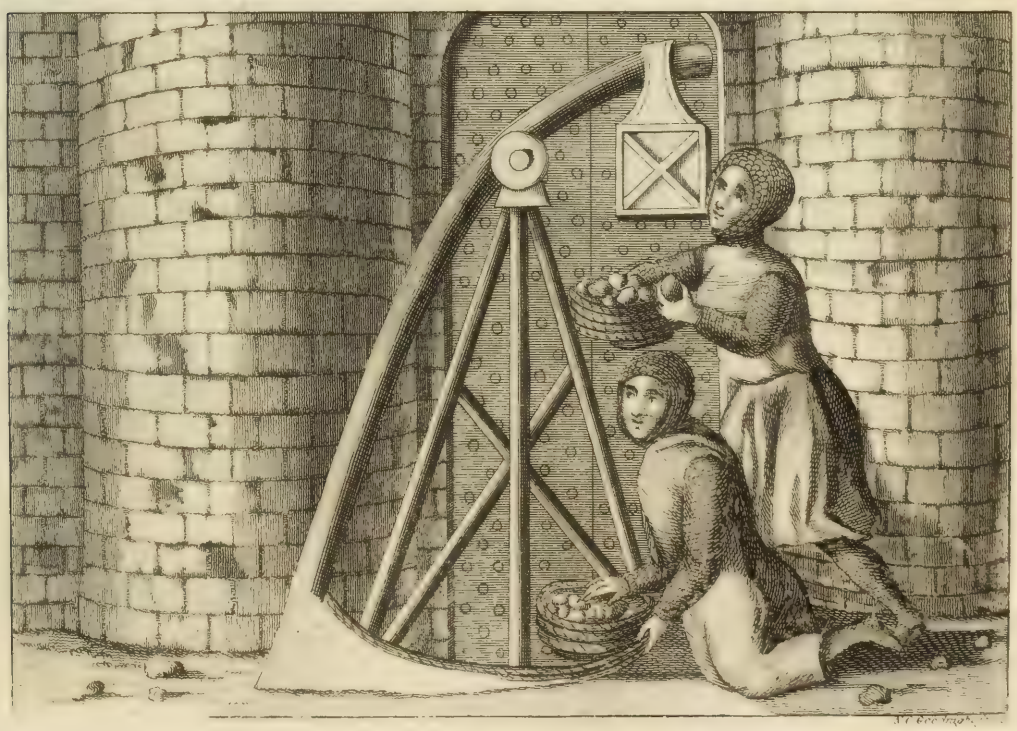
THE captaine of the companie is to quarter before the front of the ſouldiers cabbans, leaving a croſſe ſtreete of twenty foote broade betweene the lower end of his lodgeinge, and the rowes of cabbans; which lodging of the captaines ſhall containe ſeaventy foote in breadth, and forty in depth; this proportion allowed him for his own perſon, his ſervants, his kitchinge, his ſtable for his horſes, and other neceſſarie proviſions.

THE lieutenants and cornett's lodgings are the firſt cabbans at the head of each rowe; the lieutenant quartering in the head of the right hand rowe, and the cornett in the head of the left hand rowe.

AND thus in this manner is a company of ſeaventy horſe lodged in the fielde, and if the companie be of more numbers, you are to add a rowe of eighteene cabbans more to every thirty-ſix horſemen proportionably.

FURTHERMORE it is to be noted, that in the lodginge of the troope,

The Ruyters manner of Lodging



A Trebuchet from an Ancient carving in Ivory

the ſix cabbans on each ſide, in the firſt diviſions, is lodged the captaine's ſquadron; in the ſecond, the cornett's; and in the third, the lieutenant's ſquadron.

A COMPANIE of horſe beinge to be lodged as you have ſeene, let us now lodge a regiment; which regiment of horſe conſiſteth, accordinge to the manner uſed now a-dayes, of three troopes of cuiraſſiers, and one of harquebuſiers, who, in an embattleinge, ſoe in lodgeinge is alwaies to hold the right hande place of the regiment, as the colonell the left.

IT hath been already ſhewed how a companie is lodged, ſoe as there needes nothinge more to be ſaid of a regiment, than that betweene troope and troope there muſt be lefte a ſpace of twenty foote broade, where the horſemen may lay their proviſions of hay and ſtraw, every one at the back-ſide of his own cabban; as alſoe this, that betweene regiment and regiment, there muſt be a ſtreete left of one hundred foote broad.

HAVINGE declared by writinge, and demonſtrated by figures, howe the horſe and foote are to be lodged, both particularly in the companies, and together in regiment; I will now proceed to the ſettinge downe the quarters of the high officers, before I proceede anie further; and, firſt, of the generall.

FOR this purpoſe, as you may ſee by the figure, we take a ſquare as the other quarters of three hundred foot in depth, and the breadth or front of four hundred and eighty foote: the ſignification of the leſſer ſquares within his great ſquare (by which may be perceived the diſpoſition of the lodgings of the officers), belonging to the artillery, with their ſtreets, are as followes:

A. FOR the general of the artillerie.

B. FOR the lieutenant, with the gentlemen of the artillerie.

C. THE magazine of the artillerie, with the commiſſarie, controller, and conductours.

D. THE magazine of the munitions of warre, with their commiſſarie, controllers, and conductours.

E. The inginiers, with their conductours, controllers of the fortifications, with their conductours, commiſſaries, and clerke.

F. The maſter gunners with their canoniers, maiſter of the fireworkes, with his conductours, petardiers, and maiſter of the batteries.

G. The maiſter-carpenter, his lieutenant, with his carpenters, wheelwrighte, ſmith, maiſter of the gabions, armourer, cooper, provoſt of the artillerie, with his ſervants, and the chirurgeon of the artillerie.

H. The boatſmen to drawe and handle the cannon.

I. The pyoners and miners.

K. A common place where the men and waggons do aſſemble upon anie occaſion. Now between all theſe lodgings there are ſtreetes of twenty foote broade left, that every man may eaſily and commodiouſly goe from his lodginge, or come to it, both on foote and on horſeback, and by waggon.

L. A voide place reſerved for the unthought of proviſions.

The forme of lodging of thoſe generall officers that are quartered together in the campe.

For this quarter, as you may perceive by the figure above, we take a ſquare of three hundred foote in depth, as in the other quarters; and in breadth or front three hundred and eighty foote; which ſquare is diſpoſed to the generall officers in manner followinge.

A. The generall of the cavallerie.

B. The generall of the infanterie.

C. The lieutenant-generall of y^{e} cavallerie.

D. The commiſſarie and quarter-maſter of y^{e} cavallerie.

E. The preſident, fiſcall, and greffier of the counſell of warre.

F.

G. The provoſt-generall, and ſerjeant-major-generall.

H. The quarter-maiſter, and paymaſter-generall.

I. The commiſſarie of the muſters.

K. The ſervants, the phyſician, and chirurgeon of the court.

Now betweene theſe lodgings or ſquares, are ſtreetes of twenty foote, as in the others, for paſſage either on foote, or on horſeback, or by waggon.

To be obſerved, that becauſe theſe generall officers of the horſe, and of the foote, command not over any particular regiment, but over the whole (to wit), the horſe officers over the horſe, and the foote officers over the foote, it is not neceſſarie that they ſhould be lodged near any particular regiment; but the horſe officers in ſome quarter near the middle of the horſe; as the foote officers neare the middle of the foote, as it were, equidiſtant from both the extreames; which would be, in my opinion, better than this other way here ſett down, though y^e^ ſeate of the camp may be ſuch, as that this figure may ſerve both the horſe and the foot officers, and yet be equidiſtant from the extreames of both, as is already mentioned; the other generall officers of the artillerie are lodged already by their magazines.

The Forme of the Quarter of the Waggons.

For the quarter of the waggons we take likewiſe a ſquare of three hundred foote in depth, as in the other figures, and ſoe large, or broad, as the number of the waggons propoſed for the campe ſhall require; which breadth notwithſtanding, for example's ſake, we will, at this time, take at three hundred and forty eight foot, within which ſquare the waggons ſhall be placed in their files, their backs oppoſed one to another, and their files ſeparated aſunder by a ſtreete of twelve foote runninge betweene them; in which ſtreete the waggon drivers may lay up their proviſions of fourrage; then between every couple of files ſhall be left a ſtreet of twenty-four foote broad, which ſhall be for paſſage out and into the quarters: every waggon having three horſes is allowed twelve foot in length, which is the length of his waggon, and eighteen foote in breadth, ſix whereof is allowed for the breadth of the waggon (for the axeltree is five foote and halfe), and the other twelve foote for the three horſes; this muſt alſo be

noted, that ordinarily the waggoners make no cabbans, but either lye upon, or under their waggons; but thoſe that deſire to have one, may builde behinde their waggons in the ſtreete of twelve foote broad; now, according to the forementioned computation, in this manner there may lodge in a ſquare of three hundred and forty-eight foote broade, and three hundred foote deep, ten files of waggons, and every file conſiſting of fourteen waggons, which makes the whole ſumme of the waggons one hundred and forty; and though there be many more in ſervice, yet they are not to be mentioned, becauſe they lodge by thoſe to whoſe ſervice they are appointed; upon the four ſides of the quarter lodge the vivandiers, or ſutlers, which follow the waggons, who builde twelve foote deepe; where the number of waggons be greater, you muſt enlarge your ground proportionally.

For the market-place, in depth, we take three hundred foote, as we do in the other quarters; and in breadth, or front, four hundred foote; in which ſquare, in forme diverſe double rowes of cabbans three hundred foote long, and ten foote broad, and leave between every two rowes a ſpace of twenty foote, towards which ſpace, inward, the backs of the cabbans are oppoſed one againſt another; through this ſpace is no paſſage, for it ſerves only for places of fireing to dreſs their meate, and for other uſes: in the midſt betweene theſe rowes, in the market-place, two hundred foot broad, as the followinge figure will ſhew you.

Furthermore, it is to be underſtood, that the people that are lodged about the market-place, and ſhopkeepers, chandlers, butchers, and taverners, every kinde of which are to lodge or quarter in ſeverall rowes apart by themſelves; the richeſt ſhopps neareſt the greate markett, as haberdaſhers, ſellers of ſmall wares, ſilkmen, and the reſt; in giving to the taverners their quarter, reſpect and care muſt be had alſo to ſeperate the honeſter ſorte of them from the reſte.

There are yet remayning to be deſcribed two quarters more; the one of noblemen ſtrangers, and the other the magazines of the vivres; the former of which I ſet not down in this place, becauſe we give unto noblemen ſtrangers a ſquare of three hundred foot in depth, as the

other ſquares are, and ſo many foot in front, as neceſſity ſhall require, wherein they diſpoſe of their tents, cabans, and proviſions accordingly, as they themſelves ſhall think fitteſt.

Soe likewiſe doe wee of the general of the vivres, the which, with all the waggons belonging to him, are placed in ſuch order as wee have ſett down in that place, where wee ſpeak of the waggons: and ſoe alſoe, the waggons of the generall of the artillery.

Note, that if the regiments both of horſe and foote, conſiſted all of one certaine number of companies, and thoſe companies all of like heads, they might be all lodged in like ſquares with much more eaſe and beautie; but this happens not in our age, as it did among the Romans, whoſe cohortes were all of like numbers.

Now, ere you proceede to the meaſureing out of the quarters, it is firſt neceſſarie you know what proviſions, and how manie men are to be lodged in each quarter; to which purpoſe there ſhall be a ſtate of the whole armie, and an exact liſt given of every particular regiment, both of horſe and of foote; as alſo, of all things elſe belonging to the armie, to their quarter-maſter generall, that hee may governe himſelf thereby.

This beinge thus performed, yet, conſideringe that, in the layinge downe of a cainpe, we are to join divers quarters together, both of horſe and foot, with the other quarters alſoe pertaininge unto it, it would be a difficult thinge to marke and remarke them down in haſte, and in order, upon paper, if ſome good rule were not ſett downe before hand for the performance of the ſame; for it happens oftentimes that preſently after the viewinge of the place, the camp is to be lodged: the rule invented for this is thus; wee ſcore out every one of the aforeſaid quarters in little ſquares, uppon cartes, or thin paſteboard, which afterwards we clip or cutt, in ſuch ſorte, that they containe the common depth of the quarters of three hundred foote, and the breadth or front accordinge to the liſte, which is given up of them; as for example, imagine, that in the liſt, one regiment had three hundred foote in depthe, and ſeven hundred and eight in front; we cutt a carte or paſteboard by a certain and ſett ſchale of that breadth and depth,

uppon which we write the colonel's name, and ſoe we doe with all the regiments of horſe and foote; theſe ſmall cartes demonſtratinge the quarters of the ſeveral regiments; as alſo the quarters of the high officers, and all the other parts of the campe; beinge all thus cutt and pared, we place and diſplace ſoe long together, till we find them fitted to our deſire; and to do it yet with more eaſe and commoditie, wee drawe diverſe parallel lines upon a ſheete of paper; betweene which parallels are compriſed the common depth of three hundred foote, with the ſtreets of fifty foote, upon which we place the aforeſaid quarters in their order.

This alſoe is to be noted, that in layinge downe and ordayninge the quarters, we may perceave diverſe times, that if ſome of them were more large, or more ſtraite, than the meaſures marked uppon the ſaid cartes doe containe, the order of the camp might be more fitly framed.

In ſuch a caſe, a man may take ſome quarters of thoſe that may ſuffer alteration, ſomewhat more large or ſtraite; as that of the waggons of the markett, of the artillery, vivres, noblemen ſtrangers, and void place before the generall's quarter, for they are not ſo preciſely calculated but they may be drawn either more large, or more ſtraight; but the regiments of the foote, and of the horſe, as alſoe the quarters of the generalls, and of the generall of the artillery, muſt remaine upon their ſett meaſure.

Furthermore, you muſt note, that ſeeinge this manner of ſettinge downe a quarter is eaſie and preſent, it will be good to have diverſe figures in a readines continually with him; as one, with all the cavallerie and the reſt of the armie, as it were within one intrenchment; another without the cavallery, or any other of their quarter, ſoe that a man may be provided for all occations, according to the reſolution that ſhall be taken; of which figures I might here ſett downe ſome, if it were needful; for by that which is already ſett downe, this may be well and eaſily underſtood.

It being once knowne by the precedent plott upon paper, what figure the camp ſhall beare, the quarter-maſter-generall muſt firſt

beginne to marke out the ſquares or regiments of the infanterie; to which purpoſe he is to have carried along with him, ſome one hundred and fifty beacons, or as many as he knows will be neceſſarie; which beacons are painted ſtaves, about nine foote longe, havinge a ſmall ſquare flagg at the top, and ſerving to ſtick down upon the angles of the quarters.

It muſt be forbidden by ſounde of drumme, upon paine of corporall puniſhment, any man to pluck them up; in like ſorte, all men muſt be forbidden to come into the place, whilſt the quarters are markinge out, but only thoſe that are appointed for that worke; and to avoide confuſion, one certaine and common meaſure muſt alſo be obſerved throughoute the whole campe, to witt, a rodd, divided by feete and inches, which ſhall be called the campe meaſure.

All the under quarter-maſters of regiments muſt follow the quarter-maſter-generall, to the end, that aſſoone as the quarters are marked out, he may ſhew and deliver unto each one the ground that belongs unto him, who is to looke unto it, and to marke out the lodgings of the companies of his regiment, and the files of the cabbans, togeather with the ſtreetes of the regiment, for it is not poſſible for the quarter-maſter-generall to performe that worke alone ſoe ſpeedily, and in ſoe ſmale time as is requiſite.

These things beinge thus underſtood, we are to ſticke downe the foure beakons appointed, to note out the quarters of every regiment in the field, which quarters doe containe right angled ſquares, two hundred foote deepe, in which depth the ſouldiers are to build their lodgings; and this to be performed by the helpe of the ſurveyinge-croſſe, and after the manner of meaſuringe of land by the ordinary way of ſurveyours, which being ſufficiently known to every ingineur, it would be needleſſe here to give anie particular inſtruction thereof; onlie there may be this ſhort advertiſement added, (to witt,) that of the four ſides of the ſquares it is not neceſſarie to meaſure out above one or two, and that where the ſides of the camp doe beginne, for the other ſides are made more commodiouſly by the beacons, and helpe of the ſurveyinge-croſſe, as they knowe ſufficiently enough.

FURTHERMORE, it is to be noted, that every foure beacons belonginge to the regiments are marked with figures, graven in the ſtaves, as with the figure of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, &c. (to witt) the foure beacons of the firſt regiment, everie one with the figure 1; of the ſecond with the figure 2; and ſoe of the reſt in order, which is obſerved for the avoydinge of ſome difficulties, partly becauſe the quarter-maiſters themſelves, in reſpect of the great multitude of beacons, fall ſometimes in diſpute about their particular quarters, and partly becauſe the quarter-maſter-generall, (who hath a note of the ſame figures as they are noted upon the beacons), or anie others, beinge aſked concerninge anie of the quarters, may preſently ſhewe where they are, without goinge to the place.

THE quarter-maſter-generall haveinge accompliſhed his worke of meaſureinge and markeinge out the campe as before ſaid, then followes, preſently, every quarter-maſter's worke of meaſureinge and markeinge out the quarters, and particularities thereof of his own regiment, which he is to obſerve in manner followinge:

HEE is to keepe about him continually a ground platt of his regiment, accordinge to the forme already ſett downe, that hee may readily find out all the neceſſarie meaſures thereof, though his memory ſhould fail him; he muſt alſoe have a field meaſure of eight foote long, which, for his more ready uſe, ſhall be a long ſmale line, marked with ſome light colour'd tape, ſtuck into the line at every eight foote end: beinge thus provided in the place of his quarter, which lyes betweene the foure beacons, ſignifyinge the ſquare of the ſouldiers lodgings, hee divides, by the helpe of his line, the breadth or front of his quarter, from eight foote to eight foote, according as his ground ſhewes him, ſtickinge downe at every tape a bough or ſprigg of a tree, or ſome ſtick or pinne; the ſame diviſion he makes alſoe in the reere of the quarter, betweene the hindermoſt two beacons, alwaies to be remembered; the ſpace in the middle of the regiment without pinnes, and noted by ſome other remarkable diſtinction.

HAVINGE proceeded thus farre, reſts now the makinge of the partition of the ſouldiers cabbans by the ſerjeants, whilſt the quarter-

maſter make out the captaine's lodgings before the ſouldiers quarters, and the ſutlers cabbans alſo in the reere of the ſouldiers cabbans, which is before ſpecified ſufficiently in its particular figure.

The ſerjeants ought to know (in which the quarter-maſter is to give them his aſſiſtance,) how many cabbans are requiſite for the company, which, becauſe it is already ſett downe in its proper figure, we will not mention in this place; and this once known by him, hee muſt take care that the ſtreetes and rowes of cabbans be built by the ſouldiers preciſely upon their meaſures, and that the forme of the lodginge of the companie, as of the regiment, be ever a right angled ſquare; and that the ſtreetes betweene the rowes bee alike wide, and runne even.

The ſerjeants underſtandinge thus what they are to obſerve, the markinge out of the cabbans is to be performed after this manner followinge: every ſerjeant, that hath two rowes of cabbans, layes downe four lines, from the head of the ſouldiers cabbans to the reere, ſtretched out from the boughs or pinns ſtuck downe by the quarter-maiſter, betweene which lines the cabbans are to be built, as alſoe a ſtreete left in the middle, as the figure before in the particular companie doth demonſtrate; and for the ſettinge forth of every cabban hee ſticks downe foure ſmale pinnes, ſignifying the four corners thereof, which being performed the ſerjeant hath done his worke, ſoe that briefly to collect what hath beene ſett downe concerninge this buſineſs, every ſerjeant is to take care and overſee the ſouldiers of the companye that they build not out of the limits preſcribed them; every quarter-maſter is to ſee that the ſerjeants do their duty, every captaine that his company be well and regularly lodged, and every collonel that his regiment may be an example to the reſt, for by this meanes the encampinge will be diſpatched orderly in all her parts.

Out of this order obſerved in the lodginge the regiment of foote, already declared, may be eaſily underſtood the rules to be held in lodginge the cavallerie, the difference being little or nothinge but in the vedature, which is ſufficiently expreſſed in the figure where I handle the lodgeing of the horſe.

Touchinge the order to be held in makeinge out the quarters of the higher officers, the waggons and the market-place, the figure formerly declared may ſuffice; and ſeeing that for every one of them there is to be marked out but one figure of ſmale labour, their parts beinge already ſett downe, they may be diſpatched at the ſame inſtant that the ſouldiers lodgeings are, by ſome particular men appointed for the purpoſe, after the quarter-maſter-generall hath ſett out their places by the ſame rules, and therefore is not neceſſarie to ſpeak anie further of them.

The quarters of the lodgeings of the armie being thus performed and perfected, every regiment is to enter into the place of quarteringe in the ſame order they kept in marchinge.

The markinge out of the alarm place, with the tracinge of the trench, is performed by an ingenier and his conductors, beinge accompanied for that ſervice with fifty or ſixty pioners that digg, directed by a match or line laide ſtraite along upon the ground, ſmale gutters, makinge two right parallel lines ſix foote aſunder for the breadth of the ditch, whereof the innermoſt is two hundred and ſix foote, removed every way from the captaine's lodgings, ſo as two hundred reſts for the allarm place, and ſix foote for the thickneſs of the parapett or breaſt.

Here is to be noted, that though the ſoldiers of the campe were before commanded to goe each to their place of quarteringe, yet it is no ſpecial hinderance to this worke, becauſe it conſiſts of nothinge elſe but two right parallel lines, far enough off from the ſoldiers.

These lines being thus marked out by ſmall gutters, you muſt caſt up how many foot of entrenchment will fall to every regiment's ſhare, allottinge, by the rule of fellowſhip, every regiment his proportion, beginning at the firſt regiment, and ending with the laſt, which parts or ſhares muſt be likewiſe diſtinguiſhed by beacons, or ſome other apparent marke, ſoe as every one may knowe his parte; ſoe likewiſe are the colonells, either by whole regiments or by partes, accordinge to the order given, or as neceſſity ſhall require, to diſtribute

their portion among y^e^ companies equally ; and ſo likewiſe the captains their companies parts equally among the ſoldiers.

Thus have I ended the order and rules for incampinge: I will now proceede accordinge to my purpoſe to ſpeake of the guardes, and watches, and roundes to be held, both without and within the campe, and the diſcipline thereof."

By theſe regulations it appears that the captain, lieutenant, and enſign, pitched in the front of their company. Sir James Turner ſays, that Henry of Naſſau, Prince of Orange, altered the cuſtom, and ordered them all three to pitch their tents in the rear, or, at leaſt, the captain, for two reaſons ; firſt, that the ſoldiers might have an eaſy communication with the parade, or place of arms, unincumbered by the huts of their officers, or the cords of their tents ; and next, that the officers, being lodged in the rear near the ſutlers, might prevent all brawls and diſorders occaſioned by drunkenneſs, which commonly originates there.

Respecting huts, Lord Orrery obſerves, that " in antient times they uſed tents inſtead of hutts, for that the way of making war was in the field, and armies were daily in motion ; and in ſuch caſes ſtraw, ruſhes, or flages to cover, and wood to make ſtakes and roofs, were not always at hand, nor to forme the roofs eaſie ; but now, that for the moſt part war is made in the beſieging of ſtrong places, or in ſtanding camps, both officers and ſoldiers uſe hutts."

In the Abridgement of the Engliſh Military Diſcipline, publiſhed by authority, A.D. 1686, there are the following regulations reſpecting encamping :

The major-general for the day, having with him ſuch of the guards of horſe as ſhall be thought fit, and ordered by the general for the ſecurity of the camp, is to march before the army that he may have time to view the ground, and to ſettle the camp, not far from water, if it may be with convenience ; which being done, he is to order the quarter-maſter-general to ſet out the ground to the majors of the brigades, who thereupon ſet it out to the adjutants of each regiment, who divide it for each troop or company ; the major-general in the

mean while is to ride about the camp, to poſt the main guards as he finds beſt for the ſafety of the army, and is to order the quarter-maſter-general what ground or village he is to take up for the king's quarters; as alſo ſome commodious place for the park of artillery, and another for the bread carts, which is commonly near the centre of the army with the hoſpital.

When every thing has been done as abovementioned, and the camp all marked out, then the major-general is to ſend an aid-de-camp to give notice to the general that all is ready, and at the entring into the camp the major-general is to meet the general to give him a full account of every particular, the adjutants general of horſe and foot attending always on the general, that they may be ready to execute his orders, and make detachments without delay.

It is the uſual practice to encamp an army in two lines; the ſecond diſtinct from the firſt three hundred paces, that is, from the head of the firſt line to the head of the ſecond, whereof one hundred and twenty are for the encamping of the firſt line, ſo that there remains one hundred and eighty paces for the diſtance between the laſt tents of the firſt line, and the head of the ſecond; and if the army encamp with a reſerve, then the ſame diſtance is to be obſerved by them.

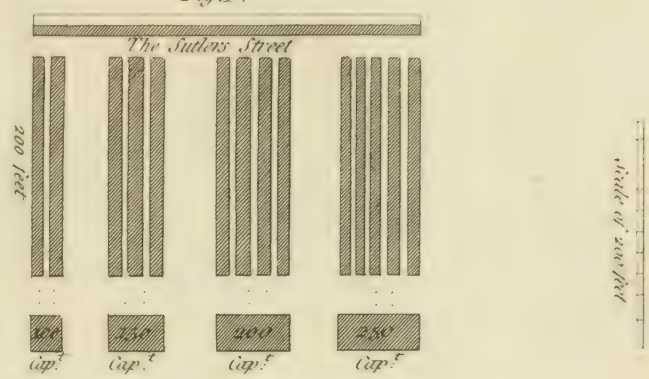
The horſe are to be poſted on the wings, and the foot in the middle, in ſuch a manner that the lines of the camp look towards the enemy, and be covered behind by a brook, or marſh, if it may be with convenience.

Every ſquadron conſiſting of three troops, and fifty men in each troop, muſt be allowed fifty paces; and every battalion conſiſting of ſixteen companies, and fifty men in each company, muſt have one hundred paces allowed for their encamping.

All troops, or companies of horſe or foot, conſiſting but of fifty men, are to be encamped on one rowe of baraques, or hutts; but when troops or companies conſiſt of more men, there muſt be two files of baraques or hutts.

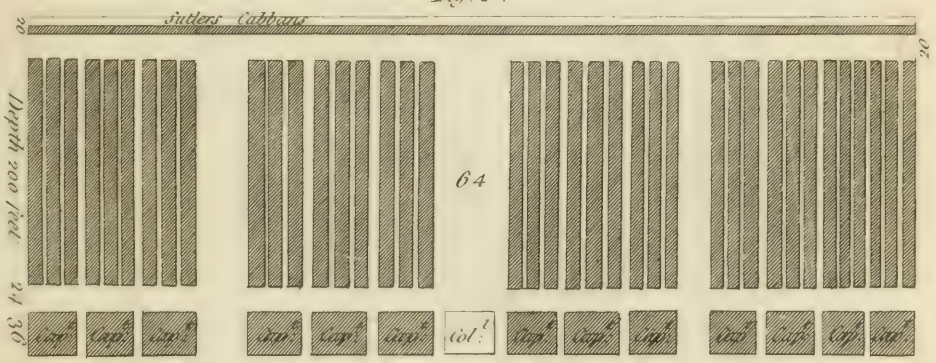
It is to be obſerved, that in each ſquadron or battalion the colonel's company be always upon the right or left, and there make their row

Fig. 1.

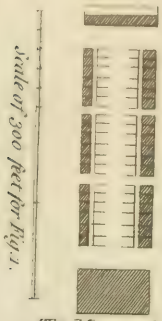


Encampment of 4 Companies of foot of different numbers viz: 100, 150, 200, & 250. Each row consists of 25 Cabbans. 2 Soldiers are lodged in every Cabban, the 4 dots shew the Guards in the front of each Company

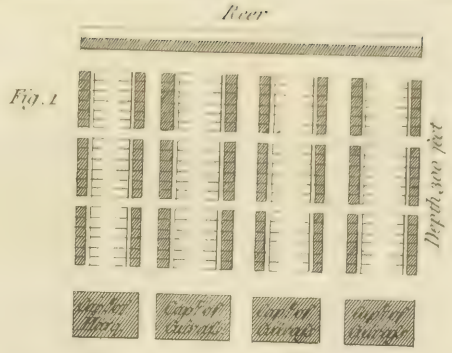
Fig. 2.



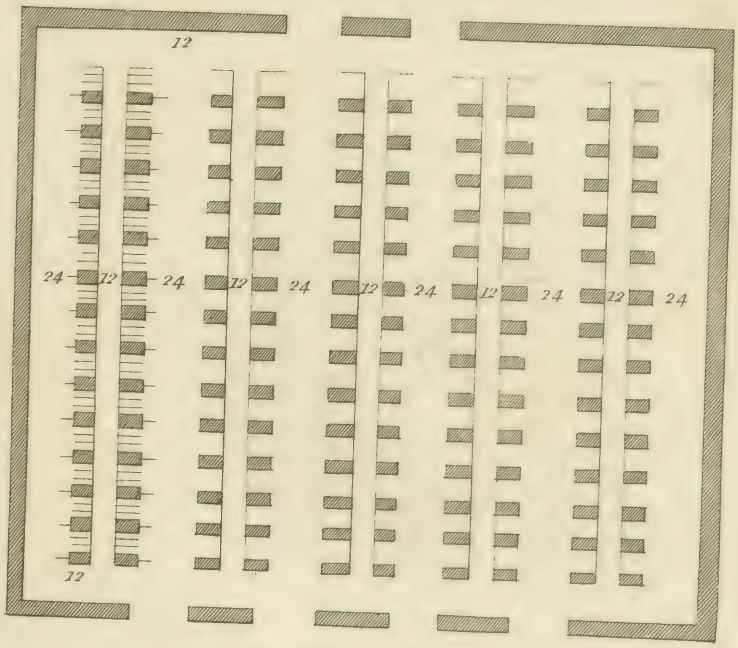
The Front of a Regiment of Foot of 13 Companies, each of 150 Men.



The Manner how a Company of Horse is Lodged.



The Manner of Lodging a Regiment in the field consisting of 3 Companies of Cuiraſsiers and one of Harquebusiers.

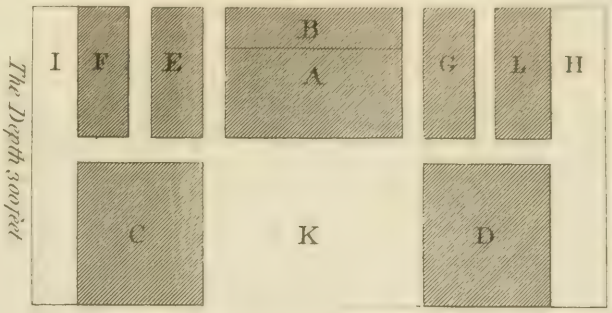


The Front 348 feet

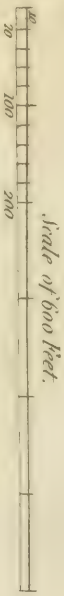
The forme of the Quarter of the Waggons.

Form of the Quarter of the General of the Artillery.

Fig. 1.

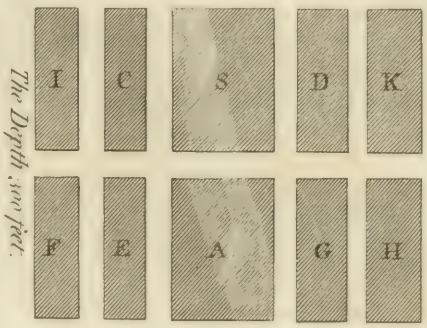


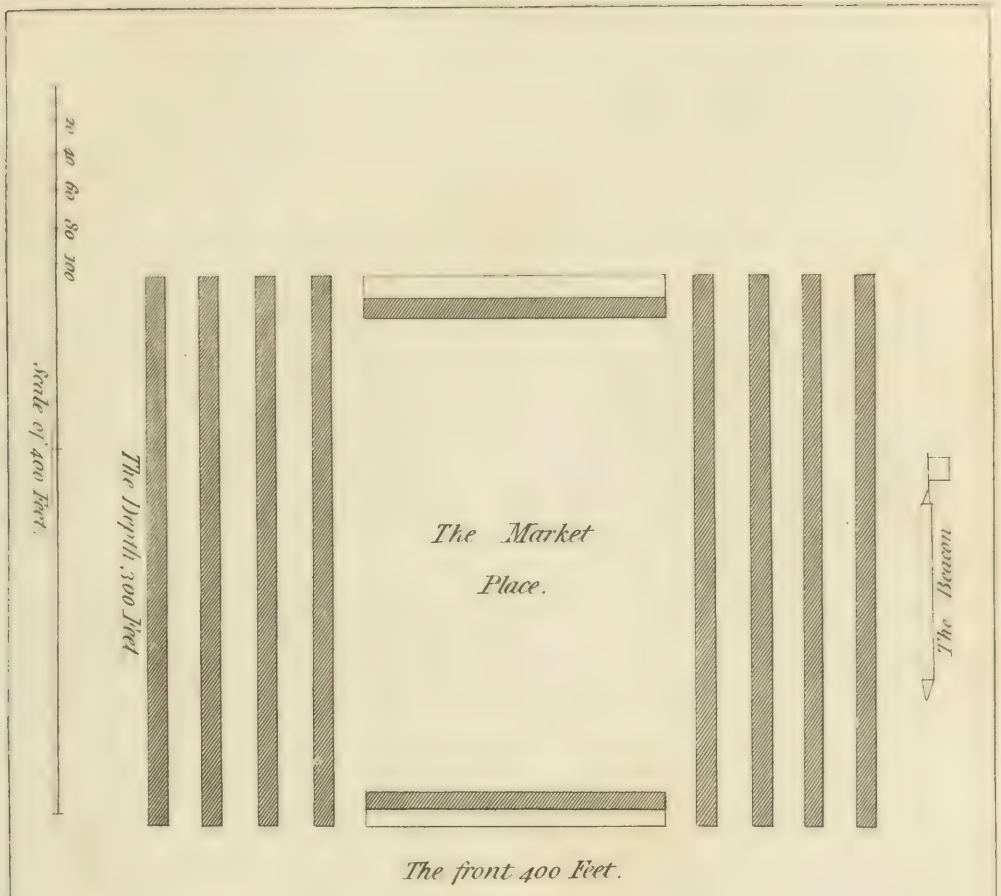
The whole front or breast 480 Feet



The Form of Lodging of those General Officers that are Quartered together in the Camp.

Fig. 2.





CASTRAMETATION Pl: 4.

of hutts ; behind them muſt be left the ſpace for the ſtreet ; then the ſecond company make their row of hutts, near to which the third makes theirs, leaving the ſpace of two foot only between their hutts, which is called the by-ſtreet ; and the ſame thing is to be obſerved by the horſe.

The hutts of the foot always open toward the ſtreet ; the baraques of the cavalry always toward the horſes heads.

The hutts of the quarter-maſter and ſerjeants are always to be at the head of the troopers and ſoldiers, and the officers tents behind.

The camp of the firſt brigade of the army is on the right hand of the firſt line ; that of the ſecond on the left ; the third is poſted on the right of the ſecond line ; the fourth on the left, and the reſt in the centre according to their ſeniority : this is to be obſerved among the horſe as well as foot.

The dragoons are never to be encamped in the body of the army, but have their camp at the head, or on the wings on that ſide where the greateſt danger is, ſerving always as an out-guard for the army.

Every regiment is to have a guard at the head of their camp, and the major-general for the day takes care to place the great guard in a proper place and diſtance from the army towards the enemy, chooſing for that effect a place where all the avenues may be diſcovered ; there it is to continue during the day, and at night is to draw off near the army at the head of the foot.

The colonel or officer of the horſe who mounts the guard, is to ſend off an out-guard, or advance-guard, conſiſting of twenty-four troopers, commanded by a lieutenant, whom he poſts where he ſees moſt convenient, in a place from whence the country about may be eaſily diſcovered.

The duty of him who commands the guard, is to let no perſon whatſoever paſs without an order, to look every where about, and to ſend notice to the general whenever he diſcovers any troop or forces.

It is to be obſerved, that the meaſure of the ground before-mentioned is meant only for the encampment of an army, for if it were to be ranged in battel in caſe of ſervice, the diſtances between the battalions and ſquadrons are to be greater than in a camp ; it

muſt be endeavoured, as much as may be, that the ſecond line be equal to the firſt, keeping the ſame diſtance upon the right and left.

THE following are the general rules and proportions for encamping of an army, with the particulars for the encamping of a regiment of horſe, and a battalion of foot, as laid down in Bland's Military Diſcipline, and which are much the ſame as now in uſe, allowing for the difference of the eſtabliſhment of regiments, excepting that the quarter and rear guards inſtead of facing to the regiment, now front outwards.

ARTICLE I.

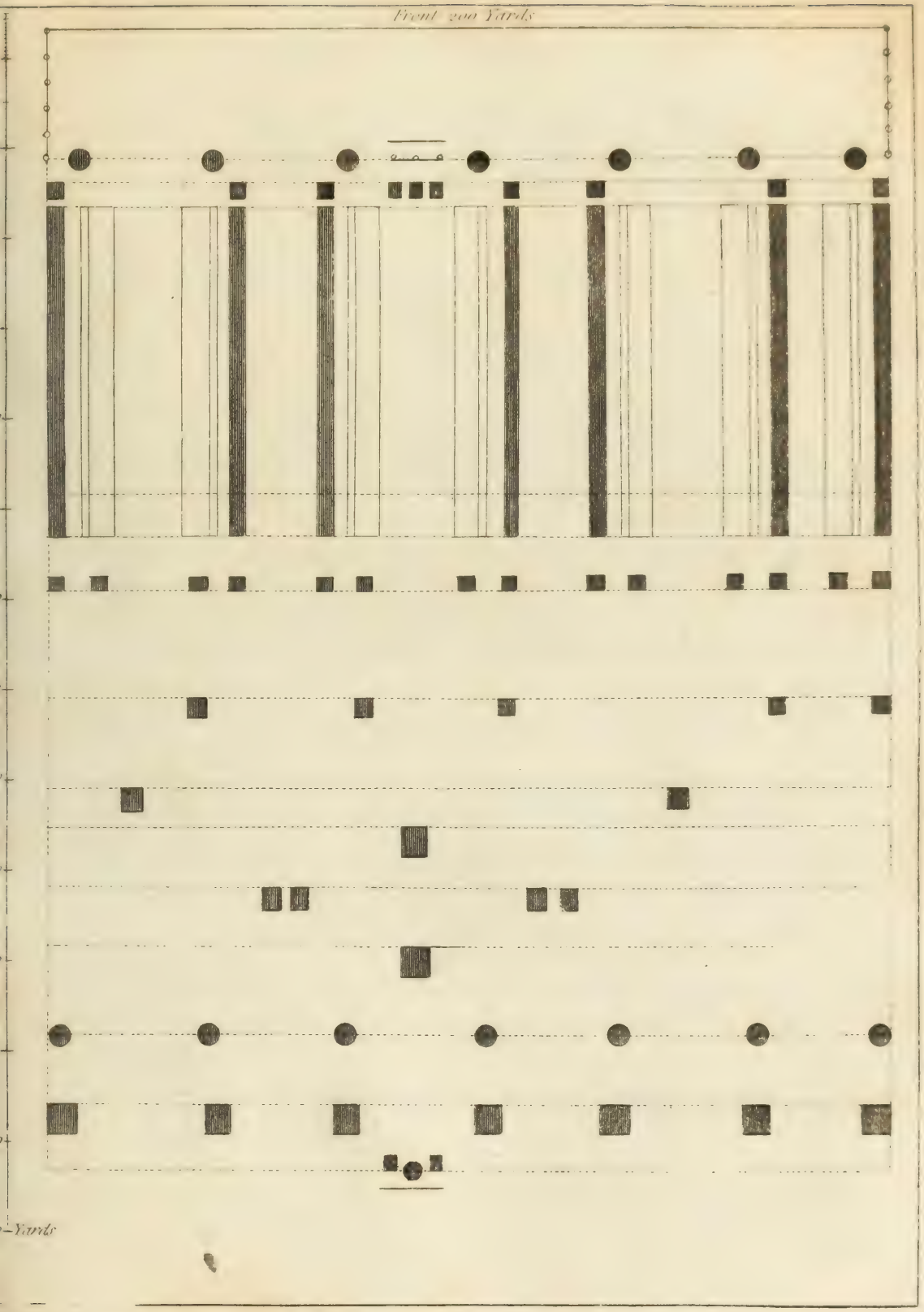
Proportions to be obſerved in Encamping a Regiment of Dragoons of Six Troops, forming Three Squadrons, with a light Troop.

Front two hundred yards divided as follows:

	YARDS.
FOR pitching ſix rows of tents, with the intervals between the tents and the pickets, length for the ſtanding of the horſes, and ſpace for laying up the dung at fourteen yards each -	84
For the breadth of three ſtreets, between the horſes of each ſquadron, at ſeventeen yards each - - - - -	51
For the breadth of two back ſtreets, at twenty yards each -	40
For the breadth of one ſtreet between the firſt ſquadron and the light troop - - - - - - -	9
For pitching the tents, &c. of the light troop as above -	16
Total front	200

The fourteen yards allowed for the front of each troop, is divided as follows:

	YARDS.
For pitching a horſeman's tent - -	3
From front pole of the tents to the pickets -	3
From the pickets to the edge of the dung -	6
Breadth of the dung - - -	2
	14



PLAN of the Encampment of a Regiment of Dragoons consisting of 6 Troops formed 3 Squadrons with the light Troop on the right.

Pl.

N. B. The ſixteen yards allowed for the front of the light troop, are divided in the ſame manner, the two additional yards being allowed for pitching their tents, which are larger than thoſe of the other troops.

	YARDS.
The interval between two regiments of dragoons, is - -	60
Total front and interval	260

Depth 258 yards divided as follows:

From the firſt line of parade to the bells of arms - -	30
From the bells of arms to the front poles of the quarter-maſters tents - - - - - - - -	5
From the front poles of the quarter-maſters tents to the firſt picket - - - - - - - -	5
Allowed for the ſtanding of ſixty-ſix horſes - -	66
For the ſtanding of the ſubalterns horſes, which are in a line with the troop - - - - - -	10
From the rear of the ſubalterns horſes to the front of the ſubalterns tents - - - - - -	12
From the front of the ſubalterns tent to the front of the captains	24
From the front of the captains to the front of the field-officers	20
From the front of the field-officers to the front of the colonels	8
From the front of the colonels to the front of the ſtaff-officers	14
From the front of the ſtaff-officers to the front of the grand futler - - - - - - - -	14
From the front of the grand futler to the centre of the kitchens	20
From the centre of the kitchens to the front of the petty futlers - - - - - - - -	15
From the front of the petty futlers to the centre of the bell of arms of the rear guard - - - - -	15
Total depth	258

The parade of the ſtanding-guard is four yards advanced before the centre of the bell of arms.

The bells of arms are in a line with the pickets.

The ſtandard-guard tents are pitched in the centre of the third ſquadron, in a line with the fronts of the quarter-maſters tents, and are three yards diſtant from centre to centre.

Eleven tents are pitched for the men of each troop; the centre of the firſt and laſt are three yards diſtant from the ends of the pickets; the others are ſix yards diſtant from centre to centre.

Seven tents are pitched for the light troop; the centre of the firſt and laſt are fourteen feet, one inch and a half, from the ends of the pickets; the others are twenty-eight feet three inches from centre to centre.

The dung of each troop is laid up behind the horſes.

The ſixty-ſix yards are divided into four ſpaces of fifteen yards each, with three intervals of two yards.

The dung of the ſubalterns horſes is laid up in the ſpace of eight yards, leaving an interval of two yards between it and that of the troop.

The ſubalterns ſervants from their horſes.

The lieutenants-colonels tents front the centre of the firſt ſquadron.

The major's tent fronts the centre of the ſecond.

The colonel's tent fronts the ſtandards.

The ſtaff-officers front the two back ſtreets on the right and left of the centre, or third ſquadron.

All the officers, the ſubalterns excepted, have their horſes in the rear of their tents.

The grand ſutler is placed in the rear of the colonel.

The centres of the kitchens are in the lines of the pickets produced; the inner diameter is ſixteen feet; the breadth of the trench ſurrounding them is three feet, the ſeat is one foot and a half, and the breadth of the outſide wall two feet, which makes the outer diameter twenty-nine feet.

The front poles of the petty ſutlers tents or huts are in a line with

the centres of the kitchens, allowing to each petty ſutler ſix yards in front and eight in depth, to be encloſed by a trench one foot in breadth, and the earth thrown inward.

The front poles of the rear guard tents, are in a line with the centre of their bell of arms, and diſtant from each other ſix yards.

The rear guard fronts outwards.

The parade of the rear guard is four yards diſtant from their bell of arms.

As it is uſual for the ſubalterns of horſe to have a tent each, I have therefore placed two in the rear of each troop; and though by the former method of encamping they were generally pitched in a line with the troopers tents, and faced towards the ſtreets as they did, yet, in this plan, I have placed them according to the manner of the foote, by facing them towards the captains tents, with a ſtreet of twenty-four paces between them.

The dimenſions of the captains and ſubalterns tents are as follows:

	FEET.	INCH.
Length of the ridge pole - - - -	7	8
Height of the ſtandard-poles - - -	8	
Length from foot to rear between the half walls of the marquiſe - - - - -	14	
Breadth of marquiſe between the half walls -	10	6
Height of the half walls of a marquiſe - -	4	

The lieutenant-colonels and majors tents about a foot larger.

The ornaments of all officers tents to be uniform, and anſwerable to the facings of the regiment they belong to.

The ſize of the troop tents is ſufficient for thoſe of the quarter-maſters, only that they are allowed to have them a little higher, with a ſmall marquiſe to throw off the rain.

The dimenſions here given for the officers tents may be thought, by ſome, too ſmall; and if they were to encamp in Hyde-Park, I ſhould be of the ſame opinion; but let thoſe gentlemen who think ſo

only make one real campaign, and I am convinced that they will wiſh them rather of a leſs than a greater.

The circles which are drawn in the plan between the grand and petty ſutlers, are marked for the kitchens, or places where the private men are to dreſs their victuals; they are made in the following manner:

Firſt, you draw a circle or a ſquare on the ground of the dimenſion above limited; after that you dig a trench or ditch round it, of three feet broad and two deep, by which it will reſemble the bottom of a cockpit; when this is done, you are then to cut holes or niches in the ſide of the circle or ſquare of earth which is left ſtanding within the ditch: the holes may be about a foot ſquare, the upper part of which ſhould be within three or four inches of the ſurface, from whence they are to cut ſmall holes of four inches diameter down to the great ones, in which the fire is to be made, and the heat conveyed through thoſe ſmall holes to the bottom of the kettles, which are placed on the top of them; theſe fire-places may be made within three or four feet of one another, quite round the ſaid circle or ſquare; and if you erect one of theſe kitchens (by which I mean an entire circle or ſquare), for each troop or company, they need not be larger than what will contain as many fire-places as what you have tents pitched for your troop or company; for as all the men who lie in a tent are of one meſs, every meſs muſt therefore have a fire-place, that they may have no excuſe for not boiling the pot every day.

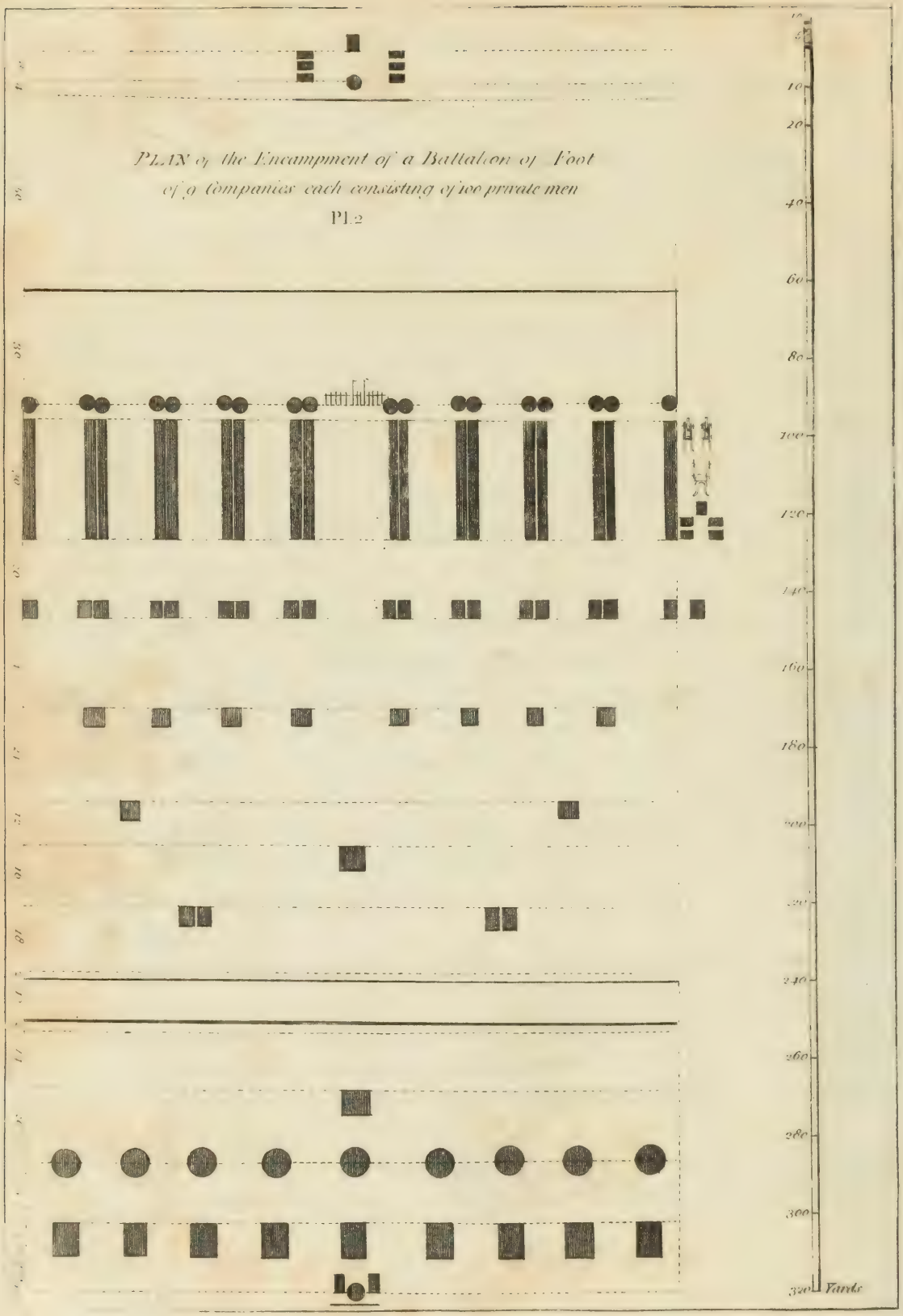
There are ſeveral advantages by making of the kitchen as here directed.

First, a very little fuel will ſerve to dreſs their victuals, for as the fire-places are open at the ſides like the mouth of an oven, the air which enters there forces all the heat up the ſmall hole to the bottom of the kettle, and conſequently boils it very ſoon; and as the kettle covers the ſaid hole, the rain cannot come to extinguiſh it, or create men any trouble in keeping of it in.

Secondly, they are not in great danger of accidents by the fires being blown amongſt the tents or forage; for if the men only lay a

PLAN of the Encampment of a Battalion of Foot
of 9 Companies each consisting of 100 private men

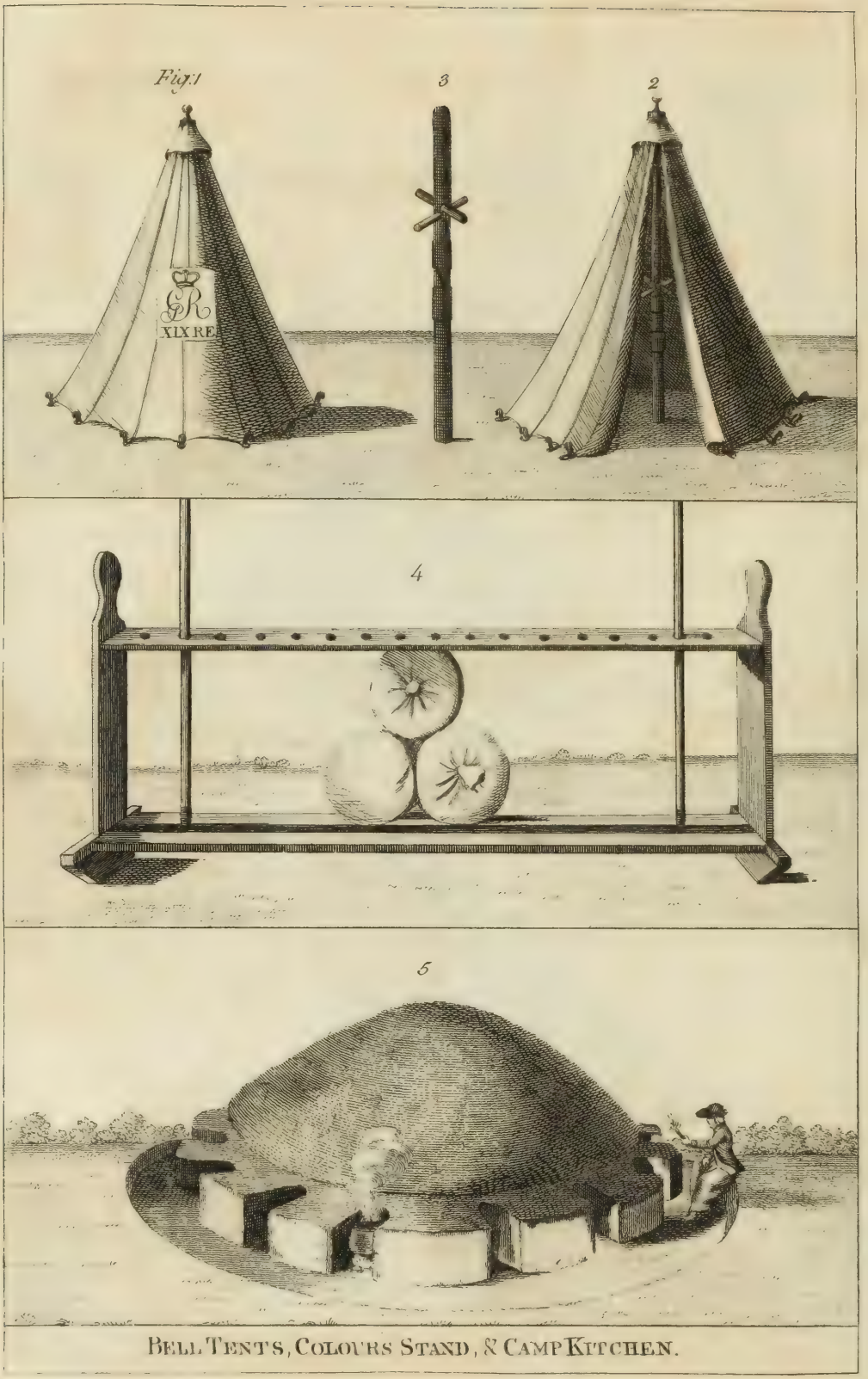
Pl. 2



MODERN TENTS. Pl 1.

N.C. Goodnight, scult.

MODERN TENTS. Pl 2.



BELL TENTS, COLOURS STAND, & CAMP KITCHEN.

ſod or turf on the top of the hole when they take off the kettle, it cannot be diſperſed by the wind; which, without this conſideration they ought to do, in order to keep the fire-places dry.

THIRDLY, the cutting of a ditch round the kitchens does not only enable them to make the fire-places, but likewiſe prevents the fire from catching hold of the ſtubble or graſs, which in very dry or hot weather it is apt to do, and endanger the burning of your camp, which I have often ſeen for the want of this precaution. Beſides, the oppoſite bank of the ditch ſerves as a ſeat for the men who are employed in dreſſing the victuals.

FOURTHLY and laſtly, by having of kitchens made in this manner, the officers can with a great deal of eaſe look into the conduct and œconomy of their men, and oblige the ſeveral meſſes to boil the pot every day for the reaſons already mentioned.

I SHALL, in the following article, proceed to the particulars for the encamping of a battalion of foot of nine companies of ſeventy-three men each rank and file, with a plan of the ſame.

ARTICLE II.

	YARDS.
For pitching three double rows of tents, at ſix yards each -	18
For pitching three ſingle rows, at three yards each - -	9
For the breadth of the grand ſtreet - - - -	25
For the breadth of four leſſer ſtreets, at ſeventeen yards each	68
Total front	120
From the ſide of the ſerjeant's tent, to the centre of the firſt gun - - - - - 4 YARDS.	
From the centre of the firſt gun, to the centre of the ſecond - - - - - - 6	
From the centre of the ſecond gun, to the left of the next regiment - - - - - 20	
Total interval —	30
Total front interval	150

Depth 320 yards divided as follows:

	YARDS.
From the front pole of officers tent of quarter-guard to the centre of the bell of arms of ditto - - -	8
From the centre of the bell of arms to the parade of the quarter-guard - - - - - -	4
From the parade of the quarter-guard to the firſt line of the parade of the battalion - - - - -	50
From the firſt line of the parade to the centre of the bells of arms - - - - - - -	30
From the centre of the bells of arms to the front of ſerjeants tents	4
For pitching fifteen tents with their intervals, at three yards each - - - - - - -	45
From the rear of the battalion tents to the front of the ſubalterns - - - - - - -	32
From the front of the ſubalterns to the front of the captain's	21
From the front of the captain's to the front of the lieutenant-colonel's and major's - - - - -	16
From the front of the lieutenant-colonel's and major's to the front of the colonel's - - - - -	5
From the front of the colonel's to the front of the ſtaff-officers	11
From the front of the ſtaff-officers to the front of the firſt row of batmen's tents - - - - - -	14
From the firſt row of batmen's tents to the firſt row of pickets	2
From the firſt row of pickets to the ſecond - - -	12
From the ſecond row of pickets to the ſecond row of batmen's tents - - - - - - -	2
From the ſecond row of batmen's tents to the front of the grand ſutler - - - - - -	14
From the front of the grand ſutler to the centre of the kitchens	20
From the centre of the kitchens to the front of ordinary ſutlers	15
From the front of ordinary ſutlers to the centre of the bell of arms of the rear-guard - - - - -	15
Total depth	320

The muzzles of the battalion-guns are in a line with the front of the ſerjeants tents.

The rearmoſt of the gunners tents are in a line with the rear of the battalion tents.

The ſubaltern of the artillery is in a line with the ſubalterns of the battalion.

The front poles of the quarter-guard tents are in a line with the front poles of the centre companies, and in a line with the centre of their bell of arms.

The bells of arms front the poles of the ſerjeants tents.

The colours and drums are to be placed at the head of the grand or centre ſtreet of the battalion, and in a line with the bells of arms.

The two companies on the right, and the company on the left, form the three ſingle rows; the other companies form the double rows.

The lieutenant-colonel's and major's tents front the centre of the ſtreets on the right and left of the battalion.

The colonel's tent is in the line of the grand ſtreet facing the colours.

The ſtaff-officers front the centres of the ſtreets on the right and left of the grand ſtreet.

The batmen's tents front towards their horſes.

The grand ſutler is in the rear of the colonel.

The inner diameter of the kitchen is ſixteen feet, ſurrounded with a trench three feet broad, and the earth thrown inwards; the two kitchens on the flanks touch the outſide line of the encampment; the centre kitchen is in the centre of the encampment, and diſtant ſixteen yards and a half from thoſe on the right and left of it; the other kitchens are thirteen yards from centre to centre.

The front poles of the ordinary ſutlers tents or huts are in a line with the centres of the kitchens, allowing to each ordinary ſutler ſix yards in front, and eight in depth, encloſed with a trench one foot broad, and the earth thrown inwards.

The rear guard fronts outwards.

The front poles are in a line with the centre of their bell of arms, and diſtant from each other ſix yards.

The parade of the rear guard is four yards from the bell of arms.

The houſes of office for the front line muſt be advanced beyond the quarter guard at leaſt fifty yards, and thoſe for the rear line about the ſame diſtance in the rear of the petty ſutlers and butchers.

This plan being only calculated for the encampment of a battalion, whoſe companies are compoſed of no more than ſeventy-three rank and file, according to their former ſtrength in time of peace, I ſhall add another, to ſhew the method of encampment made uſe of during the preſent war, while they remain augmented to a hundred each; and as the difference between them conſiſts only in the quantity and diviſion of the ground, it will be ſeen very plainly in the ſaid plans, without any repetition of the preceding explanation, which in all other reſpects will anſwer for both *.

---

* The following orders relative to encampments were iſſued, in 1799, from the adjutant-general's office, by command of His Royal Highneſs the Duke of York, commander in chief of the army.

On the arrival of a brigade, or a battalion, on the ground deſtined for its camp, the quarter and rear guards of the reſpective regiments will immediately mount, and when circumſtances require them, the advanced pickets will be poſted. The grand guards of cavalry will be formed, and the horſes picketted. The mens' tents will then be pitched; and till this duty is completed, the officers are on no account to quit their troops or companies, or to employ any ſoldier for their own accommodation.

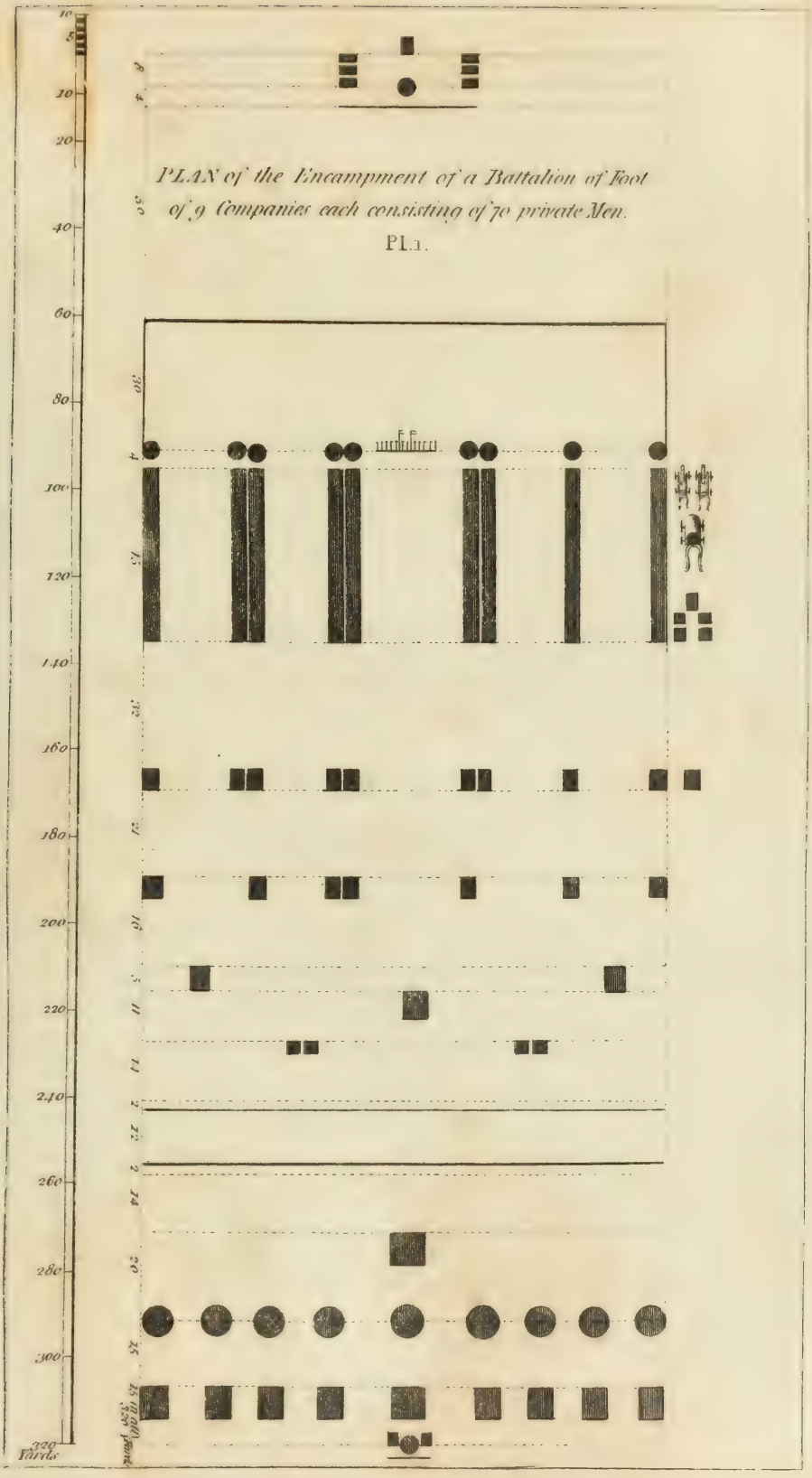
Whenever a regiment remains more than one night in a camp, regular kitchens are to be conſtructed.

No tents or huts are to be allowed in front of, or between the intervals of the battalions. A ſpot of ground for this purpoſe ſhall be marked by the quarter-maſter, with the approbation of the commanding officer.

On arriving in a camp, which is interſected by hedges, ditches, unequal or boggy ground, regiments will immediately make openings of communication, of ſixty feet in width.

The ground in front of the encampment is to be cleared, and every obſtacle to the movement of the artillery and troops is to be removed.

Commanding officers of regiments muſt take care that their communication with the neareſt grand route is open, and free from any impediments.


PLAN of the Encampment of a Battalion of Foot
of 9 Companies each consisting of 70 private Men.
Pl. 1.
Yards

CHAPTER IV.

Of Military Muſick.

MILITARY muſick, before the introduction of fire arms, ſerved to animate the ſoldiers in battles and aſſaults of places, as well as for the purpoſe of ſignals for the different manœuvres and duties in camp and garriſon; wherefore it cannot be doubted but it was uſed in our antient armies.

IN an old manuſcript chronicle (l) is a ballad made on the victory of King Edward III. over the Scots at Hallidowne Hille, in which there are theſe lines:

> This was do with merry ſowne,
> With pipes trumpes and tabers thereto,
> And loud clarionès thei blew alſo.

AND in the proſe account of the ſame battle in the ſame MS., "then the Engliſche mynſtrelles beaten their tabers and blewen their trompes, and pipers pipedene loude and made a great ſchowte upon the Skottes." Notwithſtanding this, neither drummers, trumpetters, nor any other minſtrells occur in the wardrobe accounts of either Edward I. II. or III. Poſſibly they were part of the royal houſehold, paid under ſome other department.

THE common military inſtruments of muſick were the trumpet, drum, fife, and horns of different kinds.

THE trumpet is of the moſt remote antiquity, and frequently occurs

(l) IN Bib. Harl. No. 4690.

in the ſcriptures, as being uſed by the Iſraelites. The Romans had both the ſtraight and crooked trumpet; and trumpets of both kinds have been found in different parts of England, generally ſuppoſed to have been Daniſh.

THE drum was probably introduced into Europe from the Eaſt by the Cruſaders (m); a kind of kettle drum, called the naccaire, is mentioned by Joinville in the Life of St. Louis, as being uſed by the Saracens.

THE fife is ſaid to have been introduced by the Switzers; Albert Durer, in one of his engravings of the ſoldiers of that nation, has repreſented a fifer.

THE ſide drum, ſo called from being borne on the ſide of the perſon who beats it, is too well known to require a deſcription. It was antiently called the tabour, of which there is an inſtance in Froiſſart, cap. 147, where it is ſaid, that King Edward III. was attended by a great number of trumpets and drums when he made his entry into Calais, after having taken it by a long ſiege (n). From an antient manuſcript it appears, that during the reign of King Edward IV. a royal order was iſſued for impreſſing trumpetters. Among the houſehold expences of King Henry VII., in the 19th year of his reign (o), there is the following entry: "Item, to on that played upon the droome, 6s. 8d."

IN a diary of the ſiege of Boulogne, A.D. 1544, by King Henry

---

(m) THE timbrel, ſo frequently mentioned in the ſcriptures, is ſuppoſed to have been a kind of drum: drums were alſo uſed by the Indians, as is teſtified by Curtius, Lib. 8. "Indi tympana ſuo more pulſantes." And Suidas ſays: "Tubis non utuntur, ſed pro iis ſunt flagella quæ excutiunt in aerem, et tympana item horribilem quendam bombum emittentia." Iſodorus deſcribes another ſort of drum under the name of Symphonia: "Symphonia vulgo appellatur lignum cavum, ex utraque parte pelle extenſa, quam virgulis hinc et inde muſici feriunt."

(n) QUAND ce fut fait le roi monta a cheval et fit monter la royne, les barons et chevaliers, ſi chevancherent devers Calais, et entrerent dedans la ville a foiſon de trompettes, tabours, nacaires et buccines.

(o) PRESERVED in the Remembrancer's Office, Exchequer.

INSTRUMENTS OF MILITARY MUSICK

VIII. printed in Rymer, there is mention made of the drummers and viffleurs marching at the head of the king's army; and in the houſe-hold account of the 34th of that king by Brian Tuke, drumſlades and fifers are charged.

In the liſt of the army employed at St. Quintin's, trumpets and drums were appointed to the different corps, in the proportion of one trumpet to each troop of an hundred men, both heavy armed and light horſe; and a drum and a fife to each company of foot conſiſting of an hundred men. Beſides theſe trumpets, a drum and a fife made part of the ſuit or retinue of the great officers.

The captain general had two trumpets, one drum, and one fife; the lieutenant general one trumpet; the high mareſchal one trumpet, one drum, and one fife; the captain general of the infantry ſix wyfflers, one drum, and one fife; and the maſter of the ordnance one drum, and one fife: from the appointment of wyfflers as diſtinct from the fife, it ſeems as if there was ſome difference between thoſe inſtruments, which are generally conceived to be one and the ſame.

In the ſucceeding reign drums and fifes ſeem to have been part of the military eſtabliſhment. The ear-piercing fife, and ſpirit-ſtirring drum, are mentioned by Shakſpeare among the circumſtances of war. And in Ralph Smith's Military Collection the qualifications and duties of drummers and fifers are thus laid down: "All captains muſt have dromes and phiphes and men to uſe the ſame, who ſhould be faith-full, ſecret, yngenious, of able perſonage to uſe their inſtruments and office, of ſundrie language, for often tymes they are ſent to parlie with their enemies, to ſummon their forts and towns, to red-deme and conducte priſoners, and diverſe other meſſages, which of neceſſitie require languages; if ſuch dromes or phiphers ſhould fortune to fall into the hands of their enemies, no gifte or force ſhould cauſe them to diſcloſe any ſecrete that they know; they muſt often prac-tiſe their inſtruments, teache the company their ſound of the march, allarme, approche, aſſalte, battell, retreat, ſkirmiſh, or any other calling that of neceſſity ſhould be known."

The fife was for a long time laid aſide, and was not reſtored till

about the year 1745, when the Duke of Cumberland introduced it into the guards; it was not, however, adopted in the marching regiments till the year 1747: the firſt regiment that had it was the 19th, then called Green Howards, in which I had the honor to ſerve, and well remember a Hanoverian youth, an excellent fifer, being given by his colonel to Lieutenant Colonel Williams, then commanding that regiment at Bois le Duc in Dutch Flanders. Fifes afterwards, particularly ſince the practice of marching in cadence, have been much multiplied, for though only two fifers were allowed on the muſter-rolls of each regiment, and thoſe to the grenadier company, yet in moſt corps the drummers of the battalion companies were taught to blow the fife as well as to beat the drum.

Sir John Hawkins in his Hiſtory of Muſick has preſerved ſome curious anecdotes reſpecting the old Engliſh march, which I have here tranſcribed: it ſeems (ſays he) that the old Engliſh march of the foot was formerly in high eſtimation, as well abroad as with us; its characteriſtic is dignity and gravity, in which reſpect it differs greatly from the French, which, as it is given by Merſennus, is briſk and alert. Sir Roger Williams, a gallant low country ſoldier of Queen Elizabeth's time, and who has therefore a place among the worthies of Lloyd and Winſtanley, had once a converſation on this ſubject with Marſhal Biron, a French general; the marſhal obſerved that the Engliſh march, being beaten by the drum, was ſlow, heavy, and ſluggiſh. "That may be true," anſwered Sir Roger, "but ſlow as it is, it has traverſed your maſter's country from one end to the other." This bon mot is recorded in one of thoſe little entertaining books written by Crouch, the bookſeller, in the Poultry, and publiſhed about the end of the laſt century, under the fictitious name of Robert Burton; the book here referred to is entitled, Admirable Curioſities, Rarities, and Wonders in England, Scotland, and Ireland; the ſtory is to be met with in page 5 of it, but where elſe is not ſaid. Notwithſtanding the many late alterations in the diſcipline and exerciſe of our troops, and the introduction of fifes and other inſtruments in our martial muſick, it is ſaid that the old Engliſh march is ſtill in uſe with

the foot. Mr. Walpole has been very happy in diſcovering a manuſcript in parchment, purporting to be a warrant of Charles I., directing the revival of the march, agreeably to the form thereto ſubjoined in muſical notes, ſigned by his majeſty, and counterſigned by the Earl of Arundel and Surrey, the then earl marſhal; this curious manuſcript was found by the preſent Earl of Huntingdon in an old cheſt, and as the parchment has at one corner the arms of his lordſhip's predeceſſor, then living, Mr Walpole thinks it probable that the order was ſent to all lords lieutenants of counties.

The following is a copy of the warrant, and of the muſical notes of the march, taken from the catalogue of royal and noble authors, vol. 1. page 201.

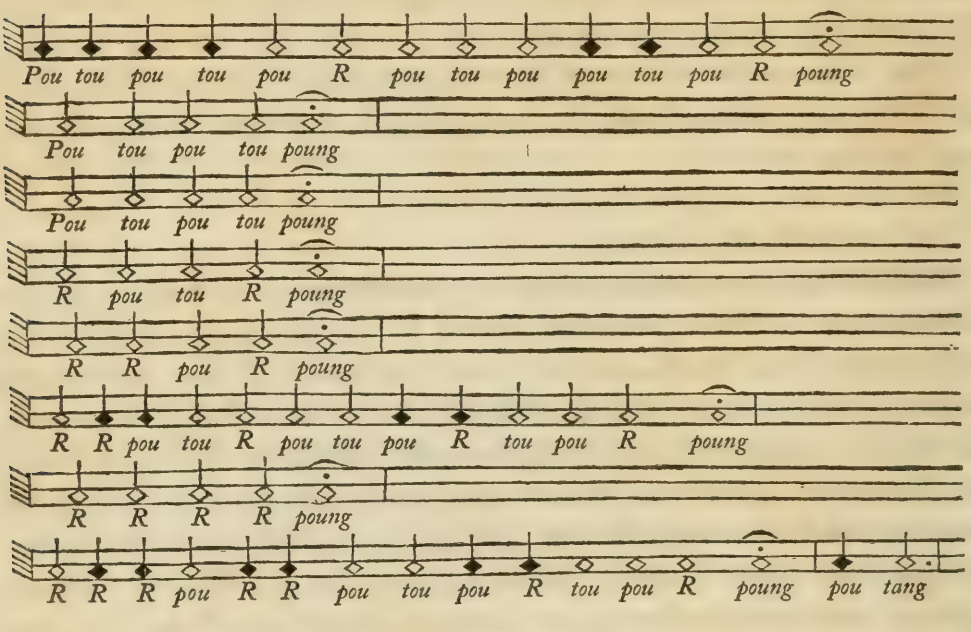
CHARLES REX.

WHEREAS the antient cuſtom of nations hath ever bene to uſe one certaine and conſtant forme of march in the warres, whereby to be diſtinguiſhed one from another. And the march of this our Engliſh nation, ſo famous in all honourable atchievements and glorious warres of this our kingdome, in forraigne parts (being by the approbation of ſtrangers themſelves, confeſt and acknowledged the beſt of all marches) was, through the negligence and careleſſneſſe of drummers, and by long diſcontinuance, ſo altered and changed from the antient gravitie and majeſtie thereof, as it was in danger utterly to have been loſt and forgotten.

It pleaſed our late deare brother Prince Henry to revive and rectifie the ſame by ordayning an eſtabliſhment of an certaine meaſure, which was beaten in his preſence at Greenwich, anno 1610. In confirmation whereof we are graciouſly pleaſed, at the inſtance and humble ſute of our right truſty and right well beloved couſin and counſellor Edward Viſcount Wimbleton, to ſet down and ordaine the preſent eſtabliſhment hereunder expreſſed, willing and commanding all drummers within our kingdom of England and principalitie of Wales, exactly and preciſely to obſerve the ſame, as well in this our kingdom as abroad in the ſervice of any forraigne prince or ſtate,

without any addition or alteration whatſoever. To the end that ſo antient, famous, and commendable a cuſtome may be preſerved as a patterne and precedent to all poſteritie. Given at our pallace of Weſtminſter, the ſeventh day of February, in the 7th yeare of our raigne of England, Scotland, France and Ireland.

VOLUNTARY before the MARCH.


Pou tou pou tou pou R pou tou pou pou tou pou R poung
Pou tou pou tou poung
Pou tou pou tou poung
R pou tou R poung
R R pou R poung
R R pou tou R pou tou pou R tou pou R poung
R R R R poung
R R R pou R R pou tou pou R tou pou R poung pou tang

Subſcribed Arundel and Surrey.

This is a true copie of the original ſigned by his majeſtie,

E. D. NORGATE, Windſor.

THE kettle-drums and trumpets of the horſe are adorned with banners; reſpecting theſe and the trumpets, his majeſty has made the following regulations:

Banners of the Regiment of Horſe.

THE banners of the kettle-drums and trumpets to be of the colour of the facing of the regiment; the badge of the regiment or its rank

to be in the centre of the banner of the kettle-drums, as on the ſecond ſtandard; the king's cypher and crown to be on the banner of the trumpets, with the rank of the regiment in cyphers underneath; the depth of the kettle-drum banners to be 3 feet 6 inches; the length 4 feet 8 inches, excluſive of the fringe; thoſe of the trumpets to be 12 inches in depth, and 18 inches in length.

THE trumpets to be of braſs; the cords to be crimſon, mixed with the colour of the facing of the regiment; the king's own regiment of dragoons, and the royal Iriſh, are permitted to continue their kettle-drums, and to which they are to have banners of the ſame dimenſions as thoſe which are ordered for the regiments of horſe.

THE chief beats of the drum formerly uſed by the infantry were a CALL, a TROOP, a PREPARATIVE, a MARCH, a BATTAILE, a RETREAT; theſe by Bariffe are thus explained (p): "By a call, you muſt underſtand to prepare to heare preſent proclamation, or elſe to repaire to your enſigne: by a troop, underſtand to ſhoulder your muſkets, to advance your pikes, to cloſe your ranks and files to their order, and to troop along with, or follow your officer to the place of rendezvous, or elſewhere: by a march, you are to underſtand to take your open order in rank, to ſhoulder both muſkets and pikes, and to direct your march, either quicker or ſlower, according to the beat of the drum: by a preparative, you are to underſtand to cloſe to your due diſtance for ſkirmiſh, both in ranke and file, and to make ready, that you may execute upon the firſt command: by the battaile or charge underſtand the continuation or preſſing forward in order of battaile without laggin behinde, rather boldly ſtepping forward in the place of him that falls dead, or wounded before thee: by a retreat, underſtanding an orderly retireing backward, either for relief, for advantage of ground, or for ſome other politicall end, as to draw the enemy into ſome ambuſhment, or ſuch like."

(p) MILITARIE Diſcipline, or the Young-Artillery-man, by lieutenant colonel William Bariffe. Second edit. London, 1643.

The preſent different Beats of the Drum for the Infantry, are theſe:

THE GENERAL; this is beat inſtead of the reveillé, when the whole camp or garriſon are to march.

REVEILLE'; beat at day-break to awaken the camp or garriſon; after which the centinels ceaſe challenging.

ASSEMBLY, or TROOP; at this beat the troops fall in, the roll is called, and baggage loaded.

FOOT-MARCH; to march (q).

GRENADIERS MARCH; beat only to that company.

RETREAT; this is beat at ſun-ſet in garriſons, and at gun-firing in camp, at which time the pickets are formed; in fortified places it is a ſignal for the inhabitants to come in before the gates are ſhut.

TAPTOO; the ſignal for ſouldiers to retire to their quarters or barracks, and to the ſutlers to draw no more liquor, from whence it derives its name; the taptoo is ſeldom beat in camp.

TO ARMS; a ſignal to ſummons the ſoldiers to their alarm poſts on ſome ſudden occaſion.

THE CHURCH CALL; called alſo BEATING THE BANK; a beat to ſummons the ſoldiers of a regiment or garriſon to church.

THE PIONEERS CALL; known by the appellation of Round Heads and Cuckolds, come dig; this is beaten in camp to ſummon the pioneers to work.

THE SERJEANT'S CALL; a beat for calling the ſerjeants together to the orderly room, or in camp, the head of the colours.

THE DRUMMER'S CALL; beat to aſſemble the drummers at the head of the colours, or in quarters at the place where it is beaten.

THE PREPARATIVE; a ſignal to make ready for fireing.

THE CHAMMADE; a ſignal to deſire a parley with the enemy.

(q) THERE was formerly another beat, called the Long March; on the beating of which the men clubbed their firelocks, and claimed and uſed the liberty of talking all kind of ribaldry reſpecting their amours and thoſe of their officers; this has for ſome time been very properly aboliſhed.

THE ROGUES, OR WHORES MARCH; this is beaten and played by the fifes when a ſoldier is drummed out of the regiment, or common proſtitutes are drummed out of the camp or garriſon.

THERE are alſo ſeveral other beats uſed in different corps for particular ſignals; ſuch as the Long Roll for turning out the regiment in camp or garriſon; the doubling of the troop to break from grand to ſub-diviſions: but theſe are rather particular than general.

THERE was in the king's houſhold an officer, ſtiled, drum-major-general of England, without whoſe licence no one could, except the king's troops, formerly beat a drum.

THE regimental drum-majors have no extra pay from government, but receive ſome addition by ſtoppage from the pay of the young drummers, and contributions of the captains.

MANY of the drums of the infantry were formerly of braſs, with the arms of the colonel painted on them; but by his majeſty's late regulation, no colonel is to put his arms, creſt, device, or livery on any part of the appointment of the regiment under his command; and the drums are to be of wood, the front painted with the colour of the facing of the regiment, with the king's cypher and crown, and the number of the regiment under it.

THE different ſounds or ſignals given by the trumpet were, according to Markham, in his Soldiers' Accidence, as follows:

THE firſt is BUTTE SELLA, or put on your ſaddles, which as ſoone as the ſoldier heareth (in the morning or other times), he ſhall preſently make ready his horſe and his own perſon, truſſe up his ſack of neceſſaries, and make all things fitting for his journey.

THE ſecond is, MOUNTE CAVALLO; or, mount on horſebacke; at which ſummons the ſouldier ſhall bridle up his horſe, bring him forth, and mount his backe.

THE third is, A LA STANDARDE; goe to your colours, or ſtandard, whether it bee ſtandard, cornet, or guidon; upon which ſound the ſoldier, with thoſe of his fellowſhip, ſhall trot forth to the place where the cornet is lodged, and there attend till it is diſlodged: alſo, this ſound in the field and in ſervice, when men are diſbanded, is a retreat

for the horſemen, and brings him off being engaged, for as oft as he heares it he muſt retire and goe backe to his colour.

The fourth is, Tucquet, or march; which beinge hearde ſimply of itſelfe, without addition, commands nothing but marching after the leader.

The fifth is, Carga, Carga, or an alarm; charge! charge! which ſounded, every man (like lightning) flyes upon his enemy, and gives proofe of his valour.

The ſixth and laſt is, Auquet, or the watch; which ſounded at night, commands all that are out of duty to their reſt; and ſounded in the morning commands thoſe to reſt that have done duty; and thoſe that have reſted to awake, and doe duty; and in theſe ſounds you ſhall make the ſouldier ſo perfect that, as a ſong, he may lanquet or ſing them, and know when they are ſounded unto him.

Other ſoundings there are, as Tende Hoe, for liſtening; a Call, for ſummons; a Senet, for ſtate and the like; but they have reference to the greater officers, and thoſe have no need of inſtructions.

In modern times, that is, ſince the revolution, kettle drums and trumpets have been chiefly appropriated to the horſe. The dragoons long had the hautbois and ſide drum, but about the year 1759 changed them for the trumpet; the infantry had only the drum, till the introduction of fifes as above-mentioned. Since the introduction of light infantry, many of thoſe companies have uſed the bugle horn.

Of late years, in addition to the drums and fifes, each regiment of infantry has had its band of muſick. The inſtruments are chiefly hautbois, clarinets, French horns, baſſoons, trumpets, cymbals, and in ſome the tabor and pipe. The band is uſually compoſed of men borne upon the eſtabliſhment of the regiment as privates, and allowed ſome additional pay from the non-effective fund of the field officers and captains of companies. Theſe officers alſo defray the charge for inſtruments, extra clothing, muſick, &c.; though in many corps the money paid for diſcharges has been applied to the ſupport of the regimental band.

CHAPTER V.

Of Flags, Colours, Standards, and Enſigns.

FLAGS, banners, pencils, and other enſignes, are of great antiquity; their uſe was, in large armies, to diſtinguiſh the troops of different nations or provinces; and in ſmaller bodies, thoſe of different leaders, and even particular perſons, in order that the prince and commander in chief might be able to diſcriminate the behaviour of each corps or perſon; they alſo ſerved to direct broken battalions or ſquadrons where to rally, and pointed out the ſtation of the king, or thoſe of the different great officers, each of whom had his particular guidon or banner, by which means they might be found at all times, and the commander in chief enabled from time to time to ſend ſuch orders as he might find neceſſary to his different generals.

THE antient enſigns were of different kinds; ſome were to be fixed or planted, being too heavy to be carried by one man; others were attached to different corps or perſons, and carried about with them. Carrying a banner or ſtandard in the day of battle, was always conſidered as a poſt of honour; and in our hiſtories we frequently meet with ſeveral inſtances of perſons rewarded with penſions for valiantly (r) performing that duty; the office of the royal ſtandard-bearer was

(r) A.D. 1350. 24 Ed. III. there is in Rymer, that king's writ to the treaſurer of the Exchequer, directing the payment of 200 marks for life to Guido de Bryan, for his gallant behaviour in the laſt battle againſt the French, near Calais, and for his prudent bearing of the ſtandard there againſt the ſaid enemies, and there ſtrenuouſly, powerfully, and erectly ſuſtaining it.

RAUFE VESTYNDEN held 10l. per annum by letters patent under the great ſeal till rewarded with an office; this was granted to him by Edward IV. for the good and agreeable ſervice which (ſays the record) he did unto us, in berying and holdyng of oure ſtandard of the black bull, at the batayl of Sherborne, in Elmett. Rot. Parl.

uſually granted for life, with a very large ſalary (s); an entry in the wardrobe account gives a deſcription of ſome of the enſigns of King Edward I., which were thus charged; two with the arms of England, one with thoſe of St. George, one with the arms of St. Edmond, and one with the arms of St. Edward; they were all fixed in lances (t).

THE different kinds of enſigns antiently in uſe were ſtandards, banners, guidons, pennons, pencils, and bandcrolls, or camp colours.

THE ſtandards were originally large flags fixed on the tops of towers, or other elevated places, and from their being ſtationary were called ſtandards, though this term was afterwards given to moveable enſigns, as at preſent to thoſe borne by the cavalry.

BANNERS were ſmall, and of a ſquare figure, ſomewhat about the make and ſize of the ſtandards now borne by the horſe or dragoons; banners were borne before knights bannerets, whoſe arms were embroidered on them.

PENNONS were borne before knights bachelors, who brought a certain number of followers into the field; there are ſome inſtances of pennons being carried before eſquires, but it was only thoſe poſſeſſed of certain eſtates or fiefs; the pennon was in figure and ſize like a banner, with the addition of a triangular point; they were charged with armorial bearings of their owner; on the performance of any gallant action by the knight and his followers, the pennon was converted into a banner by the king, or commander in chief, cutting off the point, whereby the knight was raiſed to the degree of a banneret. Both knights and bannerets were bound to appear in the field at the head of a certain number of men, whence antient hiſtorians frequently

---

(s) A.D. 1514. 5 Henry VIII. Henry de Egerton, Knt. held the office of ſtandard-bearer, with a ſalery of one hundred pounds per annum, with all accuſtomed perquiſites.

(t) DOMINO Willmo de Felton pro quinque lanceis emptri pro quin ¡ue vexellis regis, portandis in guerra Scocie anno preſenti, videlt. duobus vexillis de armis Anglie, tercio vexillo de armis Sancti Jeorgii, quarto de armis Sancti Edmundi, et quinque de armis Sancti Edwardi, pro quolibet lancea 2s. per manus Willmi de Etcheŵiche valetti ſui apud Tynewold, octavo die Julii, 10s.

expreſs the ſtrength of an army, by the number of banners and pennons of which it conſiſted.

The guidon, according to Markham, is inferior to the ſtandard, being the firſt colour any commander of horſe can let fly in the field. It was generally of damaſk fringed, and uſually three feet in breadth near the ſtaff, leſſening by degrees towards the bottom, where it was by a ſlit divided into two peaks. It was originally borne by the dragoons, and might be charged with the armorial bearings of the owner. The pencil was a ſmall ſtreamer fixed to the end of a lance, and was adorned with the coat armour of the eſquire, by whom it was carried, and ſerved to point him out in the day of battle.

Holy or ſacred banners were frequently carried into the field by monks or other eccleſiaſtics, in order to inſpire a confidence in the troops, who were taught to believe that the ſaint, whoſe banner was then diſplayed, would intereſt himſelf in their behalf: thus the ſtandard of St. Cuthbert was carried with the army of King Edward I. into Scotland (u), and with that of the earl of Surrey, to the battle of Flodden-field, and ſeveral of the ſtandards there taken from the Scots were placed round the tomb of that Saint.

The colours of the foot, frequently by the old writers ſtiled enſigns, are ſquare, but larger than the banners or ſtandards of the horſe; they are fixed on a ſpear; formerly there was a ſtand of colours to every company; they were in time of action guarded by two ranks of halbardiers.

Bandcrolls are uſed to mark out the limits of a camp; at preſent, they are ſmall ſquare pieces of thin woollen cloth of ſcarlet, quartered with the colour of the facing of the regiment, and are commonly called camp colours.

(u) Domino Willmo de Gretham, monacho Dunolm, ſequenti regem cum vexillo Sancti Cuthberti in guerra Scocie anno preſenti pro expenſis ſuis, a 3 die Julii, uſque 24 diem Auguſti, utroque computato, per 35 dies morando in exercitu regis ac eciam per expenſis ſuis per 4 dies ſequentes redeundo verſus Dunolm, de licentia regis. See Wardrobe account of Edward I. p. 67.

In the College of Arms there is the following curious manuſcript reſpecting the ſizes of flags, &c.

A°. predict. (ſc R. Hen. VIII. 36to.)

An order for the fflagges by the councell as hereafter follows:

A flagg to be in lengthe iii yards and half a quarter.

The breadth, two yards three quarters and a nayle, with the beſt or creſt and wourde poudred with croſſes of St. George.

Set forth by the Duke of Norfolk.

For his Grace, iiii.

For the Duke of Suffolk, ii.

For the Erle of Oxford, i.

For the Lord Latymere, i.

For the Lord Montjoy, i.

For the Lord Ferris, iii (x).

The diſcomodities that may come into an army for lake of enſignes and banners, ſtandards, pennons and guydonnes, which of neceſſity muſt be had in battayle.

Ffirst, for conduite and for men to reſorte unto, a hundreth men under a ſtandart, and for theire cappetaynes to be knowen thereby where to have them, when nede ſhall require, as knights, barones, and banneretts.

Alsoe, under a banner of armes, a hundrethe men to be conducted, and none to have them but baronetts, knights of the garter, baronnes, vyſcountes, marqueſſes, dukes and princes for the conduicte; under eche of theſe a hundreth men, and under theire ſtandarts as afourfaide.

Alsoe, pennons of armes, and gwydonns for conduiſte under eache of them L men, for an eſquire, gentyllman, or cappetayne to be knowen thereby to all his men, to follow him in there order in muſters and battayles.

Alsoe, w^th^out ſtandartes, pennons, and gwydons, the kinge's ma-

(x) M. 16. fol. 97. b.

jeſtie in tymes of battell cannot make banneretts, as yt hath been accuſtomed in tyme out of mynd in this noble realme of England.

Alsoe officers of armes cannot be judges to judge noblemen according to their meryttes in theſe valyante actes, without the knowledge of theſe enſignes and tokens, nor yet to have knowledge where to find the cappetaines (yf they be ſent for in time of needs), and other diſcomcedyties may come thereof, and that our men cannot know their cappetaynes from their enemyes in tyme of foragynge or battayle.

Alsoe, yt hathe allwayes ben the cuſtome of thys noble realme of England, that every cappetayne wolde rather dye in the fielde, than to looſe any of theſe foreſaide ſignes, as ſtandarts, banner, pennon, or guydown token of his armes of nobylitie, and alwayes and unto this day they have, in any battell where they have gone and proceeded, had the victory of and againſte the generall flages of there enemyes, which ys not hyer then a man may holde a lyttle over hys heade, and wavers nothinge in the winde, but by force of his armes, and ſtandarts, pennons, and gwydonnes waver in the wynde, and be ſene fare of, and maketh enemyes afferde, and comforteth the friende to followe them.

And yf there be nothinge borne but flaggs for enſignes, as ſtrangers doe, you ſhall not knowe the bandes of nobilitie of the realme from ſtraungers, nor gentellmen from knights, nor a knight from a baronne, nor no degree from another of nobilitie, but every man in like goode, and baſtards as legettemate.

The Scyſſe of Standarts, Banners, Pennons, and Gwydonnes.

The great ſtandart to be ſett afore the king's pavylyon or tente, not to be borne in battell, to be of the length of xi yards.

The king's ſtandart to be borne, to be of the length of viii yards or ix.

The duke's ſtandart to be borne to be of the lengthe of vii yards.

The earl's ſtandart to be of the length of vi yards.

THE barron's ſtandart to be of the length of v yards.

THE bannerett's ſtandart to be of the length of iv yards.

THE knight's ſtandart to be of the length of iv yards.

EVERY ſtandart and gwydon to have in the cheffe, the croſſe of St. George, y^e beſt or creſte with his deviſe, and wourd and ſlytte at the ende.

THE pennon of their armes rounde at the ende, and to be ii yards and a half longe.

THE gwydon to be in length ii dy. or iii yards.

THE banner of armes an elle longe, yard brode.

UNDER a ſtandart, C men.

UNDER a banner, C men.

UNDER a pennon, L men.

UNDER a gwydon, L men.

A BANNER of a knight of the garter, a barronett, a barrone, a vyſcount, an erle, a marquis, duke or prince, C.

THE ſtandart for the ſame perſonage aforeſaid, and for a knight being cappetayne of . . . . men.

A PENNON of armes, and a gwydon for the conduicte under eche of them L men, for a gentleman or ſquier.

FLAGGS for horſemen, a yarde and di. longe, w^th the croſs of St. George, the creſt and worde.

WHEN the kinge or any other prince furſte diſplayeth their banner, y^t oulde be donne by ſtade and diſcreet counſellors, ſome of them hored of age, ſhewing them the lawful cauſe why, to the entente that there ſhould be founde no wylfulneſs in the ſaid prince, but that he doeth yt uppon a juſt cauſe of quarrell, w^ch done to commande the chiefe of the herralds to unroll yt, and the prince to make hym knight that beareth the ſaide banner, yf he be not ſo before, and to ryde forth in the name of God.

THE ſizes of banners of the knights of the garter in the time of Queen Elizabeth.

THE queene's banner is two yards di. long and two yards broade, beſides the fringe.

THE banner of each kn^t of the garter is two yardes quart. long and broad, beſides the fringe.

AT preſent there are in general only two colours to a battalion of foot, and one ſtandard to a ſquadron of horſe (y).

(y) THE 2d regiment of foot had three colours as a diſtinguiſhing mark of honour; his majeſty's arms were in the centre of the firſt, the queen's cypher in the centre of the ſecond, both of which were in other reſpects unions; the third was ſea-green (the original facing of the corps), and, to the beſt of my recollection, the colonel's arms or creſt was in the centre. On our marching over Iſland bridge into Dublin duty, in 1750, this laſt mentioned colour (I being then the third enſign) was, by order of General Foroke, taken out of my hands, furled, and never flew ſince; the men grumbled exceedingly; I felt myſelf hurt at being deprived of an honour no other corps then enjoyed, and which this had carried ſince its creation in 1661.

WHENEVER the king reviews it, as ſoon as the colonel preſents the return, his majeſty moſt graciouſly hands it to his royal conſort (if there), it being the queen's own royal regiment of foot, of which his majeſty is colonel. *Donkin's Military Collections.*

CHAPTER VI.

Of the Adminiſtration of Military Juſtice.

THE adminiſtration of military juſtice was, in the earlier periods of our hiſtory, chiefly under the direction of the high conſtable and marſhal, who preſided as judges, and, aſſiſted by civilians and officers experienced in military affairs, tried and puniſhed, according to the laws and ordinances of war then in force, not only all military offences, but likewiſe determined all kinds of ſuits depending between the followers of the army. In caſes of great import, military delinquents were tried before the parliament (z).

THE rules and ordonnances of war, which ſerved for the guide of the court, and wherein the martial law for the time being was declared, were either made by the king, with the advice of his peers and other experienced perſons, for the expedition then on foot, as were thoſe of King Richard II. and Henry V. or enacted by the commander in chief, the king's authority for that purpoſe being ge-

---

(z) HENRY DE ESSEX, ſtandard bearer to King Henry II. was, for cowardice, in Wales, deprived of his lands, ſhorne, and ſhut up for life as a monk in the abbey of Reading. See Dan. p. 18. Speed, p. 502. Hollingſ. and Stow. An. 2. Hen. II.

In the rolls of parliament 1ſt of Richard II. we learn, that William de Weſton and John Lord of Gomery were tried in parliament, for delivering up the caſtle of Oaterwyk, and the town and caſtle of Ardes, in France, and convicted thereof; for which Weſton was adjudged to be drawn and hanged: and the Lord of Gomery, on account of his rank and former ſervices, and alſo not being a liege man, or natural born ſubject, was ſentenced to be beheaded.

The Biſhop of Norwich, in the ſeventh year of the ſame reign, for divers military offences as a general officer, appeared before the ſame tribunal, and was puniſhed with the ſeizure of his temporalities and a conſiderable fine.

nerally given in their commiſſions (a), many of which appear in Rymer, even ſo low down as the reign of King James I. Rebels were ſometimes tried by the martial law, as was the caſe in the reign of Henry VII.

After the attainder of Edward Duke of Buckingham, in the 13th of Henry VIII. the office of high conſtable ceaſed, and was never renewed but for a limited time; ſince which the commanders of our armies were entitled lieutenant generals, or if peers, lord lieutenants, as being the king's repreſentatives, or deputies.

Notwithstanding this, the marſhal, who was commonly ſecond in command, retained the prerogative of ſitting as chief judge in all caſes, not only reſpecting the diſcipline of the army, but alſo in every other cauſe, controverſy and complaint that might ariſe therein. For the more regular diſpatch of buſineſs, to this court belonged divers civil officers; among whom were a judge-martial, an auditor, and clerks; under-provoſts, gaolers, tipſtaves, and executioners. This court, we learn from the following clauſe in the ordonnances of war of King Henry VIII. was directed to aſſemble twice a week. "Item, the high marſhal muſt hold two court days in the weke, that is to wit, one Munday and Thurſdaie, for them that have anie

(a) In the commiſſion granted by King James I. A. D. 1622, to Sir Horace Vere, appointing him captain general of the army intended to be ſent to the Palatinate, he is authoriſed to make and proclaim ordonnances of war for the government of the army, and to enforce the obſervation thereof, and to hear, determine, and puniſh, by himſelf or deputies, all criminal cauſes, mutinies, deſertions, and all other crimes whatſoever; and to puniſh by death, loſs of member, or any other corporal infliction, according to their crimes and the laws and cuſtoms of war; and alſo to hear and determine in like manner all civil cauſes, contracts, &c. ariſing in the ſaid army; alſo in like manner to judge all perſons that may in future join the army; alſo to fill up all vacancies, and by his order to direct the payment of the ſaid ſoldiers. All officers are directed to obey the commands of the ſaid Sir Horace Vere. See Rymer in anno.

In a commiſſion granted by King Charles I. A. D. 1640, to Thomas Earl of Arundel, to be captain general of the army to be employed at home, he is authoriſed to make laws and ordonnances for the government thereof, to appoint a provoſt marſhal, which provoſt marſhal ſhall uſe and execute the martial law. Rymer in anno.

matters in court, with his officers with him, as it is ordeyned by the chief captain."

As the commiſſions of moſt of the commanders in chief contained a clauſe, authoriſing them to enact ordonnances for the government of the army under their command, and to ſit in judgment themſelves, or to appoint deputies for that purpoſe, it ſeems in ſome degree imperceptibly to have encroached on the independency of the marſhals court, and at length to have taken a new form, under the denomination of the court or council of war, which ſat at ſtated times, or as was ordered by the commander in chief, and at which officers of a certain rank, apparently not under that of a colonel (b), had a right to ſit as aſſeſſors or members; and, inſtead of the marſhal, we hear of an officer ſtiled preſident of the high court of war, who, on certain occaſions, claimed the privilege of a double vote (c).

(b) Sir Francis Vere, in his deſcription of the duties of the ſeveral officers of a regiment, mentions it as the duty of all colonels once every week to call together all his captains, and to enquire of all offences in his regiment; and examine the nature and quality of ſuch offences, to prepare the cauſes for a more ſpeedy hearing in a court martial, and to repair to the court martial as often as they ſhall be warned.

Markham, who wrote ſhortly after him, that is, in the reign of King James I. ſays, "and the lieutenants of colonels are captaines in curteſie, and may in a court of warre ſit as the puny captaine of that regiment in which he commandeth." *Soldiers Grammar, p.* 123. Poſſibly it might be about this time that captains firſt obtained that privilege.

(c) The next in order I conceive to be the preſident of the high court of war, whoſe place requireth him to be a perſon of honour, integritie, of ſound judgment, of ripe knowledge in civil and military lawes, before whom all matters civil and criminal, that have relation to the army, are to be tryed, and therefore he ought to be aſſiſted with a learned fiſcal or judge advocate, as alſo with a well experienced auditor, to audit and keep regiſter of all caſes and matters that ſhall be brought before the court of war.

His office is to aſſemble the court of war as often as the general ſhall pleaſe for to appoint him; and in the interim he is to prepare all buſynes and cauſes ſo as that the court of war may have a clear and juſt information of all things; and when that any buſyneſs ſhall come into a final ſentence, he ſhall have the previledge of a double voice, becauſe he repreſents the general's perſon.—*A Brief Treatiſe of Warr, &c. &c. by W. T. in the year of our redemption* 1649. MS. No. 6008, Harl.

TOWARDS the latter end of the reign of King James I. and in the beginning of that of his ſucceſſor Charles, a kind of mixed court ſeems to have been occaſionally adopted, compoſed of both civil and military members. This was when an army was quartered at Portſmouth, Plymouth, Dover, or other ſea ports, waiting to be embarked for foreign ſervice; in which caſe a commiſſion was ſent down, appointing commiſſioners to try all offences committed by the ſoldiers or followers of the army, within certain counties or diſtricts. Many of theſe commiſſioners were military men; but with them were joined the earl marſhal, lord lieutenant of the county, and the mayors, or chief magiſtrates, of the principal towns of that diſtrict and its environs.

SEVERAL of theſe commiſſions may be found in Rymer, about the year 1626 and 1640 (d). In the laws and ordonnances of war, publiſhed A. D. 1640, by the earl of Northumberland for the king's forces, and thoſe of the earl of Eſſex, for the parliamentary forces in 1643, all controverſies between ſouldiers and their captains and all others, were directed to be ſummarily heard and determined by the council of warre, except the weightineſſe of the cauſe require further deliberation. No other tribunal or court is mentioned.

AT what time courts martial, according to their preſent form, were firſt held, it is not eaſy to aſcertain; they are, however, mentioned, with the diſtinction of general and regimental, in the ordonnances of war of King James II. publiſhed by royal authority, A. D. 1686.

(d) A. D. 1626, an. 2. Charles I. that king grants his commiſſion to Philip, Earl of Montgomery, lieutenant of the county of Kent, Sir Nicholas Tufton, Sir Edward Hales, Sir Thomas Smith, with fourteen other knights and gentlemen, together with the mayors of the towns of Dover and Sandwich for the times being, to try in all places within the county of Kent, by martial law, all ſoldiers, mariners, or others joining with them, guilty of robbery, felony, mutiny or deſertion, outrage or miſdemeanor, "and to execute them by ſuch ſummary courſe of law as is uſed in armyes in tymes of warres," according to the law martial, for an example of terror to others; for which purpoſe they are directed to erect ſuch gallows and gibbets, and in ſuch places, as they ſhall think proper; in which all magiſtrates and others are commanded to be aſſiſting. *See Rymer in anno.*

After the revolution, the form and powers of courts martial were ſettled by an act of parliament, with the military laws, called articles of war, made under that authority. This act has generally (e) been renewed every year under the title of "The Mutiny Act:" it conſiſts of two parts, namely, the act of parliament, which is equally binding to all his majeſty's ſubjects civil and military, and the articles of war, enacted by the king, who is, by the aforementioned act, empowered ſo to do. Theſe concern the ſoldier only. Both, the act of parliament as well as the articles of war, have been in a conſtant ſtate of alteration from their firſt inſtitution, and ſtill require great amendment: where theſe are ſilent, there is another guide for courts martial, that is, the cuſtom of war in like caſes (f).

As the ordonnances of war and martial regulations of our early kings, ſo far as they can be recovered, give great inſight into our Military Hiſtory, I ſhall lay before my readers ſuch as I have been able to procure; tranſcribing or abridging them as the article ſeems to merit.

The firſt record of this kind is of the time of King John, entitled "Conſtitutions to be made in the Army of our Lord the King:" theſe are apparently calculated to facilitate the ſupply of the army with neceſſaries, which it ſeems were to be expoſed for ſale in the churches and church-yards, and to be ſold under the eye of the ſuperintendents or chief men of the church, who were to attend for that purpoſe, and to receive the money for the proprietors; and in caſe they were not preſent, or neglected to procure proper proviſions, the perſons taking them elſewhere were to depoſit the value in the church.

From this it ſeems as if markets were ſometimes held in church-

---

(e) Generally, though not always, as has before been ſhewn.

(f) "And if any doubt ſhall ariſe which is not explained by the ſaid articles or act of parliament, according to my conſcience, the beſt of my underſtanding, and the cuſtom of war in the like caſes." *See the Oath adminiſtered to all the Members of a Court Martial in the Act of Parliament, anno* 1785.

yards ; or perhaps, in times of war or inſurrection, on the approach of an army, the country people uſed to drive their cattle, and convey their goods of different kinds, to the churches and church-yards, as places of ſafety and ſanctuary, whence no one would dare to take them by force, as it might be deemed a kind of ſacrilege and infringement on the immunities of the church : but as this would cauſe a want of proviſions or neceſſaries in the army, ſoldiers might be authoriſed to take what they ſtood in need of, on paying the value of the things taken to the churchwardens, or other ſuperintendents of the churches.

THE next is the charter of King Richard I. made in the firſt year of his reign, A. D. 1189, and chiefly meant to prevent diſputes between the ſoldiers and ſailors, in their voyage to the holy land. It is printed in Rymer, whence it was extracted and tranſlated.

Charter of King RICHARD I. *for the government of thoſe going by Sea to the Holy Land.*

RICHARD, by the grace of God, king of England, duke of Normandy, and earl of, &c. &c. To all his men going by ſea to Jeruſalem, greeting. Know ye, that by the common council of all good men, we have made the underwritten ordonnances. He who kills a man on ſhipboard, ſhall be bound to the dead man, and thrown into the ſea : if the man is killed on ſhore, the ſlayer ſhall be bound to the dead body, and buried with it. Any one convicted by lawful witneſſes of having drawn his knife to ſtrike another, or who ſhall have drawn blood of him, to loſe his hand. If he ſhall have only ſtruck with the palm of the hand, without drawing blood, he ſhall be thrice ducked in the ſea. Any one who ſhall reproach, abuſe, or curſe his companion, ſhall, for every time he is convicted thereof, give him ſo many ounces of ſilver. Any one convicted of theft, ſhall be ſhorn like a champion (g), boiling pitch ſhall be poured on

(g) CHAMPIONS hired to fight legal duels, in caſes of murther or homicide, had their hair clipt

his head, and down of feathers ſhaken over it, that he may be known; and he ſhall be ſet on ſhore at the firſt land at which the ſhip touches.

Witneſs myſelf at Chinon.

THE ordonnances of Richard II. are the next in point of chronological order, that I have been able to diſcover; they are in old French, among the Cotton manuſcripts in the Britiſh Muſeum, marked Nero, D. VI. There is alſo a copy of them in the library of the college of arms. Both agree minutely, except that the latter has one article more than that in the muſeum.

Theſe are the Statutes, Ordonnances, and Cuſtoms, to be obſerved in the Army, ordained and made by good conſultation and deliberation of our moſt Excellent Lord the King Richard, John Duke of Lancaſter, Seneſchall of England, Thomas Earl of Eſſex, and Buckingham, Conſtable of England, and Thomas de Mowbray Earl of Notingham, Mareſchall of England, and other Lords, Earls, Barons, Banneretts, and experienced Knights, whom they have thought proper to call unto them; then being at Durham the 17th Day of the Month of July, in the ninth Year of the Reign of our Lord the King Richard II.

I. FIRSTLY. That all manner of perſons, of what nation, ſtate, or condition they may be, ſhall be obedient to our lord the king, to his conſtable and mareſchall, under penalty of every thing they can forfeit in body and goods.

II. ITEM, that none be ſo hardy as to touch the body of our lord, nor the veſſel in which it is contained, under pain of being drawn, hanged, and beheaded.

---

clipt or ſhorn cloſe to their heads, as appears from an ancient manuſcript quoted by Upton, p. 37. Les Chevaliers qui ſe combatre pour meutre, ou por homecide, ſe doivent combatre a pie, et ſans coyſe et eſtre roignes a la reonde." The circumſtance of the party being a knight made no difference, the ſame regulations being laid down for both. *Champions, Chevaliers & autres.*

III. ITEM, that none be ſo hardy as to rob and pillage the church, nor to deſtroy any man belonging to holy church, religious or otherwiſe, nor any woman, nor to take them priſoners, if not bearing arms; nor to force any woman, upon pain of being hanged.

IV. ITEM, that no one be ſo hardy to go before, or otherwiſe than in the battail to which he belongs, under the banner or pennon of his lord or maſter, except the herbergers, whoſe names ſhall be given in by their lords or maſters to our conſtable and mareſchall, upon pain of loſing their horſes.

V. ITEM, that no one take quarters, otherwiſe than by the aſſignment of the conſtable and mareſchall and the herbergers; and that, after the quarters are aſſigned and delivered, let no one be ſo hardy as to remove himſelf, or quit his quarters, on any account whatſoever, under pain of forfeiture of horſe and armour, and his body to be in arreſt, and at the king's will.

VI. ITEM, that every one be obedient to his captain, and perform watch and ward, forrage, and all other things belonging to his duty, under penalty of loſing his horſe and armour, and his body being in arreſt to the mareſchall, till he ſhall have made his peace with his lord or maſter, according to the award of the court.

VII. ITEM, that no one be ſo hardy as to rob or pillage another of money, victuals, proviſions, forage, or any other thing, on pain of loſing his head; nor ſhall any one take any victuals, merchandiſe, or any other thing whatſoever, brought for the refreſhment of the army, under the ſame penalty; and any one who ſhall give the names of ſuch robbers and pillagers to the conſtable and mareſchall, ſhall have twenty nobles for his labour.

VIII. ITEM, no one ſhall make a riot or contention in the army for debate of arms, priſoners, lodgings, or any other thing whatſoever, nor cauſe any party or aſſembly of perſons, under pain (the principals as well as the parties) of loſing their horſes and armour, and having their bodies in arreſt at the king's will, and if it be a boy or page he ſhall loſe his left ear. Any perſon conceiving himſelf aggrieved ſhall make known his grievance to the conſtable and mareſchall, and right ſhall be done him.

IX. ITEM, that no one be ſo hardy as to make a contention or debate in the army on account of any grudge reſpecting time paſt, or for any thing to come; if in ſuch conteſt or debate any one ſhall be ſlain, thoſe who were the occaſion ſhall be hanged; and if any one ſhall proclaim his own name, or that of his lord or maſter, ſo as to cauſe a riſing of the people, whereby an affray might happen in the army, he who made the proclamation ſhall be drawn and hanged.

X. ITEM, that no one be ſo hardy as to cry "havok," under pain of loſing his head, and that he or they that ſhall be the beginners of the ſaid cry ſhall likewiſe be beheaded, and their bodies afterwards be hanged up by the arms (h).

XI. ITEM, that no one make the cry called mounté, or any other whatſoever in the army, on account of the great danger that may thereby happen to the whole army; which God forbid! and that on pain, if he be a man at arms, or archer on horſeback, of loſing his beſt horſe; and if he be an archer on foot or boy, he ſhall have his left ear cut off (i).

XII. ITEM, if in any engagement whatſoever an enemy ſhall be beat down to the earth, and he who ſhall have thus thrown him down ſhall go forwards in the purſuit, and any other ſhall come afterwards, and ſhall take the faith or parole of the ſaid enemy, he ſhall have half of the ſaid priſoner, and he who overthrew him the other half; but he who received his parole ſhall have the keeping of him, giving ſecurity to his partner.

XIII. ITEM, if any one takes a priſoner, and another ſhall join him, demanding a part, threatening that otherwiſe he will kill him

---

(h) HAVOK was the word given as a ſignal for the troops to diſperſe and pillage, as we learn from the following item in the droits of the marſhall, vol. 1. p. 229. wherein it is declared that in the article of plunder all the ſheep and hogs belong to ſuch private ſoldiers as can take them: and that on the word havok being cried, every one might ſeize his part: this probably was only a ſmall part of the licence ſuppoſed to be given by that word.

(i) Mounté, i. e. montez, to horſe; probably this was either a mutinous cry, calling on the cavalry to take horſe and leave the army, or might be the method of calling to arms from a ſuppoſed approach of the enemy, and was what would now be called, raiſing a falſe alarm.

(the priſoner), he ſhall have no part, although the ſhare be granted to him; and if he kills the ſaid priſoner, he ſhall be in arreſt to the mareſchall, without being delivered till he has ſatisfied the party, and his horſes and armour ſhall be forfeited to the conſtable.

XV. ITEM, that no man go out on an expedition by night or by day, unleſs with the knowledge and by the permiſſion of the chieftain of the battail in which he is, ſo that they may be able to ſuccour him ſhould occaſion require it, on pain of loſing horſe and armour.

XV. ITEM, that for no news or affray whatſoever that may happen in the army, any one ſhall put himſelf in diſarray in his battail, whether on an excurſion or in quarters, unleſs by aſſignment of his chieftain, under pain of loſing horſe and armour.

XVI. ITEM, that every one pay to his lord or maſter the third of all manner of gains of arms; herein are included thoſe who do not receive pay, but only have the benefit of quarters, under the banner or pennon of arms of a captain.

XVII. ITEM, that no one be ſo hardy as to raiſe a banner or pennon of St. George, or any other, to draw together the people out of the army, to go to any place whatſoever, under pain, that thoſe who thus make themſelves captains ſhall be drawn and hanged, and thoſe who follow them be beheaded, and all their goods and heritages forfeited to the king.

XVIII. ITEM, that every man, of what eſtate, condition, or nation he may be, ſo that he be of our party, ſhall bear a large ſign of the arms of St. George before, and another behind, upon peril that if he be hurt or ſlain in default thereof, he who ſhall hurt or ſlay him ſhall ſuffer no penalty for it: and that no enemy ſhall bear the ſaid ſign of St. George, unleſs he be a priſoner, upon pain of death.

XIX. ITEM, if any one ſhall take a priſoner, as ſoon as he comes to the army, he ſhall bring him to his captain or maſter, on pain of loſing his part to his ſaid captain or maſter; and that his ſaid captain or maſter ſhall bring him to our lord the king, conſtable, or mareſchall, as ſoon as he well can, without taking him elſewhere, in order that they may examine him concerning news and intelligence of the

enemy, under pain of loſing his third to him who may firſt make it known to the conſtable or mareſchall; and that every one ſhall guard, or cauſe to be guarded by his ſoldiers, his ſaid priſoner, that he may not ride about at large in the army, nor ſhall ſuffer him to be at large in his quarters, without having a guard over him, leſt he eſpy the ſecrets of the army, under pain of loſing his ſaid priſoner; reſerving to his ſaid lord the third of the whole, if there is not a partner in the offence; and the ſecond part to him that ſhall firſt take him; and the third part to the conſtable. On the like pain, and alſo of his body being in arreſt, and at the king's will, he ſhall not ſuffer his ſaid priſoner to go out of the army for his ranſome, nor for any other cauſe, without leave of the king, conſtable, and mareſchall, or the commander of the battalion in which he is.

XX. Item, that every one ſhall well and duly perform his watch in the army, and with the number of men at arms and archers as is aſſigned him, and that he ſhall remain the full limited term, unleſs by the order or permiſſion of him before whom the watch is made, on pain of having his head cut off.

XXI. Item, that no one ſhall give paſſports or ſafe conduct to a priſoner nor any other, nor leave to any enemy to come into the army, on pain of forfeiture of all his goods to the king, and his body in arreſt and at his will; except our lord the King, Monſieur de Lancaſter, ſeneſchall, the conſtable, and marſhall: and that none be ſo hardy as to violate the ſafe conduit of our lord the king, upon payne of being drawn and hanged, and his goods and heritage forfeited to the king; nor to infringe the ſafe-conducts of our ſaid lord of Lancaſter, ſeneſchall, conſtable, and mareſchall, upon pain of being beheaded.

XXII. Item, if any one take a priſoner, he ſhall take his faith, and alſo his bacinet, or gauntlet, to be a pledge and in ſign that he is ſo taken, or he ſhall leave him under the guard of ſome of his ſoldiers, under pain, that if he takes him, and does not do as is here directed, and another comes afterwards, and takes him from him (if not under a guard) as is ſaid, his bacinet or right gauntelet in

pledge, he ſhall have the priſoner, though the firſt had taken his faith.

XXIII. Item, that no one be ſo hardy to retain the ſervant of another, who has covenanted for the expedition, whether ſoldier, man at arms, archer, page or boy, after he ſhall have been challenged by his maſter, under pain that his body ſhall be in arreſt till he ſhall have made ſatisfaction to the party complaining, by award of the court, and his horſes and armour forfeited to the conſtable.

XXIV. Item, that no one be ſo hardy to go for forage before the lords or others, whoſoever they may be, who mark out or aſſign the places for the foragers, if it is a man at arms, he ſhall loſe his horſes and harneſs to the conſtable, and his body ſhall be arreſted by the mariſchal, and if it is a valet or boy, he ſhall have his left ear cut off.

XXV. That none be ſo hardy as to quarter himſelf otherwiſe than by the aſſignment of the herbergers, who are authoriſed to diſtribute quarters, under like penalty.

XXVI. Item, that every lord whatſoever cauſe to be delivered to the conſtable and mariſchal the names of their herbergers, under penalty, that if any one goes forward and takes quarters, and his name is not delivered in to the conſtable and mareſchall, he ſhall loſe his horſes and armour.

The rules and ordonnances of war that next occur are thoſe of King Henry V. made at Mans; of theſe there are two editions, one, probably the original, being by much the moſt full and explicit, is in Latin, printed in Upton de Re Militari; the other was till lately only in manuſcript, in the Engliſh of the time; many copies of it are to be found in different libraries, private as well as public. It is printed in the preface to the Antiquities of England and Wales.

The ſpirit of the time ſhews itſelf in theſe regulations, the firſt articles of which provide for the ſafety of the church, the preſervation of the euchariſt in its proper ſtate, and the protection of the perſons and privileges of the eccleſiaſtics.

THE regulations reſpecting duties, muſters, watches and guards, quarters, taking and ranſoming priſoners, &c. do not materially differ from the orders given on thoſe heads before and ſince. By one article we find that the ſoldiers of every condition were bound to pay their captain, or immediate commanding officer, one third part of their acquiſitions made by war, under penalty of loſing the whole ſum or property ſo acquired. But the moſt remarkable article is the laſt, "of turning out common whores;" by which it appears that theſe women were not permitted to remain with the army, but at all times, and eſpecially during the ſieges of towns, caſtles, and fortreſſes, they were to be ſtationed far off from the army, at the diſtance of a league at leaſt; and in the caſe of tranſgreſſion againſt this order, the puniſhment was "the fracture of the left arm of the ſaid whore, if after one admonition ſhe ſhould be found publickly or privately in any prohibited place."

BESIDES theſe ſtatutes of war of Henry the Vth, his orders to the governor of Rouen, or his lieutenant, are printed in Rymer (k), and exhibit a ſpecimen of that king's garriſon regulations. Similar orders were at the ſame time iſſued to thirty-ſix other captains or governors.

SOME orders for the Engliſh army, in the year 1486, the 2d of Henry VII., before the battle of Stoke, are found in Leland's Collectanea (l). The reader would rather be tired than gratified with the detail of all theſe obſolete military laws and regulations.

THE military code of Henry VIII. is preſerved in manuſcript in the college of arms (m); it is ſaid in the title page to have been printed A.D. 1524, by Thomas Bertelet.

THE laws and ordinances of war eſtabliſhed by the Earl of Northumberland, for the army of King Charles I., A.D. 1640 (n), is the next authentic military code that occurs: this was followed in 1643

(k) TOM. x. p. 106, &c.

(l) VOL. iv. p. 213, laſt edit.

(m) IN a book marked W. S.

(n) LONDON: printed by Robert Barker, printer to the king's moſt excellent majeſtie, and by the aſſigns of John Bill, 1640.

by that of the Earl of Eſſex, for the government of the parliamentary forces, entitled, "Laws and Ordinances of War, eſtabliſhed for the better conduct of the armie, by his excellency the Earl of Eſſex, lord general of the forces raiſed by the authoritie of the parliament, for the defence of king and kingdom, and now enlarged by command of his excellency, and printed by his authoritie, London, for Luke Faune," 1643.

These ordinances are ſet forth in chapters, as follows:

1. Of Duties to God. Four articles.
2. Of Duties to the King and State. Six articles.
3. Of Duties towards Superiors and Commanders. Ten articles.
4. Of Duties moral. Seven articles.
5. Of a Souldier's Duty touching his Armes. Seven articles.
6. Of Dutie in Marching. Four articles.
7. Of Duties in Camp and Garriſon. Seventeen articles; of which no leſs than eleven denounce capital puniſhment.
8. Of Duties in Action. Eleven articles.
9. Of the Duties of Commanders and Officers in particular. Thirteen articles.
10. Of the Duty of the Muſter-Maſters. Six articles.
11. Of Victuallers. Three articles.
12. Of Adminiſtration of Juſtice. Nine articles.

All other faults, diſorders, or offences, not mentioned in theſe articles, are declared puniſhable according to the general cuſtoms and laws of war.

The rules and articles of war in the time of James the IId. approach nearer to thoſe by which the army is now governed: many of them indeed are the ground-work of the preſent articles. They are in number ſixty-four, and are of a much more lenient ſpirit than thoſe framed for the parliamentary forces during the civil war. The laſt article ends with this merciful proviſo;—that no puniſhment, amounting to the loſs of life or limb, be inflicted on any offenders in time of peace, although the ſame be allotted for the ſaid offence by theſe articles, and the laws and cuſtoms of war.

The forms of proceeding in councils of war or courts martial, in the reign of King James II. are thus laid down, in an abridgment of the Engliſh Military Diſcipline, printed by eſpecial command for the uſe of his majeſty's forces, A.D. 1686.

Of Councils of War or Courts Martial.

In an army the council of war is always to meet at the general's quarters or tent, and none are to be called to it but the lieutenant-generals, the major generals, the brigadiers, and the colonels or commanders of bodies, when the matters concern their regiments.

Private councils of war, or courts martial in a garriſon, are either held at the governor's houſe, at the main guard, or where the governor orders; in a camp at the colonel's tent, who cauſes notice to be given to the captains to be preſent.

When all are met, the governour or colonel, or he who is to ſit as preſident, takes his place at the head of the table; the captains ſit about according to their ſeniority, (that is to ſay,) the firſt captain on the right hand of him that preſides, the ſecond on the left, and ſo of the reſt. And the town major, or the aid major or quarter maſter of the regiment, who in the abſence of the judge advocate diſcharges his office, is to ſit in his place, at the lower end of the table; the lieutenants, ſub lieutenants and enſigns, have a right to enter into the room where the council of war (or court martial) is held, but they are to ſtand at the captains backs, with their hats off, and have no vote.

If the council be called to deliberate on ſome matter of conſequence, the preſident having opened it to the court, aſks their opinions.

The youngeſt officer gives his opinion firſt, and the reſt in order, till it come to the preſident, who ſpeaks laſt. The opinions of every one being ſet down in writing, the reſult is drawn conformably to the plurality of votes, which is ſigned by the preſident onely.

If the council of war, or court martial, be held to judge a criminal,

the preſident and captains having taken their places, and the priſoner being brought before them, and the informations read, the preſident interrogates the priſoner about all the facts whereof he is accuſed; and having heard his defence, and the proof made or alleged againſt him, he is ordered to withdraw, being remitted to the care of the marſhal or jaylor; then every one judges according to his conſcience, and the ordinances or articles of war. The ſentence is framed according to the plurality of votes, and the criminal being brought in again, the ſentence is pronounced to him in the name of the council of war, or court martial.

When a criminal is condemned to any puniſhment, the provoſt martial cauſes the ſentence to be put in execution: and if it be a publick puniſhment, the regiment ought to be drawn together to ſee it, that thereby the ſoldiers may be deterred from offending. Before a ſoldier be puniſhed for any infamous crime he is to be publickly degraded from his arms, and his coat to be ſtript over his ears.

A council of war, or court martial, is to conſiſt of ſeven at leaſt, with the preſident, when ſo many officers can be brought together; and if it ſo happen that there be not captains enough to make up that number, the inferiour officers may be called in.

After the abdication of King James II., and the acceſſion of King William III., the military code, as has before been ſaid, obtained the ſanction of Parliament, though paſſed only from year to year, under the denomination of the mutiny act; the following is the firſt that paſſed, on the 12th of April, 1689, and was to continue in force to the 10th of November in the ſame year.

An Act for puniſhing Officers or Souldiers who ſhall Mutiny, or deſert their Majeſties Service.

Whereas the raiſing or keeping a ſtanding army within this kingdom in time of peace, unleſs it be with conſent of parliament, is againſt law; and whereas it is judged neceſſary by their majeſties and this preſent parliament that, during this time of danger, ſeveral of the

forces which are now on foot ſhould be continued, and others raiſed for the ſafety of the kingdom, for the common defence of the proteſtant religion, and for the reducing of Ireland.

And whereas no man may be forejudged of life or limb, or ſubjected to any kind of puniſhment by martial law, or in any other manner than by the judgment of his peers, and according to the known and eſtabliſhed laws of this realm; yet, nevertheleſs, it being requiſite for retaining ſuch forces as are, or ſhall be raiſed during this exigence of affairs, in their duty, an exact diſcipline be obſerved; and that ſouldiers who ſhall mutiny or ſtir up ſedition, or ſhall deſert their majeſties ſervice, be brought to a more exemplary puniſhment than the uſual forms of law will allow.

Be it therefore enacted by the king and queen's moſt excellent majeſties, by and with the advice of the lords ſpiritual and temporal, and commons in this preſent parliament aſſembled, and by authority of the ſame, that from and after the twelfth day of April, in the year of our Lord one thouſand ſix hundred and eighty-nine, every perſon being in their majeſties ſervice in the army, and being muſtered and in pay as an officer or ſoldier, who ſhall at any time before the tenth day of November, in the year of our Lord one thouſand ſix hundred and eighty-nine, excite, cauſe, or join in any mutiny or ſedition in the army, or ſhall deſert their majeſties ſervice in the army, ſhall ſuffer death, or ſuch other puniſhment as by a court-martial ſhall be inflicted.

And it is hereby further enacted and declared, that their majeſties, or the general of their army for the time being, may, by virtue of this act, have full power and authority to grant commiſſions to any lieutenants-general, or other officers, not under the degree of colonels, from time to time to call and aſſemble court-martials for puniſhing ſuch offences as aforeſaid.

And it is hereby further enacted and declared, that no court-martial which ſhall have power to inflict any puniſhment by virtue of this act for the offences aforeſaid, ſhall conſiſt of fewer than thirteen, whereof none to be under the degree of captains; provided always,

that no field officer be tried by other than field-officers; and that ſuch court-martial ſhall have power and authority to adminiſter an oath to any witneſs, in order to the examination or trial of the offences aforeſaid.

PROVIDED always, that nothing in this act contained ſhall extend, or be conſtrued to exempt any officer or ſoldier whatſoever from the ordinary proceſs of law.

PROVIDED always, that this act, or any thing therein contained, ſhall not extend, or be any wiſe conſtrued to extend to, or concern any of the militia forces of this kingdom.

PROVIDED alſo, that this act ſhall continue and be in force until the ſaid tenth day of November, in the ſaid year of our Lord one thouſand ſix hundred eighty-nine, and no longer.

PROVIDED always, and be it enacted, that in all trials of offenders by courts-martial, to be held by virtue of this act, where the offence may be puniſhed by death; every officer preſent at ſuch trial, before any proceeding be had thereupon, ſhall take an oath upon the Evangeliſts before the court (and the judge advocate or his deputy ſhall, and are hereby reſpectively authorized to adminiſter the ſame) in theſe words, that is to ſay:

YOU ſhall well and truly try and determine according to your evidence the matter now before you, between our ſovereign lord and lady, the king and queen's majeſties, and the priſoner to be tried.

So help you God.

AND no ſentence of death ſhall be given againſt any offender in ſuch caſe, by any court-martial, unleſs nine of thirteen officers preſent ſhall concur therein; and if there be a greater number of officers preſent, then the judgment ſhall paſs by the concurrence of the greater part of them ſo ſworn, and not otherwiſe; and no proceedings, trial, or ſentence of death ſhall be had or given againſt any offender but between the hours of eight in the morning and one in the afternoon.

THIS act ſeems to have been paſſed in a hurry, merely to give ſome kind of law to the army, which, as we learn from divers relations, was then in a very unſettled ſtate, having large arrears of pay due to

them, and being conſequently under little or no diſcipline; by gradual additions to the articles of war, and the mutiny act, they have grown to their preſent ſize, and yet in many parts require explanation and amendment, being in various inſtances vague and diſputable.

One material deficiency in that part of the act which concerns the quartering of officers and ſoldiers is, that it does not aſcertain what kind of accommodation is to be given to the former; for want of any diſcrimination, it has of late been aſſerted, that no diſtinction was required or intended by law to be made between the quarters of an officer and a private ſoldier; it would, therefore, prevent all diſputes on that ſubject, if it were directed, that every commiſſion officer ſhould have ſuch kind of lodging, bedding, and furniture, as would be proper for a gueſt of the rank of a gentleman, of which the chief magiſtrate of the place ſhould be the judge; and that no more than one officer ſhould be put in a bed, and no more than two, and thoſe under the rank of a captain, in one room: in the article directing the application of the penalty levied on publicans, for refuſing to provide quarters and the neceſſaries directed hy the act, ſatisfaction for the expence ariſing to the party from want of quarters, is confined to the ſoldier only, although a ſubaltern, having no other income than his pay, is perhaps, particularly after a long march, as little able to pay for a lodging as a private ſoldier.

The great difficulty (o) found by moſt regiments in procuring an

---

(o) All theſe, with many more inconveniences, might be obviated by the erection of barracks, at the expence of the perſons liable to have ſoldiers quartered on them; an expedient which, it is credibly reported, has been offered more than once. Nothing can be more ill-founded than the ſuppoſition that barracks would divide the ſoldier from the citizen; the real conſequence would be, the uniting them in the bonds of friendſhip: at preſent, the ſoldier and the landlord, or publican, having oppoſite intereſts, live in a ſtate of inveterate enmity, and the contempt and inſult the ſmall pay of the military ſubjects them to from the canaille of every ſort, tends to make them in general at variance with the citizens; but if the troops were lodged in barracks, the chief cauſes of diſagreement would ceaſe, and the ſoldiery would be conſidered as a benefit inſtead of a burthen on the country wherein they were ſtationed; the men would beſides be happier, more moral, and better diſciplined.

hoſpital for their ſick, renders a clauſe in the mutiny act for that purpoſe much wanted; it would be a very conſiderable benefit to the ſervice, if the magiſtrates of every diſtrict wherein troops ſhould be quartered were obliged to provide a convenient barn, ſtable, or other building at a reaſonable rent; for want of ſome ſuch regulation, the moſt exorbitant demands are uſually made for the moſt wretched hovels, though the ſlender allowance to a regimental ſurgeon enables him to afford very little, particularly where the regiment is in ſcattered quarters, as in that caſe he muſt have two or more hoſpitals; the conſequence is, that many a life is loſt, which, with proper accommodation, might have been ſaved; in villages, pariſh officers might be obliged to take ſick ſoldiers into their pariſh poor-houſes, aſſigning them one or more rooms according to their numbers.

As it ſometimes happens that, in bad or croſs-roads, waggons break down, and the ſoldiers of the baggage-guard are prevented from arriving at their deſtined quarters by the time limited in their route, which is thereby rendered void and of no effect; ſome precautions ſhould be taken againſt ſuch accidents, and the commanding officer in that caſe expreſsly authoriſed to oblige the conſtable of the diſtrict where it happens to impreſs freſh carriages.

A SEVERE penalty ſhould alſo be laid on any farmer, or his driver, who ſhould give in a falſe weight of his waggon, a fraud conſtantly attempted, and often practiſed on the troops; the weighing of each waggon before loaded being attended with much trouble and delay (p).

(p) SEVERAL of the author's objections have been removed ſince the laſt edition of this work was publiſhed. The mutiny act now extends the penalty on refuſing quarters to officers as well as ſoldiers; and the great number of barracks conſtructed within the laſt ſeven years have relieved the inn-keepers, and increaſed the accommodation of the troops. The ſame obſervation may be made with reſpect to what he ſays of hoſpitals. Victuallers and others liable to have ſoldiers quartered upon them, will ſeldom be burthened with them, except upon a march; and this is much alleviated, if the grievance be not entirely done away, by a late act of parliament, allowing the inn-keepers 14d. per diem for each horſe's hay and ſtraw, and 16d. for each ſoldier's diet. This, however, is only to ſubſiſt during the preſent high prices of proviſions. May, 1800.

ALTHOUGH the duty of a ſoldier to labour in the conſtructing of fortifications and other military works without any additional pay, if ordered ſo to do by his officers, is implied in the Vth article of the 2d ſection of the articles of war, which ſection, with the VIth, is directed to be read to all recruits at the time of their enliſting; yet a contrary opinion has long ſubſiſted among the ſoldiers in general; wherefore, if a clauſe was inſerted in the oath of fidelity, ſimilar to that in the ordinances of war, enacted by the earl of Northumberland, it might prevent much uneaſineſs, and if done ſome time ago, would probably have ſaved the lives of ſeveral ſoldiers ſhot for mutiny on that ſubject.

THE right of a ſoldier to appeal from the ſentence of a regimental to a general court-martial is now pretty univerſally denied, yet an idea of that right is ſtill ſtrongly rooted in the opinions of many old ſoldiers: it would be much better if this matter was poſitively aſcertained and declared; the following words in the act of parliament, rather appearing to imply the legality of ſuch appeal: "provided always, and be it hereby declared and enacted, that no officer or ſoldier, being acquitted of any offence, ſhall be liable to be tried a ſecond time by the ſame or any other court-martial, for the ſame offence, unleſs in the caſe of an appeal from a regimental to a general court-martial."

THE authority exerciſed by the naval officers over the land-forces, when embarked on board the king's ſhips, either for ſervice, or to be tranſported to foreign garriſons, requires ſome regulation: as the law is now ſuppoſed to ſtand, a ſoldier finds himſelf ſubjected to two different codes; namely, the military articles of war, and thoſe of the navy; whereas, at his enliſting, he was informed he thereby became liable to the former only, and that he could not be puniſhed otherwiſe than by the ſentence of a court-martial; but, according to the naval diſcipline, the captain, or, in his abſence, the commanding officer of the veſſel, may, by his own authority, order any one on board his ſhip as many dozen laſhes as he thinks proper, by dividing the offence into ſo many different heads; reſpecting which he is both accuſer and judge: although the nature of the ſervice, the character of the people to be governed, with divers other conſiderations, require ſum-

mary proceedings; and that the captain ſhould have power over every perſon on board his ſhip, in the ſame manner as a governor of a fortreſs has over every individual of his garriſon; and allowing that nothing but confuſion could ariſe from two diſtinct powers, *imperium in imperio* being an acknowledged ſoleciſm in government; but this power would not be at all invaded or diminiſhed, were there an article of war authorizing and directing a captain or commanding officer of a ſhip of war to order ſhip courts-martial for the trial of all offenders belonging to the land forces, to conſiſt of a certain number of commiſſion officers, either all belonging to the troop, or half naval and half land officers, reſerving to himſelf the approbation of the ſentence, as governor of the garriſon; ſoldiers being thus tried, wholly or in part, by their own officers, would ſtill preſerve that reſpect for them which the preſent practice is very apt to make them loſe; they would, beſides, be judged by thoſe articles to which they had ſworn obedience; it would likewiſe prevent a great deal of diſſention between the two ſervices.

THE preſent mode of proceeding at a general court-martial is as follows:

THIS court in England muſt conſiſt of a preſident, and not leſs than twelve members, all commiſſion officers; and if they are to try an officer, if poſſible, none ſhould be of a rank inferior to the priſoner; the preſident at leaſt a field officer.

THE preſident and members being aſſembled and ſeated according to their rank or ſeniority, the commiſſion or warrant for holding the court is read, as alſo the appointment of the preſident and deputy judge-advocate, if the judge-advocate himſelf does not officiate; ſhould the court be held within any garriſon, by virtue of the governor's commiſſion, that commiſſion is read, as alſo the governor's order for holding the court, and his appointment of the preſident.

THE judge-advocate next ſwears the preſident ſingly, as a token of reſpect; and afterwards all the members, as many together as can conveniently hold the book; the form of the oath is given in the articles of war; the preſident is then to adminiſter to the judge-advocate

the oath preſcribed in the ſaid articles; he being ſworn, takes his ſeat at the bottom of the table, oppoſite to the preſident.

The priſoner is now brought in; but, previous to the charge being exhibited againſt him, he is aſked, whether he acknowledges himſelf to be an officer or ſoldier (as the caſe may happen) in the —— regiment? Should he deny it, if an officer, his commiſſion is read, or the paymaſter depoſes he has received pay as ſuch, or evidence is brought to prove he has been muſtered.

If a private ſoldier or non-commiſſion officer, his atteſtation is produced, or proof that he has regularly received pay as ſuch.

The priſoner being thus proved amenable to the court, the names of the members are read to him, that he may challenge any of them, giving his reaſons for ſuch challenge; ſhould they appear ſufficient, another member is appointed; otherwiſe the objection is over-ruled by the court: the charge is next read, and the priſoner required to plead, guilty or not guilty; if he pleads guilty, the judge-advocate enters ſuch a plea, and proceeds to collect from the different members the puniſhment allotted to the crime; if the perſon pleads not guilty, the judge-advocate proceeds to call evidence in ſupport of the charge, which he, as official proſecutor, examines, taking down the ſubſtance of the depoſition of each witneſs, except where the words contribute to the offence, in which caſe he takes it down verbatim, as ſpoken by the evidence; having finiſhed the examination of a witneſs, and taken it down, he reads it aloud, aſking firſt the evidence, then the priſoner and the court, whether they are ſatisfied with it, as expreſſing the meaning of the deponent.

The judge-advocate having aſked ſuch queſtions as he thinks ſufficient, next enquires of the court whether they would aſk the evidence any further queſtions; the ſame is to be repeated to the priſoner, who has a right to croſs-queſtion every evidence produced in ſupport of the proſecution. The proſecution being cloſed, the priſoner is put upon his defence, and where many evidences have been examined, or the charge contains many articles, is frequently indulged with a day to prepare it, the court adjourning for that time.

The court having met, the priſoner ſtates his defence, and calls his evidence to prove the facts there alledged; theſe witneſſes he may, if he thinks proper, examine himſelf, after which the judge advocate and court may croſs-queſtion them.

The judge-advocate, if he chooſes, here makes a reply to any objections made to the evidence for the proſecution, but no new matter muſt be adduced; in this caſe the priſoner has a right to a rejoinder.

All the evidence for the priſoner muſt be taken down by the judge-advocate, with the ſame care and precautions as were obſerved in the depoſitions ſupporting the proſecution.

The defence being cloſed, the judge-advocate collects the opinions of the members, whether the priſoner is guilty or not guilty, beginning with the youngeſt, the majority conſtituting the opinion of the court.

If the priſoner is found guilty, the next conſideration is, what puniſhment he ſhall receive, it being a maxim that when a priſoner is found guilty ſome puniſhment muſt be allotted. For this purpoſe the court conſiders under what article or articles of war the offence, or offences, immediately fall, many having ſpecific puniſhments allotted to them, ſuch as ſcandalous and infamous behaviour, breaking an arreſt, &c.; if under theſe, the puniſhment is already ſettled by his majeſty; but if the crime is adjudged to come under any article where the court have a diſcretionary power of puniſhment, the judge-advocate collects the opinions, beginning as before with the youngeſt member, and takes down the deciſion of the majority as the opinion of the court; obſerving that, in a ſentence of death, there muſt be the concurrence of at leaſt two thirds of the members.

In caſes of corporal puniſhment, it is doubted whether thoſe members who have voted the priſoner not guilty can, with propriety, afterwards vote as to the number of laſhes he is to receive, as it ſeems, prima facie, aſſigning puniſhment to an innocent man; but to this it is anſwered, that by voting for a very ſmall number of laſhes, they may effectually operate towards mitigating a ſentence which, by their preceding opinions, they muſt eſteem unjuſt.

BEFORE I conclude this head, I cannot avoid mentioning a ſingular circumſtance recorded in the report of the committee of the houſe of commons, in 1746, before alluded to; this was to oblige an officer, who had been tried by a court-martial, to pay the expences of the proſecutor, amounting to 54l. 1s. 6d. which ſum was by the commanding officer of the regiment (who was alſo the proſecutor) ordered to be ſtopped by the agent, out of a balance due to the ſaid officer; upon his filing a bill in chancery the demand was dropped; the propriety of this demand being inveſtigated by the committee, it was by the judge-advocate, and a variety of competent witneſſes, declared totally unprecedented.

CHAPTER VII.

Of Military Rewards.

THE military rewards of antient times were generally donations of land, according to the rank of the perſon to be rewarded; the eſtates ſo granted were held by military ſervices: William the Conqueror, ſoon after his acceſſion to the crown, was extremely profuſe in his grants of lordſhips and manors to moſt of his Norman followers, dividing among them great part of the poſſeſſions of thoſe Engliſh Barons who had ſided with Harold againſt him.

THE unſettled and turbulent reigns of many of the ſucceeding kings, with the broils between them and their barons, both furniſhed employment for ſoldiers, and a ſufficient number of forfeitures wherewith amply to gratify them.

IN proceſs of time, as the value of lands became better known, and government more ſettled, military rewards of lands were neither ſo great nor common, but then they were eked out by honours; ſuch as being made a banneret, or having additions to their armorial bearings; a matter in thoſe days of no ſmall eſtimation; and although the long and bloody diſpute between the houſes of York and Lancaſter cauſed many of the great eſtates of this kingdom frequently to change their proprietors, yet the guerdons of that time ſeem to have been either annuities, or preſents of ſmall ſums of money.

IN the reign of King Edward IV. we find two grants to private ſoldiers for their good behaviour and ſufferings; the firſt to one John Sclatter, to whom that king granted an annuity of four marks for the loſs of his hand at the battle of Wakefield, payable out of the rent of a mill, called Lownes' Mill; the other to Rauf Veſtynden, of an annuity of ten pounds per annum, by letters patent under the great

ſeal, till rewarded with an office, " for the good and agreeable ſervice which he did unto us (ſays the patent), in berying and holdyng of of our ſtandard of the black bull, at the batayl of Sherborne, in Elmett (q)."

By the ſtatute of the 43d of Queen Elizabeth, the majority of the juſtices of the peace in their Eaſter ſeſſion had power to charge every pariſh towards a weekly relief of maimed ſoldiers and mariners, ſo that no pariſh paid weekly above ten pence, nor under two pence; nor any county, which conſiſted of above fifty pariſhes, to pay above ſix pence, one pariſh with another; which ſums ſo taxed were to be aſſeſſed in every pariſh by the pariſhioners, or (in default) by the church-wardens and conſtables, or (in their default) by the next juſtice or juſtices of peace.

The conſtables and church-wardens of every pariſh had power to levy the tax of every perſon refuſing to pay it, by diſtreſs and ſale; and (on their default) the ſaid juſtice or juſtices next adjoining.

The tax being thus levied, the conſtables and church-wardens were to deliver it quarterly (ten days before every quarter-ſeſſion) to the high-conſtable of their diviſion, who were to deliver it over to the treaſurers of the county at the ſame quarter-ſeſſions.

The treaſurers to be ſubſidy-men, viz. of 10l. in land, or 15l. in goods, and not to continue in their office above one year, rendering up their accounts yearly at Eaſter ſeſſion, or within ten days after, to their ſucceſſors.

The officer, his executors, &c. that fail in payment of the ſums levied, to forfeit, viz. the church-wardens or conſtables 20s. and the high conſtable 40s. which the treaſurers had power to levy (by diſtreſs and ſale) in augmentation of their ſtock.

The treaſurer (or his executor, &c.) that had been negligent to execute his office, or to render an account within the time above limited, to be fined by the juſtices of the peace in their ſeſſion, 5l. at leaſt.

(q) Rott. Parl. in ann.

The maimed ſoldier or mariner who was preſt, to repair (if he was able to travel) to the treaſurer of the county where he was preſt; if he were not preſt, then to the treaſurer of the county where he was born, or where he laſt dwelt by the ſpace of three years, at his election; but if he was not able to travel, then to the treaſurer of the county where he landed.

He was to bring to any of the treaſurers aforeſaid a certificate under the hand and ſeal of the chief commander, or of the captain under whom he had ſerved, containing the particulars of his hurts and ſervices; which certificate was to be alſo allowed by the muſter-maſter, or the receiver-general of the muſter-rolls, under one of their hands.

Upon ſuch a certificate, the treaſurers aforeſaid might allow him relief to maintain him until the next quarter-ſeſſion, at which the major part of the juſtices might allow him a penſion, which the treaſurers were to pay him quarterly, until it was revoked or altered by the ſaid juſtices; and this allowance to him that had not born offices might not exceed 10l., to an officer under a lieutenant 15l., to a lieutenant 20l.

When ſoldiers or mariners arrived far from the place where they were to receive relief, the treaſurers to give them relief and teſtimonial, whereby they might paſs from treaſurer to treaſurer, until they came to the place required. And this to be done upon the bare certificate of the commander and captain, although they had not as yet obtained any allowance thereof from the ſaid muſter-maſter, or receiver-general of the muſter-rolls.

The treaſurers to regiſter the receipts and diſburſements, and enter the names of the parties relieved, and alſo the certificate, by warrant whereof the diſburſements were made; the muſter-maſter alſo, or receiver aforeſaid, to regiſter the names of the parties, and the certificates by him allowed; and the treaſurer returning, or not allowing the muſter-maſter's certificate, thereupon to ſubſcribe or endorſe the cauſe of his non-allowance.

Juſtices of peace in ſeſſion have power to fine a treaſurer that

wilfully refuſeth to give relief; which any two of them (appointed by the reſt) may levy by diſtreſs and ſale of goods.

A SOULDIER or mariner that begs, or counterfeits a certificate, to ſuffer puniſhment as a common rogue, and to loſe his penſion if he had any.

THE ſurpluſage of this contribution to be employed by the major part of the juſtices in ſeſſions upon charitable uſes, according to the ſtatutes made for the relief of the poor, and puniſhment of rogues.

IN corporations, the juſtices there to put this act in execution, and not the juſtices of the county, and were liable to fines, as well as other juſtices, if they miſuſed their power therein, and might appoint a collector of this tax, who ſhould have the power, and be ſubject to the penalties limited by this act, to high conſtables of the counties.

THE forfeitures accruing by this act to be employed as the ſurpluſage aboveſaid, or otherwiſe kept in augmentation of the ſtock, as the major part of the juſtices in ſeſſion ſhould direct.

WHEN out of the county where the party was preſt, a fit penſion could not be ſatisfied, it was to be ſupplied by the counties where he was born, or where he laſt dwelt by the ſpace of three years.

THIS act not to prohibit the city of London to make a tax (if need require), differing from that above limited; ſo that no pariſh paid above 3s. weekly, nor above nor under 12d. weekly one pariſh with another. This act (r), according to Blackſtone, is ſtill in force.

DURING the troubles in the reign of Charles I. this ordinance was made by the parliament for the relief of their maimed ſoldiers, &c. (s)

MONDAY, March 6th, 1643. Whereas diverſe well affected perſons have gone forth in the army raiſed by the parliament, for the defence of the parliament, religion, lives and liberties of the ſubjects of England, and in fight have received diverſe wounds and maims in their bodies, whereby they are diſabled to relieve themſelves by their uſual labours; and diverſe others have loſt their lives in the ſaid ſervice,

---

(r) WINGATE's Abridgement of the Statutes.

(s) SEE Ruſhworth.

whereby they have left their wives and children deſtitute of relief to ſupport and ſuſtain them; the lords and commons aſſembled in parliament, taking the ſame into their pious and charitable conſideration, and having relieved diverſe of them here at London, with ſome ſmall relief for their preſent ſubſiſtence, but finding that that courſe cannot be held for any continuance of time without many inconveniences, they have thought fit, and do hereby ordain, that every pariſh within the kingdom of England, wherein any ſuch perſons, either maimed or ſlain, did laſt inhabit before their going forth into the ſaid ſervice, ſhall raiſe a competent ſtock of money, by way of aſſeſſment, upon the inhabitants of the ſeveral pariſhes, for the relief of the ſaid maimed ſoldiers, widows, and fatherleſſe children of the ſlain perſons; and that the church-wardens, collectors for the poor, conſtables, tything-men, or any two of them, within any of the ſaid ſeverall pariſhes, ſhall hereby have power and authority to aſſeſſe, levie and collect, ſo much upon the ſeveral inhabitants of their ſeveral pariſhes as they, in their diſcretions, ſhall think fit and neceſſary for the relief of the ſaid maimed ſouldiers, widows, and fatherleſſe children, and to diſtribute the ſame according to the ſeveral neceſſities of the ſaid poor people; and ſhall once every year, at the ſeveral quarter ſeſſions holden for the county, or for any borrough or town corporate that hold any ſeſſions wherein ſuch aſſeſſment or collection is to be made, and in their particular accounts, both of their aſſeſſments, collections, and diſburſements, there to be recorded. And if any ſhall refuſe to pay according to the ſaid aſſeſſment, the ſaid aſſeſſors ſhall hereby have power to diſtrain the goods or chattels of all ſuch perſons as ſhall ſo refuſe, for the ſatisfaction of the ſaid aſſeſſment, and ſhall and may certifie the names to the committee of the houſe of commons for examinations, who ſhall have power to ſend for them as delinquents; and to the end that the deceipt which may be endeavoured in the due proſecution of this ordinance may be prevented, it is further hereby ordained that all ſuch ſoldiers who have been maimed in the ſervice of the parliament aforeſaid, as alſo all ſuch widdows and fatherleſs children whoſe huſbands and fathers have been ſlain in the ſaid ſervice,

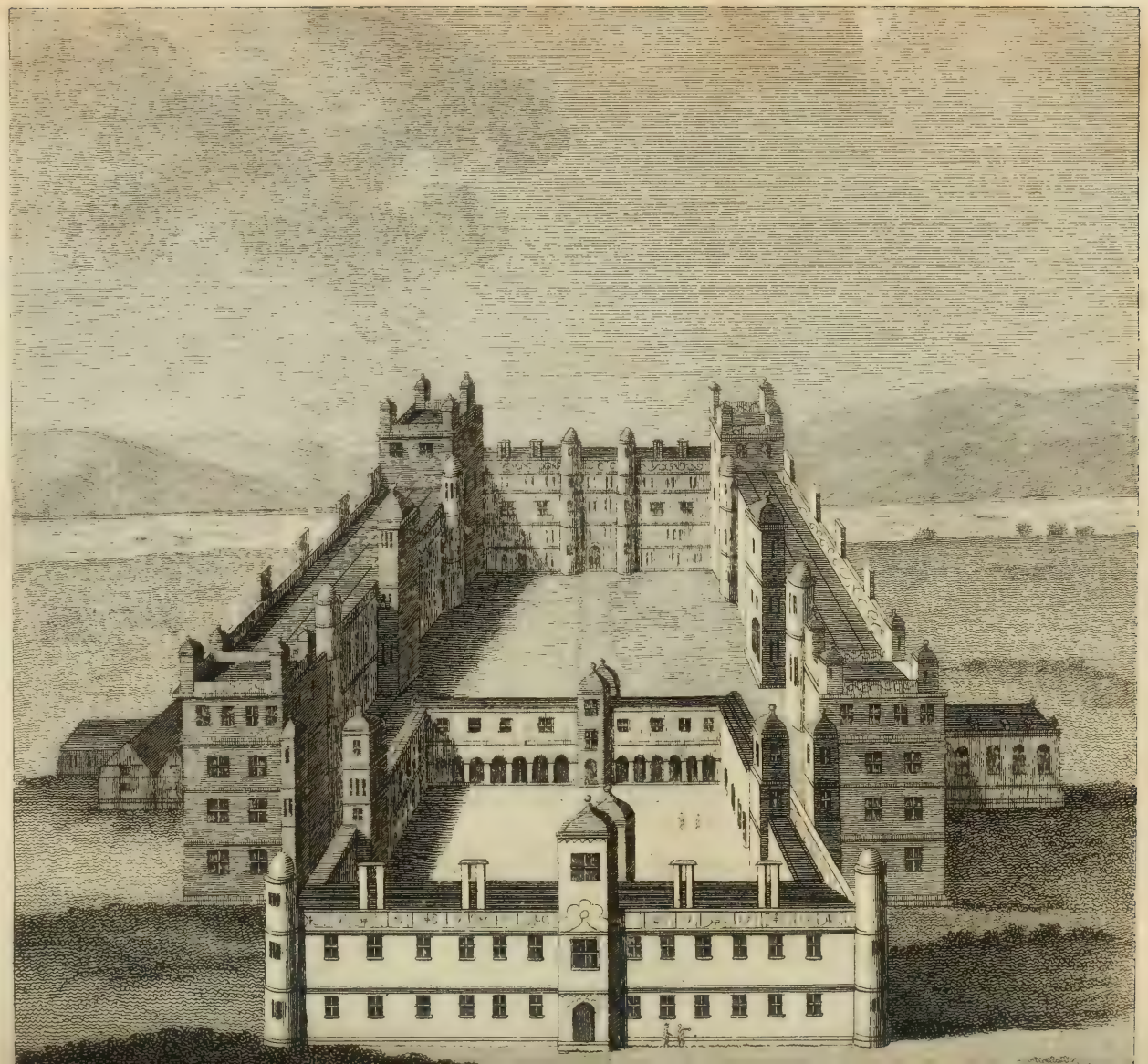
or ſhall die of any hurt received in the ſaid ſervice, ſhall bring unto the ſaid aſſeſſors a certificate under the hand of the colonell, or under the hand of ſome other commander, or clerk of the band of that regiment wherein the ſaid ſouldiers, or ſlain perſons, did formerly ſerve, of the truth of their being maimed or ſlain in the ſaid ſervice, which ſhall be a ſufficient warrant for the ſaid aſſeſſors to make and levie ſuch aſſeſſments as aforeſaid.

By the ſtatute of the 12th of King Charles II. chap. 16, all officers and ſoldiers who were under the command of the captain-general of the king's forces on the 25th of April, 1660, and had not ſince deſerted the ſervice, or refuſed to take the oaths of ſupremacy and allegiance, might exerciſe any handycraft or trade exerciſed about manufactures, in manner following, viz. ſuch as had been apprentices might exerciſe ſuch trades as they were bound to, though they ſerved not out their time, with like immunities as if they had; and all others, ſuch trades as they were apt and able for, in the towns and places within the ſeveral counties where they were born; and if impleaded or indicted for the ſame, they might plead the general iſſue, and ſhould have double coſts if a verdict paſſed againſt the proſecutor; or if he was nonſuited or diſcontinued. Judges and jurors were to take notice of this act.

The ſervice aforeſaid was to be proved by a certificate under the hand and ſeal of ſome field-officer, and two commiſſion-officers of the regiment where the party ſerved, or ſome general officer of the army, certifying his knowledge of ſuch ſervice; the ſaid certificate to be proved by one witneſs, or for default of ſuch certificate, the ſervice to be proved by the oaths of two witneſſes.

If any perſon produced a falſe certificate he was to ſuffer impriſonment, not exceeding ſix months, and to loſe the benefit of this act. Another act was paſſed in the 13th year of this reign for the relief of ſuch maimed ſoldiers and officers as had ſerved King Charles I. in his wars.

Foremost among the military rewards of modern times ſtands Chelſea College or Hoſpital, and the out-penſions from that eſtabliſh-



ment; inſtitutions that do honour to the founder, and to the nation; and by holding out to our ſoldiery the proſpect of a comfortable retirement in their old age, encourage them to encounter death, wounds, hardſhips, fatigues, and the ravages of unwholeſome climates, for the ſervice of their king and country.

This building ſtands on the northern bank of the river Thames, and was originally begun by King James I. in the fifth year of his reign, for a college to conſiſt of a number of learned divines, who being amply furniſhed with books, and all other neceſſaries and conveniencies of life, and exempt from all worldly cares, might devote their whole time and abilities to the ſtudy and teaching of controverſial divinity, eſpecially thoſe points in diſpute between the churches of England and Rome; and be able not only to convince the deceived, but alſo to eſtabliſh the timorous and doubting in the principles held by the proteſtant churches; for this purpoſe the king appointed and incorporated the following provoſt and fellows, by the title of King James's College, in Chelſea:

Mathew Sutcliff, Dean of Exeter, Provoſt.
John Overal, Dean of St. Paul's.
Thomas Norton, Dean of Wincheſter.
Richard Field, Dean of Glouceſter.

Robert Abbot, John Spenſer,
Miles Smith, William Covitt,
John Howſon, John Layfield,
Benjamin Charriort, Martin Fotherby,
John Boys, Richard Bret,
Peter Lilly, Francis Burley,
} Doctors of Divinity.

William Hellier, Archdeacon of Barnſtable.
John White, Fellow of Manchester College.
William Camden Clarencieux,
John Haywood, Doctor of Law,
} Hiſtorians.

This corporation he endowed by his letters patent, with the reverſion of certain lands in Chelſea, then under leaſe to Charles earl

of Nottingham, in which was thirty years to come, and authorized them to receive of his loving ſubjects lands not exceeding, in the whole, the yearly value of 3000l.; and it being thought by many judicious perſons, that to bring water into London would produce a great and laſting revenue, his majeſty likewiſe procured an act of parliament, authorizing the corporation of the provoſt and fellows of Chelſea College to bring water from the river Lea to the city of London, by cutting through any man's land they might find neceſſary, on paying to the proprietor a reaſonable compenſation for the damage.

The corporation having agreed with the Earl of Nottingham for the term of his leaſe, at the rent of ſeven pounds ten ſhillings per annum, King James himſelf laid the firſt ſtone of the intended College in a piece of ground of ſix acres, called, Thames Shot, and gave them a licence to take from Windſor Foreſt the timber neceſſary to complete it: the building, however, for want of money, went on ſlowly; and before an eighth part of the model was executed it ſtood ſtill, the whole of their ready money, to the amount of 3000l., being expended.

It remained in this ſtate for ſome years; but at length the king, to advance ſo good a work, ſent his letters, dated A. D. 1616, to the archbiſhop of Canterbury, requiring him to ſtir up all the clergy of his province to contribute towards it; in conſequence of which collections were made in pariſhes of England, but their produce being but ſmall, was ſwallowed up by the fees and collectors, ſo that very little came to the hands of the provoſt; the building therefore was ſtopped, and the project of the water-works came to nothing.

About this time Dr. Sutcliff, the firſt provoſt, dying, he, as an example to others, bequeathed towards the finiſhing this work four conſiderable farms, viz. Kingſton, in Stavarton; Hazard, in Harberton; Appleton, in Churchton; and Kramerland, in Stoke Rivers; all in the county of Devon; beſides the benefit of an extent on a ſtatute of 4000l. acknowledged by Sir Lewis Stewkley, &c. but his example not being followed, nor any other bequeſts or donations accruing, the building ſtopped for the preſent, and after ſome time was laid aſide

as impracticable, and the eſtates bequeathed by Dr. Sutcliffe, except the farm called Krameland, were returned to his heirs; the corporation was nevertheleſs kept up during the life of King James, and three provoſts and divers fellows ſucceſſively appointed to fill up the vacancies that happened in that time: it continued thus in a languiſhing ſtate till the troubles under King Charles I., when all thoughts of its completion were laid aſide: the foundation being repreſented by the fanaticks as intended for the promotion, rather than the extermination of the Roman Catholick religion.

After the reſtoration, King Charles II. wanting a convenient hoſpital for the reception of ſick, maimed, and ſuperannuated ſoldiers, converted the unfiniſhed buildings of this college to that uſe; whence it has ſtill occaſionally retained the title of "the College:" he accordingly began to erect his royal hoſpital on this ſpot, but did not complete it; it was carried on during the ſhort reign of his ſucceſſor King James II. and finiſhed in the reign of King William and Queen Mary, by that celebrated architect Sir Chriſtopher Wren.

The whole ſtructure forms a prodigious range of buildings; the front, towards the North, opens into a ſpace planted with trees, and laid out in walks for the penſioners; the South front into a ſquare, beyond which are gardens that extend to the Thames, affording not only a view of that fine river, but alſo of the county of Surrey beyond it; in the centre of this edifice, is a pediment ſupported by four columns, over which is a handſome turret, and underneath it an opening, which leads through the building; one ſide of this entrance is a chapel, which has an altar-piece of the reſurrection, painted by Sebaſtian Ricci: on the other ſide of the entrance is the hall, where all the penſioners dine in common; the officers by themſelves; in this hall is the picture of King Charles II. on horſeback, with ſeveral other pieces as large as the life, deſigned by Verrio, and finiſhed by Cook: the wings which extend Eaſt and Weſt join the chapel and hall to the North, and are open towards the Thames on the South: theſe are near three hundred and ſixty feet in length, and about eighty feet in breadth; they are three ſtories high, and the rooms ſo well

diſpoſed that nothing can be more perfect: on the front of the inner ſquare is a colonade, extending along the ſide of the chapel and hall; over which, upon the cornice, is the following inſcription:

IN SUBSIDIUM ET LEVAMEN EMERITORUM SENIO BELLOQUE FRACTORUM, CONDIDIT CAROLUS II. AUXIT JACOBUS II. PERFECERE GULIELMUS ET MARIA, REX ET REGINA, MDCXC.

In the midſt of the quadrangle is a ſtatue of King Charles II. in the ancient Roman dreſs, ſtanding on a marble pedeſtal: there are ſeveral buildings adjoining that form two other large ſquares, and conſiſt of apartments for the officers and ſervants of the houſe, for old and wounded officers of horſe and foot, and the infirmary for the ſick; an air of neatneſs and elegance appears in all theſe buildings; they are of brick and ſtone, and on which ſide ſoever they are viewed there ſeems a diſpoſition of the parts, perfectly ſuited to the purpoſes of its conſtruction, that is, for the reception of a great number of men, and their accommodation, with all neceſſary conveniencies. The expence of erecting this ſtructure amounted, as it is ſaid, to 150,000l. and the extent of the ground is above forty acres.

In the wings are ſixteen wards, having in each ward twenty-ſix beds; theſe afford accommodations for above four hundred men, beſides thoſe contained in the other buildings: the penſioners conſiſt of ſuperannuated or diſabled ſoldiers, who have been more than twenty years in the ſervice, or have loſt ſome limb in an engagement; they are clothed every two years; their uniform is red lined with blue; they are alſo provided with all other neceſſaries, diet, waſhing, and lodging; the ſalary of the governor is 500l. per annum, that of the lieutenant-governor 250l., the major 150l., and the adjutant 100l.; there are alſo many other civil and military officers, clerks, domeſtics, and tradeſmen (t); the number of penſioners in the houſe is in gene-

(t) It is a melancholy conſideration, that among the many ſuperannuated quarter-maſters, ſerjeant-majors, and ſerjeants in and about that hoſpital, none can be found worthy and able to fill up the inferior offices of the houſe, or to be employed as artificers to it; were there any properly qualified to be found among them, it is not to be credited that theſe

ral eſtimated at about four hundred; theſe have a weekly allowance of eight pence for their pocket-money.

As the houſe is conſidered as a garriſon, a regular guard is mounted every day, and they have prayers morning and evening in the chapel performed by two chaplains, each of whom has a ſalary of 100l. per annum: the phyſician, comptroller, ſecretary, deputy, treaſurer, ſteward and ſurgeon have alſo 100l. a year each, and many other officers have conſiderable incomes by perquiſites; indeed theſe ſerve to ſwell the expence to its preſent enormous ſum, which is ſaid to amount to near thirty pounds per man for every invalid ſubſiſted there; beſides theſe there are a great number of out-penſioners, who are allowed 7l. 12s. 6d. a year each (u); theſe expences are defrayed

---

theſe appointments would be beſtowed on gentlemen's valet de chambres, or other diſcharged domeſtics, which is ſaid to be ſometimes the caſe; as the perſons who have the diſpoſal of thoſe places muſt well know how few rewards are in ſtore for the inferior ranks of military men, particularly thoſe above mentioned, and yet it is they who are in a great meaſure the nerves and ſinews of our armies, who bear the brunt of the battle and fatigues of the day; to rob them of their right in this charity is peculiarly cruel, as it is in part the produce of their own money; ſeveral of the places, though of humble denomination, and ſmall nominal ſalary, would be conſidered by many married ſubalterns as a noble proviſion for themſelves and families.

(u) The out-penſion was for a long time a very great aſſiſtance to recruiting; it being conſidered, particularly in the North, as a comfortable proviſion for old age, which every man might obtain by twenty years' faithful ſervice; but an injudicious piece of œconomy put in practice about the year 1777, has taken away much of its attractions; this was a general call of all out-penſioners whatſoever, without any exception to want of limbs, or extreme old age: they were indeed ordered to aſſemble at the chief towns of their reſpective counties; but nevertheleſs many hundreds of them came thirty, and even forty miles from their homes; by which they were obliged to anticipate their penſions, and become beggars the remainder of their lives: ſuch as could not walk, or had no legs, came in carts, wheelbarrows, and upon jack-aſſes, begging through every village they paſſed; when arrived at their rendezvous, no ſubſiſtence was given them, nor lodgings or quarters provided for them; they were therefore literally dying for want in the ſtreets: after being examined by field-officers appointed for that purpoſe, a very few were found any way fit for ſervice, and indeed moſt of thoſe were diſcharged by the commanding-officers of the regiments to which they were ſent; the remainder were diſmiſſed to get home as they could, without ſubſiſtence,

by a poundage, deducted out of the pay of the army, with one day's pay ſtopped from every officer and ſoldier in the ſervice, and in caſe of a deficiency, it is ſupplied by parliament.

The half-pay is another military reward, ſeemingly of modern date, as we do not meet with it till after the revolution.

It was a long conteſted point, whether the half-pay was to be conſidered as a retaining fee, or a reward for paſt ſervices; a queſtion involving greater conſequences than are at firſt apparent; if it is a retaining fee, it may at any time be withdrawn, and whilſt received would render the receiver ſubject to military commands, and the articles of war; indeed ſo it was interpreted in the year 1715, when ſome half-pay officers, who had engaged in the rebellion of that year, being taken, were tried by a general court-martial for deſertion, convicted, and executed; this was meant as an example to half-pay officers, and a proof of their being liable to martial law; as otherwiſe thoſe gentlemen might with undoubted propriety have been tried by the common law as rebels (x): on the other hand, if half-pay is a reward for paſt ſervices, it is by many perſons doubted whether it can with juſtice be taken away, or with-held, any more than the

---

ence, or quarters by the way, exhibiting ſuch a picture of military miſery as cannot be deſcribed, but which gave a wound to recruiting that will not ſoon be healed; application was made by ſeveral officers for ſome allowance to theſe miſerable wretches, but none could be allowed. No reflection is here meant on the parties who promoted or ordered this expedient; it is only mentioned to prevent a like error in future.

(x) "With regard to the priſoners taken at Preſton, ſome half-pay officers being found among them, a court-martial was held at Preſton, on the 28th of November, to try the following perſons as deſerters: the Lord Charles Murray, a younger ſon of the Duke of Athol; Major Nairn and Captain Lockhart, brother to Lockhart of Cornworth, the author of the Memoirs of Scotland; Nairn and Lockhart had belonged to Lord Mark Kerr's regiment; Captain Shaftoe to Colonel Frank's; Enſign Erſkine to Preſton's; and Enſign Dalzel to Lord Orkney's: the five firſt were found guilty, and ſentenced to be ſhot; but Dalzel was acquitted as to the crime of deſertion, upon his proving that he had reſigned his commiſſion ſome time before he engaged in the rebellion; the Lord Charles Murray was reſpited till further orders; but the others were, on the 8th of December, executed." *Tindal's Continuation of Rapin*, *vol.* 17, *page* 484. Octavo ed.

day's wages of a huſbandman who has performed the ſervice for which he was hired; in ſeveral new regiments it was ſtipulated previouſly to the raiſing them at the expence of the officers, that they, the officers, on the reduction of their corps, ſhould be entitled to half-pay; whence it has been ſuppoſed that theſe gentlemen hold their half-pay by virtue of a contract with the crown, in which they have performed their part: a late determination reſpecting half-pay officers, by which they are declared not amenable to a court-martial, ſeems rather to favour the opinion of its being a reward for paſt ſervices.

THE regulation prohibiting a half-pay officer to hold that allowance with any other employment under government, ſeems ſomewhat extraordinary, as an officer on full pay, at the time when his ſervices are likely to be wanted, may hold as many offices as he has intereſt to obtain.

THE firſt time we meet with the allowance of half-pay is in a vote of the houſe of commons, Tueſday, 18th day of January, 1697; wherein it is reſolved, that it is the opinion of a committee of the whole houſe, that proviſion be made for giving half-pay to the commiſſion-officers, his majeſty's natural-born ſubjects of England, of horſe, dragoons, and foot, diſbanded, and to be diſbanded, till the officers ſhall be fully paid off and cleared, and be otherwiſe provided for; and it was ordered, that a liſt be laid before that houſe of the names of the commiſſion-officers, his majeſty's natural-born ſubjects of this kingdom, who are to have half-pay, in purſuance of the ſaid reſolution (y).

As the officer when diſbanded is rewarded with half-pay, ſo the private ſoldier in the cavalry has his horſe, and an allowance for his ſword given him, with fourteen days' * pay to carry him home; the

---

(y) THE half-pay to the different officers is given in the Chapter reſpecting the Pay of the Troops, p. 315, of the firſt volume.

* THIS fourteen days' ſubſiſtence is allowed to any part of England; to any part of Scotland the allowance is twenty-one days, and to any part of Ireland twenty-eight days' ſubſiſtence.

infantry have likewiſe the fourteen days' pay, and had alſo when they wore ſwords an allowance for them; but ſwords were in general left off in the battalion companies ever ſince the year 1745, and about the year 1762 by the grenadiers; when the militia were firſt raiſed, ſwords were iſſued to them from the Tower.

THE penſions granted by his majeſty to the indigent widows of officers killed, or dying in the ſervice, is another military reward: the fund for it ariſes from the pay of two fictitious men, borne on the muſter-roll of every troop or company in the army on the Britiſh eſtabliſhment; his majeſty's regulations will beſt deſcribe the particulars of this bounty.

GEORGE R.

Orders and Inſtructions to be obſerved in the Payment of our Royal Bounty to the Widows of Officers who have, or ſhall be killed, or die in our Service; and likewiſe in the Payment of the Penſion that hath been made, or ſhall hereafter be made by Parliament, to the Widows of ſuch reduced Officers who have, or ſhall die on our Britiſh Eſtabliſhment of Half-pay.

I. WE do hereby declare it to be our intention, that the penſions which we are pleaſed to allow to the ſaid widows, ſhall be according to the following regulations, by virtue of the commiſſion, by which their reſpective huſbands did receive pay, and not by brevets, except we ſhall think fit in any caſe expreſsly to direct otherwiſe.

REGULATION.

	Per annum. £.		Per annum. £.
To a colonel's widow -	50	Cornet's or enſign's -	16
Lieutenant colonel's -	40	Chaplain's - - -	16
Major's - - -	30	Adjutant's - - -	16
Captain's - - -	26	Quarter-maſter's - -	16
Lieutenant's - -	20	Surgeon's - - -	16

II. THAT ſuch widows ſhall be entitled to receive our bounty, intended for widows whoſe huſbands have been killed, or died in our

ſervice, as ſhall be named in a liſt or liſts under our royal ſign manual, containing the names and qualitie of all ſuch widows whom we ſhall think fit objects for this our bounty; with the reſpective penſions or allowances, which it is our pleaſure you ſhall pay them from time to time as the ſame ſhall grow due.

III. That every widow who ſhall hereafter claim our bounty ſhall, within convenient time, produce to our ſecretary at war for the time being a certificate ſigned by the colonel, or in his abſence by the commanding officer and agent of the reſpective regiment in which her huſband ſerved, certifying to the beſt of their knowledge that ſuch widow was the real wife of the officer for whom they certify; in which certificate ſhall likewiſe be expreſſed the time when ſuch officer was killed, or died, and where, in our ſervice, as well as the manner of his death; which, together with the condition and circumſtances of the ſaid widow, we do hereby require to be laid before us by our ſaid ſecretary at war, in order to our ſignifying to you our directions under our ſign-manual.

IV. That no other widow ſhall be hereafter intitled to receive our bounty, until her pretenſions have been duly laid before us by our ſecretary at war, as aforeſaid, and we have ſignified to you our royal approbation thereof, under our royal ſign-manual, which ſhall be your ſufficient authority to pay ſuch penſion or allowance as ſhall be hereby directed.

V. That you ſhall not make any payment of this our royal bounty, to any other perſons or uſes whatſoever, without our particular warrant authorizing you ſo to do.

VI. That every widow before ſhe receives her penſion ſhall deliver you an affidavit, ſworn to by her before a juſtice of the peace, or other magiſtrate, that ſhe is a widow, and hath no other penſion or allowance from us, either in Great Britain or Ireland.

VII. That as any regiment which contributes towards the fund for this bounty ſhall be transferred to our kingdom of Ireland, the widows of any officers who did belong to ſuch regiment ſhall ceaſe to be paid, otherwiſe than in Ireland.

VIII. And we do hereby further declare it to be our intention, that the proviſion which hath been made, or ſhall hereafter be allowed by parliament to the widows of ſuch reduced officers who have, or ſhall die on our Britiſh eſtabliſhment of half-pay, ſhall be according to the before-mentioned regulations, in reſpect to the quality in which their reſpective huſbands did receive pay on our eſtabliſhment of half-pay at the day of ſuch death.

IX. That every widow who ſhall hereafter claim to be put on the eſtimate, annually delivered into parliament for widows of ſuch reduced officers of our land forces and marines who have died upon the eſtabliſhment of half-pay in Great Britain, ſhall bring and deliver to our ſecretary at war for the time being a certificate, ſigned by two or more creditable perſons, that ſhe is the widow of ſuch officer; that he did ſerve as an officer of the land forces before the 25th of December, 1716, and that ſhe was married to him before that time; in which certificate ſhall likewiſe be expreſſed in what quality her ſaid huſband died upon the eſtabliſhment of half-pay, and the time when ſuch officer died; and that to the beſt of their belief ſhe has ever ſince continued the widow of the ſaid officer, without any proviſion from the government either in Great Britain or Ireland; and every widow ſhall likewiſe make oath before one or more juſtice or juſtices of the peace to the truth of the ſaid certificate.

X. That every widow of a reduced officer, before ſhe receives her penſion, ſhall deliver you an affidavit, ſworn to by her before a juſtice of the peace, or other magiſtrate, that her huſband did ſerve as an officer of the land forces before the 25th of December, 1716, and that ſhe was married to him before that time; and that ſhe ſtill continues the widow of the ſaid officer, without any proviſion from the government, either in Great Britain or Ireland.

XI. That ſuch widows ſhall be entitled to receive the penſion intended for widows, whoſe huſbands have died on our eſtabliſhment of half-pay, as ſhall be named in a liſt or liſts under our royal ſign manual, containing the names and qualities of all ſuch widows for whom proviſion hath been made, or ſhall hereafter be made by par-

liament; which reſpective proviſion it is our pleaſure you ſhall pay them, according to ſuch liſt or liſts as aforeſaid.

XII. That timely application be made to the paymaſter-general of our guard, garriſons, and land-forces in Great Britain, and forces abroad, to have money ſufficient to diſcharge the enſuing four months payment of the reſpective penſions, or proviſions, directed by us as aforeſaid.

XIII. That once in every four months (if you ſhould have in your hands a ſufficient ſum for this uſe) you ſhall make payment of the reſpective penſion, or proviſions, directed by us as aforeſaid, without any deduction whatſoever, taking a receipt for the ſame, atteſted by one witneſs.

XIV. That in caſe any widow ſhall not appear in perſon to receive her penſion or proviſion, her attorney ſhall, before payment, produce the like affidavits ſworn to by the ſaid widow, with a certificate under the hand of the miniſter and churchwardens of the pariſh where ſuch widow inhabits or reſides, that ſhe is living, and, to the beſt of their knowledge, ſtill a widow.

XV. That as any of the ſaid widows ſhall die or marry again, their penſion or proviſion ſhall ceaſe and determine from the time of ſuch death or marriage.

XVI. That you carefully obſerve and follow all ſuch orders, inſtructions and directions, as we ſhall at any time give you under our ſign manual.

XVII. And we do hereby declare our further pleaſure to be, that 12d. for every 20s. which you ſhall receive and pay by virtue hereof, or any of our ſpecial warrants in that behalf, ſhall be allowed you for your expences, care, and pains in this ſervice, which ſhall not be deducted out of the penſions or proviſions paid by you, but the auditors of our impreſts are hereby required and authoriſed to allow you in your accounts in part of your diſcharge of the money by you, without any further or other warrant from us in this behalf, or your being ſubject to render any account for the ſame.

XVIII. And for your regular diſcharge of and from all ſums that

ſhall be received and paid by you for this uſe; we hereby direct and order, that annual accounts be kept by you of all your receipts and payments for the ſaid ſervice, and rendered upon oath to our auditors of our impreſts, or one of them, who are hereby required and authoriſed to certify and allow the ſame, upon producing to them, or one of them, our orders or warrants for the payments made by you, in purſuance of theſe our orders and inſtructions and receipts for the ſame, under the hands of the parties, or their attorneys or aſſigns, whoſe ſtate or certificate of your accounts we declare ſhall be, and be deemed from time to time, a full, ſufficient, and final diſcharge and quietus unto you, for all your receipts and payments, without your making or paſſing any other or further account to us in our exchequer, or otherwiſe, for the ſame; to all which orders and inſtructions you are hereby to conform and behave yourſelf accordingly, and for ſo doing this ſhall be your ſufficient warrant. Given at our court at Hampton-court, this 26th day of July, 1737, in the eleventh year of our reign.

By his Majeſty's command,
WILLIAM YOUNGE.

To our truſty and well-beloved
Edward Sainthill, Eſq.

SINCE the laſt edition of this work, an augmentation has taken place of the penſions to officers' widows. The new rates commenced from the 25th of December, 1798, and are as follows:

Rank.	Per annum. £.
Colonel's widow - - - - - -	80
Lieutenant Colonel's - - - - -	50
Major's - - - - - - -	40
Captain and captain lieutenant's - - - -	30
Lieutenant's - - - - - -	26
Second lieutenant, cornet, enſign, quarter-maſter, and adjutant's - - - - - -	20
Paymaſter of the regiment or diſtrict's - - -	26

Rank.	Per Annum. £.
Chaplain's	16
Surgeon of the regiment's	26
Staff ſurgeon and apothecary's	26
Phyſician and purveyor's	30
Aſſiſtant and veterinary ſurgeon's	20
Deputy purveyor, and hoſpital mate's	16

BESIDES the national proviſions for officers and ſoldiers before mentioned, there is, in the city of Hereford, an hoſpital of private endowment for ſuperannuated non-commiſſion officers and private ſoldiers, and antient ſervants of good character. It was founded about the year 1614, by Sir Thomas Coningſby, of Hampton Court, in the county of Hereford, on the ſite and out of the ruins of the convent of Black Friars.

THIS fraternity conſiſts of a corporal, chaplain, and ten ſervitors. Their weekly ſubſiſtence is four ſhillings and ten pence in money, beſides bread and beer. The corporals and ſervitors ought to be reſident in the hoſpital, and when regularly admitted cannot be diſplaced but for ſome crime. The vicar of Bodenham, for the time being, is always chaplain; his ſtipend is 30l. per annum.

THE qualifications of the perſons to be admitted as ſervitors are many, and relate to the county, ſervice, and profeſſion. As to the firſt, they muſt be natives of Shropſhire, Herefordſhire, or Worceſterſhire: their profeſſion military, either by ſea or land, for three years at leaſt; their ſervice ſeven years in one family.

OTHER qualifications are neceſſary for their continuance after admiſſion; theſe chiefly relate to good morals. If any perſon be guilty of immorality, he is firſt to be admoniſhed by the corporal and chaplain; for the ſecond offence his proviſions are withdrawn, and for the third he is expelled.

THE viſitatorial power is veſted in the commander, owner in fee of Hampton Court, who has the power of removing offenders after ſuch previous courſe taken, as is before directed, and not otherwiſe, and to nominate others in their room.

THERE is likewiſe a viſitatorial power veſted in the biſhop of Hereford for the time being, and of the juſtices of aſſize in their circuit, which takes place when the commander neglects to remove, by virtue of his own power, ſuch members as are guilty of immorality, proved by two lawful witneſſes before the chief magiſtrate of the city of Hereford: they have alſo authority to ſee that the intentions of the founder are complied with by the truſtees or poſſeſſors of the lands; but, to the honour of the commanders, theſe laſt-named viſitors have not been troubled for a long ſeries of years; the rules and inſtitutions eſtabliſhed by the founder having been invariably obſerved.

IT is ſomewhat remarkable, that this is almoſt the only private endowment by which the ſoldier is benefited; whilſt there is ſcarce any other profeſſion or trade, but ſome ſucceſsful member of their vocation has provided a comfortable retreat for a few of his antient and indigent brethren. No reflection is hereby meant to the military gentlemen who have every eſſential diſpoſition requiſite for doing the like, except the means; the profeſſion of arms being ſo far from enabling even thoſe of high rank to found hoſpitals, that it requires great œconomy to prevent their families becoming candidates for admiſſion into them.

CHAPTER VIII.

Of Military Puniſhments.

MILITARY puniſhments are divided into capital, loſs of member, corporal, pecuniary, degradatory, caſhiering, impriſonment, ſuſpenſion, and reprimand: of theſe ſome affect commiſſioned officers alone; ſome commiſſioned and non-commiſſioned officers and ſoldiers; and others the non-commiſſioned officers and ſoldiers only.

OF antient capital puniſhments I find only three; theſe were, beheading, hanging, and drowning: two of them, namely, beheading and hanging, occur in ſeveral of the ordonnances of war; we meet with drowning in the charter of King Richard I. only.

IN many inſtances where a corps of a conſiderable body of men were guilty of a crime for which the eſtabliſhed puniſhment was death, to prevent too great a weakening of the army the delinquents were decimated, that is, only every tenth man was taken; the common mode of decimation was this, a number of billets equal to that of the body to be decimated, were put into a helmet, every tenth billet being marked with the letter D, or ſome other character ſignifying death. The helmet was then ſhaken, in order to mix them, and the ſoldiers filing off ſingly from the right, paſſed by the commanding officer, before whom, on a table, ſtood the helmet: as they paſſed each drew a billet and preſented it to an officer placed to receive them. If the billet had the fatal mark, the ſoldier was ſeized and marched into the rear; if it proved a ſaving one, he continued his march, and fell in with the other men that had paſſed before him.

SOMETIMES corps were decimated by ranks, the right hand man of each rank being from his poſt devoted to ſuffer; the reaſon given for this determination, which, indeed, is not a very good one, was this;

" that as the right of every rank was a poſt of honour, it became the peculiar duty of the occupiers thereof, to ſhew a good example." An officer, deputed for this duty, went along each rank to the left, counting and turning out every tenth man; ſo that, in fact, this might as well be called decimating by files as by ranks.

In caſes where the number of offenders was ſmaller, or where only a few were condemned to ſuffer for example's ſake, the whole were ordered to caſt dice on the drum head, and their names and the number they threw were noted by the provoſt-martial; as many as it was ſettled ſhould ſuffer were then taken from among thoſe who had thrown the loweſt numbers; if any two happened to throw the ſame number, they threw again to ſettle the precedency between them. From a manuſcript in the Britiſh Muſeum it appears, that this method of caſting dice was practiſed in Ireland in the reign of King William III.

At preſent, and for at leaſt forty years paſt, the only capital puniſhments in uſe in the Britiſh Army in Europe (z) have been ſhooting and hanging; the manner of performing the firſt of theſe executions is generally as follows:

The royal approbation of the court-martial being notified to the commanding officer of the corps to which the criminal belongs, and the time when it is to be put in execution being ſpecified, an execution party is named, compoſed of pardoned deſerters, or perſons guilty of the ſame offence for which the party is to ſuffer; or if there are no men under theſe predicaments, the party is taken from the men next for duty, as they ſtand on the common roſter, and a ſteady non-commiſſion officer is choſen to command them. The priſoner is then brought from the provoſts, with his hands tied behind him, at-

(z) In the Eaſt Indies, the company's troops frequently inflict the ſentence of death by ſhooting the criminal from the mouth of a field piece, to which he is bound, his breaſt oppoſite the muzzle; this is both a military and a merciful death: I think, but am not certain, that it was adopted by Sir Eyre Coote, and uſed by him on ſome of the king's troops.

tended by the chaplain of the regiment, and followed by the execution party; in this manner he is led along the line guarded by a detachment of the regiment to which he belongs, or by one from the pickets of the army. Sometimes when there are only a few regiments in the camp, barracks, or quarters, they form a ſemi-circle at the place of execution, to which the priſoner is brought immediately without form.

On his arrival at the place of execution, after ſome ſhort prayers, a cap or handkerchief being drawn or tied over his eyes, he kneels down, and the execution party make ready, moving up within about ſix or ſeven yards of him, and on a ſignal given by him, two thirds of them preſent and fire; if he ſhould not be killed, as has ſometimes been the caſe, the reſerve ſtep up cloſe to him and put him out of his miſery. All the troops then march by the body, that by the example they may be deterred from a like offence. The recruits in particular are generally made to file off ſingly cloſe to it.

Hanging is generally performed on a kind of portable gallows, which is ſet up for the occaſion, and a ſpike driven into it, ſo that the ſufferer hangs with his feet very near the ground; a ſmall ſtool being ſet, he ſtands on it till the cord is fixed by a nooſe over the ſpike, and the ſtool being pulled away he is turned off. In one of the expeditions to the coaſt of France, the provoſt's man took his meaſure ſo ill, that a grenadier of the 72d regiment who was to ſuffer for a rape on a woman of ſeventy, on being turned off juſt touched the ground with his toes, and was actually after hanging ſome time in that ſtate taken down, till the ſpike was driven ſome inches higher, and then re-hanged (a).

Hanging is the puniſhment inflicted upon ſpies, generally after a ſhort enquiry before a general officer, by whoſe mandate I have known ſeveral executed in Flanders; they were generally hanged on

(a) In divers of the antient ordinances of war particular crimes are puniſhed with drawing and hanging; this was drawing the criminal on a hurdle or ſledge to the place of execution.

trees on eminences, that they might be ſeen at a diſtance, but ſo far out of the camp as not to be offenſive; their bodies were uſually left hanging.

THE loſs of limb or member as a military puniſhment has been long out of uſe, nor is it frequently found in the ancient ordinances of war. It is, indeed, mentioned by King Richard I. in whoſe charter it is enacted, that any one convicted by lawful witneſſes of having drawn his knife to ſtrike his fellow ſoldier, or of having drawn blood of him, ſhould loſe his hand; the loſs of the left ear was a puniſhment allotted to archers on foot, boys, ſervants to the ſoldiers, and other followers of the army, for riots or diſturbances in camp or quarters.

RESPECTING corporal puniſhments it may be neceſſary to obſerve, that they were not ſo common in our antient armies, as at preſent; private ſoldiers in thoſe days having ſome property, were puniſhed by forfeitures and fines. Soldiers of the preſent times having nothing but their bodies, can only be puniſhed corporally. Of corporal puniſhments, there are a great variety; but of theſe, only one could be inflicted on an officer, this was boring the tongue with a hot iron, for blaſphemy, a puniſhment that remained in force till the reign of Queen Anne.

RIDING the wooden horſe was a puniſhment formerly much in uſe, in different ſervices. The wooden horſe was formed of planks nailed together, ſo as to form a ſharp ridge or angle about eight or nine feet long; this ridge repreſented the back of the horſe; it was ſupported by four poſts or legs, about ſix or ſeven feet long, placed on a ſtand made moveable by trucks; to complete the reſemblance, a head and tail were added. The annexed plate will give a much better idea of it, than can be conveyed by words.

WHEN a ſoldier or ſoldiers were ſentenced by a court-martial, or ordered by the commanding officer of the corps, to ride this horſe, for both were practiſed, they were placed on the back with their hands tied behind them, and frequently, to increaſe the puniſhment, had muſkets tied to their legs, to prevent, as it was jocularly ſaid, their

horſe from kicking them off; this puniſhment being chiefly inflicted on the infantry, who were ſuppoſed unuſed to ride. At length riding the wooden horſe having been found to injure the men materially, and ſometimes to rupture them, it was left off. The remains of a wooden horſe was ſtanding on the parade at Portſmouth about the year 1760.

The picket was another corporal puniſhment chiefly uſed by the cavalry, and artillery, and in the former often inflicted by the order of the commanding officer, without the ſentence of a court-martial. The mode of inflicting it was thus: a long poſt being driven into the ground, the delinquent was ordered to mount a ſtool near it, when his right hand was faſtened to a hook in the poſt by a nooſe round his wriſt, drawn up as high as it could be ſtretched; a ſtump, the height of the ſtool, with its end cut to a round and blunt point, was then driven into the ground near the poſt before mentioned, and the ſtool being taken away, the bare heel of the ſufferer was made to reſt on this ſtump, which though it did not break the ſkin, put him to great torture; the only means of mitigation, was by reſting his weight on his wriſt, the pain of which ſoon became intolerable. Soldiers were frequently ſentenced to ſtand on the picket for a quarter of an hour. This, like the riding of the wooden horſe, has been for ſome time left off, it having lamed and ruptured many ſoldiers.

Whipping is almoſt the only corporal puniſhment now in uſe; this was formerly inflicted with ſwitches, but for theſe thirty years at leaſt, excepting running the gantelope, with what is called a cat of nine tails, being a whip with nine laſhes, of whip-cord, each laſh knotted with nine nots. This puniſhment is inflicted either by the ſoldiers or drummers of the regiment, according to the ſentence of the court-martial.

The gantelope was in caſes of theft, or ſome offence that affected the character or intereſt of the corps, and was practiſed two ways: in one called running the gantelope, the regiment was formed ſix deep, and the ranks opened and faced inwards; each man being furniſhed with a ſwitch, the offender, naked to the waiſt, was led through the

ranks, preceded by a ſerjeant, the point of whoſe reverſed halbert was preſented to his breaſt, to prevent his running too faſt: as he thus paſſed through the ranks, every ſoldier gave him a ſtroke. But this method being found inconvenient, and in many points objectionable, the offender was tied to four halberts in the ordinary way, three being placed in a triangle, and the fourth croſs two of them, to keep him on the outſide: in this ſituation the regiment filed off from the right and marched by, when they came near the halberts, a cat was given to the firſt man, who having given a ſtroke to the culprit, threw down the cat, and paſſed on; this was repeated by the whole regiment, each man giving him a laſh; this likewiſe being found objectionable, as degrading ſoldiers to executioners, has been likewiſe in a great meaſure left off, and the infliction of this puniſhment put into the hands of the drummers, under the inſpection of the drum-major, ſurgeon, and adjutant; the firſt to ſee the halberts are properly fixed, the cats in order, that each drummer does his duty and is properly relieved after having given twenty-five laſhes: the ſurgeon is to take care that the priſoner does not receive more laſhes than he is able to bear, without endangering his life, or injuring his conſtitution; and the adjutant to cauſe the ſentence of the court-martial to be properly inflicted, and to oblige the drum-major to make his drummers do their duty.

Imprisonment may in ſome meaſure be conſidered as a corporal puniſhment, and was formerly inflicted on officers and private men for different crimes and miſdemeanors, as may be ſeen in the different ordonances of war. But ſince the revolution it has in a great meaſure, if not totally, been left off with reſpect to officers; but ſoldiers are ſometimes by the ſentence of a court-martial confined for a ſhort time in the black-hole, or locked up in a bread and water houſe, that is, a place of confinement where they have no other nouriſhment but bread and water.

Pecuniary puniſhments were frequently allotted in our ancient military codes, but at preſent occur in a very few inſtances; certain offences are, by the mutiny act, made puniſhable with fines, but theſe are moſtly of a civil nature, and in addition to ſome other penalty;

as in the inſtance of an officer convicted of making or procuring falſe muſters, who beſides the puniſhment of caſhiering, and being incapacitated to ſerve his majeſty, is alſo to be fined fifty pounds; an officer embezzling military ſtores is to be caſhiered, and to forfeit an hundred pounds; and any pay-maſter, &c. detaining in his hands the pay of an officer or ſoldier for a month, is to be fined an hundred pounds, and diſcharged from his office; the poverty of the non-commiſſion officer and ſoldier make fines or other pecuniary puniſhments in a great meaſure impoſſible; there are, however, one or two inſtances where they are directed, particularly in caſes of a ſoldier's ſelling or ſpoiling any of his arms, clothing or accoutrements, in which caſes he may by the ſentence of a court-martial be put under ſtoppages for the replacing them, not exceeding the half his pay.

CASHEERING, or, as it is now generally ſpelt, caſhiering, mentioned as a puniſhment, ſignifies a diſhonourable diſmiſſion of an officer or ſoldier, and in the former admits of three degrees; the firſt is ſimply a diſmiſſion of an officer from his employment, by a letter from the ſecretary of war to him ſignifying that his majeſty has no farther occaſion for his ſervices, or by the ſentence of a court-martial, whereby he is ſentenced to be caſhiered *.

THE ſecond is diſmiſſing an officer from the ſervice, and rendering him incapable of ſerving for the future in any military capacity; a ſentence which ſeems rather an infringement on the royal prerogative; perhaps a declaration that the court deem him unworthy for the future to hold any ſuch office, might be a more unexceptionable mode of expreſſing their opinion.

THE third diſmiſſion with infamy, and degradation from the rank of a ſoldier and a gentleman; the execution of this ſentence is attended with many ignominious circumſtances, more terrible to a man of feel-

* ANOTHER mode of caſhiering an officer, has been practiſed this war (1800), particularly in the militia, called diſplacing; by which the officer is diſmiſſed from his regiment. This ſeems to differ in no reſpect from the ordinary mode of caſhiering, but in the ſmaller degree of ignominy that may be attached to it.

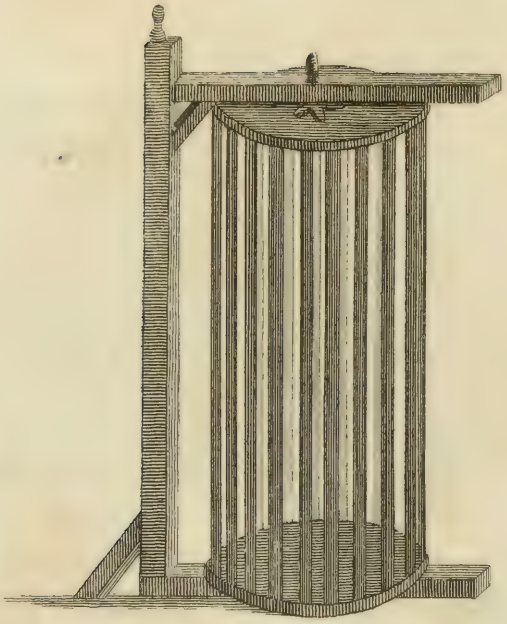
ing than death itſelf. A ſentence of this kind for cowardice was inflicted in the following manner on an officer of artillery, after the battle of Falkirk, in the rebellion of the year 1745. The line being ordered out under arms, the priſoner was brought to the head of the oldeſt brigade, completely accoutred, when his ſentence being read, his commiſſion was cancelled, his ſword broken over his head, his ſaſh cut in pieces and thrown into his face, and laſtly, the provoſt-martial's ſervant giving him a kick on the poſteriors, turned him out of the line. Somewhat ſimilar to this is the ceremony of diſmiſſing a ſoldier ſentenced to be drummed out of the regiment with a halter about his neck. The corporal puniſhment commonly accompanying this ſentence being over, and the regiment turned out, with or without arms, the priſoner is brought to the right of it, under an eſcort of a corporal and ſix men, with bayonets fixed: the halter is then put round his neck, and frequently a label on his back ſignifying his crime, a drummer then takes hold of the end of the rope, and leads him along the front, the drums following and beating the rogues march; when they have paſſed the left, the proceſſion moves to the rear, if in camp, or if in quarters, to the end of the town, where the drummer giving him a kick on the breech diſmiſſes him with the halter for his perquiſite.

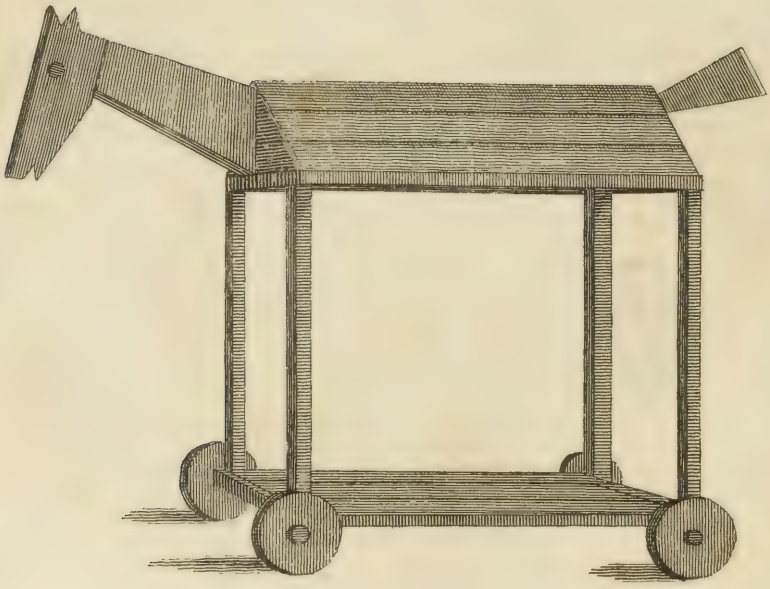
In ancient military authors we frequently meet with the term caſheering applied to private ſoldiers; this ſimply meant, as has been before obſerved, a diſhonourable diſmiſſion.

Degradation is a ſentence inflicted on non-commiſſion officers only, who before they can receive any corporal puniſhment except impriſonment, muſt be degraded to the ranks, or ſtation of a private ſoldier. In former times, ſo late as the reign of King Charles I. private ſoldiers for miſbehaviour in action were degraded to pioneers.

Suspension for a ſtated time, is another puniſhment inflicted on both commiſſion and non-commiſſion officers; during its continuation, commiſſion-officers are generally mulcted of their pay, and the non-commiſſion officers receive only that of private men; the remainder being given to the hoſpital.

A reprimand at the head of the regiment, is ſometimes ordered by a





MILITARY PUNISHMENTS.

court-martial, and ſometimes only in the preſence of the officers of the corps; this is generally given by one of the field officers; the uſual terms in which it is given, are ſomething like theſe: Captain, or lieutenant A. B. you have been tried for ———, and are by the ſentence of a general court-martial found guilty thereof, and ſentenced to be reprimanded at the head of the regiment; the diſagreeable taſk of doing it is aſſigned to me: I therefore do hereby reprimand you, and hope that it may prevent your falling again into the like error. Non-commiſſion-officers are ſometimes, though not frequently, ordered to be reprimanded.

In garriſons where martial-law prevails, the followers of an army are liable to military puniſhments; one formerly very common, for trifling offences, committed by petit ſutlers, jews, brawling-women, and ſuch-like perſons, was the whirligig; this was a kind of circular wooden cage, which turned on a pivot; and when ſet in motion, whirled round with ſuch an amazing velocity, that the delinquent became extremely ſick, and commonly emptied his or her body through every aperture: the print of it will thoroughly explain its ſtructure.

CHAPTER IX.

Of the Ranſom of Priſoners of War.

THE ranſom of priſoners of war, was one of the principal ſources of emolument to military men of ancient days, ſimilar to the prize-money of the preſent time, to the officers and ſeamen of the Royal Navy, many having thereby raiſed large fortunes; Sir Walter Manny in the reign of King Edward III. is ſaid to have gained 8000l. by priſoners of war in one campaign; but this right of ranſom was by cuſtom reſtricted to certain ranks, (b) and ſometimes particular perſons were excepted in the indentures, made between the king and the contracting ſoldier; (c) nor did the whole ranſom in any caſe

---

(b) THUS in the ordinances of war of Henry V. in the article reſpecting priſoners it is enacted, that if a priſoner ſhall be ſuperior to his captor, and ſhall have his ſovereign's leave to diſplay his ſtandard, or if he ſhall be of the blood royal, a duke, a marquis, or an earl, or a chief captain, then the ſaid priſoner to be the captive of the chief captain of that part of the army by which he was taken, who is to give a compenſation or reward to the original captor. An inſtance of the compenſation made for the caption of a royal priſoner occurs in Rymer, where it appears that for the taking of David Bruce King of Scotland at Durham, John de Coupland was conſtituted a bannerett, and to maintain the ſtate thereof King Edward gave to him and his heirs five hundred pounds per ann. 400 from the exits of the cuſtoms of the port of London, and 100 from thoſe of Berwick upon Tweed; and alſo to the ſaid John for his former ſervices, and for thoſe in future of himſelf with ten men at arms, annually one hundred pounds from the exits of the port of Newcaſtle, for life or till he is provided with one hundred pounds rent. Tom. 5. p. 539. And Thomas de Holland had a grant of eighty thouſand Florins (Florinorum de Scuto) granted him by the king for taking the Earl of Eu, conſtable of France. *Rymer*, tom. 5, p. 568.

(c) IN an indenture of K. Ed. III. with Thomas Tunſtall, the priſoners excepted are, the King of France, any of his ſons, nephews, uncles, couſins german, or any King of any kingdom whatſoever; the king's lieutenant, or any chieftain, having the power of the ſaid adverſary of France: *Rymer*.

accrue to the captor, for the king and the commanding officer of the corps were both entitled to certain proportions of his good fortune.

THE uſual price demanded for the ranſom of a priſoner of war was, according to Monſieur St. Palaye, one year's rent of his eſtate, one third of which was, by the royal ordonnances, the property of the chief captain under whom the captor ſerved; out of which, one third of that third, equal to one ninth of the whole ranſom, was to be paid by the captain to the king; ſtipendiary ſoldiers who had no eſtates, uſually paid for their ranſom one half of their year's pay; one third of any plunder, or the ranſom of priſoners taken by the followers of the army, not being in the king's pay, was alſo the property of the crown.

RYMER has preſerved a very curious record reſpecting the mode of ſecuring and paying ten thouſand marks for the ranſom of Aph. Till. A. D. 1207, 9th K. John, wherein it is ſtipulated, that of ten thouſand marks to be paid by that priſoner for his ranſom, he ſhould pay down two thouſand, and the price of ten horſes, each of the value of thirty marks, before he was releaſed on his parole; and as ſecurity for the remaining 7700 marks he ſhould give hoſtages; namely, his brother, his ſon, and two daughters, and five of his knights priſoners with him, which the king ſhould ſelect and detain; the ſaid hoſtages, that is, his brother, ſons, and daughters, to come to England before he went out of priſon, and between the fifth day of our Lord and the ninth, the king to deliver up all the knights he had belonging to the ſaid Aph, except the five above mentioned, who were to remain in priſon till the whole ranſom was paid; after the ſaid Aph had paid the 200 marks, and value of ten horſes, and cauſed the hoſtages to be given, he was to have leave to go to his country to ſeek for the remainder of his ranſom, which if he remitted by the ſtated time, his hoſtages ſhould be ſet at liberty; if he could not pay it, then he ſhould return and ſurrender himſelf priſoner to the king, and the hoſtages, except the five knights, ſhould be ſet at liberty; but the 2000 marks, and the price of the horſes to remain in the hands of the king; to whom proof

was to be made that the perſons called the brother, ſon, and daughters of the ſaid Aph, were really and legitimately ſo; and if the ſaid Aph ſhould return to priſon, and bring with him the knights releaſed, the king ſhould return him the 2000 marks, and the price of the horſes, or a proportionable part according to the numbers of knights he ſhould bring back with him.

THE hopes of ranſom frequently acted in the place of humanity, avarice aſſuming the place of mercy; this is evident from the reaſon aſſigned by Patin, for the great ſlaughter of the Scots, at the battle of Muſſelborough, in 1548, to wit, that their mean appearance gave little hopes of their ability to pay ranſom (d).

UNDER the regulations here mentioned, priſoners of war were ſo much the property of the captors, that they might (e) give, bequeath,

---

(d) To theſe another, and not the meaneſt matter, was (ſays he) their armour among them ſo little differing, and their apparail ſo baſe and beggerly, whearin the lurdein was in a maner all one with the lorde, and the lounde wyth the larde: all clad alyke in jackes coovered with whyte leather, doublettes of the ſame, or of fuſtian, and moſt commonly all white hoſen, not one with either cheine, brooch, ryng or garment of ſilke that I could ſee, onles cheynes of latten drawen four or fyve tymes along the thighs of their hoſen, and dooblet ſleeves for cuttyng, and of yt ſort I ſawe many. This vilenes of port was the caus that ſo many of their great men and gentlemen wear kyled and ſo few ſaved. The outwarde ſheaw, the ſemblaunce and ſigne whearby a ſtranger might diſcern a villain from a gentleman, was not among them to be ſeen. As for woordes and goodly proffer of great raundſoms wear as common and ryfe in the mouthes of the tone as in toother. And therefore hereby it cam to pas that after the examinacions and counting of their priſoners; we found taken above twenty of their villayns to one of their gentlemen, whoom no man nede to dout, we had rather have ſpared then the villayns yf we could have knowe ony difference between them in takyng.

(e) AFTER the death of King Henry V. A. D. 1422, a petition was preſented by the lords, captains, and others, indented to ſerve his late majeſty in his wars, praying that the thirds and thirds of thirds of all ſorts of gains taken in war, as alſo the priſoners belonging to the king at the day of his death, ſhould be deducted and accounted for at the exchequer, out of the ſums due to the petitioners from the late king, on condition that the overplus due after the deduction of the ſaid wages ſhall be paid to the king, and that after this account, they, their heirs, and executors, ſhould be diſcharged and releaſed of all demands, by the authority of parliament; this was granted; and alſo that all thoſe to whom jewels had been pledged by the late king,

if

or with the king's licence ſell them to any perſon; and princes or great men frequently beſtowed ſome of their priſoners on knights who had diſtinguiſhed themſelves in an engagement, thereby to enrich them (f).

THE non-payment of ranſom was deemed ſo particularly diſhonourable, that according to Colombiere, perſons dying under that predicament, could have their image repreſented on their tombs only in a particular manner, which was, without ſpurs, caſk, coat of arms or ſword, the ſcabbard only hanging by their ſides in their belt (g); if the non-payment was intentional, the arms of the defaulter were reverſed and he was deemed infamous.

PERSONS taken priſoners were, with the king's permiſſion, frequently permitted to go home to raiſe money for the payment of their ranſom, on giving their parole to return within a ſtated time, either to pay the money, or to ſurrender themſelves priſoners; a breach of their parole was always ſeverely puniſhed, and in moſt treaties and truces there was a clauſe, agreeing that juſtice ſhould be done on both ſides reſpecting priſoners (h); priſoners of high rank obtained paſſports for

---

if not ſatisfied in half a year for their ſervices, might keep the ſaid jewels, provided they were not the antient jewels of the crown. *Rot. Parl.*

(f) THE captors ſometimes ſold their priſoners to other perſons, perhaps for the ſake of ready money, but for this it appears that the royal licence was neceſſary, for an archer having taken the archdeacon of Paris priſoner, and ſold him without the king's licence to the abbot of Colcheſter, was directed to be ſeized and brought before the council, A. D. 1346, 20 Ed. III. (See Rymer.) And in the ſame year the ſheriffs of Yorkſhire, Nottingham, Lancaſter, and Derby, were directed by the king's writ to make diligent ſearch after certain perſons who had ranſomed and releaſed diverſe Scotch priſoners of war taken by them at Durham, without the royal licence for ſuch ranſoming; they were likewiſe ordered to forbid the like practice by proclamation throughout their bailywick, under penalty of forfeiture of life and limb, and every other poſſible forfeiture; and all perſons having ſuch priſoners in their cuſtody, were directed to appear perſonally with them before the council at London, there to treat with them for the ſatisfaction to be made them for the ſaid priſoners. *Rymer*, tom. v. p. 533.

(g) PART 2d. p. 625.

(h) IN the truce made at Calais, it was agreed that juſtice ſhould be done on both

ſides

their ſervants, as well as to procure money for their ranſom, as to tranſact their private affairs (i).

Sometimes priſoners were purchaſed of their captors in order to be exchanged for others of the ſame rank: ranſom was not only paid for priſoners of war, but alſo for the dead bodies of great perſonages ſlain in battle; an inſtance of this is cited by St Palaye, which he ſays happened at the ſiege of Rouen, where 400 nobles were paid for the body of a perſon there ſlain (k).

The rigid treatment ſhewn to priſoners of war in antient times, ſtrongly marks the ferocity and uncultivated manners of our anceſtors, and that even to ladies of high rank; notwithſtanding the homage ſaid to have been paid to the fair ſex in thoſe days of chivalry: many inſtances of this appear in our hiſtories, and a ſtriking one is recorded by Rymer reſpecting the Counteſs of Baghun, or Buchan, a Scotch priſoner, for whoſe confinement the chamberlain of Scotland, or his lieutenant, were by writ of privy ſeal, 34 Edward I. A.D. 1306, directed to fit up one of the turrets of the caſtle of Berwick upon

---

ſides, reſpecting priſoners who had broken their faith; and William de Wyncheles having complained that during the war, he took a certain William de Conte in Normandy, and afterwards on his faith permitted him to croſs over, on condition that he ſhould return at a ſtated time to pay his ranſom, but he remaining in Jerſey in violation of his faith, had not ſatisfied the ſaid William for his ranſom; wherefore being deſirous of doing juſtice in this caſe, the king by this writ, dated the 12th of December, 1347, directed the bayliffs and jurats of Jerſey, to arreſt the ſaid William, and deliver him to William de Wyncheles, to be held by him as his priſoner, according to the law of arms and form of the aforeſaid truce. *Rymer*, tom. v. p. 599.

A. D. 1351, 25 Ed. III. John de Bello Campo being priſoner to the King of France and over in England on his parole, the king by his writ forbids all his officers and ſubjects, under penalty of loſs of body and goods, to prevent his return by any kind of arreſt or impriſonment whatſover, and promiſes to oblige his ſecurities to fulfil their obligations. *Rymer*, tom. v. p. 730.

(i) A. D. 1350, 24 Ed. III. That King granted his paſſport for fifteen perſons, ſervants to the Earl of Eu, to go to France and to return to England (in war or peace) for the purpoſe of procuring money for his ranſom, and other buſineſs. *Rymer*, tom. v. p. 688.

(k) *Jean le Fevre de. S. Rem. Hiſt. de C. VI. page* 127 *and* 128.

Tweed, and therein to build a ſtrong cage of lattice work, conſtructed with ſtout poſts and barres, and well ſtrengthened with iron; this cage to be ſo contrived, that the counteſs might have the convenience of a privy, proper care being taken that it did not leſſen the ſecurity of her perſon: in this cage the counteſs was to be kept, without being ſuffered to go out on any account whatſoever, and alſo to be prevented from ſpeaking with any perſon, Scotch or Engliſh, except the keeper of the caſtle, and a woman or two of the town of Berwick, appointed by him to deliver her food; the keeper to be anſwerable for the ſafe keeping of her body. The ſiſter of Robert Bruce was priſoner at the ſame time, and treated in the ſame manner.

In the directions given by Edward I. A.D. 1306, reſpecting the confinement of the wife of Robert Bruce: among the ſervants allowed is the following; and alſo let her have a foot-boy to remain in her chamber; one that ſhall be ſober, and not a riotous one, to make her bed, and to do other things required for her chamber. From the ſame authority it appears that a child, the heir of Mar, was excuſed wearing fetters on account of his tender age, which ſtrongly implies that it was cuſtomary to fetter priſoners of war; and this receives ſome farther confirmation from a ſubſequent order in the reign of Edward III. whereby Thomas de Bodeſtone, keeper of the caſtle of Glouceſter, ſoon after the invaſion and deſtruction of Winchelſea, was directed to keep the Count de Juny the king's priſoner in the ſaid town of Glouceſter, carefully, without irons, unleſs on juſt cauſe of ſuſpicion; none of his attendants were to remain in the ſaid town or caſtle with him, except one for the purpoſe of providing and dreſſing his victuals, which was to be taken to the caſtle gate by a ſervant deputed by the ſaid keeper, who was to deliver it to the count, and to attend on him; the uſual oath taken by other priſoners was directed to be adminiſtered to him, if he refuſed to take it, the keeper to guard him at his peril, and as he would anſwer to the king; and A.D. 1347, in the 21ſt of the ſame reign, the king by his writ to the Archbiſhop of Canterbury, William Biſhop of Wincheſter, Richard de Stafford, and Peter de Gildeſburgh, commands, that they cauſe the

Lord Tankervill, then lately taken in the wars in France, to be ſtrictly confined in ſome ſtrong and well walled place, ſo that he may not ſpeak or communicate by writing with any one without his (the king's) eſpecial licence, and that his ſervants or attendants ſhould not be ſuffered to go out of that place; a like writ was directed to Thomas Holland for the ſafe keeping of the Earl of Eu, conſtable of France (l).

Anno 1543, 35 Henry VIII. Thomas Lord Audeley, of Walden, Chancellor of England, the Duke of Norfolk, Stephen Biſhop of Wincheſter, Thomas Biſhop of Weſtminſter, William Lord St. John, and Sir John Gage, Knt. commiſſioners appointed by King Henry VIII. treated with the Earl of Glencairne, George Douglas, William Hamilton, and divers others deputed as commiſſioners, proctors, orators, and ambaſſadors of Mary Queen of Scotland, then a minor, and with the advice of James Earl of Arreyn, governor of the realm during the queen's minority, for the ranſom of divers Scottiſh priſoners, when they ſettled their ranſoms at different ſums, from 1000l. to 100l. ſterling (m); " and it was farthermore covenanted, that in caſe ſuch preſoners of England as have their rawnſomes to be taxed in Scotland, ſhall be there feaſed and taxed in their rawnſomes after a lower rate and moderation than the ſumes of rawnſome before limited and taxed; they ſhall be abated and diminiſhed agreeably, portion for portion alike, and that the ſaid priſoners of Scotland ſhall be uſed with ſuch gentlenes as is ſhewed unto the Engliſhmen priſoners there.

" And further it was agreed, that at ſuch tymē as the hoſtages of Scotland ſhal be delivered, at the ſame tyme the priſoners of Scotland giving bonde by obligation for the payment of their rawnſome at convenyant daies, with their owne promiſe to yelde themſelf priſoners if they breke theire ſaide daies of payment, with a writing alſo of the Governour of Scotlande, conteyninge his promiſe to upholde and

(l) Rymer, tom. v. p. 558.

(m) The Earl of Caſſelis was rated 1000l. ſterling, the Earl of Glencairne the ſame, the Lord Somerwell 1000 marks.

mainteigne the ſaide bondes and promiſes; this doon, the priſoners of Scotland ſhal be at that day, and from thence forwarde, accompted free of the captivitie; provided always that the Engliſhmen, priſoners in Scotland, be uſed in all thingis after the ſame ſortee, meaning oonly in the covenante ſuch priſoners Engliſhmen as were taken by the King of Scots lieft. or others, and were to be ſpecially deteigned as notable priſoners."

In witneſs of this covenant and agreement, both parties ſubſcribed and ſealed thoſe indentures.

By the feudal ſyſtem all the tenants, vaſſals of a lord, were obliged to contribute towards his ranſom, if taken priſoner of war: thus King Richard I. levied an aid for the ranſom of his perſon when he was taken and impriſoned on his return from the Holy Land. The tenants in capite, both barons and knights, paid it under the name of ſcutage or eſcutage, ſo called from its being aſſeſſed at XXs. per ſcutum or for each knight's fee, at the ſame time a payment was alſo made for the ſame purpoſe by the name of hidage.

Inferior lords of ſeigneuries had the ſame aids as the king. John de Brittany, Earl of Richmond, being taken priſoner by the Scots, whilſt he was in the king's ſervice in the field, had the king's letters directed to all his tenants requeſting them to pay reaſonable aid, there called a ſubſidy, for his ranſom according to their ability, and the quantity of their reſpective tenures, to which, ſaid the record, they were bound as well by natural equity as by the duty of their fealty.

The expence of keeping the king's priſoners of war was advanced by the ſheriffs of counties, wherein they were confined, and charged in their accounts at the exchequer. A number of inſtances of writs directing them to advance different ſums on this account out of the profits of their bailiwicks occur in Rymer. Probably theſe expences were repaid by the priſoners, with their ranſom.

The uſual ſum was from one ſhilling to ſix pence per diem, for men of rank; for a knight four pence, and for his robe twenty-five ſhillings per annum; ordinary priſoners were allowed three pence and two pence, with a mark for their annual clothing.

THE Biſhop of St. Andrews was delivered to the ſheriff of Southampton to be kept in Wincheſter caſtle, his allowance for his own expences ſix pence per diem, for one valet ſerving him three pence, one boy likewiſe in his ſervice three halfpence, and one chaplain to celebrate maſs to him one penny and a halfpenny by the day, which chaplain, valet, and boy, were to be choſen from ſuch as might be truſted, and for whom the ſheriff would be anſwerable.

IN other matters the ſheriff was authoriſed to uſe ſuch other means for the ſafe keeping of the ſaid biſhop as he thought neceſſary. The ſame allowance was made to the Biſhop of Glaſgow, confined in Portcheſter caſtle. The Abbot of Stone, a rebel, was directed to be kept in a ſtrong part of Wincheſter caſtle with iron fetters on his feet *.

WITH this article the author begs leave to conclude his work, having, to the utmoſt of his abilities, endeavoured to complete the plan propoſed in the advertiſement: for the faults and errors, particularly the typographical ones, he relies on the candour and indulgence of his readers, as he can aſſure them they were not cauſed by negligence or inattention; induſtry being the only merit he pretends to claim, except that of having brought forward, and preſerved from oblivion, many curious manuſcripts and ſcarce printed books reſpecting the Military Antiquities of this kingdom.

---

* INSTEAD of ranſom, the uſual mode of liberating priſoners of war is now by exchange, of man for man, and officer for officer, of the ſame rank reciprocally, when there are ſuch to exchange: otherwiſe it is arranged by a cartel; and there are reſident commiſſaries from the powers at war to ſee it duly put in execution. In England the care of the priſoners is under the management of the tranſport board. Each government engages to pay for the maintenance of its ſubjects, that are kept as priſoners in a foreign country. Ranſom, however, ſtill continues to be practiſed at ſea, particularly in the captures made by private ſhips of war.

FREQUENTLY officers, when priſoners of war, are allowed to go at large, within a certain diſtrict, on their parole of honour not to go beyond the limited boundary; and ſometimes they are even permitted to return to their own country, on the ſame parole of honour, not to ſerve till they are regularly exchanged. Some late regulations on this head may be ſeen in the Appendix.

APPENDIX.

NUMBER I.

The Antient Muſketeer.

THE following extract from a military treatiſe, written in the year 1619, exhibits a ſtriking delineation of the muſketeer of thoſe days (a): "Therefore a ſouldier muſt either accuſtome himſelfe to beare a peece or pike: if he bear a peece, then muſt he firſt learn to hold the ſame, to accommodate his match betweene his two foremoſt fingers and his thombe, and to plant the great end on his breaſt with a gallant ſouldier-like grace: and being ignorant, to the intent he may be more encouraged, let him acquaint himſelf firſt with the firing of touch-powder in his panne, and ſo by degrees both to ſhoote off, to bow and beare up his body, and ſo conſequently to attaine to the levell and practiſe of an aſſured and ſerviceable ſhot, readily charge, and with a comely couch diſcharge, making choiſe at the ſame inſtant

(a) ENGLAND's Trainings and plainly demonſtrating the dutie of a private ſouldier, with the office of each ſeverall officer belonging to a foot company, and the martiall lawes of the field; as alſo the office and charge of a colonell; the exerciſe of trayning or drilling: with diverſe other neceſſary and profitable diſciplined notes and obſervations: by Edward Davies, gentleman, 1619, p. 4.

of his marke, with a quick and vigilant eie. His flaſke and touch box muſt keepe his powder, his purſe and mouth his bullets; in ſkirmiſh his left hand muſt hold his match and peece, and the right hand uſe the office of charging and diſcharging.

BEING againſt the enemie, whilſt with an indented courſe he doth travell his plaine ground, or elſe takes advantage of his place and invaſion, as under the ſafeguard of a trench, the back of a ditch, old-wall, or tree, or ſuch like; let him ever firſt load his peece with powder out of his flaſke, then with her bullet, and laſt with amuring and touch-powder, foreſeeing ever that the panne bee cleane, the cover cloſe, and the tutch-hole wide, or elſe well proind: ſo that ſtill obſerving modeſt order in his traverſe, neither over ſlow nor over ſpeedy, to the entent he become not each man's marke through his ſluggiſhneſſe, nor run himſelf out of breath through his own raſhneſſe, for the moſt parte keeping his ſide towards his enemie: let him diſcharge going, but never ſtanding: ſo ſhall he the better ſhunne the enimies ſhot, and chuſe his aſſured advantage. A ſouldier ought to be careful that his furniture be good, ſubſtantiall, and ſtaunche from raine, the charge of his flaſke juſt for his peece, and the ſpring quick and ſharpe: the pipe of his touch-box ſomewhat wide, that the powder may have free paſſage, which otherwiſe would choak up.

IN time of marching and travelling by the way, let him keepe a paper in his panne and tutch-hole, and in wet weather have a caſe for his peece, ſomewhat portable, or elſe of neceſſitie he muſt keepe the ſame from wet under his arm-hole or caſſocke, or by ſome other invention free from damage of the weather, and his match in his pocket, onely that except which he burnes: and that likewiſe ſo cloſe in the hollow of his hand, or ſome artificiall pipe of pewter hanging at his girdle, as the coale by wet or water go not out.

IT is moreover requiſite, that a ſouldier keepe his cocke with oyle free in falling, and his peece bright without ruſting; neither muſt he want his neceſſarie tooles, as a ſcowrer, tirebale and worme, having every one a vice to turne into the end of the ſcouring ſticke, ſo that if thorough wet weather, or any other accident, his peece will not be

diſcharged, the ſkilful ſouldier may with his tireball pull out his bullet with the worme, the paper, and wet powder, and with his ſcourer make his peece cleane within. His ſcourer muſt be trimmed on the end with a linen cloth of ſufficient ſubſtance, therewith to make cleane the cannon of his peece within. The one end of his ſcouring ſtick ought to have a round end of bone of juſt bigneſſe with the mouth of his peece, therewithall at his pleaſure, to ramme in powder and paper, or inſtead of paper, ſuche ſofte haire as they ſtuff ſaddles withall, the danger whereof is not like; but this the ſoldier muſt uſe when time permits. During the time of his ſervice let him ever have a diligent care to keepe his peece cleane and bright within, and once a fortnight, or at leaſt once a month, take out the breech, and throroughly view and waſh the barrell within, to ſee whether it hath any flawes, brackes, chambers, frettings, or ruptures, which would endanger the breaking thereof, eſpecially if before hand the end of his bare ſcourer hath given him any cauſe to ſuſpect ſuch faults, to the intent he may change the ſame for a new for feare of ſpoiling himſelfe.

He that loves the ſaftie of his owne perſon, and delights in the goodneſs and beautie of a peece, let him alwayes make choice of one that is double breeched, and if it be poſſible a Myllan peece, for they be of tough and perfect temper, light, ſquare, and bigge of breech, and very ſtrong where the powder doth lie, and where the violent force of the fire doth conſiſt, and notwithſtanding thinne at the end.

Our Engliſh peeces approach very neare unto them in goodneſſe and beautie (their heavineſſe only excepted), ſo that they be made of purpoſe, and not one of theſe common ſale peeces with round barrels, whereunto a beaten ſouldier will have great reſpect, and chooſe rather to pay double money for a good peece, than to ſpare his purſe and endanger himſelfe.

But to returne to my matter; let a ſouldier have hanging ever at the ſtrings of his tutch box, or ſome other readie part of his garment, a couple of proyning pinnes at the leaſt, that if by fortune the tutch hole of his peece be ſtopped or furred up, hee may therewith both

make his pan cleane, and yeeld a ready paſſage, that the fire may have her courſe, by incorporating both the tutch-pouder without and the corn-pouder within together (b). But a reydy ſouldier will alwaies foreſee that the tutch-hole be ſo wide as the pouder without in the pan may have free concourſe to that within the peece, thereby to haſten more ſpeedy diſcharge, conſidering a ſouldier cannot have leiſure and commodity to proine his peece at all times, but muſt of neceſſitie uſe a great dexterity.

BUT ſince I am falne into the ſpeech of a quicke charge and nimble diſcharge, I will by way declare the opinion of certaine nations therein.

EXPERIENCE of late daies hath taught us, that thoſe nations which followe the warres invent every way how they may endomage the enemie in all their enterpriſes, but eſpecially in ſkirmiſh, which for the moſt parte conſiſts in ſhot, and by ſuch as can with the eye of his minde make an aſſured levell, and with a nimble diſcharge both chooſe out and kill his enemie.

AND therefore thoſe ſouldiers which in our time have beene for the moſt part levied in the low countries, eſpecially thoſe of Artoys and Henault, called by the generall name of Wallownes, have uſed to hang about their neckes, upon a baudricke or border, or at their girdles, certaine pipes, which they call charges, of copper and tin, made with covers, which they thinke in ſhirmiſh to bee the more readie way. But the Spaniard diſpiſing that order doth altogether uſe his flaſke.

THE Frenchman both charge and flaſke. But ſome of our Engliſh nation their pocket; which in reſpect of the danger of the ſparks of their match, the uncertaine charge, the expence and ſpoile of pouder, the diſcommoditie of wet, I account more apt for the ſhow of a triumph and wanton ſkirmiſh before ladies and gentlewomen, then fit for the field in a day of ſervice in the face of an enemy: and in like ſort the

(b) THIS paſſage ſhews that the touch-powder contained in the primer was mealed, or what was formerly called ſerpentine powder.

charge which either doth ſhed and looſe his powder, whilſt a ſouldier doth traverſe his ground, or elſe is ſo cloddered and rammed together, that he ſhall be forced ſometimes to faile of halfe his charge. Therefore I conclude with the Spaniard, that a good flaſke is that which is moſt warlike and ready in ſervice, without the curious help of any extraordinary invention.

One of the greateſt helpes conſiſts in pouder and match: for a ſouldier muſt ever buy his pouder ſharpe in taſte, well incorporate with ſaltpeter, and not full of coole-duſt. Let him accuſtome to drie his pouder, if hee can in the ſunne, firſt ſprinkled over with aqua vitæ, or ſtrong claret wine. Let him make his tutch-pouder, being finely ſarſed and ſifted, with quick-pale, which is to be bought at the pouder makers or apothecaries; and let his match be boiled in aſhes-lye and pouder, that it will both burne well, carrie a long coale, and that will not breake off with the touch of your finger. The preparations will at the firſt touch give fire, and procure a violent, ſpeedy, and thundering diſcharge. Some uſe brimſtone finely powdered in their tutch-pouder, but that furs and ſtops up your breech and tutch-hole.

The bullet of a ſouldier's peece muſt be of a juſt bigneſſe with the mouth of the ſame, ſo that falling in ſmoothly it may drive down, and cloſe up the mouth of the pouder. Some, contrary to the lawes of the field, uſe chaine-ſhot, and quarter-ſhot, which is good in the defence of a breach, to keepe a fortreſſe, or upon ſhip-board; but being daily uſed it will gaule a peece within, and put it in hazard to breake, ſpecially in a long ſkirmiſh where the barrell is hot.

Note, that after his peece is very hoate, let the ſouldier if he can give ſomewhat a leſſe charge for feare of burſting his peece, unleſſe he have good triall thereof. If the ſtocke of his peece be crooked, he ought to place the end juſt before above his left pappe; if long and ſtraight as the Spaniards uſe them, then upon the point of his right ſhoulder, uſing a ſtately upright pace in diſcharge.

It is not in vaine to advertiſe him, that in ſkirmiſh he muſt hold his peece betwixt his thombe and the ends of his fingers, which I account

a ſure meane, betwixt griping of the barrell, and laying the ſame onely upon his foremoſt finger and thombe; for the one is over dangerous, and the other altogether unſteedy.

I JUDGE it likewiſe moſt convenient for him, to take hold of his peece with his left hand in that part of the wood (wherein the barrel lies) there as the peece is of moſt equal ballance; although ſome accuſtome themſelves to hold it juſt under the cocke, by reaſon whereof he ſhall be enforced to change his hand, if he charge out of a flaſke, into the midſt of the peece, to bring downe the mouth to his flaſke, which is great delay and hinderance in ſkirmiſh. So to conclude, he that meanes to be accompted a forward and perfect goode ſhot, by continuall exerciſe muſt be ſo ready, that in all particular points touching his peece, pouder, match, bullets, and the uſe of them, that he neither be to ſeeke, nor grow amazed in the furious rage of Bellona's fiery ſkirmiſhes, her ſudden ſurpriſes and bloody ſlaughter, of dangerous aſſaults, of cruell battailes.

THE muſket is to be uſed in all reſpects like unto the hargabuſe, ſave that in reſpect he carries a double bullet, and is much more weightie. He uſeth a ſtaffe breaſte high, in the one end a pike to pitch in the ground, and in the other an iron forke to reſt his peece upon, and a hoale a little beneath the ſame in the ſtaffe: whereunto he doth adde a ſtring, which tied and wrapped about his wreſt, yeelds him commodity to traine his forke or ſtaffe after him, whileſt he in ſkirmiſh doth charge his muſket afreſh with pouder and bullet.

Now to ſpeak ſomewhat of a pikeman's charge, a few words ſhall ſuffice, becauſe I will not be over tedious. Let him learne to toſſe his pike, couch and croſſe the ſame, to receive the violent charge of horſemen, to front the furious ſhocke of footemen, and be able to furniſh out his fight both afarre off and neere hand: which notes with the like will be ſufficient, by reaſon that he is for the moſt part put to ſtand in a maine and ſquare battaile. Both the hargabuſier and the pikeman muſt weare a ſhort rapier and a ſmall poinado: for if in the middeſt of encounters and ſkirmiſhes, they be driven to uſe them, their length is an occaſion they cannot be drawne, unleſſe he abandon his peece or

pike, wherdby he ſhall either looſe his pike, or want his rapier, which at the ſera and cloſe, is very neceſſary both for defence and offence: contrary to the careleſſe cuſtome of ſome whom I have ſeene come into the field without rapier or dagger, which was an aſſured argument, that their heeles ſhould be their target, and their ſhamefull flight their ſafety, when their pouder was ſpent.

Now as theſe careleſſe perſons farre miſſe the marke with overgreat ſecuritie, ſo ſome bring in a cuſtome of too much curioſitie in arming hargabûſiers, for beſides a peece, flaſke, tutch-box, rapier and dagger, they loade them with a heavie ſhirt of male, and a burganet: ſo that by that time they have marched in the heat of ſommer, or deepe of the winter, ten or twelve Engliſh miles, they are more apt to reſt, than ready to fight, whereby it comes to paſſe, that either the enterpriſe they go about, which requires celerity, ſhall become fruſtrate by reaſon of the ſtay they made in refreſhing themſelves, or elſe they are in danger to be repulſed, for want of luſtineſſe, breath and agilitie.

WHEREFORE in mine opinion it is not neceſſary, that this extraordinary arming of ſhot ſhould be uſed, but in ſurpriſes of townes, eſcalades, and aſſaults of breeches, to defend the ſouldiers heads from ſtones, and ſuch ſtuffe as they beſieged have prepared to drive them from their enterpriſe. Or elſe in ſome ſpeciall ſet battaile againſt the cut and thruſt of weapons: which exploits, for that they be not ſo ordinarye as is the ſkirmiſh, ſo are theſe armes nothing ſo neceſſarie, but rather a burthen, more beautiful than beneficiall, and of greater charge than the commoditie, ſpecially a ſhirt, of male, which is very dangerous for ſhot, if a number of thoſe ſmall peeces ſhould bee driven into a man's body by a bullet.

THE furniture due to a pikeman, beſides his pike, rapier and dagger, conſiſting of a common corſelet, having a coller, curiat, taſes, backpart, poldrowes, wambraſſes, and burganets for the head, for that they be ſufficiently knowne, becauſe I will not be over prolixe upon every particular point, I will onely ſay thus much more touching the pikeman, that he ought to have his pike at the point and middeſt trim-

med with handſome taſſels, and a handle, not ſo much for ornament, as to defend the ſouldiers body from water, which in raine doth runne downe alongſt the wood (c).

EVERY ſouldier ought to carry his hargabuſe, pike, or halberd, upon that ſhoulder and ſide which is outward in ranke, for that ſide which is diſcovered inward is more defended by the general order that is kept than any other, which order of carrying armes is not onely ready and commodious to uſe on all occaſions, but alſo doth make a gallant ſhew, and a general forme of good proportion and true proſpect; a thing moſt neceſſarie for a man of valour to uſe in all his doings (d).

THE exchange of the match-lock muſket for the fire-lock, fuſil, or ſnaphance (e), moſt probably was not made at the ſame time, throughout the army, but brought about by degrees. The fire-lock ſeems to have been known as early as the reign of Henry VIII. many pieces ſo named occur in the ſurvey of the different armouries and arſenals of this realm and its dependencies, taken 1ſt Ed. VI. (f) but whether by the term fire-lock, a wheel-lock was meant, admits of a doubt; certainly the wheel-lock is as much a fire-lock as the ſnap-

---

(c) THE parts of this quotation deſcribing the armour and appointments of the pikeman, which have been already treated of, being very ſhort, were here given, to avoid breaking the thread of the deſcription.

(d) ALTHOUGH the arms and appointments of a muſketeer are here pretty minutely deſcribed, it may be neceſſary to obſerve, that the Flemiſh cuſtom for ſoldiers to carry their powder in ſmall caſes of copper, tin, leather, paſteboard or other ſubſtances, with each its cover, was adopted here; a dozen of them hung to a belt worn over the left ſhoulder, was called a bandaleer, or bandaleers; to the ſame belt hung the bullet bag, flaſk for priming, and ſometimes the ſpare match. Theſe ſmall caſes were ſometimes fixed to a belt worn round the waiſt.

(e) SNAPHANCE, the Dutch name for a fire-lock; the firſt fire-locks were ſo called here.

(f) GREENWICH, item, one chamber pece blacke, the ſtocke of redde woode, ſet with bone worke, with fier-locke in a caſe of crymſon vellet. Item, one longe white pece, with a fire-locke Item, one longe pece, graven and guilte, with a ſtocke of redde woode, ſet with white bone, with a fier-lock, in a caſe of lether. Item, two chamber peeces, guilt and graven, with a fier-locke, in a ſtocke of yellow vellet, &c. *Mr. Brander's MS.*

hance, both being fired by the colliſion of the flint and ſteel. The duke of Albemarle recommends arming a dragoon with a ſnaphance to a muſket barrel, becauſe on occaſion he might uſe it on horſeback, and go upon ſervice in the night, without being diſcovered by the light of his match (g).

The fire-lock muſket is alſo recommended by the earl of Orrery, in preference to that with the match-lock, in his Treatiſe on the Art of War, publiſhed in the year 1677 (h), for which he gives theſe reaſons: "Firſt, it is exceedingly more ready; for with the fire-lock you have only to cock, and you are prepared to ſhoot; but with your match-lock you have ſeveral motions, the leaſt of which is as long a performing, as but that one of the other, and oftentimes much more hazardous; beſides, if you fire not the match-lock muſket as ſoon as you have blown your match (which often, eſpecially in hedge fights and in ſieges, you cannot do), you muſt a ſecond time blow your match, or the aſhes it gathers hinders it from firing.

Secondly, the match is very dangerous, either where bandeleers are uſed, or where ſoldiers run haſtily in fight to the budge-barrel, to refill their bandeleers; I have often ſeen ſad inſtances thereof.

Thirdly, marching in the nights, to avoid an enemy, or to ſurprize one, or to aſſault a fortreſs, the matches often diſcover you, and inform the enemy where you are, whereby you ſuffer much, and he obtains much.

Fourthly, in wet weather, the pan of the muſket being made wide

(g) Observations upon Military and Political Affairs, by George, duke of Albemarle, 1671, p. 27. To prevent the matches being ſeen in the night, ſmall metal tubes of about a foot long, big enough to contain a match, and pierced full of little holes to admit the air, were worn by the Flemiſh muſketeers; this contrivance is ſaid to have been invented by Maurice, prince of Orange, and was the origin of grenadiers' match-boxes. Theſe tubes are deſcribed by Walhuyſen, in p. 136. of his book entitled L'Art Militaire pour l'Infanterie, pub. in 1615.

(h) Capt. Smith, in his Military Dictionary, ſays, fire-locks were firſt made uſe of in 1690, when match-locks were univerſally diſuſed; but he does not cite any authority for this aſſertion.

open for a while, the rain often deads the powder, and the match too; and in windy weather, blows away the powder, ere the match can touch the pan: nay, often in very high winds, I have ſeen the ſparks blown from the match, fire the muſket ere the ſoldier meant it; and either thereby loſe his ſhot, or wound or kill ſome one before him. Whereas in the firelock, the motion is ſo ſudden, that what makes the cock fall on the hammer, ſtrikes the fire, and opens the pan at once.

LASTLY, to omit many other reaſons, the quantity of match uſed in an army, does much add to the baggage, and being of a very dry quality, naturally draws the moiſture of the air, which makes it relax, and conſequently leſs fit, though carried in cloſe waggons: but if you march without waggons, the match is the more expoſed; and without being dried again in ovens, is but of half the uſe which otherwiſe it would be of: and which is full as bad, the ſkeans you give the corporals, and the links you give the private ſoldiers (of which near an enemy, or on the ordinary guard duty, they muſt never be unfurniſhed), if they lodge in huts or tents; or if they keep guard in the open field (as moſt often it happens) all the match for inſtant ſervice is too often rendered uncertain or uſeleſs; nothing of all which can be ſaid of the flint, but much of it to the contrary.

And then the ſoldiers generally wearing their links of match near the bottom of the belt, on which their bandaleers are faſtened, in wet weather generally ſpoil the match they have, and if they are to fight on a ſudden, and in the rain, you loſe the uſe of your ſmall ſhot, which is ſometimes of irreparable prejudice."

NUMBER II.

The High Conſtable.

EXTRACT from the TITLES of BOURBON, in the chamber of accounts in Paris.

THESE are the rights of the conſtable of France, by virtue of his office.

FIRST, The conſtable is, and ought to be, the moſt ſecret and intimate of the king's council; and the king ought not to order any feat of war, without the council of the conſtable, if he can be preſent to give his advice.

ITEM, the conſtable ſhould have a lodging at court, or wherever the king ſhall be.

ITEM, If the king goes to the army, the conſtable may go on an expedition as often as he pleaſes, without his proper eſtabliſhment of followers, the king being obliged to furniſh him with a guard, whether he be with the ſame part of the army as the king, or with another; and his retainers ſhall mount no guards, unleſs at his will; and he ſhall poſt the guards, when mounted by knights (i).

ITEM, If a fortreſs or caſtle is taken by ſtorm, or ſhall ſurrender, the horſes, harneſs, proviſions, and all other things found therein, belong to the conſtable, excepting gold and priſoners, which belong to the king; and the artillery to the maſter of the croſs-bows.

ITEM, If the conſtable goes out on an expedition, whether with or without the king (provided it be in the king's army), he, the conſtable, may take ten men at arms from each battail, to accompany him, except from that of the king.

(i) THE knights only mounted guard on ſome particular occaſions, and it was meant as an honour to that body, that the conſtable was to poſt their guard and attend its mounting.

ITEM, The conſtable ſerving in the king's wars, with or without him, ought to cauſe his war-horſes and thoſe of his companions, and all the people of the houſehold, to be appreciated by the marſhal; and the price ſet on them by the marſhal, ſhall be reſtored by the king.

ITEM, No one ſhall have any cognizance, authority, lordſhip or judgment, on any of the ſuite of the conſtable, except himſelf, and the maſters of his houſehold.

ITEM, Whenever the king is at war, the conſtable ſhall have a day's pay of all perſons receiving wages, or who are to have a certain ſum inſtead thereof (k).

ANY one changing his eſtabliſhment for another, the conſtable ſhall again have of him a day's pay (l).

ITEM, If the conſtable rides out on an expedition, every thing taken by him or his houſehold is his, except gold and priſoners, which belong to the king.

ITEM, Every day that the king rides forth armed at all points for aſſault or battle, the conſtable ſhall have an hundred livres, but if his legs only are armed, he ſhall have but fifty; and if ſeveral horſes are brought to the king for ſome feat of arms on that day, after the king has choſen one, the conſtable ſhall take the ſecond.

ITEM, In all legal duels within the kingdom, the conſtable ſhall guard the parties, and take their oaths; and if any part of their armour ſhall fall in the field, it belongs to the conſtable; and he may ſtop them, or cauſe them to proceed or ceaſe at his direction; and the lances, ſwords, and armour of the dead horſes are his perquiſites.

ITEM, The conſtable being on ſervice in the king's war, all his expences ſhall be defrayed by the king.

ITEM, All military perſons in the army are to obey the conſtable, and ſuch orders as he ſhall have cauſed to be proclaimed; and if any

---

(k) PROBABLY one day's pay in the year was meant, though not expreſſed.

(l) CHANGING of eſtabliſhment, may mean either exchange of garriſon, or quitting one banner to engage under another, perhaps on ſuperior rank or pay, in which caſe, the ſecond day's pay was a kind of fee on promotion.

one receiving pay, ſhall depart from the army contrary to his will, or without his leave, his horſes and arms ſhall be forfeited to him, the ſaid conſtable, and the body of the offender remain at the king's diſpoſal.

Item, Neither the mareſchal nor the maſter of the croſs-bow-men, ſhall undertake any feat of arms for the king's ſervice, either in the army, or in garriſon, without conſulting the conſtable, and obtaining his aſſent.

Item, In all places where caſtles or fortreſſes are taken, if the king is not preſent, the banner of the conſtable ſhall be the firſt planted on them; and for each of his two banners, the bearers are to have one hundred pence of the king: and if the king is preſent, his banners always go foremoſt, and thoſe of the conſtable follow them; but the bearers in that caſe have no perquiſite.

Item, In all places where the king ſhall be preſent, all proclamations ſhall be made in his name, or that of his conſtable, without naming any other perſons.

Item, Where the conſtable ſhall be preſent in the king's wars, whether with or without him, every ſerjeant of arms ſhall attend him and obey his orders (m).

Item, If a ſerjeant at arms ſhall miſbehave, the conſtable may take away his mace, and ſuſpend his ſervice; in which caſe the king ought not to reſtore him, until the conſtable had related to him the cauſe of deprivation.

Item, When the king is at his coronation at Rheims, the conſtable ought to be lodged at the moulinet, before Notre Dame; and ſhould ſend the men at arms to fetch the ampulla, or veſſel holding the holy oil, and go with them and convoy them back."

Here follows another piece, containing the prerogative of the conſtable alſo preſerved in the chamber of accounts at Paris, in the regiſter, entitled Pater. fol. 183.

" I. The conſtable is ſuperior to all other perſons in the army ex-

(m) These ſerjeants at arms were the king's body-guard, and all of them gentlemen; their officers, who were perſons of high rank, probably made a difficulty to receive the conſtable's orders, when the king was in the camp, which difficulty might have cauſed this regulation.

cepting the king. If there are dukes, barons, counts, knights, eſquires, horſe or foot ſoldiers, of what eſtate ſoever, they muſt obey him.

II. ITEM, The mareſchals of the army are under him, and have their diſtinct offices of receiving men at arms, dukes, counts, barons, knights and eſquires, and their companions (n); but cannot, nor ought not, to go out on any expedition, nor order any battle, without the direction of the conſtable, nor make any ban or proclamation, without the commands of the king or conſtable.

III. ITEM, The conſtable ſhall order all battles, expeditions, and eſtabliſhments of poſts, both in the field and garriſons (o).

IV. ITEM, Whenever the army moves from one place to another, the conſtable takes and delivers by his right, their different ſtations in the troops, to the king, and other officers of the army, immediately after the maſter of the croſs-bows, and then the battalions, and the mareſchal ſhould be in his battail (p)."

THIS matter, which (ſays Pere Daniel) is expreſſed in an obſcure manner, is explained by an ancient manuſcript in my poſſeſſion, at the head of which is an ordonance of Philip le Bel, of the year 1306, touching the gages of Battailles. Many other matters are there treated, and among them is this title, "Ordonance of the king when he goes with the army." The contents are as follows:

"WHEN the king takes the field with the army, he ought to march in battalia; and firſt, the conſtable ſhould command forth the ſcouts, who ſhould be good ſoldiers and well mounted; after them a mareſchal, or other vailliant man, leading a ſquadron of choice men, having a ſufficient number of archers, for the protection of the ſcouts; and there ſhould be the maſters of offices, prevoſts, fourriers, and their people, for diſtributing quarters; after theſe comes the conſtable in the van-guard, with a ſufficient number of barons and good ſoldiers;

(n) PROBABLY in order to aſſign their quarters in garriſon, or ground in a camp.

(o) ESTABLIES. This word, in the old French, ſignifies as well poſts in the field, as garriſons.

(p) BATTAIL was an ancient military term for an indefinite body of men; armies were frequently divided into three battles.

and there are their pennons, banners, and ſtandards, and their body of archers who go before.

AFTER them comes the maſter of the croſs-bows, with the archers; then comes the firſt eſquire of the eſquiery (q), who carries, or cauſes to be carried, the royal ſtandard, until it is wanted for ſervice; and after him are the pages on barded war horſes (r), and the king's horſes, who bear rich bacinets, helmets, lances, ſalades and hats; after them come the trumpets, and then the king's banner, which the firſt chamberlain, ſurrounded by kings of arms, heralds, and purſuivants is to bear, or cauſe to be borne, till it is wanted for ſervice; after all theſe comes the king in perſon, accompanied by dukes, counts, barons, and princes, and other noble and powerful men; and the firſt groom carver (s) ſhould be next behind him carrying his penon, which ſhould move to and fro every where the king goes, in order that every one may know where he is; and the banner, pennon, and ſtandard horſes are at the concluſion of the campaign, the right of thoſe who have borne thoſe enſigns, the two wings of the corps de battail, and their archers, ſhould be commanded by two princes, admirals, or mareſchals, or other wiſe and vailliant captains, who ſhould ſpeedily ſend ſome good and able cavalry to reconnoitre the way and country; after all theſe comes the rear guard, commanded by a duke, count, or mareſchal, well accompanied by vailliant men, and the archers belonging to them, who behind them ſhould have a little ſquare (t) of good troops, and after them ſome horſemen well mounted, to prevent their being attacked in the rear.

BY this extract may be clearly ſeen what is confuſedly told in the preceding article, ſhewing in what manner the conſtable, by virtue of his office, and of his right, aſſigned to the king and the officers the poſt each ſhould hold in the march of the army. Firſt of all the conſtable made a detachment which marched before the army; and in

---

(q) ESCUYER d'Eſcuyerie.

(r) ARMED or barded horſes.

(s) PREMIER Varlet Tranchent.

(t) THAT is, a ſmall body of men, ranged in rank and file, which ſeems to ſhew that the other troops did not obſerve much order in marching.

that detachment were the fouriers and other officers deſtined to diſtribute the ground in the place where the camp was to be formed.

Secondly, The conſtable marched at the head of the van guard. Thirdly, after the van guard, and before the corps de battaille, marched the grand maſter of the croſs-bow men, whoſe corps was very numerous; and then followed the corps de battaille, where the king was, after the body commanded by the maſter of the croſs-bow men; and finally followed the rear guard, behind which was a detachment of brave ſoldiers, to prevent the enemy from troubling them in their march. I return to the ſuite of functions or prerogatives of the conſtable.

"Item, The king, if with the army, ought not to ride forth on any expedition, nor the other combattants, unleſs by the ordonnance and council of the conſtable.

Item, The conſtable has the care of ſending meſſengers and ſpies for the uſe of the army every where he ſhall ſee neceſſary, as alſo when requiſite couriers and other horſemen."

The four articles following reſpect the right the conſtable has to take a day's pay from each man of war in the wages or pay of the king, of which mention has been made in the other acts.

In an account of William Charrier, of the year 1424, under Charles VII. taken from the chamber of accounts, I have remarked a privilege of the conſtable, namely, that he ſhould have for every month, as his predeceſſors had, the payment of an hundred men of arms, without being liable to either muſter or review, being only obliged to deliver every month, on a roll of parchment, the names and ſurnames of thoſe men at arms, certifying, under his ſeal, that he had them in his company.

These were the chief military prerogatives of the conſtable of France, from whence probably thoſe of the Engliſh conſtables were taken. This office was ſuppreſſed in France, by Louis XIII., in the year 1627: the motives mentioned in the ordonnance for this ſuppreſſion were the great appointments and power of this officer, the latter frequently in prejudice to the royal authority.

NUMBER III.

On Enſigns or Colours, their Dignity, and the Diſgraces to which they are liable.

1. THE dignitie and eſtimation of enſignes in all ages hath been held moſt venerable and worthy: they have been eſteemed the glory of the captain and his company; and indeed they are no leſs; for where they periſh with diſgrace, there the captaine's honour faileth, and the ſoldier is in hazard of ruine; for if the loſs proceed either from their cowardice or miſgovernment, it hath been death by the law of arms to all that ſurvive; and the beſt mercy that can be expected is, that every ſoldier ſhall draw a lot for his life (file by file), ſo that one out of every file periſheth for it.

2. THE next dignitie of the enſign is, that every ſoldier, as ſoon as he is enrolled, and hath received either pay or impreſs, they antiently took a ſolemn oath to be faithful to their colours, to attend them carefully, and to defend them valiantly, and that upon all ſummons of the trumpet or drum, or command of their officers, to repair to them whereſoever they ſhall be lodged, ſtand or be, and not to depart or ſtragle from them until they have received orders.

3. THE enſign hath another dignity, that whenſoever he ſhall enter into city, town, garriſon, camp, or other randeſvouze of aboad, he is to be firſt lodged, before any other officer or ſouldier; and not in any meane place, but the beſt and moſt ſpacious for the drawing up of the ſouldiers upon any alarme; and his quarter ought to be the moſt ſecure from danger.

4. THE enſign hath dignity of place according to the antiquity of his captain; but in one particular caſe it hath been judged to be greater than his captain, and lendeth place to him; as thus, no cap-

tain can receive his antiquity from his inrollment, but from the firſt hour in which his colours flew; for if two be inrolled upon one day, and the latter marcheth before the face of his enemy with his colours flying, in this caſe the firſt has loſt his priority, and the latter for ever after ſhall preceed him.

I HAVE read of another reſolve, three captains (or more as occaſion happeneth) were all inrolled upon a day, and all their colours flying; preſently upon a truce, compoſition, or other occaſion, there is ſome ſmall ceſſation of armes, and theſe new inrolled captains are caſheered (or diſmiſt) for the preſent ſervice: now the two firſt that had priority of place, not only by inrollment, but by flying of their enſigns, becauſe they would not be out of action (to a ſouldier the taſte of gain is pleaſant), took upon them the commands as lieutenants of two colonels companies, &c. which are captaines places in courteſie, retaining thoſe titles, and in ſome courts of war have had their voices; now the third all this time taketh upon him no place, but remaineth in ſtatu quo prius; and in revolution of time all theſe three captaines aforeſaid are again commiſſioned for three new companies of their own; the queſtion was, whoſe enſign ſhould fly firſt, and which of the three ſhould have the priority of place? It was thus anſwered and adjudged by the old Earl of Eſſex and Sir Francis Vere, &c. that the two firſt who had taken upon them lieutenancies had utterly loſt their ſuperiorities, and the third whoſe honour ſlept, but diminiſhed not, had precedencie of place, and his enſign flew before the other ever after.

5. THE enſigne hath this dignity, to have a guard ever about it, which no other officer hath; neither is it to be diſembogued or unlodged without a ſpecial guard attending upon it, both of muſquetteers and pikes; (and ſo for a cornet with his own ſquadron of horſe). Alſo in the field, if it be in particular diſcipline, or otherwiſe upon an alt or ſtand, at ſuch time as the army or company are to refreſh themſelves with victuals or other reſt; in this caſe the enſigne ſhall by no means lay his colours upon the ground, or put them in unworthy or baſe hands, but he ſhall firſt furle and fold them up, and ſet the butt end

on the ground, ſupported with the ſerjants halberts, and the enſigne himſelf ſhall not go from the view thereof, unleſs he ſhall leave a ſufficient guard for them.

6. ANOTHER dignity of an enſigne is, if a nobleman or an eſquire will take upon him the command of a private company, and have no other ſuperior place in an army; and a mean gentleman hath the like equal command, but a great deal more antient, although there ought to be a reſpect if they ſhould happen in company unto the worth and quality of the perſon, yet the meaner gentleman's colours ſhall fly before the other.

As this hath been the antient practiſe in the wars, how then do thoſe captains debaſe themſelves, and their enſigns, to ſuffer young captains to ſtep in (either by greatneſs in quality or favour) to fly their colours before them, &c.

7. EVERY enſign hath his dignity, although he is wholly to be at the captain's command; yet in juſtice no captain nor other officer can command the enſign-bearer from his colours, for they are man and wife, and ought not to endure a ſeperation; nor can he be commanded with his enſign to any baſe (diſhonourable) place or action: and hence it is that, to this day, this place and mark of honour is held in ſuch a venerable and worthy eſtimation amongſt the Spaniards and Italians, that they will not allow of any ſecond between him and the captain, as the name of a lieutenant, to be amongſt them, thinking it to be a ſuperfluous charge and command, becauſe it is, in their judgments, a leſſening and a bateing of the enſign's honour.

BUT in this, although we eſteem an enſign very honourable, we in England differ from them, owning the place of a lieutenant to be honourable and neceſſary, who ought to be a man of moſt approved experience; for he takes from the captain thoſe heavy burdens which otherwiſe would make the captain's trouble inſupportable; nor can the enſigne diſcharge them, unleſs he neglects his care and duty to his colours.

8. As for the dignity of the enſign in England (not medling with the ſtandard royal), to a regimental dignity: the colonel's colours, in

the firſt place, is of a pure and clean colour, without any mixture; the lieutenant colonel's only with Saint George's armes in the upper corner next the ſtaff; the major's the ſame, but in the lower and outmoſt corner with a little ſtream blazont, and every captaine with Saint George's armes alone, but with ſo many ſpots or ſeveral devices as pertain to the dignity of their reſpective places.

BUT with us in England, placing and diſplacing is left to the generaliſſimo, &c. and ſo to his ſubſtitutes or deputies: it is to me a ridle, that any perſon who cannot be ſtained with the leaſt blemiſh, ſhould loſe his advancing honour; but kiſſing goes by favour.

Of DISGRACES to the ENSIGN.

THERE are as many diſgraces that belong to the enſign as dignities; I ſhall, for brevity ſake, mention but ſome few: all which muſt proceed from miſtakes in one of theſe three, unſkilful compoſure, negligent government, or raſh actions.

1. TOUCHING unſkilful compoſure, either in falſe making, or bearing of enſigns, and that you may be informed for the compoſures thereof, I cannot better it than to declare to you Markham's own words out of his Soldier's Accidence, page 31, he ſaith, "There muſt be in military honour nine ſeveral faces, or complexions, that is to ſay, two which be called mettals, as yellow and white, figuring gold and ſilver; ſeven which are called proper colours, as black, blew, red, green, purple, tunnis, and ermine.

AND here it is to be noted, that no mettal is to be carried upon mettal, and for the ſignification of thoſe colours you ſhall underſtand that,

1. YELLOW betokeneth honour, or height of ſpirit, which being never ſeperated from virtue, of all things is moſt jealous of diſgrace, and may not endure the leaſt ſhadow of imputation.

2. WHITE ſignifieth innocencie, or purity of conſcience, truth, and upright integrity, without blemiſh.

3. BLACK ſignifieth wiſdome and ſobriety, together with ſevere

correction of too much ambition, being mixed with yellow, or with too much belief or lenity, being mixed with white.

4. Blew ſignifieth faith, conſtancy, or truth in affection.

5. Red ſignifieth juſtice, or noble worthy anger, in defence of religion or the oppreſſed.

6. Green ſignifieth good hope, or the accompliſhment of holy and honourable actions.

7. Purple ſignifieth fortitude with diſcretion, or a moſt true diſcharge of any truſt repoſed.

8. Tunnis, or tawny, ſignifieth merit or deſert, and a foe to ingratitude.

9. Ermine, which is only a rich furr, with curious ſpots, ſignifieth religion or holineſs, and that all aimes are not divine objects.

Now from theſe colours and their mixtures are derived many baſtard and diſhonourable colours, as carnation, orange tawny, popengie, &c. which ſignifie craft, pride, and wantonneſs; ſo that all commanders are left at their own pleaſure for their mixtures, but with theſe conſiderations; as,

1. Not to put in his enſign his full coat armour.

2. Not to bear one black ſpot and no more in his enſign, for it ſheweth ſome blemiſh in the owner; if the ſpot be round, ſquare, or of equal proportion.

3. If the ſpot be unequal, it ſignifieth a funeral or deadly revenge.

4. Not to carry words in his colours without a device, nor a device without words; and the words not to exceed four in number, for if there be more, it ſheweth imperfection.

5. Not to carry more colours than two, except it be for ſome ſpecial note, or the enſign of ſeveral kingdoms, it is a ſurcharge, and eſteemed folly.

2. Having ſhewed the true colours, and the diſgraces that may ariſe in the compoſure of them, as mentioned by Mr. Markham, I come to the next diſgraces, which proceed from negligence in gouvernment; as in carrying his colours furl'd (or folded) up, when they ſhould be flying; or to let his colours fly when they ſhould be folded

up; or to diſplay (or flouriſh them) when they ſhould be carried without any hand motions; or to carry them without motion when they ſhould be diſplayed; or to vaile them when they ſhould be advanced, or to advance them when they ſhould be vailed.

To lodge or diſlodge colours without a guard, or to ſuffer any man to handle them that hath not a lawful authority. Now the avoydance hereof is ſufficient to keep any man from groſs errors.

3. THE laſt diſgrace as to the dignity of the enſign is

1. FROM the raſhneſs and unadviſedneſs of actions; when he is in ſafety, out of a phantaſtical bravado, to thruſt himſelf into danger, as to charge the enemy when he ſhould ſtand ſtill: it is not only a diſgrace, but the offence hath been adjudged worthy of death, although he may obtain victory by that forward action.

2. IF in a march, battalia, or ſetting of the parade, or upon any other military employments, he ſhall miſplace himſelf, it is a diſgrace.

3. IF in a battel, ſkirmiſh, or fight, where the enſign is put to retreit, his colours ſhall be furled (or folded) up, or ſhouldred, and not flying, and held forth and extended with the left arm, and his ſword advanced in his right hand, his colours are diſgraced, and ſuch retreit is baſe and unworthy.

4. IF the enſign-bearer ſhall happen either in battel or ſkirmiſh to be ſlain, and ſo the colours fall to the ground, if thoſe, or ſome of them, next adjoining thereunto, do not recover and advance them up, it is not only a diſgrace to the enſign, but an utter diſhonour to the whole company; as I have declared, that if the colours be loſt there muſt be a ſevere account given for them; and indeed a greater act of cowardice cannot be found than to ſuffer the colours to be loſt.

THERE is an antient preſident, but freſh in memory, that in great defeats when armies have been overthrown, ſcattered and diſperſed, ſo that particular ſafety hath made men forget general obſervations; even then the enſign being wounded to death, and deſperate of all relief, hath ſtript his enſign from the ſtaff, and wrapt or folded it about his body, and ſo periſhed with it. This enſign cannot be ſaid

to be loſt, becauſe the honour thereof was carried with his freed ſoul to heaven, to the poſſeſſion of the eternal fort for ever: now in this particular the enemy cannot boaſt of any triumph then purchaſed, more then every ſexton may do when he robs the dead of his winding ſheet.

Thus it hath been reported that Sebaſtian, king of Portugal, dyed at the battel of Alcazar: and I have read of many of our brave Engliſh that thus dyed at the renowned battel at Newport, and have heard that many have ſo done in the army of our late ſovereign of ever bleſſed memory.

5. And, laſtly, if any man ſhall recover the loſt enſign, and bring it away flying, &c. no matter how low in condition the man is, if the captain upon any after conſiderations beſtow thoſe colours upon ſome other man, it is a diſgrace both to the captain and his enſign, for he doth injury to vertue, and diſcourage valour.

Obj. But ſome may object, that upon compoſition with the party deſerving, the captain may diſpoſe of his colours where he pleaſeth; I confeſs it true, but if this compoſition be forced, it is injurious; and if it come by a voluntary conſent of the party, it is baſe and moſt unworthy in him alſo.

Of the right Use and Ordering of the Ensign or Colours; with the Postures and Flourishes thereunto belonging.

As to my beſt remembrance, I have given a catalogue of the diſgraces; ſo I ſhall here inſert, as to my knowledge, the true uſe of the enſign, whereby thoſe injuries may be avoyded.

1. And firſt, you ſhall underſtand, that in all extended marches (and not drawn into a body), as when they march either into a friend's or enemie's country; or otherwiſe are conducted to ſome remote randeſvouz; here the enſign (or colours) ought to be half furled (or folded) up, and half flying, ſhall be ſhouldred, and born a little croſs the enſign-bearer's neck, with his hand extended a good diſtance from

his body, and his left hand upon his ſide or hilt of his ſword; this is termed marching in ſtate.

2. IF he ſhall enter into any city or great town, then he ſhall unfold or open his colours, and let them fly at full length, and carry them in his right hand cloſe under the hoſe, with a lofty hand, and extended arm; this is marching in triumph: but if the wind blow ſtiff, or there is a weakneſs, or weariſomeneſs in the enſign-bearer, then he may ſet the butt-end againſt his waiſte, and not otherwiſe: and is to have but one hand upon his ſtaff in any march whatever.

3. IN all troopings, the enſign ſhall ever be furled, and carried in the ſame poſtures as the pikes ought to be.

4. WHEN the company is drawn up in a body, the colours muſt be flying; and by the way, in caſe the general, or ſupreme of the wars, or any noble ſtranger, worthy of reſpect, do come, immediately upon his or their approach, the enſign-bearer, in all humility, is to bow the head of his colours, waving them with the bow of his body, and to raiſe both it and himſelf up again: and as the ſaid perſon ſhall paſs away, the drum ſhall beat, and the colours ſhall be diſplayed: this alſo the enſign ſhall do in all marchings, or other motions of civil exerciſes, where your ſuperiors paſs by you, or you by them: nay, it is expedient and fit ſo to be done to any gentleman that is your familiar; for it is no more but as vailing your hat, or giving your friend a courteſie.

5. Now when the body is drawn up into battalia, and the enemy within view thereof, then every man being in his place is to expreſs all the gallantry he can, and eſpecially the enſign-bearer, either in diſplaying his colours ſtanding, marching, charging, and retreiting (or retiring); and all theſe ought not to be done at one time, but when the bodies are joyning, and they muſt be done with great reſpect, for to uſe the poſtures directly to the motion or ſtanding of the body; and not to do as I have ſeen in ſome ordinary militia diſcipline, that have but one or two motions of their colours, upon and for all occaſions; as if true honour had ſuch weak inventions; this without doubt is moſt baſe and unworthy.

To proceed to the poſtures of the enſign.

They are in general as followeth, ſo well as I can expreſs them; for they are better in execution, and to be taught by example, than any pen can deſcribe them.

1. To change them with a plain wave from hand to hand.

2. To change them with lofty turns from hand to hand: each hand performing their turns before you deliver them, as from the right to the left, and from the left to the right as at firſt.

3. From the right hand with a wave and lofty turn, jutting the colours upon the left ſhoulder, and raiſing them up with the ſame hand again, and with lofty turns to deliver it into the left hand, that ſo thereby you may execute the ſame upon the right ſhoulder, and after the turns, to deliver it into the right hand, as at firſt.

4. With (and from) the right hand with lofty turns, throw your colours under the left arm, recovering them ſpeedily back with conceived flouriſhes, you deliver them into the left hand: you may execute the ſame with the left hand.

5. With turns or flouriſhes you bring the butt-end of the ſtaff to your left hand, turning the palm of your left hand outwards (but not for the reception of it), and with the ſame hand only throw it off upon its turn with a flouriſh, to deliver it into the left hand, and to perform the ſame with the left hand and deliver the colours into the right hand as at firſt.

6. With lofty turns bring the colours over the head down right (but not too low) before, and raiſing it again, with the fore-turn and back-turn over the head, changing of hands, and delivering as before.

7. From the right hand deliver into your left hand, with the palm of your hand uppermoſt, the butt-end of your ſtaff turning it backwards upon the left ſhoulder; and turning it over the head with the ſame hand, you deliver it into the right hand after the ſame manner, which being performed with the right hand, you proceed to the next.

8. From the right hand with lofty turns, fore-turns, and back-turns, you deliver your ſtaff into your left hand, and wheel it with the

ſame hand on the ſame ſide, and after your recovery to deliver it into the right hand, performing of the ſame, and proceed.

9. FROM the right hand upon the left ſhoulder, raiſing it and turning with its back-turn into the neck; with its returns and lofty flouriſhes over the head, you deliver the colours into the left, and with the left hand upon the right ſhoulder you execute the ſame, delivering them into your right hand as firſt.

10. 'TIS by ſome termed the figure of eight; that is with the right hand the half wheel to the left ſide, and ſo back on the right ſide, and then delivering it into the left hand to performe the ſame.

11. To turn it round the head oftentimes upon the palm with your fingers of your right hand, ſo recovering it, with lofty flouriſhes you deliver it into your left hand to performe the ſame, and ſo delivering of them into the right hand.

AND if it be your pleaſure to be compleat in the exerciſe of them, you go back to the tenth, and ſo conclude with the firſt.

AND in your concluſion, I have ſeen ſome to furl them up as they diſplay them, and ſo to open them again, but to furl them up in the field is moſt ridiculous.

OTHERS there are, that I have ſeen to round them oftentimes about their middles, but I cannot juſtifie it upon any military account.

OTHERS I have ſeen, that thinking to diſplay their colours bravely, delivered them from hand to hand under leg; I muſt boldly inform ſuch as uſe it, that 'tis a debaſement to the captain's colours, and an unworthy act in the performers of it.

I TOLD you of ſome particular poſtures, and proper for the enſign-bearer to obſerve.

1. STANDING, when the body ſtands, you are to diſplay the colours to and fro, in a direct circle, and changing from hand to hand, and no more, without you are commanded to ſhew the excellency of your parts; but be ſure to be well guarded when you ſhall be ſo commanded.

2. IN marching, the poſture is to diſplay the colours with the right hand only, caſting the enſign ſtill forwards, waving it cloſe over

and by the right ſhoulder, never croſſing the body, but ſtill keeping it flying on the outſide of the right ſhoulder.

3. The charging poſture is to carry the ſtaff extended ſtreight forward before your body, waving it to and fro as high as your boſom, being ready to give the aſſiſtance or aid with the left hand for the preſervation of your colours, or to offend the enemy if occaſion require.

The retiring or retreiting poſture is a mixture compounded of the three former, for in the firſt retreit, or drawing away of the company, he ſhall uſe the poſture of marching: but if the enemy preſs near upon him, he ſhall ſtand upon his guard, and uſe the poſture of charging; and in fine, having quit himſelf of danger, he ſhall uſe the ſtanding poſture a little, and then march or troop away, according to the directions of the commander.

And laſtly, when the enſign returns from the field, and is to be lodged; in former times the lieutenant had the van-guard; but that I ſhall not inſiſt upon, becauſe I have obſerved it to be left off by able ſoldiers.

The captain leading them out of the field, and coming near the place intended to lodge his colours, converts the ranks of muſquetteers of both diviſions to the right and left outwards, and joyns them; and being ſo fixed, the body of pikes ſtand in the rear, and the enſign in the head of them, the captain before the colours with the drums, and ſarjants guarding the colours on each ſide, and the lieutenant behind the enſign-bearer, and all being advanced, ſhall troop up with the colours furled to his lodging or quarters, and as he approacheth thereto, he ſhall with a bow to his captain carry in his colours; then the word ſhall be given to all the muſquetteers to make ready; that being done, they ſhall all preſent, and upon the beat of the drum, or other word of command, give one intire volley; and then command every officer to go to their quarters, and to be in readineſs upon the next ſummons either by drum or command.

It may fall out, that time will not permit this large circumſtance; then the whole company being drawn up in a body ſhall troop up to

the place, where the enſign ſhall quarter, to ſee the colours ſafely lodged, which being effected, the muſquetteers ſhall with one entire volley diſcharge their muſquets, and ſo depart to their reſpective quarters; commanding all upon the next ſummons to be in readineſs, &c.

And I might here adde the funeral poſture: if for a private ſouldier, the enſign is to march in his place on the head of the pikes, with the pikes trailing reverſed, but the colours furled and reverſed only: but if it be a commander that is to be interred, he is then to march juſt before the hearſe, with his colours reverſed, &c.

NUMBER IV.

A LIST of the royal army intended to be raiſed for the recovery and protection of the Palatinate, conſiſting of 25000 foot and 5000 horſe, 20 pieces of ordnance or artillery, as by his majeſty's command it was conſulted, adviſed and concluded on by a committee of lordes and others under their hands at Whitehall, London, fau. 13, 1620, 18 January, &c.

At the Court at Whitehall, Januarie the 13th, 1620.

Lo. Arc. Bpp. of Canty.
Lo. Chancellor Bacon
Lo. Privie Seale
Lo. Steward
Lo. M. Hambleton
Lo. Chamberlaine
E. of Arundel
E. of Kelcye
Lo. Viſcount Doncaſtre
Lo. Viſcount Ffaulkland
Lo. Carew
Lo. Digby
Mr. Treaſurer
Mr. Secretary Nanton
Mr. Secretary Calvert
Mr. Chancelor of the Exchequer
Mr. of the Wardes.

His majeſtie having reſolved to make ſome royal preparations for the recovery and protection of the Palatinate (being the antient inheritance of his majeſtie's ſonne in lawe and grand children) did, in his high wiſdome, thinke meet to appoint ſome perſons of knowledge and experience in the warres to conſider and give their advice in ſuch propoſitions as ſhall be made unto them from the counſel board for the better expediting of that ſervice.

To which purpoſe the Earle of Oxenford, and the Earle of Eſſex, both lately returned from the Palatinate, the Earle of Leiceſter, the Lo. Viſcount Wilmot, the Lo. Danvers, the Lo. Caufield, Sir Edd. Cecil, and Sir Richard Morriſon, Knts. and Captayne John Bingham;

were called to the table and made acquainted with his majeſty's pleaſure that they, or any five or more of them, with Sir Horace Vere and Sir Edward Conway, knights, if they returned into England while the committee ſhall continue, ſhall undertake that ſervice, and have their meetings and aſſemblyes in the ould council chamber at Whitehall, touching the affairs above-mentioned. And that for their better aſſiſtance they call unto them ſuch others of experience, whoſe advice and opinion they ſhall think meete to make uſe of in their ſeveral conſultations upon ſuch things as ſhall be ſoe referred to them from the Board, which they are to proſecute without intermiſſion or delay, until they ſhall make report of their opinions, which is to be done in writing under five of their hands at leaſt; which is accordingly done as hereafter followeth.

THE particulars offered to their conſiderations were theſe:

I. WHAT proporcion or number of men, as well horſe as foote, with municion, victuall, ſhippinge, and treaſure, will be ſufficient for that enterprize.

II. BY what time it will be meete that theſe forces be in readineſs, and where the armyes, municion, and victuall may beſt be provided; together with ſuch other circumſtances as are incident to any of theſe heades, ffor their better directions therein Mr. Secretaryes will acquaint them with ſuch intelligence as they have received touching the ſtrength of the enemyes forces, now in the Palatinate.

XIth Feb. 1620.

The LIST of a ROYALL ARMY, conſyſting of twenty-five thouſand ffoote, five thouſand horſe, twenty peeces of artillery, and all other habillaments and utenſels of warre for ſuch an enterprize ſoe dificult and remote; with our opinions and eſtimate of every perticular ſett downe accordinge to the limits of your lordſhipps directions, and grounded upon ſuch advertiſements of the enemyes ſtrength, as wee have received from the ſecretaryes of ſtate.

THE allowance of officers, and all entertainments unto this army, are extracted from the diverſitie of former preſidents in the ſeverall

employments of our own nation, and onely ſupplied by the beſt inſtitutions now in practice, where they have been defective.

	£.	s.	d.
FIRST. The charge of rayſing the ſaid 25000 foote for their apparell and arms, viz. 20000 pikes and muſkets, at 3l. 10s. a man; and 5000 calivers at 3l. 6s. a man, abateing all dead payes, will amount to the ſume of - - - - - - -	77836	8	0
The charge of rayſinge of 5000, viz. 3500 curraſeers at 30l. a piece, and 1500 carbynes at 20l. a peece, all dead payes being likewiſe abated, will amount to the ſum of - - - - - - -	126900	0	0
The charge of tranſportinge of 25000 footmen to the moſt convenient places of landing in the river of Maize, uſed by the ſtates in the low countreyes for landing there ſoldiers in like expeditions, at 4s. the man, will amount to the ſum of - - -	5000	0	0
The charge of tranſportinge 5000 horſemen to the ſame place at 18s. a peice for horſe and man, will amount to the ſum of - - - -	4500	0	0

THE twentie pieces of greate ordnance before-mentioned; two mortar pieces for fireworks, muſt be all mounted upon field carriages with four wheeles, and lymmers, fully compleate, and to be furniſhed and attended with ſpare carriages and wheels, blocke carriages, copper ladles furniſhed with ſpunges and rammers, and with all other habillaments and utenſells of warre, and with many other ſmall proviſions which are ſoe neceſſary for the trayne of artillery, that without them they can neither march nor be uſed. To which alſoe muſt be added ſome proportion of ſmall proviſions for the ſupply of the army.

THEN follows in this ſtate paper particulars of all the charges, pay, and allowances of the officers and ſoldiers, the military utenſils of all kinds, the receipts for fireworks, liſt of ſpar. pro iſions, &c. which we think too unintereſting to lay before the reader.

NUMBER V.

Reſpecting the Paymaſter-General.

THE officer appointed to pay the troops was ſtiled treaſurer of war; he had under him divers clerks, who paid particular bodies; their pay in the time of Edward I. was 1s. per diem. What was the pay of the treaſurer is not mentioned, the clerks paying artificers had only 6d.

IN the 6th of Henry IV. the Lord Furnivall and Sir John Pelham were treaſurers of the wars, and certain perſons were appointed to audit their accounts.

A.D. 1548, 1ſt of Edward VI. from Patin's account of the expedition to Muſſelborough in Scotland under the Duke of Somerſet, we learn that Syr Raufe Sadelyr, knight, was treaſurer of the army, but what were his allowances for that office is not there mentioned.

A.D. 1587, 29th Elizabeth, Sir Thomas Shirley, knight, was appointed treaſurer of the army in the Low Countries, with allowance of 1l. 6s. 8d. per diem for his own diet. For his vice-treaſurer 10s., and for three paymaſters 6s. 8d. per diem each, with allowance for portage of ten pounds in the thouſand, out of all ſuch ſums as ſhould come into his hands, with all ſuch profits and advantages as were enjoyed by the late treaſurer, Richard Huddleſtone, Eſq. In the 39th of the ſame reign, William Meredith, Gent. was appointed to the ſame office, under the title of paymaſter; he was bound to find ſecurity for the ſums with which he ſhould be entruſted.

IN Rymer, A.D. 1638, 14 Charles I., is the king's commiſſion appointing Sir William Uvedale, knight, treaſurer of war for the army intended againſt the Scots, with an allowance of 40s. per diem for his own diet, and for all ſuch ſums of money as ſhould paſs through his hands the hundredth penny, to be paid by thoſe who received money

of him; for a deputy 6s. 8d. per diem, four clerks each 2s., and one meſſenger at 12d. per diem.

THE next year another commiſſion was iſſued, when the allowance for money paſſing through the hands of the paymaſter was raiſed from the hundreth penny, or 1l. in the hundred, to 12l. 10s. for every thouſand pounds coming into his hands, for portage money. His own daily pay for diet was the ſame as before, but he was allowed two deputies, ſix clerks, and one meſſenger, all paid as before.

THE ſalaries and allowances of the paymaſter general of the year 1782, are ſtated in the ſixth report of the commiſſioners appointed to examine the public accounts of the kingdom, preſented in that year.

THE paymaſter general (it is there ſaid) is appointed by letters patent under the great ſeal, during pleaſure; he receives four annual allowances as paymaſter general of the forces, and one as treaſurer of Chelſea hoſpital: the four are, three thouſand pounds as the particular ſalary belonging to his office; one thouſand ſeven hundred and ſixty pounds for the payment of clerks; ſix hundred pounds for contingent expences of his office, and twenty ſhillings a day as one of the ſtaff upon the eſtabliſhment; the other allowance is twenty ſhillings a day as treaſurer of Chelſea hoſpital. The amount of theſe allowances is ſix thouſand and ninety-two pounds: out of which he paid for himſelf and officers in taxes nine hundred and ſixty-two pounds nineteen ſhillings and nine pence; to clerks one thouſand ſeven hundred and ſeven pounds; and for the contingent diſburſements of his office three hundred and ſixty pounds ſeven ſhillings and eight pence, making together three thouſand and thirty pounds ſeven ſhillings and five pence; which reduced his clear receipt to three thouſand and ſixty-one pounds twelve ſhillings and ſeven pence.

AMPLE as this allowance may appear, it makes but a ſmall part of the emoluments of a paymaſter general, in compariſon with thoſe accruing from the large ſums conſtantly remaining in their hands, and the vaſt balances retained by them for many years, even after they have reſigned their offices. "We procured (ſay the commiſſioners before mentioned), from the Pay-office, accounts of the balances and

ſums received and paid every year by each of theſe paymaſters (n) ſince they went out of office; a computation of intereſt at 4 per cent. per annum upon theſe balances every year, from ſix months after they ſeverally reſigned the office, proves that the loſs by the money left in the hands of Lord Holland amounts, at ſimple intereſt, to 248,394l. 13s.; of Mr. Charles Townſhend to 24,247l. 3s.; of Lord North and Mr. Cooke to 18,775l. 3s.; of Mr. Cooke and Mr. Thomas Townſhend 3,419l. 15s. Total 294,836l. 14s.

The deputy paymaſter has a clear yearly income of 962l. 10s. He is appointed by the paymaſter general, who has the nomination of all the officers and clerks employed in his office.

There are beſides in the paymaſter general's office the ſix following lucrative departments, whoſe net annual emoluments are thus ſtated in the before-cited report.

	£.	s.	d.
The caſhier - - - - -	8,389	15	6
The accountant - - - - -	2,715	3	9
The ledger keeper - - - -	529	16	0
The computer of off-reckonings - - -	1,038	5	6
The caſhier of half-pay - - - -	583	5	0
The entering clerk - - - -	1,498	5	4

The deputy paymaſters abroad are paid an allowance; ſix of them thirty ſhillings a day, and three of them three pounds a day. They have beſides many very conſiderable known fees and emoluments, beſides private advantages.

(n) Lord Holland reſigned this office in 1765; Mr. Charles Townſhend in 1766; Lord North and Mr. Cooke in 1767; Mr. Cooke and Mr. Thomas Townſhend in 1768.

NUMBER VI.

The Report of the Committee of the Houſe of Commons reſpecting the Cloathing of the Army, continued from p. 338. of the Firſt Volume.

AGENTS.

WITH regard to agents, it appeared, that their allowance conſiſts of a man per troop or company, and 2d. in the pound from the whole pay of the regiment; that the place of agent is ſometimes a gift, but generally a purchaſe; that he is properly the colonel's clerk, and that it is at the colonel's option, whether he ſhall receive the whole, or any part of the agent's allowance, except the 2d. in the pound, being obliged to account to the colonel for the reſt, if he thinks fit to reſerve it for his own uſe, which ſeems to depend on the price paid for the agency.

COMMISSARIES OF MUSTERS.

THE allowance upon the eſtabliſhment for muſters appeared to be as follows:

To the commiſſary-general of the muſters, 469l. 7s. 6d. per annum; to one deputy commiſſary-general, 419l. 15s.; to ſix deputies in South-Britain, 1095l.; to one deputy in North-Britain, 182l. 10s.; to one for Jerſey and Guernſey, 45l. 12s. 6d.; to one in the iſland of Scilly, 24l. 6s. 8d.; and for two clerks to the commiſſary-general, 91l. 5s; making in all 2327l. 16s. 8d. per annum: but of this ſum 150l. per annum are paid out of the day's pay allowed to Chelſea Hoſpital, which reduces the charge nominally upon the eſtabliſhment to the ſum of 2177l. 16s. 8d.

THAT the pay of a deputy commiſſary was 10s. per diem, ſubject to the deduction of 5 per cent. for poundage, $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. for the civil liſt, one day's pay for Chelſea Hoſpital, and 2d. in the pound to the agent; the neat pay amounting to about 160l. per annum: beſides which, that

in general a gratuity of half-a-guinea was given by the captain of every company of foot, and a guinea by the captain of every troop of horſe and dragoons at each muſter in England; and a piſtole for each troop, and half-a-guinea for each company abroad: but that this gratuity was ſometimes refuſed when the troops were complete.

THAT each deputy commiſſary had his proper circuit, which he was to perform every two months; yet that often two, and ſometimes three muſters, were taken together.

WIDOWS' PENSIONS.

THAT when a widow applies for a penſion, a certificate is required, ſigned by the colonel and agent of the regiment, to which her huſband belonged; together with an affidavit of her own annexed; in which ſhe ſwears, that ſhe is the real widow of the officer mentioned in the ſaid certificate. Whereupon the king grants a warrant, which is counterſigned by the ſecretary at war, for the penſion, agreeably to the regulation; and that when this is granted, the widow receives her penſion clear, and without deduction. That as often as the widows receive their penſions, they are obliged to make oath (except in a few inſtances, where the oath has been diſpenſed with) that they continue the widows of ſuch officers, and that they have no proviſion or other penſion from the government, either in Great Britain or Ireland: which oath is all that is required of them if they come themſelves; but that if they empower any other perſons, by letters of attorney, to receive their penſions, thoſe perſons muſt bring a certificate from the miniſter and church-wardens of the pariſh where the widows live, certifying that ſuch widows are living, and, to the beſt of their knowledge, continue the widows of ſuch officers.

THAT 1s. in the pound is deducted out of all the receipts on this fund (from the treaſury) for the paymaſter's ſalary, amounting, one year with another, to 750l. per annum, out of which 200l. was uſually paid to the under ſecretary at war, and 100l. to the deputy paymaſter.

THAT the whole annual fund is iſſued to the pay-maſter within the

compaſs of ſixteen months, and that the payments are made every four months, after eight are due, to thoſe who demand them.

OF THE STOCK-PURSE, OR NON-EFFECTIVE FUND.

The agent to the Duke of Montague's regiment of horſe being examined in relation to the diſpoſal of the vacant pay of private men wanting to complete, informed the committee, that it remains with the captain, and is applied, together with the pay of the two warrant men, to the recruiting fund, an account whereof is made up once a year; in which account credit is given on the one ſide for the vacant pay, and on the other the expence of horſes and men raiſed within the year charged, and the balance, if there is any, is carried to the next year's account; but that, in time of ſervice, the fund ſeldom anſwers the expence. That a general account is made up for the whole regiment, and then ſub-divided to each troop; but that the exceedings in one troop are not applied to make good the deficiencies in another. That this account is made up by the agent, and delivered to each captain, after it has been ſhewn to the colonel, who inſpects it, in order to ſee how each captain has recruited his troop; but that the colonel, as colonel, never meddles with the money ariſing from this fund, further than to ſee that it is properly diſpoſed of; and this is not the colonel's perſonal account, but belongs to the regiment, to which the colonel is anſwerable.

That it ſeldom happens that the balance is conſiderable, either for or againſt the captain, becauſe the fund allowed for recruiting is calculated to anſwer the common caſualties; but when by extraordinary calamities, which have ſometimes happened, the loſs has been ſo great that it was not in the power of the captain to make it good out of his remounting fund, it was cuſtomary to repreſent the caſe to the king, who has ordered the deficiency to be made up, either by an allowance of a certain number of vacancies for a time ſpecified, or (as is generally done in time of war) out of the fund for contingencies of the army. That the balance in favour of the captain ſometimes amounts to between 40l. and 50l. for two or three years, and that it

is not in the colonel's power to apply that balance towards making up deficiencies in another troop: that this balance, in time of peace, is ſometimes paid to the captain, by the colonel's order, when their troops have been compleated; but when it is not paid to them, it is reſerved for future accidents. That he has known a balance paid to one captain, when the balance has been againſt the other captains of the ſame regiment; but that he never knew a balance paid to one captain when there was ſo great a deficiency in other troops that there has been a neceſſity to apply to the king, and believes the two caſes never happened together. That the agent keeps the account of the two warrant men upon the eſtabliſhment, and the allowances by the king, which account the agent credits for two ſhillings per man; but that he is not charged with inliſting men; nor does any account of the fund for that purpoſe come to his hands.

BESIDES the two warrant men on the eſtabliſhment, it appeared that there is the pay of another vacant man allowed to each troop, and in ſome regiments two, towards the remounting fund.

THE agent to Sir John Ligonier's regiment of horſe being examined in relation to the fund for remounting and recruiting, informed the committee, that the ſubſiſtence of one of the two vacant men per troop, allowed in that regiment, is reſerved in the agent's hands, towards the remounting fund, and added to the ſubſiſtence of the two warrant men upon the eſtabliſhment: but that the ſubſiſtence of the other vacant man is iſſued to the captain with his own ſubſiſtence, and no account of that comes to the agent. That the clerk of each troop keeps a particular account of the vacancies both of private men and horſes, and gives the ſame to the commanding officer, who delivers it to the pay-maſter, from whence a general account is tranſmitted to the agent. That the agent makes up an account annually with each captain of the expence of remounting and recruiting his troop, and if there is a ſurplus in his favour, he ſometimes receives it, and ſometimes not, as the colonel pleaſes; but that it is never paid without the colonel's orders. That if the captains decline taking the ſurplus, as they ſometimes do, it is carried to the next year's account; but that

the balance is as often againſt as in favour of the captains: that he believes the captains ſometimes pay the balance when it is againſt them; but that if there is a ſurplus in favour of the captain of one troop, and a great balance againſt the captain of another, the ſurplus of the former is not applied to make good the deficiencies of the latter.

WITH regard to the ſtock-purſe, or remounting fund in the ſeveral regiments of dragoons, it appeared, that the ſubſiſtence of three men and horſes is reſerved for that ſervice, beſides the two warrant men allowed upon the eſtabliſhment; and that the money is diſpoſed of as in the cavalry. That the captains keep that account themſelves, and that no vacant pay goes to the colonel, it being all appropriated to the fund of the ſtock-purſe.

THAT the fund for recruiting the regiments of infantry ariſes from the vacancies, being thence called the non-effective fund. That in time of war the pay of three vacant men is commonly allowed for recruiting, beſides the two warrant men granted to each captain upon the eſtabliſhment; but if any man is reſpited upon the muſter-roll, then the two warrant men are both reſpited, there being in all eſtabliſhments a warrant to reſpite thoſe two men when the company is not full.

ANOTHER agent being examined in relation to the ſtock-purſe and recruiting accounts, informed the committee, that in the regiments of horſe thoſe accounts are kept ſeparately by each troop, but that in the foot the method of keeping the recruiting account varies, being ſometimes a particular, and ſometimes a general regimental account: and that to this account is carried the ſubſiſtence of the two warrant men upon the eſtabliſhment, and the vacant pay of non-effectives. That abroad the commanding officer makes a return of the number of effective men to the commander in chief, whereby the number of non-effectives is aſcertained, and thereupon the pay-maſter of the regiment is ordered to iſſue ſubſiſtence to the captains for the effectives only. That in ſome inſtances the pay-maſter keeps the vacant pay in his own hands, and in others he remits it to the agent, as a fund for

recruiting; but that the uſual method is for the pay-maſter at every muſter to ſend an account of the non-effectives in each troop or company to the agent here, who acquaints the pay-maſter general with the ſums neceſſary to be ſent abroad for ſubſiſtence, and carries the remainder to the recruiting fund. That at home the agent receives the whole ſubſiſtence of the regiment, and generally iſſues it to the ſeveral captains, without keeping any account of non-effectives at all; ſo that, in that caſe, there is no recruiting fund kept by the agent, but each captain recruits his own company as he can, and receives the ſubſiſtence of his warrant men with that of the reſt of the company. That when officers are ſent out to recruit in general for the whole regiment, they draw for the money wanted upon the agent; and that each captain is debited in proportion to the number of men he receives, and the balance paid to him annually.

IT appeared alſo that, in ſome regiments of foot, the regimental pay-maſter keeps the account of non-effectives; and that in others the money is ſtopped by the colonel in the hands of the pay-maſter, and remitted back again to the agent.

NUMBER VII.

Copy of a Letter from Captain Phipps, Engineer, at Gibraltar, to Lieutenant Colonel Ramſay, of the 30th Regiment, dated May 17th, 1771.

DEAR SIR,

AGREEABLY to promiſe I ſit down to write a few lines relating to Healy's mortar; the 14th inſtant was at length fixed for trying that new invented pierrier; eight in the morning was the time ordered by the governor; South Port Gate was ſhut, and the three guards between that and the South Barracks retired out of harm's way; the general had referred the charge of the mortar, &c. to Colonel Philips; Healy ſtood out for 50 pounds of powder, but the colonel inſiſted that the firſt experiment ſhould be with 27 pounds; proper paving ſtones were collected, and a detachment of artillery attended to aſſiſt in loading; after the powder was placed in the piece, a tompion, or bottom of wood, was carefully put to cover the charge, a copper tube conveyed the quick-match from the tompion to the centre; the ſtones were carefully put into the mortar, 1470 in number, the leaſt a pound weight, and few exceeded 1¼lb.; a hollow cane well directed conveyed the quick-match through the ſtones to the copper tube, and upon the extremity was faſtened a port-fire, to burn five minutes before the fire ſhould reach the quick-match; when the port-fire was firſt lighted, and every one retired to a great diſtance, with various conjectures about the ſucceſs of the machine, five minues paſſed, ten minutes paſſed, no exploſion! poor Healy very impatient; at length people approached nearer and nearer to inquire into the mortar's ſilence, when upon examination it was found that the port-fire had but half burned; by ſome accident it was choaked in the making: another was immediately applied, which had the deſired effect; great

was the explosion; near a quarter part of the stones went into the sea, above 100 yards; to the right they extended as far as Ragged Staff, and to the left as far as the Watering Pier, but no damage was done; the cavity of the piece was searched, but no fracture could be seen, and what was surprising, the rock above that appeared so bad did not give way; it was fired a second time with the same charge, the success much the same as the first.

The third time it was loaded with 13½lb. (viz. half the former charge) and 1220 stones, when I suppose about 200 passed over the line wall; with these three discharges the eight-gun battery was covered over with stones; she spit her venom most there; after three experiments Healy received the congratulations of Colonel Boyd and all the officers upon the road; the general took his observations from the terras walk; the mortar has not received the least damage; its complexion is a little changed by the powder.

Colonel Boyd who goes home in the Lizard, which sails the first Levantor, hopes to see you in London, to give you a particular account of the success of your friend Healy, who wished several times you were present: such a number of people assembled together, and gaping upon one spot, put me in mind of the mountain in labour: Dr. Monington was man-midwife, and many others had a finger in the pye; the delivery was not a mouse (according to the fable), but 1500 paving stones, and, by way of secundine, a large tompion, which made no small figure in the air. It may not be improper to remind you that the figure of the mortar is a parabolic conoid, length of the axis four feet, and the diameter of the bore at the muzzle thirty-six inches, and the solid content fourteen cubical feet.

I am, Sir, with great esteem,
Your most obedient,
and very humble servant,
J. PHIPPS.

As this letter is not perhaps explicit enough to gentlemen who have neither been at Gibraltar, nor have heard of the construction

and utility of this mortar, I ſhall endeavour to explain it a little further.

This mortar is cut out of a rock, which Mr. Healy pitched upon, about 200 yards higher than the level of the ſea, and 400 yards horizontal diſtance from the line wall.

He began by forming a plain ſurface of 45 degrees elevation, then bored a centre hole, or axis, four feet deep, and perpendicular to the ſaid ſurface, from that centre, deſcribed a circle three feet diameter; the rock being ſo hard that he could not excavate it by chipping, was therefore obliged to bore holes all round the circle, each inclining to the centre, ſo that all thoſe holes run into one another, and into the centre hole near its bottom.

Then cutting away the partitions betwixt the holes, a core of a conical figure become looſe, and was extracted, which core Captain Benttinck brought home in the Centaur; Healy's next care was to chip off that conoid, ſo as to form it into a true parabola, and then to poliſh it.

As the nature of a parabola is ſuch, that either light or ſound ſent from its focus proceeds in parallel lines; ſo he concluded that the impetus given to any charge by the exploſion of gunpowder would be alſo parallel; doubtleſs it would be ſo, but as his mortar was loaded brimfull of ſtones, thoſe which lay cloſe to the tompion being firſt impelled, muſt of courſe ſtrike thoſe before them variouſly, by which means, like billiard balls, the foremoſt muſt purſue the direction in which they were ſtruck, whence their ſpreading to the right and left, a good diſtance, is obvious, and rather an advantage than otherwiſe, where a great body of men are ſuppoſed to be marching, or a great number of boats are attempting to land troops.

This mortar has no other chamber but the bottom of the parabola, nor touch-hole but the hollow reed and copper tube which convey the fire from the muzzle to the focus, down through the very centre of the ſtones and tompion; by this contrivance the copper tube terminating in the focus and centre of the powder, the whole being inſtantly kindled, acts more forcibly than when lighted on one ſide, as in cannon, mortars, &c.

THE utility of this mortar in defence of any pafs is very evident, efpecially where it may be formed on a high ground not eafily come-atable by an enemy, and the weight that each ftone will fall with renders this a very terrible machine to invaders, and a very ferviceable one to defenders; for by the fame rule that one of three feet diameter can throw about 1500 weight of ftones, what would one of fix feet diameter do, and be eafier made than the former, becaufe labourers could go into the infide to chip and polifh it.

ONE objection to fuch is, that it cannot be turned or traverfed as may be requifite; in anfwer thereto, it is only calculated for a pafs, and if taken by an enemy cannot be turned againft its friends, which is too often the cafe of mortars and cannon.

WHEN there are rocks of any kind at the entrance of harbours, &c. fuch a mortar might be conftructed, at a cheap rate, for the defence of our fhips, &c.; and where there are no rocks, I have invented an artificial battery of fuch mortars that, with great fafety to the defenders, and peril to the offenders, might be put in practice at every acceffable place on our coaft, and the mortars traverfable as need required; but as we are at prefent more attentive to domeftic than foreign enemies, this is not the feafon for guarding againft the latter, therefore needlefs to propofe it.

IF the above defcription of Healy's mortar be not fufficient to convey an idea of it to thofe who are not acquainted with parabolic curves, the infide of a common wine glafs is nearly the figure of it; it is likely the book you mention may have given Healy the hint of this, which you will allow is a great improvement; on the fame principle he has invented mines which, with a tenth of the powder, will do ten times more damage by blowing tons of ftones and rubbifh horizontally.

J. RAMSAY.

NUMBER VIII.

A PATENT was granted by King Charles I. to William Drummond, of Hauthornden, in 1625, for the ſole making and vending, for the ſpace of twenty-one years, the following machines and warlike engines invented by him; the patent is printed in his works.

The firſt is an equeſtrian inſtrument, by which a ſingle horſeman may be equal in fight to five or ſix armed with the common arms, which inſtrument indeed agrees alſo moſt excellently with the foot ſervice, and from effects not leſs terrible than ſpeedy, is called the thundering ſtaff; but from its various properties, the box piſtol, box muſquet, box carrabyn, or box dragoon.

The ſecond is a new kind of ſpear, with which any foot ſoldier, beſides uſing it as a pike, may diſcharge five or ſix guns; this weapon may be named the projecting ſpear, or pike arquebus.

The third is a ſort of machine of conjugated muſkets, by the aſſiſtance of which one ſoldier or two are enabled to oppoſe an hundred guns, which machine, from its effect, is called the thundering chariot, and vulgarly the fiery waggon.

The fourth is a new ſpecies of gun of the greater kind, by the aſſiſtance of which, in the ſame time that they have been able to diſcharge one ball, they may now diſcharge three, four, or five, and that either in a land or ſea engagement. Of this machine there are different figures and ſizes; but from the common property of all, they may be called by the general name of the open cannon, vulgarly the open ordnance.

The fifth and ſixth are of the mortar kind, of which one, from its remarkable uſe in defending walls and ſhips, and from its wonderful expedition, is called the flat ſcourer. The other, which is extremely uſeful in naval fights, for breaking the maſts, yards, and oars, whence it is called the cutter.

THE ſeventh is a machine not unlike the ſpecies of the antient Heliopolis, accommodated to the modern diſcipline for defending a fortreſs, and alſo for attacking one; by the aſſiſtance of it the beſiegers may enter into the inner part of a city or fortification, or over a ditch, without the uſe of rolling mounts; and in the defence of a city, the fortification may be ſo ſtrengthened by the uſe of this machine, as it ſhall never be taken or demoliſhed, and it will ſtand free on the curtain. This from its likeneſs to a cavalier, and becauſe it carries a number of ſoldiers, and has the power of motion, may be vulgarly called the elephant or cavalier errant (o).

THE ninth a new kind of ſhip that cannot be prevented by chains or barricades, or the force of any cannon, from entering any port, and either burning or taking all the veſſels therein; this veſſel, from its ſtupendous manifeſt and terrible effects, and horrid demolition of ports and veſſels, deſerves to be called the Leviathan.

THE tenth is an inſtrument ſerving to obſerve the proportional intenſity and remiſſion of winds, whereby the ſailor is inſtructed with more certainty to take the juſt meaſure of his voyage, wherefore it is called the ſea meaſurer.

THE eleventh is a kind of light veſſel, which with ſails and oars is carried with great celerity againſt the wind, for any time, and for velocity will outgo any ordinary veſſel, and thence called the ſea poſtillion.

THE twelfth is a certain inſtrument whereby the courſe of a veſſel is exactly meaſured, and the difference of longitude of places either on the coaſt or at ſea are determined: it is called the length compaſs.

THE thirteenth is an inſtrument whereby a quantity of ſalt water is rendered ſweet and drinkable at a ſmall expence; it will make every day a ſufficient quantity of ſweet water for the day's conſumption, ſo that putrefaction by keeping it is not to be apprehended: this is called a ſhip fountain.

(o) THIS is printed from a manuſcript; the eighth article is wanting, and I have not been able to obtain a printed copy of the book.

THE fourteenth contains burning glaſſes of different kinds, with which at any diſtance any combuſtible matter, whether on land or ſea, may be ſet on fire, to which no guns are equal. Theſe from various conic-ſections, concave and convex, and other curvilinear ſuperfices, and thoſe variouſly combined, will burn both by reflection and refraction; and as the honor belongs to Archimedes, they are called Archimedean mirrors.

THE fifteenth comprehends a kind of perſpective or teleſcope, by the aſſiſtance of which an object, the light being thrown on it, will appear as plainly and vividly at any diſtance, as if viewed in the ordinary manner at a proper diſtance: this is vulgarly called the lynx's eye.

THE ſixteenth is an organiſed machine, from natural cauſes producing an unremitted and perpetual motion, the uſe of which, from its different principles, may be a great benefit to various mechanical operations: it is called the mover.

THIS patent was dated at Hampton Court, the 29th day of September, 1626, and ſealed Holy-rood-houſe.

NUMBER IX.

Liſt of the Military Eſtabliſhment of England for 1684.

THIS liſt was given at large in the Appendix to the laſt edition: a collection of obſcure names can be no illuſtration to this work; we ſhall therefore confine ourſelves to a ſummary enumeration of the forces then eſtabliſhed.

THE firſt is the royal band of gentlemen penſioners, commanded by the Earl of Huntingdon; they conſiſted of a captain, a lieutenant, and a ſtandard-bearer, with forty private gentlemen.

THE next is his majeſty's body-guard, commanded by Lord Viſcount Grandiſon; they were one hundred yeomen, under a captain, lieutenant, and enſign; fifteen of the hundred were ſubaltern officers, or yeomen uſhers.

A TROOP of king's own horſe-guards, conſiſting of two hundred men, beſides officers and their grenadiers, commanded by the Duke of Albemarle.

THE queen's troop of horſe-guards, commanded by the Honourable Sir Philip Howard: ſixty-four private men, beſides officers and their grenadiers.

THE duke's troop of horſe-guards, commanded by the Earl of Feverſham; the ſame in eſtabliſhment and number with the queen's.

THE royal regiment of horſe-guards, commanded by the Earl of Oxford, conſiſting of eight troops of fifty men each, beſides officers.

THE king's own royal regiment of dragoons; ſix troops of fifty men each, beſides officers.

Two regiments of foot-guards; the firſt compoſed of twenty-four, the ſecond of twelve companies.

THE firſt, or royal regiment of foot, conſiſting of twenty-one companies.

THE ſecond, or queen's regiment of foot, conſiſting of ten companies.

THE Duke of York and Albany's regiment of foot, conſiſting of twelve companies.

THE Holland regiment of foot, conſiſting of twelve companies.

THE Ducheſs of York and Albany's regiment of foot, conſiſting of ten companies, beſides the company of grenadiers.—Some of the other regiments had additional companies of grenadiers attached to them. There were alſo other independent companies not regimented. The whole of this force was reviewed on Putney-heath, the 1ſt of October, 1684; and conſiſted in all of about 4000 men, commanded in chief by the Earl of Craven.

NUMBER X.

Of the Scots Brigade formerly in the Service of Holland.

ALTHOUGH the Scots brigade in the ſervice of the republick of Holland does not, ſtrictly ſpeaking, come within the plan of this work, yet as Britiſh ſoldiers who have nobly ſupported the honour of their country among foreigners, it is hoped the following ſhort account of them will be favourably received.

ABOUT the year 1570, the fame of the low country wars, and the great name of the prince of Orange, cauſed in many Scotch gentlemen of martial ſpirit a deſire to ſtudy the art of war under him; they therefore went over to Holland, carrying with them a number of their countrymen, who were formed into independent companies: among theſe gentlemen were many of the firſt families in Scotland, ſuch as Balfour, Lord Burley, Scott, Earl of Buccleugh, Preſton of Gorton, Halkett of Pitferran, many of the different families of the name of Stewart, Hay, Sinclair, Douglas, Graham, Hamilton, &c.

THESE troops ſignalized themſelves on all occaſions, and were much reſpected and depended on by the States; and in 1594, at the return of their ambaſſadors from Scotland, where they had been to compliment King James on the birth of his ſon, they carried back with them 1500 recruits for their Scotch companies, who were probably now, if not before, regimented.

THESE troops ſuffered much at the ſiege of Bommel, in 1599; at the famous battle of the Downs, near Newport, in 1600; and at the ſiege of Oſtend, in 1601; gaining in the whole ſo much honour, that at the ſiege of Bois-le-Duc, in 1629, Frederick Henry, Prince of Orange, ſtiled them the Bullwark of the Republick; there were then three regiments, namely, Scott's, Buccleugh's, and Halkett's.

After the death of Prince William II. in 1630, the affairs of the republick were in great diſorder, parties ran high, and the army was much neglected, and particularly the Scotch brigade, who having nobody to protect them, had a number of Dutchmen, Germans, and French refugees, by the intereſt of different burgo-maſters, made officers among them, which entirely diſpirited them; ſo that in divers engagements in the years 1675 and 1676, they did not behave themſelves with their accuſtomed gallantry, at which King William being ſurprized and diſpleaſed, aſked General Mackay, then lately come into his ſervice from France, if he was not much hurt and aſhamed at the behaviour of his countrymen, the Scotch brigade, and if he could conceive the reaſon of their being ſo much degenerated from what they were when ſerving in the army of Guſtavus Adolphus, and commanded by the Lord Rae.

Mackay, as much piqued as the prince, begged leave to obſerve, that this corps, though called the Scotch brigade, was, in reality, a mixture of deſerters and out-caſts from all nations; and that in promotions to commiſſions, the preference had been given to Dutch, Germans, and Frenchmen; the young Scotch officers and cadets had therefore left the ſervice, and prevented others coming into it as volunteers, and the old private men, not being commanded by their countrymen, had many of them deſerted; but that if his highneſs would diſpoſe of the foreign officers in the national or new levied regiments, and replace them with Scotch gentlemen of family, and raiſe Scotch recruits, he would anſwer that the corps would be as good as ever.

In 1688, this brigade was demanded of the States by King James, but they refuſed to ſend them back, whereupon he iſſued a proclamation requiring them to return home, on pain of being declared rebels to their country; the revolution being then on foot, this proclamation produced no effect; but the brigade ſoon after came to England in ſupport of King William; they were then commanded by General Mackay: by this circumſtance it does not appear that theſe troops were raiſed under any formal treaty, but rather that they were tacitly connived at.

AFTER King William was made Stadtholder, General Mackay got the brigade put on a good footing, and formed the plan of their cloathing, pay, recruiting, &c. as it lately ſtood; but the price of every article of life having greatly increaſed ſince thoſe regulations of their pay, it was by no means ſufficient: the pay and perquiſites of a colonel, at the higheſt, not exceeding three hundred and fifty pounds; that of a company, one hundred and forty pounds; and of a lieutenancy, forty pounds per annum.

AFTER the peace of Aix la Chappelle, and the death of the Prince of Orange, the brigade ſuffered greatly by reduction and incorporation, and were, from ill-treatment, and neglect, by degrees dwindling to nothing, when the late rupture between England and Holland cauſed them entirely to quit the ſervice of that ungrateful Republick.

NUMBER XI.

A Proclamation for the Uſe of the Bowe and Pike together in Military Diſcipline.

A. D. 1633. Pat. 9. Car. 1. p.6 n. 9. dors. WHEREAS in former tyme bowes and arrowes have been found ſerviceable weapons for the wars, whereby great victories and conqueſts have been gotten, and by ſundry ſtatutes the uſe thereof hath been enjoyned; which ſtatutes are ſtill in force, and we expect that our ſubjects ſhould conform themſelves thereunto, knowing the exerciſe of ſhooting to be a means to preſerve health, ſtrength, and agility of body, and to avoid idleneſs, unlawfull diſports, drunkenneſs, and ſuch like enormities and diſorders, which are too frequent among our people.

And whereas our loving ſubject, William Nead, an antient archer, hath preſented unto us a warlike invention, of the uſe of the bowe with the pike together, whereby every pikeman may alſo be a bowman; which warlike ſervice we, together with our counſell of ſtate, and counſell of war, have ſeen exerciſed in military diſcipline, and we do approve the ſame to be ſerviceable and uſefull in tyme of warr, and have, by our commiſſions under our great ſeal of England, authoriſed the ſaid William Nead, and William Nead his ſon, whom he hath inſtructed, to teach and exerciſe our loving ſubjects therein: and to that end and purpoſe we do, by this our proclamation, ſignifie our will and pleaſure; that the uſe and exerciſe of the bowe and pike together, ſhall be put together within this our realm of England, and dominion of Wales, that all our loving ſubjects who are fit to exerciſe arms, and eſpecially the chief officers of our trayned bands, may be inſtructed therein, by ſuch ways, and in ſuch manner as ſhall be preſcribed and directed by the ſaid William Nead, and William Nead, or

either of them, and thoſe whom either of them ſhall have ſufficiently inſtructed and deputed in that behalf, at ſuch convenient times and places as ſhall be appointed by the deputy-lieutenants, or juſtices of the peace in every county, mayors, bailiffs, conſtables, and other head officers in every city or town corporate reſpectively, ſo that the ſame may be done without prejudice or hindrance to general muſters, trayning, or other publick affairs, willing and requiring them and every of them reſpectively, upon notice given by the ſaid William Nead, and William Nead, or either of them, or by ſuch others as by either of them ſhall be thereunto appointed; that they, or ſome of them, do from tyme to tyme preſcribe and appoint convenient tymes and places for the exerciſe of this warlike ſervice, and by warrant or ſuch other ways and means as ſhall ſeem moſt meet unto them, to cauſe ſuch of our loving ſubjects as aforeſaid to be preſent at ſuch tyme and place, there to be exerciſed and made perfect in the uſe of the bow and the pike together in military diſcipline.

And that this our proclamation may take the better effect, we do hereby require and commaund all and ſingular deputy-lieutenants and juſtices of peace, mayors, bailiffs, conſtables, and all other our officers, miniſters, and ſubjects whom it may concern reſpectively, that they and every of them be aiding and aſſiſting unto the ſaid William Nead, and William Nead, and perſons deputed as aforeſaid in the exerciſe and performance of the ſaid premiſes, according to our will and pleaſure herein declared, as they tender our pleaſure, and will avoid the contrary at their perills.

Given at our Court at Oateland, this 12th day of Auguſt.

Per ipſum Regem.

NUMBER XII.

New Regulations in the Office of the Paymaſter-General.

Extract from the Report of the Commiſſioners of Public Accounts, 1781.

THE public money in the hands of the paymaſter-general is received by him, either from the exchequer, or from the treaſury of Ireland, when Iriſh regiments are drawn out of that kingdom, and in part paid by Great Britain; or from perſons who, upon their accounts being ſettled, are directed by the king's warrant to pay the balance into his hands.

THE preſent paymaſter-general has no money in his hands received from the treaſury of Ireland; all the accounts of the Iriſh regiments being made up, and their whole pay now borne by Great Britain. The ſum in his hands ariſing from balances directed to be paid to him was, upon the 1ſt of February laſt, 8463l. 10s. 4d. The exchequer is the great ſource from whence he draws his ſupply.

THE ſupply for the army is granted by parliament to the king, and therefore no part of this ſupply can be iſſued from the exchequer without the royal ſign manual authorizing ſuch iſſue. After the ſupply is granted, there comes from the treaſury to the pay-office the king's ſign manual, directing the lords of the treaſury to iſſue to the paymaſter-general, a certain part of that ſupply (in time of war uſually a million) by way of impreſt, and upon account, according to ſuch warrants and orders as either are, or ſhall be ſigned by the king. This ſign manual, with the treaſury warrant and order of the auditor of the exchequer, made in purſuance of the ſign manual, after being entered in the pay-office, are lodged at the exchequer, and give the paymaſter-general a credit there for the ſum mentioned in thoſe in-

ſtruments. To obtain any part of this credit, the paymaſter-general preſents a memorial to the treaſury, ſpecifying the ſum he requires, and for what ſervice. The treaſury, by letter, direct the auditor of the exchequer to iſſue that ſum to the paymaſter-general, upon the unſatisfied order above mentioned. This letter being produced, and paſſing through the forms of office, he obtains from them the ſum he wants. When the ſum in this ſign manual is exhauſted, another ſign manual, with the conſequential warrant and order, is obtained, and renewed in the ſame manner, from time to time, until there is occaſion for the laſt ſum, which completes the whole army ſupply of the year; when, inſtead of a ſign manual, there comes a privy ſeal, directing the iſſue of that remaining ſum, and including, authorizing, and confirming the whole ſupply of that year.

IT was uſual formerly for the paymaſter-general to apply to the treaſury every four months, each time for a third part of the ſum voted for the ſervices of the army, under the general head of pay and ſubſiſtence of the forces at home and abroad; but ſince the year 1759 the practice has been to aſk of the treaſury, from time to time, for the ſums voted under diſtinct heads of ſervice, and not until the time when the demands for the ſervices are near approaching.

THE ſervices are ranged under two general heads, the *ordinary* and the *extraordinary*. The ordinary are thoſe for which ſpecific ſums are annually voted by parliament: the extraordinary are thoſe which, though not provided for by parliament, are nevertheleſs conſidered as neceſſary, and therefore paid, in confidence of their being provided for in the ſucceeding ſeſſion.

As the ſervice is diſtinguiſhed, ſo is the application for it to the treaſury. Sums for the ordinary ſervices are obtained upon the application of the paymaſter-general himſelf: thoſe for the extraordinary are directed into his hands, upon the application of others.

AFTER the ſupply for the pay of the army is voted by parliament, the ſecretary at war ſends to the pay-office the four eſtabliſhments for the year, which are:

1. THE guards, garriſons, and land-forces.

2. THE forces in the plantations, and the garriſons in North-America and the Weſt-Indies.

3. THE forces in Minorca, and garriſon of Gibraltar.

4. THE militia.

TOGETHER with the ſeveral regulations of the ſubſiſtence. The eſtabliſhment contains the diſtribution of the whole ſum voted amongſt the ſeveral regiments, corps, garriſons, officers, and private men, by the day and by the year, and the groſs ſum allowed for each regiment, corps, and garriſon. To each eſtabliſhment are annexed two warrants, the one directing the paymaſter-general to make a deduction of twelve-pence in the pound out of all he ſhall iſſue, called the poundage, and ſpecifying to what ſervice it ſhall be applied; the other directing a deduction of one day's pay, out of the payments in the eſtabliſhment, for the uſe of Chelſea hoſpital.

THE application by the paymaſter-general to the treaſury for money is made under diſtinct heads of ſervice; which may be comprehended under three heads:

1. THOSE ſervices for which the whole ſum received by the paymaſter-general at the exchequer, is iſſued by him ſoon after he receives it.

2. THOSE, for which the ſum he receives, belonging to particular perſons, remains in his poſſeſſion, upon account of the perſons entitled, until they or their agents apply to him for payment.

3. THOSE for which a part only of the ſum he receives is iſſued by him, ſoon after he receives it, and the remainder continues in his hands for any indefinite time.

OF the firſt claſs, where he ſoon iſſues all he receives, are the returned poundage; Chelſea hoſpital, and the out-penſioners; the ſubſiſtence of the forces in Jamaica and the Eaſt-Indies, and of the non-commiſſion officers and private men in Africa; the ſubſiſtence and cloathing of the militia and invalids; the ſubſiſtence iſſued upon account; the ſtoppages of the officers; ſubſiſtence in the Weſt-Indies, North-America, and garriſons of Gibraltar and Minorca; the general and ſtaff officers and garriſons in Great Britain; the nett off-reckon-

ings; the allowances to the colonel, captain, and agent; the clearings; foreign ſubſidies; arrears of the foreign troops; levy-money; and all the extraordinaries. Under the head of ſubſiſtence of the forces at home, ſo much of the ſum received, as the ſubſiſtence actually amounts to, is iſſued to the agent, as ſoon as he receives it.

OF the ſecond claſs are, the reduced officers; and, under the ſeveral heads of the garriſons abroad, the general and ſtaff-officers, and hoſpitals: ſo much of the ſums voted for theſe ſervices, as is contained in each warrant for the pay of the officers named in the certificate, remains in his hands until thoſe officers or their agents apply for it.

OF the third claſs, where he iſſues a part only of the ſums he receives, are the ſubſiſtence of the forces at home; the ſubſiſtence of the non-commiſſion officers and private men of the Britiſh forces in the Weſt-Indies and North-America, and of the foreign troops; the garriſons abroad; and the general and ſtaff-officers and hoſpitals abroad. Beſides theſe, there are ſome other heads of ſervice, to ſatisfy which he does not expreſsly apply to the treaſury for money, but pays the demands for them out of what he has received under other heads of ſervice. Theſe are, the allowance to widows; ſome ſervices to which the poundage is made ſubject by the king's warrant, and contingencies.

FROM the arrangement made of ſums received by the paymaſter-general from the exchequer it appears, that the balance in his hands (p) cannot conſiſt of any ſums comprehended in the firſt claſs; becauſe of them he very ſoon iſſues all he receives: nor is it probable, that the ſums in the ſecond claſs can conſtitute any very conſiderable part of it; becauſe it is not to be preſumed that officers of any denomination will ſuffer their pay to continue long without applying for it, either by themſelves or their agents.

(p) IN November, 1781, the balance of publick money in the hands of the paymaſter-general was 447153l. 11s. 3¾d.; and his average monthly balance for ſeventeen months has been 869148l.

UNDER the denomination of ſubſiſtence for the forces at home, the paymaſter-general receives more than that ſubſiſtence amounts to, with an intent of procuring thereby a fund for certain payments not ſpecifically applied for by him, and therefore otherwiſe unprovided for. He receives ſubſiſtence upon the full eſtabliſhment of the non-commiſſion officers and private men of the Britiſh forces in North-America, and part of the Weſt-Indies, and of the foreign troops; but as theſe regiments muſt be incomplete, and the deputy paymaſters there iſſue ſubſiſtence according to the ſtrength only of the regiment, he does not remit to them the whole he receives, but ſo much only as, from the laſt accounts they ſend him of the ſtate of the balances in their hands, he judges will be ſufficient to enable them to carry on the publick ſervice. This uniſſued ſubſiſtence of the Britiſh forces in the Weſt-Indies and North-America, continues in his hands till the accounts of the ſeveral regiments are made up, when it falls into the clearings, and is iſſued to the agents; but this is not until fifteen or ſixteen months after they become due. The uniſſued ſubſiſtence of the foreign troops remains with him till their arrears are paid to the agents, which time ſeems, from the account of the iſſues received from the treaſury, generally to be about two years after they are due.

HE receives the whole ſums voted for garriſons, ſtaff, and hoſpital abroad; but the officers in theſe departments, named in the certificates from the war office, do not exhauſt the whole ſum voted.

HENCE ariſes a fund compoſed of theſe ſavings, out of which he iſſues for certain ſervices, and defrays certain expences, without making any ſpecific application for them to the treaſury. Theſe are, the allowance to widows; ſome of the payments to which the poundage is made applicable by the king's warrants; and the miſcellaneous head of contingencies.

To demands for theſe ſervices, and to no other (except ſuch claims for the pay of the general and ſtaff-officers, and officers of the garriſons and hoſpitals abroad, and of the reduced officers, as remained unſatisfied), was this balance liable on the day of its date. Nothing had been iſſued for the allowance to widows in the year 1780; for

enough remained of former receipts in the hands of the paymaſter of the widows' penſions to carry on that ſervice; and therefore this balance was not liable to be reduced by any iſſue under the head of allowance to widows. The payments out of the poundage and hoſpital, and for the contingencies in the year 1780, could not be aſcertained, becauſe ſome of the warrants had not been produced for payment, and therefore the accounts could not be made up; we muſt allow it then to be the ſame with that of the laſt year, in which theſe accounts were made up at the office, which are of the year 1778.

THE payments out of the poundage, and one day's pay, conſiſt of ſalaries to officers, exchequer fees, returned poundage, and Chelſea hoſpital; the whole amount of which for this one year is 114265l. 10s. 2d. The articles of exchequer fees, returned poundage, and Chelſea hoſpital, though placed to this account, are not demands upon this balance. The exchequer fees for every ſum are always paid at the exchequer out of the ſum at the time it is received; the paymaſter-general debits his caſh with the whole ſum he applies for, and credits it for the fees; and therefore the only alteration made in his caſh is an increaſe by the ſum he aſks, deducting the exchequer fees. The other two ſervices being applied for under their ſpecific heads, he receives a ſum with one hand, and iſſues it with the other: and therefore theſe three articles, amounting to 97912l. 7s. 6d. being deducted from the total, leaves the ſum of 16353l. 2s. 8d. only, as a charge upon this balance; which ſum conſiſting chiefly of ſalaries, for the moſt part paid quarterly ſoon after they become due, leaves claim to a very ſmall amount indeed to be ſatisfied out of this balance.

THE contingent expences conſiſt of a variety of articles, amounting to 24914l. 19s. 8d. This account never either much exceeds, or comes much under 24000l. the ſum voted for the contingencies upon the eſtabliſhment at home and abroad; for ſo much of theſe payments as exceed the ſum voted, are carried to the account extraordinary. Theſe articles being paid, ſome quarterly, ſome half-yearly, and ſome yearly, no very conſiderable part of them can probably remain unpaid at the end of the eleventh month of that year, and cannot

therefore be a charge upon this balance on the 28th of November, 1780. Hence it follows, that ſuppoſing the amount of the claims for theſe ſervices in 1780 not to exceed their amount in 1778, the claims for theſe ſervices upon this balance, upon the 28th of November, 1780, was ſo much only of the ſums of 16353l. 2s. 8d. and 24914l. 19s. 8d., making together 41268l. 2s. 4d., as had not been applied for and ſatisfied during the firſt eleven months of that year; and therefore we think ourſelves well grounded in an opinion, that the ſum of 447153l. 11s. $3\frac{3}{4}$d. in the hands of the paymaſter-general of the forces upon the 28th of November laſt, was greatly more than was neceſſary to anſwer the claims upon him at that time for the ſervice of the army.

AN account being produced from the pay-office of the balance in the hands of the preſent paymaſter-general on the 31ſt of December, 1768, and at the end of each ſucceeding year to the 31ſt of December, 1780, incluſive, it appeared that the average yearly balance, for twelve years, has been 585898l.

IT appeared alſo, that the paymaſters keep this balance for a conſiderable length of time after going out of office. That of four paymaſters-general, each, upon quitting the office, took with him the ſum then in his hands; and that their balances were very conſiderable twelve years after their reſignation. Lord Holland's balance, the Chriſtmas after he quitted the office in 1765, was 460,000l.; in the year 1778, at the time his repreſentatives paid back into the exchequer 200,000l., it was 450,000l.; and upon the 27th of September laſt it was 256,000l.; ſo that during a period of fifteen years after he was out of office, it ſuffered very little diminution from any claims whatever.

ACCORDING to the preſent courſe of buſineſs in this office, upon the reſignation of a paymaſter-general, his accounts of the year's eſtabliſhment are carried on to the 24th of June, or the 24th of December, preceding or ſubſequent to his reſignation, as is moſt convenient to the public ſervice. When it is ſubſequent, he receives from the Exchequer, though out of office, his proportion of the ſupply of the

year to that time, and applies it in diſcharge of the demands upon the ſervice, which accrued down to that period. But of theſe demands ſome do not come in a courſe of payment; others are not applied for till ſome time after they are due; neither the nett off-reckonings nor the clearings, which are the laſt payments on account of a regiment, are diſcharged till fifteen or ſixteen months after they become due; the general, ſtaff, and reduced officers do not all apply immediately for their pay; warrants for contingencies are frequently not produced until ſeveral months after they are payable; and the paymaſter-general has deputies in various parts of the world, whoſe accounts he muſt have time to adjuſt: it is therefore convenient, and prevents trouble to the office, that his buſineſs ſhould be carried on, and ſo much of the publick money as is neceſſary for that purpoſe continue in his hands for ſome ſhort time afterwards; and if the balance be confined within its proper bounds, whilſt he is in office, the intereſt of the publick will not be materially affected by the detention of a moderate balance, for a few months after his reſignation.

WAS the paymaſter-general to retain his balance until his accounts are finally adjuſted, the publick would be kept out of their money to a very diſtant and uncertain period. It is ſixteen years ſince Lord Holland reſigned, and his accounts are ſtill in the office of the auditors of the impreſt unſettled. A late paymaſter-general had been in office thirteen years; and the firſt three years and a half only of his accounts are ſent into that office, and in their firſt ſtage. Being accuſtomed to go in one track, long inattention to the methods of expediting buſineſs, added to a great increaſe of it, have produced long arrears in the departments both of the paymaſter-general, and the auditors of the impreſt. It requires, and there ought to be, an extraordinary exertion in both offices to bring the accounts forward, and to introduce and eſtabliſh that order and regularity, in making them up and keeping them, which ſhould be ſtrictly adhered to in every office of account. To obtain and preſerve an accurate and competent knowledge of the ſtate they are in, they ſhould be made up and balanced once a year, to a certain ſtated time, and as ſoon as

may be after that time is elapſed. But the time it takes to complete the payment of certain ſervices, and the manner of carrying on ſome branches of the buſineſs in this office, are impediments to ſuch a regulation, and ſeem not well calculated either for perſpicuity or expedition.

There are certain ſervices for which no ſpecifick ſums are appropriated, either by the vote of parliament, or by the diſtribution in the eſtabliſhment; but they are paid out of funds compounded of a great variety and number of articles, ſubtracted from various groſs ſums, either voted or allotted for certain purpoſes. Theſe ſervices are, Chelſea hoſpital, the allowance to widows, the cloathing of the regulars, exchequer fees, and ſalaries to certain officers. One of theſe funds is the poundage, which conſiſts of various deductions of 12d. in the pound upon almoſt every individual ſum (except the half-pay, from which the deduction is only 6d. in the pound) voted, or allotted by the diſtributions in the eſtabliſhments, for the army ſervices: out of this fund are paid, 1ſt. the returned poundage; that is, this very deduction, thus made, is paid back to a certain part of each corps; ſo that this part of it ſeems deducted for no other purpoſe but that of returning it back again: 2dly, a part of this poundage is applied towards the expences of Chelſea hoſpital: 3dly, the remainder pays the exchequer fees, ſalaries of the paymaſter-general, and other officers.

The expences attending Chelſea hoſpital are paid out of two funds, blended together. The one is part of the poundage above mentioned: the other is formed of the deductions of one day's pay of every perſon named in ſome of the eſtabliſhments, and of ſome of the perſons named in other of the eſtabliſhments. To form this fund, and that of the poundage, and to make theſe ſeveral deductions, is the buſineſs of the pay-office.

One effect of theſe operations is, that in making up the ſtate of every regiment in the pay-office, the ſum allotted for its pay in the eſtabliſhment muſt conſiſt of ſix parts; the poundage, the hoſpital, the ſubſiſtence, the allowance to widows, the off-reckonings, and the

clearings, and ſometimes reſpites. This ſtate, beſides the buſineſs it creates in the pay-office, muſt be examined, computed, and ſigned by the agent; for he receives the clearings, which is the balance due to the regiment; the truth of which balance depends upon the juſtneſs of the calculation of the other diviſions. It muſt be examined into, and computed by the auditor of the impreſt: for the paymaſter-general taking credit on his account for the whole pay of each regiment, and ſurcharging himſelf with the total amount of the deductions of the poundage, hoſpital and widows, in every year, the auditor cannot know the accuracy of the ſurcharge, without an examination of each article that compoſes it.

To perſons accuſtomed to the courſe of office, theſe computations are eaſy and familiar: but they certainly muſt take up time; an object, conſidering the preſent ſtate of the army accounts, worth attending to. If, inſtead of theſe deductions, certain ſpecific, diſtinct ſums were eſtimated and ſet apart for thoſe ſervices in the eſtabliſhment; if diſtinct accounts were kept of the receipts and payments, under each head of ſervice; if the cloathing of the regulars were voted like the cloathing of the militia, ſeparate from the eſtabliſhment; if the ſum allotted to a regiment ſhould be the actual pay, and the whole of it be diſtributed among the officers and private men, and paid to them without deduction, at ſuch times, and in ſuch proportions as might be deemed beſt for the ſervice; if every diſtinct ſervice had its diſtinct appropriation, which can be eaſily eſtimated by the experience of preceding years; it ſhould ſeem, this branch of the pay of the army might be carried on in a more ſimple, expeditious, and intelligible manner.

In conſequence of the above report, an act was paſſed in 1783, by which it is enacted (in order to prevent the abuſes which have hitherto prevailed, and particularly to obviate the circumſtance of an enormous balance remaining in the hands of the paymaſter-general, for many years after his leaving his office), That whenever money is wanted for the ſervices of the army, the paymaſter-general is by a memorial, delivered to the treaſury, to ſtate the particular ſums wanted, and to

pray that they may be iſſued to the governor and company of the Bank of England on his account. On receiving this memorial, the commiſſioners of his Majeſty's treaſury for the time being are to direct the auditor of the Exchequer to iſſue the ſum required to the officers of the Bank, in the ſame manner as they have heretofore been iſſued to the paymaſters-general; and all ſuch monies ſo iſſued are to be placed to an account kept in the books of the governor and company of the Bank of England, entitled, *The Account of the Paymaſter-General of his Majeſty's Forces*; and the name of the paymaſter-general for the time being ſpecified: ſo that henceforward no money is to be paid immediately from the Exchequer into the hands of the paymaſter-general; but that officer, or his deputy, is to draw occaſionally for all army ſervices upon the Bank; inſerting in his drafts the heads of ſervice to which the ſums therein mentioned are to be applied.

IN the firſt memorial of each month to the Treaſury, the paymaſter-general is to ſpecify the balance of publick money then lying in the Bank on his account; which balance, on the death or removal of a paymaſter, is to veſt in his ſucceſſor. He is alſo to make up an annual account from the 24th of December to the 24th of December following, of the ordinary and extraordinary ſervices of the army, entitled, *The Account of the Paymaſter-General of his Majeſty's Forces*, to be ſigned and atteſted by every paymaſter-general, who may have paid or diſcharged any part of the ſaid account. This account is to be tranſmitted, together with proper vouchers, to the auditor of the impreſt, who is within ſix months to examine it; and if found ſatisfactory, to preſent it to the proper officer for declaration; after which, an acquittance in the uſual form is to be given to the paymaſter.

THIS act very properly aboliſhes all fees, for buſineſs done, to officers, clerks, or ſervants, in the paymaſter-general's office.

NUMBER XIII.

New Regulations relative to the Cloathing.

AN order was iſſued from the war office, April 9, 1800, eſtabliſhing the following regulations.

IN every regiment of infantry of the line or fencibles, ſerving in Europe, North-America, or the Cape of Good Hope (Highland corps excepted), each ſerjeant, corporal, drummer, and private man, to have, annually, for cloathing, a coat, a waiſtcoat, or waiſtcoat front, a pair of breeches unlined, a cap made of felt and leather, with a braſs plate, conformable to an approved pattern: the felt crown of the cap, cockade, and tuft, to be ſupplied annually; the leather part and braſs plate every two years. And in lieu of the former articles of cloathing, called half-mounting, two pair of good ſhoes, of the value of five ſhillings and ſixpence each pair.

SHOULD the price of good ſhoes at any time exceed five ſhillings and ſixpence each pair, the difference, which is to be declared by the cloathing board, on or after the 25th of April in each year, is to be charged to the reſpective accounts of the non-commiſſioned officers and ſoldiers receiving them.

SEALED patterns of the cloathing, and ſhoes furniſhed in lieu of the ſmaller articles, are to be ſent to and remain at the head-quarters of every corps of infantry abroad, as well as at home, in order that the new cloathing and ſhoes may be compared with them.

NON-COMMISSIONED officers or ſoldiers dying, or diſcharged before the completion of a whole year, from the uſual day of delivering the annual cloathing of their regiment, have no demand whatever on that account.

COMMUTATIONS of money for cloathing are only to be made on particular occaſions, and then with his majeſty's approbation, through the commander in chief or ſecretary at war for the time being: and when his majeſty approves the meaſure, the following ſums, being the eſtimated amount of what the colonels would have paid to their clothiers, after a reaſonable deduction for incidental charges, to which they are liable, are to be given to the men.

	£.	s.	d.
To each ſerjeant,			
Cloathing - - - -	2	18	0
Half-mounting - - -	0	14	0
	3	12	0
To each corporal, drummer, and private,			
Cloathing - - - -	1	5	6
Half-mounting - - -	0	11	0
	1	16	6

THE cloathing of the army is henceforward to be viewed by two permanent inſpectors of cloathing, inſtead of being viewed, as heretofore, by a general officer of the cloathing board; and for this purpoſe Lieutenant Colonel W. Wynyard, and Lieutenant Colonel Robert Anſtruther, are appointed inſpectors.

NUMBER XIV.

Reſpecting the late Changes in the Tactics, Exerciſe, &c.

AFTER the revolution, our ſyſtem of diſcipline was chiefly taken from the Dutch, who, under Prince Maurice, were the beſt regulated troops in Europe. Previouſly to this (ſuch are the viciſſitudes in the affairs of nations), the Spaniards were reckoned to have the beſt diſciplined infantry. The exerciſe was, at the commencement of the century, and for many years afterwards, encumbered with a number of uſeleſs motions. The manner in which the ſoldiers were armed, with their heavy muſkets, bandaliers, &c. obliged them to make wide motions, and to draw up with very extended ranks and files. The modern improved ſyſtem is derived from Frederick, the father of the great King of Pruſſia. He was the firſt that cauſed the manual exerciſe to be contracted, and the motions performed cloſe to the body. This new method came ſoon to be copied or imitated by other nations. About 1757 a new manual exerciſe was introduced into the Britiſh army, a good deal reſembling the Pruſſian; and this exerciſe has of late been ſimplified and reduced to a ſmaller number of motions. The following are the motions of the preſent manual exerciſe.

1. Order arms, three motions.
2. Fix bayonets, one motion.
3. Shoulder arms, one motion.
4. Preſent arms, three motions.
5. Shoulder arms, two motions.
6. Charge bayonets, two motions.
7. Shoulder arms, two motions.

ABOUT the ſame time the evolutions, manœuvres, or field movements, which were various in different corps, and very numerous in

ſome, were reduced to one ſtandard, and confined in number to eighteen.

THE purpoſes of theſe changes were ſtated in the regulations to be, the reconciliation of celerity with order; to prevent hurry; to inſure preciſion and correctneſs; to inculcate and enforce the neceſſity of military dependence, and of mutual ſupport in action; to adopt ſuch motions only as are neceſſary for combined exertions in corps, rejecting what is only curious on parade; and to make utility, and not ſhew, the principal object.

EACH battalion, conſiſting of ten companies, is drawn up from right to left as follows: Firſt, the grenadier company; then the eight battalion companies; and laſtly the light infantry.

THERE are no intervals between the companies; and they muſt be all equalized in point of numbers.

THERE are three ranks, which are at one pace diſtant from each other; beſides a fourth, or ſupernumerary rank, which has three paces.

ALL the field-officers and the adjutant are mounted.

THE commanding officer is advanced in front, to exerciſe the battalion, when it is ſingle; but in the march in line, and in the firings, he is in the rear of the colours.

THE lieutenant colonel is behind the colours, ſix paces from the rear rank; the major and adjutant ſix paces in the rear of the third and ſixth companies.

THE colours are in the centre, as before, covered by three ſerjeants.

THE uſe of the fourth rank is to keep the others cloſed up to the front during the engagement, and to prevent any break beginning in the rear; on which account there ſhould be as many officers and non-commiſſioned officers in it as may be ſpared.

THE pioneers are behind the centre, the muſick behind the pioneers, the ſtaff-officers behind the muſick. The drummers of the eight battalion companies are aſſembled in two diviſions, ſix paces behind the third rank of the ſecond and ſeventh companies. The grenadier

and light infantry drummers ſix paces behind their reſpective companies.

THE FILES are drawn up cloſer than they formerly were; ſo that each ſoldier muſt juſt touch thoſe on his right and left hand, and in all movements he muſt preſerve that touch, by which the whole dreſs and move together.

RANKS have two diſtances, the *open* and *cloſe*; the former are two, the latter one pace aſunder. The open order is uſed only for inſpection or parade.

THE fundamental order for the formation of infantry is three ranks, when in line, and cloſed up; two ranks, with open files, is only for light infantry: though when the battalions are upon a low eſtabliſhment, in time of peace, they may be exerciſed in two ranks occaſionally.

NEITHER the MUSICK nor DRUMS are now uſed to regulate the march; which is in three meaſures: 1. *Ordinary time*, in which ſeventy-five paces are taken in a minute. 2. *Quick time*, in which there are one hundred and eight ſteps in a minute. 3. *The quickeſt time*, or *wheeling march*, is one hundred and twenty ſteps of thirty inches each, or three hundred feet in the minute. This laſt is uſed only for wheeling.

THE PLATOON EXERCISE has been altered, as well as the MANUAL; but it was impoſſible to reduce it, as the latter has been: it now conſiſts of the following words of command and motions.

1. Make ready, one motion.
2. Preſent, one motion.
3. Fire, one motion.
4. Handle cartridge, two motions.
5. Prime, three motions.
6. Load, three motions.
7. Draw ramrods, two motions.
8. Ram down cartridge, four motions.
9. Return ramrods, two motions.
10. Shoulder arms, one motion.

The exercise is performed a little slower, three seconds being allowed between each motion. It is no longer done by signals from beat of drum, but all by words of command.

The infantry manœuvres, which were formerly so numerous, are now reduced to eighteen; which are ordered to be practised and performed in every regiment. The following are the movements, explanations of which and directions for performing them are given in the books of exercise.

1. Forming the battalion into close columns in the rear of the right company.
2. Close column in the front of the left company.
3. Close column on a central company, facing to the rear.
4. Changing position in open column.
5. Throwing back the wings.
6. Changing position by a counter-march.
7. Counter-marching by files on the centre of the battalion.
8. Marching in open column.
9. Echellon change of position.
10. Taking up a new line by the echellon movement.
11. Changing position to right or left.
12. Retreating in line.
13. Marching to a flank in echellon.
14. Forming the hollow square.
15. Retiring in line and filing.
16. Advancing in line, filing and charging to the front.
17. Retreating in line.
18. Advancing in line.

NUMBER XV.

Modern Improvements in Fortification.

THE Author of this work has touched very ſlightly on the ſubject of fortifications, and has confined himſelf to a ſhort account of thoſe conſtructed in very remote ages. Vauban was the great inventor of the modern ſyſtem; though other engineers have alſo made conſiderable improvements in the art.

VAUBAN'S fortifications were either regular or irregular polygons. Of a regular polygon all the ſides are fortified in the ſame manner; each flank, face, and curtain, are of the ſame length, and the angles of the ſame degrees. The irregular polygon is ſufficiently explained by the term itſelf:—it is uſed generally where there are natural advantages, or where the ground will not admit the regular method.

VAUBAN made another diſtinction in his works of fortification, as they were upon the large, the medium, or the ſmaller ſcale. The firſt was chiefly for towns and cities; the laſt for forts. He claſſed them as follows, according to the number of ſides. 1. The ſquare fort. 2. The pentagon. 3. The hexagon. 4. The heptagon. 5. The octagon. 6. The enneagon. 7. The decagon. 8. The hendecagon. 9. The dodecagon.

THE ſides of theſe fortifications increaſed progreſſively in length, excepting the three firſt, which were of one hundred and eighty toiſes each, or three hundred and ſixty yards. The ſides of the dodecagon were three hundred and forty-ſix toiſes, or ſix hundred and ninety-two yards each. This multiplied by twelve, the number of ſides, gives ſeven thouſand three hundred and four yards for the whole circumference.

THOSE who wiſh to ſee the different ſyſtems of fortification, may find them all explained in Muller's works.

The following is an enumeration of the principal writers on Fortification, ſome of whom were before Vauban, and ſome after him.

Errard, of *Bois-le-duc*, was the firſt who was known to have publiſhed a ſyſtem of fortification. He ſerved under Henry IV. of France.

Marrollois ſoon after publiſhed a ſyſtem after the Dutch method.

Antoine Deville, who ſerved under Lewis XIII., produced a complete treatiſe of fortification. He was the author of what, before Vauban, was called the French method.

Count Pagan was alſo an eminent writer on fortification in the ſame reign. He came nearer to Vauban than any preceding engineer.

Coehorn, the great Dutch engineer, flouriſhed at the ſame time with Vauban. There was great novelty and ingenuity in his plans of fortification; but they were beſt adapted to the country in which he ſerved.

Blondel is another celebrated author on the ſame ſubject.

The Chevalier de St. Julian has publiſhed another ſyſtem, in which he attempts to improve upon Vauban.

There have been ſeveral other writers and compilers upon the ſame ſubject; among whom the moſt remarkable is M. de Montalembert, who condemns altogether the ſyſtem of Vauban, and thinks baſtions, the ground-work of his methods, wholly unneceſſary.

The only regular fortifications in England are to be ſeen at Portſmouth; if we may except that old erection of the laſt century, Tilbury Fort.

NUMBER XVI.

Horſe-Artillery.

IN addition to what was ſaid of this inſtitution and its introduction into the Britiſh army, we ſubjoin the following accounts from two recent publications.

"THE principles of this new artillery is, that it is organized in ſuch a manner as to perform movements the moſt rapid and the moſt unexpected. Thus it can proceed with celerity either to a point threatened by the enemy, or a poſt which, by a deciſive attack, it is intended to carry; follow the horſe every where, if needful, and cruſh the enemy by the combined effect of all the means of attack and defence which the theory of the military art, judgment, and experience, can ſuggeſt.

"IN the campaigns of 1757, 1758, and 1759, againſt the Ruſſians, it often happened that the Pruſſian light horſe, at the very moment when they imagined themſelves to be ſure of ſucceſs, met with a battery of cannon, though no infantry were preſent, which led them to ſuppoſe that the Ruſſians had horſe-artillery, able to follow all the movements of the horſe. The fact being aſcertained, Frederick the Great introduced this artillery into his army in the ſpring of 1759, at his head-quarters at Reichennendorff, near Landſhuth, where every morning he exerciſed this new corps himſelf, and directed its manœuvres. The king alſo made a ſucceſsful trial with his horſe-artillery, before he left that camp, by covering it with a reconnoitring party beyond Liebau, on the retreat of his dragoons, in a manner ſo effectual, that all the attacks of the enemy's horſe, though far ſuperior in number, completely failed.

"THE Auſtrians were the firſt who inſtituted this new military

eſtabliſhment: in 1783 they manœuvred with horſe-artillery near Prague; and ſince that time it has been introduced into the Britiſh, Swediſh, Saxon, and Hanoverian armies; yet with conſiderable difference as to the calibre of the ordnance, and the way of mounting the artillery-men. The Pruſſian horſe-artillery conſiſts of ſix-pounders, the Auſtrian of light three-pounders, the Hanoverian of heavy three-pounders, the Daniſh of one-pounders, &c. The Pruſſian artillery-men are on horſe-back; the Auſtrian ride on the carriages of the guns; the Hanoverian ride partly on horſe-back, partly on the gun-carriages, wurſts, &c.

"BUT no European power has hitherto derived ſuch important advantages from this new artillery as France, where it was introduced in the year 1792, and ſoon carried to great perfection. In order to give it the advantage of a ſuperior fire, the French flying or horſe-artillery conſiſts of eight-pounders, and ſix-inch howitzers; the ammunition is carried in light caiſſons, and moſt of the artillery-men are mounted, whilſt others ride on the wurſts. By this arrangement, in addition to the known abilities of the French cannoneers, the Republican horſe-artillery ſoon acquired a decided ſuperiority over that of the Auſtrians, and has maintained it during the whole war."

Of the original Formation of the Horſe-Artillery in France, in 1791 *and* 1792.

"MONS. Duportail, miniſter at war, in the year 1791, ſignified the king's pleaſure, that two companies of mounted artillery-men ſhould be formed by the commandant of the military diviſion at Metz. The moſt ſanguine expectations were anſwered on this occaſion; ſo much ſo, that a ſhort time before the declaration of war in 1792, Monſ. de Narbonne, who had ſucceeded Monſ. Duportail, aſſembled a military committee, conſiſting of the moſt experienced officers in the artillery and engineer departments, aided by the advice of the generals commanding the three grand diviſions of the whole French army, and came to the following reſolutions:

" 1. THAT a large body of mounted artillery, well appointed and conſtantly complete in its number of cannoneers and horſes, afforded the beſt means of ſupport to any corps of men that might otherwiſe be deficient in the ſtrict knowledge of military evolutions; as ſuch a force would aſſiſt them conſiderably during their attack upon an enemy with ſword or bayonet, by taking rapidly poſſeſſion of many favourable points, and thus defeating the great advantage which well diſciplined troops muſt otherwiſe enjoy.

" 2. THAT with reſpect to the mode of being armed, equipped, accoutred, &c., the mounted artillery was to differ from the field ordnance only by the rapidity of its movement; on this account the horſes were to be ſtrong and active, ſo that whenever there ſhould be occaſion for any part of the corps to be conveyed to points of action, the cannoneers might be carried with their pieces, and thus be enabled to execute their inſtructions without delay.

" 3. THAT with this important object in view, it was conſidered to be more advantageous to the ſervice to mount the cannoneers on horſeback, in preference to artillery-carts, becauſe the accidents that happen to the latter would be avoided, the movement from place to place would be more ready, the retreat more certain, and the replacing of loſt or killed horſes more convenient and expeditious.

" 4. THAT without abſolutely excluding pieces of larger calibre, eight or twelve pounders and howitzers ſeemed beſt adapted to the nature of this ſervice.

" 5. THAT it would be ſuperfluous to drill the mounted artilleryman, ſo as to make him maſter of all the cavalry manœuvres; it being thought fully ſufficient for him to ſit his horſe well, to be able to mount and diſmount with eaſe and celerity, to guide his horſe according to the poſition of his piece, and to leave it entirely to his own judgment to act with the cavalry ſhould he find himſelf involved in their manœuvres.

" 6. THAT the manœuvre of urging the piece forward, or, as the French term it, manœuvre à la prolonge, muſt be conſtantly practiſed, except in caſes of utter impoſſibility. Many advantages attend this manœuvre, eſpecially in the paſſing of ditches or rivers with ex-

treme rapidity. As the horſes remain harneſſed to the train, while the pieces are fired, the time which would otherwiſe be loſt in taking off and putting on the leaders is entirely ſaved.

" 7. That in order to raiſe a body of this deſcription without delay, it is propoſed, that two well-inſtructed men from the regular artillery be attached to each gun, and that the complement of the different troops be made up with drafts from the army in general, but moſt eſpecially from the light cavalry and light infantry."

NUMBER XVII.

New Regulations; and Eſtabliſhment of the Royal Waggon Train.

THE following general orders have been iſſued to the infantry of the army.

" IT is his majeſty's pleaſure, that in future the uſe of hats be entirely aboliſhed throughout the whole of the infantry of the army; and that inſtead thereof caps are to be worn, of which a ſealed pattern has, by order of his royal highneſs the commander in chief, been depoſited in the office of the comptroller of the army accounts, there to be had recourſe to as occaſion may require.

" HIS majeſty is pleaſed to permit the colonels to engrave the number of their reſpective regiments on each ſide of the lion, on the lower part of the braſs-fronting; and likewiſe to the regiments which are entitled to that diſtinction, his majeſty grants permiſſion to bear their badges in the centre of the garter. The grenadiers, who are allowed to wear theſe caps occaſionally when they do not uſe their proper grenadier caps, may, if their colonels chooſe it, bear the grenade in the ſame manner as regiments, entitled to them, wear their badges. It is his majeſty's pleaſure that the tufts, uſed by the grenadiers, ſhall be white; thoſe of the light infantry (who are likewiſe included in this order), dark green.

" ALL ſoldiers ſhall wear the button of their reſpective regiments in the centre of the cockade, except the grenadiers, who will uſe the grenade.

" THE caps are to be made of a ſufficient ſize to come completely over the ſoldiers' heads: they are to be worn ſtraight and even, and brought forward well over the eyes.

" THE field and ſtaff-officers, as alſo the officers of battalion com-

panies, are to continue to wear hats as uſual. The grenadier officers are permitted to wear hats when their men do not parade in dreſs caps. The officers of the light companies are to wear caps ſimilar to thoſe ordered for the light infantry.

" BY order of his royal highneſs the commander in chief,

" HARRY CALVERT, Adjutant-General."

" HORSE-GUARDS, 24th February, 1800."

The Royal Waggoners.

A CORPS of waggoners has lately been eſtabliſhed, conſiſting of nine troops, each troop being ſixty rank and file; the officers have been chiefly taken from the half-pay of the reduced cavalry corps, and the men and horſes almoſt entirely from the regiments of fencible cavalry that did not offer their ſervices as volunteers *.

THE rate of pay, &c. of the officers, non-commiſſioned officers, and privates, of the royal waggon train, is as follows:

	Per diem.	£.	s.	d.
Lieutenant-colonel commandant - -	- -	0	18	0
Major, pay - - - 0 14 0				
Allowance for a horſe - 0 2 0	- -	0	16	0
Captain, pay - - 0 9 5				
Allowance for a horſe - 0 2 0	- -	0	11	5
Lieutenant, pay - - 0 5 8				
Allowance for a horſe - 0 2 0	- -	0	7	8
Cornet, pay - - - 0 4 8				
Allowance for a horſe - 0 2 0	- -	0	6	8
Adjutant - - - - - -	- -	0	5	0
Surgeon - - - - - -	- -	0	11	4

* THESE were firſt reduced; but ſince then, and ſince the firſt volume of this work was printed, all the corps of fencible cavalry in Great Britain have been reduced. The officers have been allowed a gratuity of ſix months pay, and moſt of the men have engaged in the ſtanding dragoon regiments.

	Per diem.	£.	s.	d.
Veterinary ſurgeon	- - - - - -	0	8	0
Quarter-maſter	- - - - - -	0	3	0
Serjeant - -	- - - - - -	0	2	2
Corporal - -	- - - - - -	0	1	$7\frac{1}{2}$
Drummer	- - - - - -	0	1	3
Collar-maker	- - - - - -	0	3	0
Wheelwright	- - - - - -	0	3	0
Smith - -	- - - - - -	0	3	0
Farrier - -	- - - - - -	0	3	0
Driver - -	- - - - - -	0	1	3

The officers, if they chooſe it, may draw their forage from the magazines, in which caſe they are not entitled to the allowance of two ſhillings per day.

When reduced, the officers of this corps are to have the ſame half-pay with the officers of the infantry.

NUMBER XVIII.

Staff of the Army in Great Britain and Ireland, 1799.

IN ENGLAND.

FIELD-MARSHAL and commander in chief, his Royal Highneſs the Duke of York, with four aid-du-camps.

Adjutant-general.

Quartermaſter-general, with his deputy and aſſiſtants.

Brigade-major-general.

Chaplain-general.

Barrackmaſter-general, and aſſiſtants.

Inſpector of the roads.

Phyſician-general.

Surgeon-general.

Inſpector of hoſpitals.

Advocate-general, or judge-martial and deputies.

Commiſſary-general of muſters.

BESIDES which there is a ſeparate ſtaff for each diſtrict, into which England is divided. Theſe are eight in number, beſides London, which is the chief diſtrict, viz. the eaſtern, ſouthern, ſouth-weſt, weſtern, the Severn, Yorkſhire, north-eaſt and north-weſt diſtricts. All theſe are commanded by general officers, who have their aid-du-camps, brigade-major, &c.

THE diſtrict of the capital is under the command of one lieutenant-general, with two aid-du-camps.

Five major-generals, with one aid-du-camp each.

One aſſiſtant adjutant-general.

Four brigade-majors.

Staff of the Army in North Britain in 1799.

ONE commander in chief.
One ſecond in command.
Three major-generals, with one aid-du-camp and one brigade-major each.
One deputy adjutant-general.
One brigade-major.
One major of brigade to cavalry.
One military ſecretary.
Four aid-du-camps to the commander in chief.
One ditto to the commander in ſecond.
One aſſiſtant barrack-maſter-general.
Two aſſiſtants to ditto.
One barrack-maſter.
One deputy quarter-maſter-general.
Two aſſiſtants to ditto.
One inſpector of military roads.
One muſter-maſter.
One commiſſary.
One deputy commiſſary of ſtores.
One aſſiſtant ditto.
One judge advocate.
One deputy ditto.
One inſpector of hoſpitals.
One phyſician.
One ſurgeon.
Two aſſiſtant ſurgeons.
One apothecary.

Staff of the Army of Ireland in 1799.

ONE governor-general, with ten aid-du-camps.
One ſecretary to the board of general officers.

Three lieutenant-generals, with two aid-du-camps and one brigade-major each.

Twenty-three major-generals, with one aid-du-camp and one brigade-major each.

Seven brigadier-generals, with one brigade-major each.

One adjutant-general, with aſſiſtants.

One deputy adjutant-general, with ditto.

One quarter-maſter-general, with aſſiſtants.

One deputy quarter-maſter-general, with ditto.

One brigade major-general.

One inſpector-general of recruiting, with aſſiſtants.

Two phyſicians-general.

One ſtaff phyſician.

One ſurveyor-general.

One muſter-maſter-general.

One deputy muſter-maſter-general.

Six commiſſaries of muſters.

One commiſſary-general of ſtores.

One deputy commiſſary-general of ditto.

One advocate-general and judge-martial.

Two deputies ditto.

One procurator-martial-general.

One deputy town-major of Dublin.

NUMBER XIX.

Copy of a Parole of Honour.

WHEREAS the commiſſioners for conducting his Britannic Majeſty's tranſport ſervice, and for the care and cuſtody of priſoners of war, have been pleaſed to grant me, the underſigned . . . . . as deſcribed on the back hereof, late . . . . . and now a priſoner of war, leave to return to France, upon my entering into an engagement not to ſerve againſt Great Britain, or any of the powers in alliance with that kingdom, until I ſhall be regularly exchanged for a priſoner of war, of equal rank; and upon my alſo engaging that, immediately after my arrival in France, I ſhall make known the place of my reſidence there to the Britiſh agent for priſoners at Paris; and ſhall not change the ſame on any account, without firſt intimating my intention to the ſaid agent; and, moreover, that at the expiration of every two months, until my exchange ſhall be effected, I ſhall regularly and punctually tranſmit to the ſaid agent a certificate of my reſidence, ſigned by the magiſtrates or municipal officers of the place.

Now, in conſideration of my enlargement, I do hereby declare, that I have given my parole of honour accordingly, and that I will keep it inviolably.

Given under my hand at this day of

(Signed) Commiſſioner for the French priſoners at war.

(Gratis.)

ON the back are ſpecified the name, rank, age, ſtation, perſon, viſage, complexion, hair, eyes, marks or wounds, &c. of the individual.

NUMBER XX.

Hiſtorical Account of particular Regiments.

A NEW periodical publication has given an hiſtorical account of the eſtabliſhment of a conſiderable number of regiments in the Engliſh army. The ſubſtance of what has been already publiſhed, reſpecting the old corps, will, it is preſumed, form not the leaſt uſeful part of the Appendix to this Hiſtory.

Firſt Regiment of Life-Guards.

IMMEDIATELY after the Reſtoration, Charles II. raiſed a body of life-guards, the privates of whom were taken from the cavalier gentlemen who had adopted the profeſſion of arms, and followed the fortunes of his father during the civil war. From their origin, being for the moſt part men of family, they derived certain privileges ſimilar to thoſe of the houſhold troops in France, after whom they were modelled; which privileges were continued long after the time when they ceaſed to be compoſed of the ſame claſs of men. This, of courſe, rendered them a body of high pretenſions, and, as often happens in ſimilar caſes, of little uſe, calculated for ſhew and parade, rather than actual ſervice.

THE diſadvantages, as well as expence, attendant on their original organization being apparent, the privates were reduced ten years ago, and a new corps, compoſed almoſt entirely of recruits, was formed under the old officers, and placed nearly on the ſame footing with the reſt of the cavalry, ſtill however retaining the advantages ariſing out of a higher pay, and an exemption from ſtoppages on the part of the privates, whoſe cloathing is furniſhed by government. The life-guards claim the privilege, that their officers are not liable to be tried by any

court martial, unleſs the members are compoſed of officers of their own regiment, or of officers of the other houſhold troops.

The firſt regiment of life-guards, conſiſting of very fine men, about ſix feet high at an average, was formed in 1788. No recruits are taken under five feet ten inches high; they muſt be growing young men, and the pay being handſome, no enliſting money is given. The uniform is ſcarlet, faced with blue, and gold lace. The commiſſioned officers conſiſt of a colonel, one lieutenant-colonel, one ſupernumerary lieutenant-colonel, two majors, five captains, ſix lieutenants, one adjutant and lieutenant, five cornets, one ſurgeon, and one veterinary ſurgeon. The non-commiſſioned officers conſiſt of quarter-maſters and corporals. The privates are at this time about two hundred and ſixty in number. Their quarters are permanent at Knightſbridge-barracks. The Earl of Harrington is the preſent Colonel.

The ſecond Regiment of Life-Guards.

This is on the ſame footing, and is of the ſame eſtabliſhment with the firſt. The average height of the men is five feet eleven inches and three quarters; the horſes are from ſixteen to eighteen hands high; their colour black, with long tails.

There are five troops in this, as in the other regiment of life-guards, each troop conſiſting of one captain, one lieutenant, one cornet, one quarter-maſter, three corporals, forty-nine privates, including a farrier, and one trumpeter.

There is one kettle-drummer to each regiment. The officers uſually ride bay horſes; the kettle-drummers and trumpeters grey.

The ſecond regiment has ſtabling for three hundred horſes in King-ſtreet, Portman-ſquare; and the privates are allowed two pence per diem, under the head of lodging-money, in lieu of barracks.

There are two *gold-ſticks*, one appertaining to each regiment: their duty is to attend alternately every month on his majeſty. Whenever a vacancy occurs of a colonelcy of either of theſe regiments, the king nominates an officer of ſufficient rank in the army to the vacant

gold-ſtick; which is, in other words, appointing him to the regiment. The preſent colonel is Major-general the Earl of Cathcart.

Account of the Foot-Guards.

THOUGH moſt of our princes have had bodies of men more particularly attached to their perſon, it was not till after the *Reſtoration* that a body of foot-guards was regularly organized on the preſent plan.

THE republican army, which had ſubdued the adherents of Charles I. were not eyed favourably by his ſon, though he admired their martial appearance; and the beſt mode of diſbanding it occupied the attention of the Britiſh cabinet from the moment he landed at Dover, in May, 1660. The parliament, wiſhing to relieve the nation from the burthen of a large military eſtabliſhment, concurred in theſe views, furniſhed the neceſſary ſums for paying off the arrears, and all the troops, but 5000 men, and a few on garriſon duty, were diſmiſſed. To General Monk the Prince was indebted for his crown; and it would have ſavoured of ingratitude to diſmiſs the corps of which he was colonel. He was himſelf inveſted with the order of the garter, created Duke of Albemarle, and, through compliment to him, his own regiment was retained on the eſtabliſhment. It had been raiſed, during the civil wars, about ten years before the period alluded to, at Coldſtream in Scotland; and from this circumſtance it aſſumed the name, which it has borne ever ſince.

THE year 1660 may then be conſidered as the æra of the formation of the foot-guards; and of the regiments, in point of date, Monk's, or the Coldſtream, had undoubtedly the priority. But other regiments were added; and that called the firſt was put under the command of John Lord Wentworth, whoſe family had continued faithful during the preceding tempeſtuous periods. The third was conferred on the Earl of Linlithgow.

WHEN the Duke of Monmouth invaded the Weſt of England, James II. ſent down the guards to oppoſe him; and they conducted themſelves with great valour, under the Earl of Feverſham.

THE ſubſequent landing under the Prince of Orange was more formidable; but the valour and fidelity of the guards were not put to trial; for the feeble monarch, James II., inſtead of oppoſing the progreſs of his ſon-in-law, fled out of the kingdom, and thus loſt his crown without a conteſt.

UNDER William III. the guards frequently took the field, and often diſtinguiſhed themſelves in Flanders. He added a regiment of Dutch to thoſe before employed in the houſhold; this, however, gave umbrage; and his majeſty, in order to remove all jealouſy, very prudently ſent them back to Holland, and entruſted himſelf wholly to his Britiſh ſubjects.

DURING the reign of George I., the ſpirit of diſaffection which prevailed over a great part of the country, ſeems to have been communicated to the guards. On May 28 and 29, in the year 1715, the firſt being the king's birth-day, the latter the anniverſary of the reſtoration, great tumults aroſe. The guards, and particularly the regiment of which the Duke of Marlborough was colonel, grew mutinous, on receiving, as part of their cloathing, ſome remarkably coarſe linen. The ſoldiers, on this occaſion, threw ſome of their ſhirts into the king's and duke's garden in the park, ſaying, they were "Hanover ſhirts."

ON this, as a real grievance exiſted, the linen was publickly burnt at Whitehall, in conſequence of orders received for that purpoſe; and the Duke of Marlborough made a conciliatory ſpeech on the occaſion to the firſt regiment.

FROM ſuch a ſcene, it is with pleaſure we turn our eyes to the plains of Fontenoy, where on the 30th of April, 1745, the guards behaved with great heroiſm, as has been atteſted by Voltaire in his Hiſtory.

DURING the rebellion in Scotland (in 1745-6), a detachment of the guards marched with the Duke of Cumberland, and had their ſhare in his victories; the reſt occupied the metropolis.

IN the ſeven years' war, the guards were principally employed in the expeditions to the coaſt of France. At St. Cas, they had the poſt of honour; for they were the laſt to embark, having received orders

to cover the retreat of the reſt of the troops. On this occaſion they ſuffered ſeverely.

DURING the American war part of the guards were brigaded, and ſent acroſs the Atlantic. In this new ſcene of action they diſplayed their uſual bravery, under ſeveral generals, particularly Howe, Clinton, and Cornwallis.

SOON after the commencement of the preſent war with France, it was found neceſſary to ſend a body of troops for the protection of Holland. Accordingly 1800 of the guards were embarked, in preſence of the king and royal Family, at Greenwich. They ſoon arrived at the place of their deſtination, and their arrival, ſmall as their numbers were, fortunately turned the tide of ſucceſs againſt the French. In the courſe of two campaigns they diſtinguiſhed themſelves in Flanders on various occaſions, particularly at Lincelles, where all the three battalions behaved to admiration.

AFTER their return from the continent, they remained in their uſual quarters until the breaking out of the late diſturbances in Ireland, whither detachments were ſent. Some light companies of the guards were alſo with General Coote when he landed near Oſtend; and detachments ſerved under the Duke of York in the expedition to North Holland.

THE guards poſſeſs many peculiar honours and privileges. They have precedency of all others; their officers poſſeſs a higher rank in the army; and without expence to themſelves, when on guard at St. James's, they have a plentiful and well-ſupplied table, which is kept for them by the publick, and voted annually in the extraordinaries of the army. The king's perſon, the royal family, the Tower, and, in times of danger, the bank of England, are in a particular manner under their protection.

THEIR uniforms are royal, with blue facings, and their pay * ſuperior to that of the marching regiments.

---

* THAT of all the corps in the army is ſpecified in the chapter reſpecting the pay of the troops.

THE preſent colonels are, to the firſt regiment, Field-marſhal his Royal Highneſs the Duke of Glouceſter: to the ſecond, Field-marſhal his Royal Highneſs the Duke of York, commander in chief, &c.; and to the third, Field-marſhal the Duke of Argyle, &c.

THE prices of the ſeveral commiſſions in the brigade of guards are, according to the lateſt regulations:

	£.
Lieutenant-colonel, having the rank of colonel in the army	6700
Major - - - - - ditto - -	6300
Captain, having the rank of lieutenant-colonel in the army	3500
Captain-lieutenant, ditto - - - - - -	2600
Lieutenant, with rank of captain - - - - -	1500
Enſign - - - - - - - - -	900

THE three regiments are uſually either in garriſon at the Tower, or in barracks at Weſtminſter; and change their quarters in London and Weſtminſter, on the 5th of Auguſt, annually.

Royal Regiment of Horſe-Guards, Blue, commonly called Oxford Blues.

THIS corps alſo derives its origin from the reformation. Its name is not taken from that of the famous city and univerſity, ſo loyal during the civil wars to the houſe of Stuart, but from the noble family of Oxford, the head of which, Aubrey, Earl of Oxford, was its firſt colonel, anno 1661.

ON all occaſions, when cavalry were wanted during our continental wars, the blues have been one of the firſt ſelected. This regiment was in Flanders and in Germany with the great Duke of Marlborough, and ſhared largely in the glory of the confederate army under that captain-general and Field-marſhal Auverquerque, when the French lines between Elixheim and Ooſtmalen were forced on the 18th of July, 1705.

DURING the war of 1757 they were called upon, and diſtinguiſhed themſelves on a variety of occaſions. In the American conteſt their ſervices were not required abroad.

No ſooner had hoſtilities commenced againſt France, and it was determined to land a body of troops in Holland, than the blues were again pitched upon. This regiment was accordingly employed in the army of his Royal Highneſs the Duke of York. On one occaſion, in particular, they diſtinguiſhed themſelves greatly; it was in the action near Cambray, on the 24th of April, 1794. They then formed part of a brigade that attacked the French, and obliged them, though immenſely ſuperior in numbers and in cavalry, to give way.

THERE are ſome circumſtances peculiar to this corps. 1. It is the only regiment, denominated *horſe*, at preſent on the Britiſh eſtabliſhment. 2. The promotions, the colonelcy alone excepted, go in the regiment; a moſt valuable privilege, holding out every inducement to long ſervice, and the beſt proſpect of an affluent and honourable proviſion to thoſe who ſeek high rank by due ſeniority. 3. The quarter-maſters' commiſſions are ſigned by the king; they are therefore properly termed commiſſioned officers; in all the other cavalry, or dragoon regiments, quarter-maſters are only warrant-officers.

THE average height of the men is five feet ten inches and a half.

THE uniform of the officers is blue, faced with ſcarlet, gold lace, buff lining; of the privates, blue, with plain red lappets, very broad buff croſs-belts, and gloves of the ſame colour. The troopers' horſes are black, with long tails.

THE corps conſiſts of nine troops, and to each troop belong four commiſſioned officers, five non-commiſſioned officers, and fifty-four private men. There are, beſides, the colonel, one lieutenant-colonel, one major, an adjutant, a regimental ſurgeon and aſſiſtant, and a veterinary ſurgeon.

THE preſent colonel is Field-marſhal the Duke of Richmond, &c.

The Royal Regiment of Artillery.

THE eſtabliſhment of a royal regiment of artillery took place early in the preſent century; and we have been informed, that the firſt commiſſion of colonel was iſſued in the firſt year of the reign of

George II. In a ſhort time the number of companies was augmented from four to eight; the uniform was blue, turned up with red; and waiſtcoats and breeches of the colour of the facings were then worn by the officers.

THREE companies ſerved with great credit under the Duke of Cumberland in Flanders, in the war of 1744. The duke, on the rebellion breaking out in 1745, had a detachment from theſe companies, which did wonderful ſervice at the battle of Culloden. While the artillery of the highland army was of little uſe, that under the command of his royal highneſs was ſerved with much ſkill and promptitude, and contributed not a little to the triumph of that memorable day.

NEARLY about the ſame time we find a detachment ſent for the defence of the garriſon of Oſtend; a larger body ſerving with the park on the continent, and a ſmall corps employed on a ſecret expedition to the coaſt of France. Such now were the acknowledged advantages reſulting from this eſtabliſhment, that no enterprize of any conſequence was projected without artillery.

AN event occurred, ſoon after the battle of Culloden, as we have been informed, which contributed much to the appearance of that corps. This was the introduction of a fine body of diſbanded troopers, and from that period the privates have been, in a great meaſure, picked men. Indeed the many advantages enjoyed by this corps, in reſpect to pay, quarters, cloathing, &c. contribute to make the ſituation of a private in it a deſirable object to perſons of a certain rank in life.

DURING the laſt war in Germany, a large detachment of the royal regiment of artillery, then formed into two battalions, was ſent to the continent. We find that the regiment then conſiſted of thirty companies.

THE ſervice of the artillery appearing every day more uſeful, the battalions were augmented, firſt to three, then to four, and at laſt to five, beſides a battalion of invalids.

THE artillery take the right of foot on all parades, and likewiſe of dragoons, when diſmounted.

EACH battalion conſiſts of one colonel commandant, one ditto en-ſecond, one firſt lieutenant-colonel, two ſecond lieutenant-colonels, one major, ten captains, ten captain-lieutenants, thirty lieutenants, one adjutant, one quarter-maſter, one ſurgeon, and one aſſiſtant ſurgeon. The preſent eſtabliſhment of each company is one hundred and twenty rank and file.

DURING the time that the late Field-marſhal Conway was at the head of the ordnance, as maſter-general, extenſive barracks were built at Woolwich, which are the head-quarters and grand depot of the artillery. From the warren and laboratory, guns, ſtores, &c. are ſent wherever occaſion requires.

THE ſtandard height of the men is five feet nine inches and upwards.

THE uniform of the officers is blue faced with ſcarlet, gold epaulets, no lace, white waiſtcoat and breeches, boots, yellow breaſt-plate on a white buff ſhoulder-belt.

THE uniform of the privates is blue, with red cuffs and collar, no facings, yellow lace, and buttons impreſſed with the ordnance arms. The ſerjeants wear frogged gold lace. The arms of the officers and ſerjeants are yellow-hilted ſwords; of the corporals, bombardiers, and privates, carbine and bayonet. The horſe artillery have ſwords and piſtols.

THE commiſſions are not purchaſed; the officers riſe in a regular gradation by ſeniority.

Firſt, or Royal Regiment of Foot.

THIS corps lays claim to a high degree of antiquity. It is certain, that it is the oldeſt regiment in our ſervice. It is ſaid to have been the body guard of the Scottiſh kings, whence it has derived its name of the royal Scots, and to have been put upon the Engliſh eſtabliſhment in 1633.

ON enquiring into the ſucceſſion of colonels, we find the firſt to have been nominated during the reign of Charles I.; but on the fatal

iſſue of the civil wars to that monarch, this corps ſeems to have been diſbanded.

AT the reſtoration of Charles II., the firſt, or royal regiment of foot, was re-eſtabliſhed; and we find that ſoon after the arrival of William III. the colonelcy of it was conferred on one of his favourites, the Duke of Schomberg.

IT muſt be ſuppoſed, from the antiquity of this corps, that it has often have been called into ſervice. It was firſt ſent to France, in the reign of Charles II., as a part of his auxiliary force to be furniſhed to the French monarch. During the German wars it ſerved in Flanders; and in the conteſt with France, which terminated with the peace of Paris, both battalions were employed on the American continent.

DURING the preſent war the firſt battalion ſerved in the Weſt Indies, and is now in Ireland. The ſecond attended General O'Hara, in 1793, to the occupation of Toulon, and ſuffered conſiderably in the inconſiderate ſortie that was made from that place.

THE remains of this battalion, after the evacuation of Toulon, formed part of the body of troops that were ſent to wreſt Corſica from the French republicans, and had a conſiderable ſhare in the ſervices done there. It is now in Portugal.

THIS regiment, which originally formed one large body, now conſiſts of two battalions, both of which are commanded by the ſame colonel; in every other reſpect they are conſidered as ſeparate corps.

THE uniform of the officers is ſcarlet, faced with blue, gold lace embroidered; that of the private ſoldiers red, faced with blue, and white lace.

THE preſent colonel is General Lord Adam Gordon.

Second, or Queen's Royal Regiment of Foot.

THIS regiment was raiſed in the year 1661, and the command of it was given to Henry, Earl of Peterborough. It ſerved in King William's wars, and diſtinguiſhed itſelf on more than one occaſion.

THIS regiment, with another of the confederate army, were made

priſoners at Tongeren, May 10, 1703, by a large force under the French marſhals Villeroy and Boufleur. Though taken, it was not ſurprized, but defended itſelf for twenty-eight hours, thereby enabling the confederates to draw together near Maeſtricht.

IN the ſame war this regiment ſerved under the Earl of Peterborough in Spain, and was at the unfortunate battle of Almanza, under the Earl of Galway.

IN the ſeven years' war we find it mentioned with great credit, in the annals of that period, under its active commandant the Honourable General J. Fitzwilliam, anceſtor of the preſent earl.

BEFORE the late regulations brought all regiments to the ſame ſtandard, the queen's was generally conſidered as a pattern corps. Its preſent colonel is Lieutenant-general James Coates.

THE regiment being royal, the facings for the whole are blue; the lace for the privates white, with a blue ſtripe.

The third Regiment of Foot, called the Buffs.

THIS regiment was put on the regular eſtabliſhment of the army in the year 1665. It was denominated the *buffs*, from being the firſt whoſe accoutrements were made of leather prepared from the buffalo, after the manner of ſhamois. The waiſtcoats, breeches, and facings of the coat, were afterwards directed to be made of a correſponding colour. When other regiments aſſumed this part of their appointments, the third acquired the name of the *Old Buffs*. This regiment has the privilege (and we believe excluſively) of marching through the city of London by beat of drum. We cannot however learn whence it has derived this privilege, whether from having exerted itſelf in the protection of the city, or from having, as has been vaguely reported, been at firſt compoſed of men who belonged to the train bands.

THIS regiment ſerved in the Duke of Marlborough's wars, and was at the battle of Ramillies. In 1708 it was in the covering army at the ſiege of Liſle.

DURING the rebellion of 1745, this regiment was in the battle of Falkirk; but though unſucceſsful here, it contributed to the entire defeat of the rebel army at the battle of Culloden.

DURING the two laſt wars, and the preſent, it has been actively employed in America and the Weſt Indies.

UNIFORM, red, with buff facings; buff waiſtcoats and breeches. The 31ſt regiment, which has the ſame uniform, is commonly called the Young Buffs.

Fourth, or King's own Regiment of Foot.

THE fourth regiment of foot was raiſed in the year 1680 by Thomas Earl of Plymouth.

SOON after the regiment was completed, it was ſent to reinforce the garriſon of Tangier, which was ceded to Charles II.; but Charles growing weary of the expence of defending the place againſt the frequent attacks of the Moors, he ordered the works to be blown up and deſtroyed; and in 1684 the troops returned to England. This regiment was the firſt that joined King William on his landing at Torbay. His majeſty was pleaſed on this occaſion to honour it with the title of *the king's own regiment*; and directed to be borne in their colours the lion of England, which ſtill continues the badge of the regiment, and is worn on the breaſt-plate, buttons, cap, and pouch.

No regiment has been employed more on active ſervice than this. It was at the gallant taking of Gibraltar in 1704, under Sir George Rooke; and of Barcelona by the Earl of Peterborough. The battle of Almanza was as fatal to it as to the reſt of the Britiſh forces, commanded then by Lord Galway. Afterwards it ſerved, during the ſame war, under the Duke of Marlborough in the Low-countries.

THIS regiment covered the retreat at Falkirk, and at Culloden was conſpicuous for its determined conduct. In the following war it ſerved with great credit in different parts of the Weſt Indies.

IT was among the firſt employed in the American war, at Lexington; and afterwards was in the principal engagements in the provinces

of New York and Philadelphia. At St. Lucia, in 1779, it was concerned in the gallant defence of the Morne Fortunée.

IN the commencement of the preſent war it was employed in the reduction of the iſlands of St. Pierre and Miquelon. On its return from Quebec to England, it had the misfortune to be captured by the French; but being afterwards exchanged, and greatly reinforced by drafts of the militia, ſo as to form three battalions, it conſtituted a part of the Duke of York's army in the expedition againſt Holland.

THE uniform of the regiment, at the beginning of this century, was red, faced with blue velvet, and large velvet cuffs, richly embroidered with gold. The preſent uniform is red, with plain blue facings, ſilver buttons and epaulet, white waiſtcoat and breeches. On the epaulet, buttons, and breaſt-plate, are the crown and garter, and round the latter, "*The King's own Infantry.*" In the centre is the lion of England, and under it the number IV. in ſmall Roman figures.

Fifth Regiment of Foot.

THIS regiment was raiſed by James II., but it followed the fortunes of the Prince of Orange.

THE fifth was concerned in the taking of Gibraltar, and had the honour of covering the retreat of the Britiſh troops at the battle of Almanza.

THROUGHOUT the whole of our unfortunate conteſt with America, it was the lot of the fifth regiment to ſtand principally engaged. In no inſtance was it more conſpicuous for gallantry, than in the action at the heights of Charleſtown, commonly called Bunker's-hill. During that unfortunate, but well-fought day, the late conqueror of the Myſore, General Harris, was ſeverely wounded on the head, whilſt he led on the grenadiers. On that occaſion Lord Rawdon, now Earl of Moira, who was lieutenant of the company, kept up the ſpirit of intrepidity that had been diſplayed by his diſabled captain, and retired with the remnant of his brave followers, after having received two ſhots through his cap.

IT cannot be thought ſuperfluous to make an obſervation relative to the apparent contradiction which is manifeſted between the actual ſituation in the line of the fifth regiment, with regard to the ſixth; the latter, from the date of its eſtabliſhment, appearing to be an older regiment. The ſame ſingular circumſtance attends the fourth, or king's own, which, in point of original formation, is junior to the fifth. Theſe ſeeming contradictions are accounted for in the following manner.

WHEN the regiments in queſtion were firſt raiſed, they were not placed upon the Britiſh eſtabliſhment, but ſent by James II. for the ſervice of the States General. On the abdication of that monarch, and the ſubſequent election of William, Prince of Orange, the fourth, fifth, and ſixth, were numbered and taken into the line, according to the periods at which they landed from Holland. Thus, for inſtance, the fourth, which had originally been raiſed after the fifth, arrived in England before that corps, and took precedence; the ſixth, which had been levied before the fifth, returned to its native country at a later period than either, and was conſequently placed according to that date.

THE fifth regiment has been augmented to two battalions by drafts from the militia.

UNIFORM, goſling green facings. The twenty-fourth, fifty-fourth, and ſixty-ninth regiments are alſo faced with light green.

The ſixth Regiment of Foot.

THIS regiment derives its origin from the ſeven years' war, in the courſe of which the United Provinces of Holland threw off their ſubjection to Spain. Its regular eſtabliſhment did not take place until the year 1673; but it had previouſly ſerved under the three firſt princes of Orange. This was one of the three regiments intended, on their formation, to ſerve in Holland; therefore it was paid by the Dutch Republic. It came over to this country with King William at the revolution in 1688, and was incorporated in our military eſtabliſhment, numbering as the ſixth in the Britiſh line.

THIS regiment did King William much ſervice in Ireland. It afterwards ſerved in Spain, and was at the unfortunate battle of Almanza. In the war of 1739 it ſuffered in common with the others ſent to the unſucceſsful attack of Carthagena, under Admiral Vernon and General Wentworth. It was actively employed in the rebellion of 1745.

DURING the firſt four years of the ſeven years' war, the ſixth was not put upon any ſervice to diſtinguiſh itſelf, being almoſt the whole of that time in garriſon and camp duty at home. Early, however, in 1761, it was ordered into ſervice, and aſſiſted in the reduction of Belliſle.

DURING the troubles in America, the ſixth regiment was in that quarter of the globe; where its ſtrength might be ſaid to be waſted by ſkirmiſhes, and by the climate, rather than by any ſignal conflict with the enemy.

IN the preſent war the ſixth was engaged in the ſucceſsful campaign in the Weſt-Indies, under Sir Charles Grey, when Martinique, Guadaloupe, and St. Lucia, were taken from the French.

UNIFORM, deep yellow facings, white lace, with yellow and red ſtripes.

THE ninth, tenth, twelfth, thirteenth, fifteenth, ſixteenth, twentieth, twenty-fifth, twenty-ſixth, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth, thirty-ſeventh, thirty-eighth, forty-fourth, forty-ſixth, fifty-ſeventh, ſixty-ſecond, and ſixty-ſeventh regiments have alſo yellow facings and white lace, and are diſtinguiſhed from each other by the variations of the ſtripes, the tinge of the colour, &c.

The ſeventh Regiment of Foot, or Royal Fuſileers.

THIS regiment was raiſed with nine others of infantry, and eight of cavalry, under James II. in the year 1685, three years before the abdication of that unfortunate monarch. Levies ſo conſiderable for that period, might well have flattered ſuch a prince's weakneſs, that they would be able to ſupport his tottering throne. There is no queſtion, but as much reliance was placed on this as on any of the

new corps, as was indeed manifeſted by the privileges annexed to it. The command of it was conferred on General Lord Dartmouth, whoſe profeſſions to James had been marked for their zeal and loyalty.

As a fuſileer regiment the men wear caps, ſimilar to thoſe of the grenadiers, though ſomething ſhorter. In all other reſpects they are dreſſed and appointed as the ſoldiers of other battalions. Three years after this, another regiment was raiſed, under the denomination of *Royal Welſh Fuſileers:* this partiality for cap regiments is ſaid to have been cauſed by the celebrity of the Britiſh grenadiers, who were eaſily diſtinguiſhed by their caps *.

THE officers in theſe regiments never carried ſpontoons, as the others did, till the late change, but had fuſils like the officers of the flank companies throughout the army. The other regiments of fuſileers have ſecond-lieutenants, inſtead of enſigns; this regiment is peculiar in having none but firſt lieutenants, under the field-officers and captains.

THE uniform is royal, blue facings, with white lace, and a blue ſtripe.

THE eighth, eighteenth, twenty-firſt, twenty-third, forty-ſecond, and ſixtieth regiments, have alſo blue, or royal facings, but different lace.

HIS Royal Highneſs the Duke of Kent, the king's fourth ſon, is the preſent colonel of this regiment.

The firſt, or King's Regiment of Dragoon Guards.

THIS corps was raiſed and entered on the eſtabliſhment the 6th of June, 1685.

IN every war, except the late American, this regiment has largely participated, eſpecially in the ſeven years' war in Germany.

---

* BY a recent regulation of the preſent year (1800), all the regiments of the line, as well as the guards, are to wear a kind of caps. See Appendix, Number XIII.

SOON after Prince Ferdinand had gained the victory of Crevelt, and that Duſſeldorp had ſurrendered to his arms, it was thought adviſeable, for the united intereſts of the allies, to ſend over a reinforcement of troops to maintain his Highneſs in that commanding ſtation. This was one of the regiments ſent over for that purpoſe.

IT was better known at that time by the appellation of Bland's dragoons, from the name of the intelligent officer who was at the head of it. Except at the affair of Minden, this regiment was never an idle ſpectator of a combat.

IN the battle of Corbach on the 9th of July, 1760, when the impetuoſity of the hereditary prince had brought on an engagement with the French, under Monſ. St. Germain, with very ſuperior numbers, and before he could be ſuſtained by his uncle, Prince Ferdinand, it was owing to the intrepidity of a ſquadron of this regiment, at the head of which, and Howard's dragoons, the hereditary prince put himſelf, that the Britiſh battalions did not ſuffer very materially. They charged the enemy ſo furiouſly, as to enable the infantry to make a ſafe retreat.

IT was in the hotteſt part of the engagement, which took place at Kempen, in the month of October following, when Lieutenant-colonel Pitt, its preſent commander, and Lord Down, were wounded and taken priſoners.

IN the preſent war this regiment made part of the forces under his Royal Highneſs the Duke of York, acting in conjunction with the army of the Prince of Coburg.

THE eſtabliſhment of this regiment at preſent is ten troops, each conſiſting of one captain, one lieutenant, one cornet, one quartermaſter, four ſerjeants, four corporals, one trumpeter, and ſeventy-one rank and file. The average height of the men is five feet ten inches; of the horſes fifteen hands one inch and a half.

UNIFORM of the officers, ſcarlet and gold lace, blue cuffs and collar; no facings on the ordinary uniform.

UNIFORM of the troopers, red jacket, faced half lappel, blue, white lace, buttons marked K. D. G. The ſerjeants wear gold lace.

Prices of commiſſions *.	£.	s.	d.
Lieutenant-colonel, - - - - -	4982	10	0
Major, - - - - - - -	3882	10	0
Captain, - - - - - - -	2782	10	0
Captain-lieutenant, with rank of captain, -	1782	10	0
Lieutenant, - - - - - - -	997	10	0
Cornet, - - - - - - -	735	0	0

Second, or Queen's Dragoon-Guards.

THIS is one of the eight cavalry regiments raiſed in 1685, the ſecond year after King James II.'s acceſſion to the throne. Five of theſe remain on the Engliſh eſtabliſhment, and three on the Iriſh: of the former five, three are diſtinguiſhed as *Dragoon-guards*, the other two as *Dragoons*, the firſt of which is denominated "The king's own regiment."

IN the hiſtory of the ſecond regiment of dragoon-guards, there is very little to diſtinguiſh it from that of the firſt. It has ſeen nearly the ſame ſervice, and under the active bravery of its ſecond colonel, during the ſeven years' war, was remarked for appointment and diſcipline.

IN the campaign of 1794, on the continent, this, like the firſt, was one of the regiments which compoſed the corps of cavalry under the immediate command of his Royal Highneſs the Duke of York.

UNIFORM of the officers, red, faced with black velvet and ſilver lace. Of the troopers, red jacket, black collar and cuffs, royal lace, white buttons, marked Q. D. G. The ſerjeants wear ſilver lace.

The third, or Prince of Wales's Dragoon-Guards.

THIS is the laſt of the three regiments diſtinguiſhed as dragoon-guards upon the Britiſh eſtabliſhment.

---

* THE ſame in the other dragoon regiments.

This regiment has never been inactive in any of the reigns ſince its eſtabliſhment. It acquired conſiderable celebrity in Queen Anne's war, under the Duke of Marlborough.

The firſt ſignal battle in which it was engaged was that fought at Schellenberge, near Donawert, on the 2d of July, 1704. It diſtinguiſhed itſelf ſtill more in the famous battle of Hochſtadt, or Blenheim, fought on the 13th of Auguſt in the ſame year.

During the ſeven years' war it was ſent into Germany, under the command of Sir George Howard, and was then generally diſtinguiſhed by the name of *Howard's Dragoons*.

In the preſent war it has alſo been on the continent, and though ſome animadverſions were made on the tardineſs of General Manſell's movements in the engagement near Cateau, it maintained its former reputation in the action of the following day, when the general himſelf was killed, charging at the head of his regiment.

The uniform is ſcarlet, faced with white, and yellow buttons.

Fourth, or Royal Iriſh Regiment of Dragoon-Guards.

This regiment, with ſeven others of the cavalry, was raiſed in 1685, ſoon after James II. aſcended the throne, and the command of it was given to the Duke of Hamilton. This regiment was originally called *The Prince of Wales's, or Firſt Regiment of Horſe*; and with the other three of horſe upon the ſame eſtabliſhment it was, in the year 1788, put upon a new one, and called *Dragoon-guards*, numbering on to ſeven; ſo that the fourth of horſe, formerly ſo called, is now the ſeventh Dragoon-guards.

Preſent Strength of the Regiment.

The colonel, with a troop.
Two lieutenant-colonels; the firſt with a troop.
Two majors; one with a troop.
Six captains, with a troop each.
One captain-lieutenant.

Eight lieutenants.
Nine cornets.
One paymaſter.
One adjutant.
One ſurgeon.
Two aſſiſtant-ſurgeons.
One veterinary ſurgeon.

Each troop conſiſts of,	Quarter-maſter, - - - - -	1
	Serjeants, - - - - - -	4
	Corporals, - - - - - -	4
	Trumpeter, - - - - - -	1
	Privates, - - - - - -	75
	Total -	85

THE uniform is royal, with ſilver lace.

The fifth Regiment of Dragoon-Guards, commonly called the Green-Horſe.

THE fifth regiment of dragoon-guards, originally the ſecond of horſe, was raiſed in England in the reign of King James II., in the month of July, 1685. It was at that time put on the regular Britiſh eſtabliſhment.

IT went over with King William to Ireland in 1689, and remained more than one hundred years upon the Iriſh eſtabliſhment.

IN the year 1793, on the breaking out of the war with France, it was one of the regiments ordered to the continent, where it ſerved in 1793, 1794, and 1795, under the Duke of York. It was engaged in the battles of the 17th of April, 1794, near the Ville de Premont, on the inveſtment of Landrecies; on the 26th of April near Cateau Cambreſis; on the 10th of May near Tournay; on the 17th and 18th of May, when the army advanced into the French frontiers; and on the 22d of May on the banks of the Scheld, near Tournay.

THE regiment returned from the continent with the reſt of the Britiſh troops in December, 1795, and remained in England till October, 1796, when it was again ordered to Ireland, ſymptoms of diſturbances and inſurrections beginning to manifeſt themſelves in that kingdom. After its arrival in Ireland, it was one of the regiments which marched in December, 1796, to Bantry, to oppoſe the landing of the French General Hoche. During the ſubſequent rebellion it was ſtationed in Dublin.

THIS regiment is now on the Engliſh eſtabliſhment; it conſiſts of nine troops, of the ſame ſtrength with thoſe of the fourth regiment of dragoon-guards.

THE uniform of the regiment is, green facings with gold lace for the officers; and yellow for the private men. The height of theſe is in general from five feet eight inches to ſix feet.

Firſt, or Royal Regiment of Dragoons.

THIS regiment was raiſed for the ſervice of Charles II. by John Lord Churchill (afterwards Duke of Marlborough), in 1683.

THEIR ſervices in every war, ſince their firſt eſtabliſhment, have been ſo various, that it would be tedious to recapitulate them. During the American war only the ſervices of the firſt regiment of dragoons were confined to England and Ireland.

THEIR badge is a horſe-ſhoe, incloſing 1ſt D., encircled with a wreath of laurels; the regiment conſiſts of nine troops, of the uſual number. The colour of the horſes is black.

Second, or Royal North Britiſh Dragoons, called the Scots Greys.

THE Royal North Britiſh Dragoons were raiſed in Scotland, during the reign of James II.

THIS regiment frequently diſtinguiſhed itſelf in the wars of King William and Queen Anne; nor was it leſs active in the rebellion of 1715. In the battles of Dettingen and Fontenoy, the cool intrepid courage of this corps was eminently conſpicuous.

THE Greys were among the troops ſent to Germany, under Prince Ferdinand of Brunſwick, in 1758, at which time the Duke of Argyle commanded the regiment. They were alſo on the continent under the Duke of York in 1793, 1794, and 1795.

THE uniform is red, with gold lace, no facings, but blue collar and cuff. The horſes are of an iron-grey colour, except thoſe of the officers and trumpeters, which are of a light grey, approaching to white.

Account of the (late) Fifth, or Royal Iriſh Regiment of Dragoons; with ſome Particulars relative to the late Rebellion in Ireland.

THIS regiment was raiſed in or about the year 1688, and ſerved under the Duke of Marlborough during the whole of his wars.

IN conſequence of the good behaviour of this regiment at the battle of Hochſtet, in Auguſt, 1704, three additional troops were put upon the eſtabliſhment, making its ſtrength conſiſt of nine troops. The kettle-drums, which were taken from the French at this memorable engagement, were directed by the Duke of Marlborough to be carried at the head of the royal dragoons of Ireland.

AT the battle of Ramillies, in 1706, the Royal Iriſh Dragoons gathered freſh laurels. In conſequence of this regiment, aſſiſted by the Scots Greys, making priſoners of two battalions of the regiment of Picardie, and cutting a third to pieces, before it could ſecure a retreat behind a line of horſe that were galloping to bring it off, both corps were diſtinguiſhed from other cavalry regiments, by being permitted to wear grenadier caps.

THE honours which were thus earned by the Royal Iriſh, were not only eſtabliſhed and confirmed, but continued to be uninterruptedly acknowledged, through four reigns, without ſuffering the leaſt diminution during near a century; and the permanency of the nine troops was ſecured by an order, dated in 1798.

PREVIOUSLY to the date of this order, and conſequently before the regiment could have excited the diſpleaſure of government, ſome part of it was detached towards the ſouth of Ireland. Diſturbances that

bore a very ſerious complexion had riſen to ſo formidable a height, in this quarter of the kingdom, that it became neceſſary to reinforce the military ſtrength, by an augmentation of ſteady and confidential troops.

ON the 23d of May, 1798, a general riſing in maſs was intended by the rebels, throughout the diſaffected parts of Ireland; and there is reaſon to preſume, that it might have been attended with the moſt ſerious conſequences if ſome fortunate diſcoveries had not diſconcerted their plan of general inſurrection. However, on the day appointed, a partial riſing took place throughout the whole of the county of Wexford, and in part of Waterford, Wicklow, Kildare, and other counties. On this occaſion the rebels ſeized on the town of Gorey, Inniſcorthy, and the day following they obtained poſſeſſion of Wexford, the county town; intercepting almoſt all the reſpectable families then reſiding in the country, who were endeavouring to make their eſcape from a ſcene of univerſal outrage, pillage, and devaſtation.

AT this critical and alarming period, the fifth regiment of Iriſh dragoons was ordered to march, with all poſſible expedition, to be contiguous to the capital, and took up its quarters at Lehaunſtown-huts, a poſition within ſeven miles of Dublin.

Two troops having been ſtationed at Tallow, in the county of Waterford, did not move with the main body of the regiment, but followed as a rear diviſion in the line of march. On their arrival, however, at Kilkenny, they were countermanded by Sir Charles Aſgill, and were prevented from accompanying the regiment to its deſtination at Lehaunſtown, in conſequence of intelligence having been received by the general, that the rebels were preparing in great force to make a vigorous attack upon New Roſs, a town ſituate on the River Barrow, about ſeventeen miles to the weſtward of Wexford. The two troops were ordered not to halt, but with all poſſible expedition to advance towards that place, and to reinforce Major General Johnſon, who had aſſembled what troops he could collect, for the purpoſe of defeating this deſperate enterprize of the rebels. They accordingly arrived at Roſs on the 2d day of June. At this time the rebels, nearly

eighteen thouſand ſtrong, were collected about four miles to the ſouth-eaſt of Roſs, under the command of Bagnal Harvey, father Roach, and another catholic prieſt called Murphy. The latter ſtrove to perſuade the infatuated mob that, in a cauſe like theirs, they had nothing to fear from the king's troops, as they would be invulnerable. The force of the inſurgents was rendered very formidable, independently of the blind enthuſiaſm with which they were actuated, by the circumſtance of their being in poſſeſſion of ſixteen pieces of cannon of different ſizes, and a conſiderable quantity of ammunition, which they had obtained at Wexford, and other places, from whence they had driven the king's troops by the ſuperiority of their numbers.

ON the evening of the 4th of June, the rebels made a general movement from the heights of Carrick Burn, and for ſome time the declivity, from thence to Corbet Hill, appeared like an immenſe opaque body in motion. This was occaſioned by a repeated ſucceſſion of men, who had been for ſome days collecting behind the mountain. General Harvey and his ſtaff took poſſeſſion of a large houſe on the ſummit of Corbet Hill, ſomewhat leſs than a Britiſh mile from the town.

THE rebels paſſed the night in noiſy merriment, which was diſtinctly heard by the inhabitants of the place, and was accompanied by a confuſed craſh of diſcordant ſounds iſſuing from fifes, bag-pipes, fiddles, and other inſtruments; but was occaſionally interrupted by a general ſhout of *Erin go bra*, meaning, Ireland for ever. Several flags, or ſtandards, were frequently diſtinguiſhed by the light of ſurrounding bonfires.

IN the mean time General Johnſon, who commanded the garriſon of Roſs, compoſed of near one thouſand ſeven hundred men, reinforced his pickets, and made the beſt arrangements, in order with ſo ſmall a force to withſtand the attack of ſeveral thouſands, provided with artillery, quantities of fire-arms, beſides pikes and other offenſive weapons.

ABOUT four o'clock in the morning of the 5th of June, the rebel general diſpatched a courier to ſummon the garriſon to ſurrender.

This meſſenger, unfortunately for him, was deſtined never to return, being ſhot dead by one of the centinels, who, from his ſhabby appearance, miſtook the purport of his miſſion. An official letter, ſigned Bagnal Harvey, commanding the *army of Ireland*, and addreſſed to the officer commanding the *King of England*'s forces at Roſs, was found upon his perſon; alſo a proclamation, ſigned in the manner already ſpecified. Finding that no attention had been paid to the ſummons, the rebels, about an hour after, moved down againſt the town in three columns; one of which with violent impetuoſity commenced the attack by ſetting fire to the ſuburbs, and by forcing a number of horned cattle before them through the ſmoke. This manœuvre was practiſed in order to break their enemy's fire, and create confuſion among the ranks, with the view of taking advantage of thoſe circumſtances, to avail themſelves of ſuperior numbers, by ruſhing upon and diſarming the ſoldiers. More effectually to forward their deſign, and to draw off the attention of the troops from that point, a ſtrong column of their beſt-diſciplined muſket-men, with ſome light artillery, advanced on the eaſtern ſide of the town, by the great road from Wexford to Roſs, and after a ſharp conteſt beat in our picket, conſiſting of a few companies of light infantry. At this critical moment the county of Dublin militia, led on by the gallant Lord Mountjoy, and ſupported by the Clare regiment, endeavoured for a long time to ſtem the torrent of ſuperior force, that ruſhed into action, urged on by intoxication, and rendered inſenſible to danger by the aſſurances given to them by their prieſts of eternal ſalvation. The conteſt about this time became extremely doubtful. The number of the rebels was too great for diſcipline effectually to reſiſt. Lord Mountjoy fell at the head of his regiment.

The rebels having by this time made ſuch an impreſſion upon the handful of king's troops, as to render it impoſſible to check their progreſs, had in one quarter forced their paſſage into the town of Roſs, whilſt a column of pike-men penetrated at another extremity, and threw the garriſon into confuſion. From the continual influx of freſh inſurgents, it became utterly impracticable for the king's troops to keep their ground, and a retreat became abſolutely neceſſary.

BEFORE this action commenced, the commanding officer of the fifth, or Royal Iriſh Dragoons, collected about ſixty effective men belonging to the two troops already mentioned, and formed for action in the beſt manner poſſible. Soon after the death of Lord Mountjoy, at a time when the rebels had forced their way into the town on all ſides, obliging the king's troops to retire in diſorder, the fifth dragoons were ordered to charge, for the purpoſe of affording the infantry an opportunity of retreating with ſome regularity. This was a ſervice replete with danger, as from the ſituation of the place, and the continual increaſe of a deſperate enemy, a handful of men ſeemed precluded from every hope of eſcaping deſtruction. Notwithſtanding, the order was inſtantly obeyed, and the detachment rode to meet bodies of inſurgents advancing againſt them, armed with pikes from ten to twelve feet long. Nor were the rebels inexperienced in the practice of this formidable weapon. Their inſtructions were to pierce the horſe in the flank, and thus obtain an eaſy conqueſt over the rider. In this conflict the heavy ſquadron was almoſt entirely cut to pieces, or diſabled. The quarter-maſter of the fifth dragoons, on whom the command at laſt devolved, accompanied by only nine men, with difficulty made good his retreat to the oppoſite ſide of the river, whither the infantry had retired and formed. By this time General Johnſon's force was diminiſhed more than one half. Perceiving, however, that the rebels had neglected to follow up their advantage (being diverted from it by the natural conſequences of inſubordination, a ſpirit of habitual licentiouſneſs, and a thirſt for plunder), he exhorted his troops, in a well-timed ſpeech, to recover their ground. The troops, and with them the ſmall remnant of the detachment of the fifth dragoons, returned to the charge; Roſs was retaken, and an immenſe carnage enſued of the rebels. By this important action the rapid and alarming ſtrides of rebellion were ſo effectually checked, that in the courſe of a few days the whole of the inſurrection was finally ſubdued, at the deciſive battle fought on Vinegar-hill.

SOME time after the fifth dragoons had arrived at Lehaunſtown-huts, as already mentioned, an order was received that the ſtrength of the regiment ſhould forthwith march for Dublin. It was, however,

directed, that a few men from each troop ſhould be left behind to take charge of the baggage, &c. The officers, who commanded them, were inſtructed to receive eligible recruits. Many fine-looking fellows were accordingly enliſted, and ſent to head-quarters. Almoſt all of them, as the event afterwards evinced, were rebel partiſans, and had inſinuated themſelves into the fifth dragoons to co-operate in a preconcerted plan for ſurprizing Lehaunſtown; to which place all the recruits and men unfit for immediate ſervice had been tranſmitted. Theſe entered into conſpiracy with the rebels in the adjoining mountains. The deſign was, that on a certain night an attack ſhould be made on the garriſon, whoſe whole effective ſtrength conſiſted of about ſeventy dragoons, many of them invalids, and ſomewhat more than an equal number of the king's county militia. The recruits, to a man, were concerned in this plot; and the maſſacre of every officer and loyal ſoldier was prevented only an hour before the ſcheme was propoſed to take place. The conſpirators were ſeized, and ſuffered according to their deſerts. The regiment, however, had the mortification to find it announced in the publick papers, that ſeveral privates belonging to the fifth, or Royal Iriſh Dragoons, had been found guilty, by a general-court martial, of joining the rebels.

IN conſequence of this the regiment was, on the 10th of April following, diſbanded by an order from his majeſty; of which, as it is rather ſingular in the occurrences of the army, we hereunto annex a copy.

Order for Diſbanding the fifth Regiment of Dragoons.

HORSE-GUARDS, APRIL 8, 1799.

HIS MAJESTY has taken into his moſt ſerious conſideration, the repreſentation which has been made by his Excellency the Lord Lieutenant of Ireland, of the conduct of the Fifth, or Royal Iriſh Regiment of Dragoons; and is of opinion, that the inſubordination, and the departure from diſcipline, and principles which have ever diſtinguiſhed the Britiſh army, therein exhibited, require, eſpecially in theſe times of warfare and exertion, that they ſhould be marked by a puniſhment that may be ſeverely felt, and be long remembered by thoſe miſguided perſons who have been guilty of the atrocious acts of diſobedience, which have brought this indelible ſtigma upon the corps; and may ſerve as an example to all others of the

the conſequences of ſuch ſeditious and outrageous proceedings, and of his majeſty's firm determination to maintain ſubordination and diſcipline in his army, and to ſupport the authority of his officers in the execution of their duty.

IT is on theſe grounds his majeſty's determination that the Fifth, or Royal Iriſh regiment of Dragoons, ſhall be forthwith diſbanded.

AT the ſame time that the king judges it requiſite, for the good of the ſervice, to make this ſevere example, his majeſty has graciouſly condeſcended to direct, that General Lord Roſſmore ſhall be aſſured, that his majeſty is perſuaded of the concern which, as a ſoldier, his lordſhip would feel at ſuch a circumſtance occurring in any part of the army, and is ſenſible of the particular mortification he muſt feel in the preſent inſtance; from the event of which, however, his lordſhip cannot, in the ſmalleſt degree, ſuffer in his majeſty's eſtimation.

HIS majeſty is graciouſly pleaſed farther to expreſs his perſuaſion, that there are many valuable officers in the regiment, who have uſed their beſt endeavours to reſtore the order, and to preſerve the credit of the corps; and though in this meaſure of indiſpenſable ſeverity it was impoſſible to make any exceptions, the majority being clearly implicated in the miſconduct for which the whole are ſuffering; yet his majeſty will hereafter make the moſt pointed diſcrimination, and thoſe of any rank, who are deſerving of the royal favour, may rely on his majeſty's diſpoſition to attend to their merits, and to avail himſelf of their future ſervices. In conſideration of the expence to which the officers of the Fifth, or Royal Iriſh regiment of Dragoons, have been unavoidably expoſed, his majeſty has been graciouſly pleaſed to direct, that their full pay ſhall be continued to them till the 24th of December next, at which period they will be placed on half-pay.

(Signed) HARRY CALVERT, Adjutant-General.

DESCRIPTION

OF

THE PLATES,

IN

THE MILITARY ANTIQUITIES.

The Military Exerciſe of Different Kinds occupies Twenty-three Plates.

THE EXERCISE OF THE PIKE, plates 1, 2, 3, 4.

DOUBLE-ARMED MAN, or bow and pike, plate 1 and 2. *Note*, the two bottom figures in this plate are taken from Prince Maurice de Naſſau's Exerciſe of the Target and Roundel, which he attempted to bring again into uſe.

MATCHLOCK, MUSKET, AND HALBERT EXERCISE, plates 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7, the firſt from Hexham, the latter from Hogarth, engraved for Mr. Blackwell's Account of the Artillery Company.

THE SALUTE, plates 1, 2, 3, marching and ſtanding, by the ſame artiſt for the ſame work.

THE HORSE EXERCISE, in plates 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, from Capt. Cruſo's Inſtructions for the Cavallerie.

The Machines for Projecting Stones and Darts, Eight Plates.

PLATE 1. The ſcorpion. 2. The catapulta. 3. The baliſta. 4. Machine and method for ſtringing the baliſta. All from Mr. Newton's Deſigns for Vitruvius. 5. The onager, conſtructed by Mr. Wenlow under the direction of Lieutenant General Melville. 6. Another view of the ſame. 7. An engraving of a trebuchet from an ancient carving in ivory.

PLATE 8. Machines for throwing darts and ſtones, from Lipſius and others, conſtructed on the principle of the counterpoiſe; one of them is double, as CC, by that fall it diſcharges a ſling B, fixed near its point A.

THE machines impelled by human force, and thoſe for covering the approaches of beſiegers, are contained in the two following plates.

Battering Machines.

PLATE 1. In the uppermoſt part of the plate, there is a repreſentation of the ram, and alſo of two different kinds of borers for piercing a wall.

AT the bottom a kind of ram with a ſharp point, ſupported by a triangle, and another on the ſhoulders of the men who work it: this plate was partly taken from Lidius.

Machines uſed in Antient Sieges.

PLATE 2. The vinea and pluteus of the antients, with the moveable tower; the different modes of defending the walls from the ſtrokes of the ram.

Artillery uſed with Gunpowder, Nine Plates.

PLATE 1. Several antient guns from Valturinus, Uffano, and others. That marked 3, is called an elbow-piece, and probably exiſted only in imagination. Fig. 8. A bombard for throwing bombs. 10. Is a bomb on a larger ſcale to ſhew its conſtruction. 11 and 12. A perrier chamber.

PLATE 2. An antient gun, the property of G. Weller Poley, Eſq. of Boxted Hall, Suffolk. 2, 3, and 4. Pieces of antient perriers kept in a cellar at Peele in the Iſle of Man. A Spaniſh gun, ſuppoſed to have belonged to the Armada; it is made of copper, lead, and iron. 6. A gun conſtructed with the ſame metals; it is with thoſe ſhewn above, in the cellar at Peele.

PLATE 3. Entitled an antient bombard or gun, called Mons. Meg. Tradition ſays, a woman was got with child in it.

PLATE 4. Entitled extraordinary pieces of artillery, contains the view and ſection of a triple cannon, a twin cannon, the famous culverin of Nancy, and an ancient ſcrew-piece. 5. The petard, with its form and manner of applying it. 6. The perrier. 7. The partridges, a mortar that threw thirteen grenadoes and one bomb at the ſame time; the bomb repreſenting the old hen, and the grenadoes the young partridges. 8. An antient gun-cart uſed at the ſiege of Bullogne, and repreſented in the Cowdry picture. 9. The infernal, with its ſection. Fig. 1. The following deſcription anſwers to both figures. A. the delineation of the veſſel; B. the hole filled with ſand; C. the firſt deck filled with twenty thouſand weight of powder, with a layer of maſonry of a foot thick over it; D. ſecond deck, furniſhed with 600 bombs and carcaſes filled with all kinds of military fireworks; E. the third deck, furniſhed with fifty iron-hooped barrels filled with all ſorts of fireworks; F. channel or tube conducting the fire to the powder and primings of the fireworks; G. inſtruments of iron, to the number of fifty, filled with artificial fireworks for burning ſhips or houſes; theſe falling on any wood by means of their points ſtuck faſt on it: on the deck was ſtowed old guns and other heavy pieces of old iron.

Fortification contains Five Plates.

PLATE 1. Entitled Antient Fortification, a caſtle with its different works.

PLATE 2. Fortification. The defects of antient round and ſquare towers, A. and Fig. 3; rectified in the baſtion E. The plan, profile, and perſpective views of a machicollation. Fig. 2. The ſection of an antient wall.

PLATE 3. The entrance of a ſtreet defended by a chain which was let into grooves in the poſts, and contained in a trough at the bottom of the ſtreet. In the adjoining building was the windlaſs for drawing tort the chain. Fig. 4. An antient machine for defending a paſs againſt cavalry, ſomewhat ſimilar to a cheval de friſe.

PLATE 5. Carts of war, covered over, pierced with loop-holes, and

filled with muſketteers, forming a kind of ſmall moveable redoubt, the horſes for drawing it being placed in ſafety under it. In the bottom figure the covering is taken off to ſhew the conſtruction. Theſe carts were placed in the centre of ſquare battalions of pikes and halberts, as appears in an antient drawing in the book before quoted. Auguſtus II. An ancient mantlet, taken alſo from the ſame book, is ſhewn in the middle figure.

The antient Attack and Defence of Fortified Places, Four Plates.

PLATE 1. Front of a fortified place attacked according to the antient manner.

PLATE 2. Antient manner of beſieging towns: both from Monſ. Joly de Maizeroy. Theſe plates want no explanation.

PLATE 3. Paviſours and moveable tower. This plate ſhews the ſtorming of the parapet, by means of a bridge let down from one of the upper ſtories of the belfrey or moveable tower. In the ditch are a number of archers attempting to drive the garriſon from the defences, they are covered by large ſhields called pavoiſes, each borne by a young man called a paviſour.

PLATE 4. The lyonoiſe, a machine propoſed for defending a breach, drawn from one at Chatham Lines made by order of Colonel Debbeige.

RESPECTING the ſubject of Caſtrametation, there are thirteen plates, to be placed in the order here annexed; 1, 2, 3, 4, plates entitled Caſtrametation, engraved from the Harleian MS. No. 7364, and referred to in the letter-preſs.

ROYAL TENTS, plates 1, 2, 3; theſe are engraved from Drawings in the Cotton Collection, marked Auguſtus II. No. 1 and 2, are ſuppoſed to repreſent ſome of the tents pitched for the meeting of King Henry VIII. with the King of France, near Ardres, in 1520. The third plate is by miſtake, entitled, Antient Tents and Huts, inſtead of a royal encampment, temp. Hen. VIII. It repreſents the royal quar-

ters of the camp, and that of the market-place, with the huts of the ſhopkeepers, butchers, &c.

Modern Tents, Three Plates.

PLATE 1. Fig. 1. The tent poles of a private tent. 2. A. private tent. 3 and 4. Fly tents. 5. An officer's marquis. 6. One of a very modern conſtruction, chiefly calculated for ſubalterns; the door by being placed in the centre of the ſide, leaves an area between the beds which are placed at each end. 7. A captain's tent or marquis with a chimney. A eaptain's marquis ſhewn in a different point of view. 9. A field officer's marquis. 10. His ſervant's tent in the rear. 11. Tent or tents of a colonel of militia.

PLATE 2. Fig. 1. A horſe for ſupporting the firelocks. 2. The manner in which the notches for receiving them are cut. 3. The ſide of one of the ſupporters. 4. Manner in which the arms are placed. 5. Laboratory tents belonging to the artillery. 6. A field-officer's tent or marquis. *Note*, the word marquis and tent are promiſcuouſly uſed, though, ſtrictly ſpeaking, they are different things; the internal part of the marquis was commonly made of ticking, the external covering, canvas.

PLATE 3. Called bell-tents, colour-ſtand, and camp-kitchen. Fig. 1. A bell-tent viewed in the front. 2. The ſame ſeen in the rear. 3. The centre pole with the croſs for ſupporting the arms. 4. The ſtand for the drums, colours, and officers eſpontons. 5. A camp kitchen with a woman cooking.

Three Plans of Encampments, in the Preſent Form.

PLATE 1. Plan of the encampment of a battalion of foot of nine companies, each conſiſting of ſeventy private men.

PLATE 2. Ditto of nine companies, of one hundred private men each.

PLATE 3. Plan of the encampment of a regiment of dragoons, conſiſting of ſix troops, forming three ſquadrons, with the light troop on the right.

N. B. The lodging of the ruyters, which belongs to this ſubject, is engraved on the ſame plate as the trebuchet, the proper place for which would be among the antient artillery.

The Inſtruments of Military Muſick

ARE compriſed in one plate, containing, fig. 1. An ancient Daniſh trumpet, found in cleaning the bed of the river Witham, in Lincolnſhire; it is now in the collection of Sir Joſeph Banks, Bart. Preſident of the Royal Society. 2. An antient horn or trumpet, in the collection of Mr. Rawle. 3. A common trumpet uſed in the cavalry. 4. An Aſiatick kettle-drum, called, a Naccaire. 5. A common kettle-drum. 6. A fife. 7. A ſide-drum, ſuch as is now uſed by the infantry. 8. An Aſiatick drum.

Military Rewards and Puniſhments.

OF this there are two plates. Firſt, Chelſea College, as originally begun by King James I. Second, entitled, Military Puniſhments. This plate ſhews the whirligig, and wooden-horſe.

NUMBER XXI.

Of the Volunteers, and Yeomanry Cavalry.

WHEN the French in 1782 threatened an invaſion of this country, the Earl of Shelburne, then ſecretary of ſtate, propoſed a plan for arming the people at large, with ſome reſtrictions, for the general defence. The project, however, being immediately followed by negotiation, which terminated in a peace, was not put in execution. In ſimilar circumſtances of preparations on the part of the enemy, and menaces of a deſcent, Mr. Dundas, in the beginning of 1797, invited the people to form themſelves into volunteer corps for their own protection. In every part of the kingdom the propoſal was accepted with the utmoſt alacrity and zeal; and in a very few months a new army of citizens was enrolled and muſtered, in appearance equal to the regular and militia forces, and in the diſcipline of the parade very little inferior.

PREVIOUSLY to this, from the very commencement of the war, volunteer companies had been raiſed in different parts of England among the reſident inhabitants, particularly in the towns contiguous to the ſea-coaſt. At the ſame time troops of horſe were levied among the gentlemen and yeomen of the country, upon the ſame principle with the volunteer companies. Theſe were called the yeomanry cavalry.

OF theſe volunteer corps, both of horſe and foot, ſome ſerved without any pay from government; others received pay and allowances, under certain regulations.

THESE were chiefly as follows:

THE officers of the volunteer infantry corps were to receive ſubſiſtence, at the ſame rate as thoſe of the regular forces, for the days only on which they met to exerciſe, and this was not to exceed two

days in the week. Conſtant pay, however, was allowed to one officer per company, not exceeding the rank of lieutenant, provided he was taken from the half-pay.

THE non-commiſſioned officers and private men were to have the ſame rate of pay, viz. one ſhilling each for every day's exerciſe of ſix hours, or an equivalent number of hours on different days, ſo as not to exceed two whole days in the week.

ONE drill-ſerjeant in each company was to have conſtant full pay, with ſuch allowances as are made to the ſerjeants of the regular infantry.

THE mode of arming the men varied according to ſituation. Thoſe in the interior towns were armed altogether with firelocks. Thoſe on the coaſt too were often ſupplied wholly with muſketry; but if they had the means of being trained to the great guns, then one third only were to be allowed fire-arms, and the reſt exerciſed at the artillery *.

THEY were alſo to be allowed their cloathing; viz. a coat, waiſtcoat, and breeches, round hat and cockade, for which the following was the allowance:

	£.	s.	d.
To a ſerjeant - - - - - - -	3	3	9
To a corporal - - - - - - -	1	11	3
To a drummer - - - - - - -	2	3	6
To a private - - - - - - -	1	9	3

THE accoutrements were to conſiſt of a belt, pouch, and ſling, for thoſe provided with ſmall arms. Theſe were to be ſupplied by the office of ordnance; or if any corps wiſhed to find their own arms and accoutrements, they might receive, as an equivalent, the following allowances:

---

* BESIDES theſe, there were formed corps of ſea-fencibles to man the batteries, &c. from among the ſea-faring men along the coaſt. This excellent plan, which added materially to the ſtrength of the country, with very little expence to government, was ſuggeſted by Captain John Schank, of the Navy, and one of the commiſſioners of the Tranſport-board.

	£.	s.	d.
For a muſket, bayonet, and ſcabbard - - -	1	16	0
A halbert - - - - - - - -	0	9	6
A drum and ſticks - - - - - - -	0	19	0
A cartridge-box - - - - - - -	0	2	6
A tanned leather ſling - - - - -	0	1	4

THE YEOMANRY CAVALRY were to be allowed pay when called out on actual ſervice, and each corps was liable to be put upon duty within its diſtrict; all contingent expences properly and unavoidably incurred, were to be reimburſed after an inveſtigation at the war-office.

ONE ſerjeant and a trumpeter per troop to have conſtant pay, with the ſame allowances as ſerjeants and trumpeters of regular cavalry.

TWELVE carbines were to be allowed to each troop: beſides which, the appointments of each man were a piſtol, broad-ſword, ſword-belt, cartouch-box, and ſtrap, a waiſt-belt and holſters. Theſe were either to be furniſhed by the ordnance, or an equivalent in money to be given in lieu of them, and 14s. 2d. per man for holſters.

THE VOLUNTEER CORPS that were eſtabliſhed throughout the country, in conſequence of Mr. Dundas's circular letter in 1797, receive only their arms from government. Both officers and men not only ſerve without pay, but even find their own cloathing. In ſome pariſhes indeed a ſubſcription was made for this purpoſe; and it ſeemed but juſt that thoſe who cannot from age, infirmity, or other cauſes, come forward in perſon, ſhould, by a pecuniary aid, contribute to the general defence.

THE uniforms of theſe corps were various, according to the taſte of their reſpective officers and commanders. In general they were blue or ſcarlet, with facings of different colours. Some choſe to wear coats and hats; others jackets and caps, with the appointments of the fuſileer regiments.

WE cannot aſcertain the number of men that thus voluntarily

turned out for the defence of the kingdom; but ſome general notion may be formed of it from the returns of thoſe in the metropolis and its vicinity, who were firſt reviewed by his majeſty on the 4th of June, 1799.

AT this memorable review * the right wing, under the command of Lord Heathfield, conſiſted of *twelve ſquadrons of cavalry*, extending from the eaſt end of the river to Hyde-park-corner. The centre, commanded by Major-general Ludlow, formed a body of *twenty-nine corps of infantry*, occupying the ground between Hyde-park-corner and Cumberland-gate. In the left wing, under Major General D'Oyley, were *twenty-five corps of infantry*, extending along the north ſide of the Park to the weſt, as far as the Serpentine river. The whole line conſiſted of near *twelve thouſand men*, commanded by the Earl of Harrington, the general in chief of the diſtrict.

---

* THE corps were reviewed again on the 4th of June, 1800, when they muſtered eleven thouſand two hundred and nine officers and men.

[END OF THE HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH ARMY.]

SCIPIO RECEIVING THE KEYS OF CARTHAGE.

The Property of Gustavus Brander Esq^r

A

TREATISE

ON

ANCIENT ARMOUR

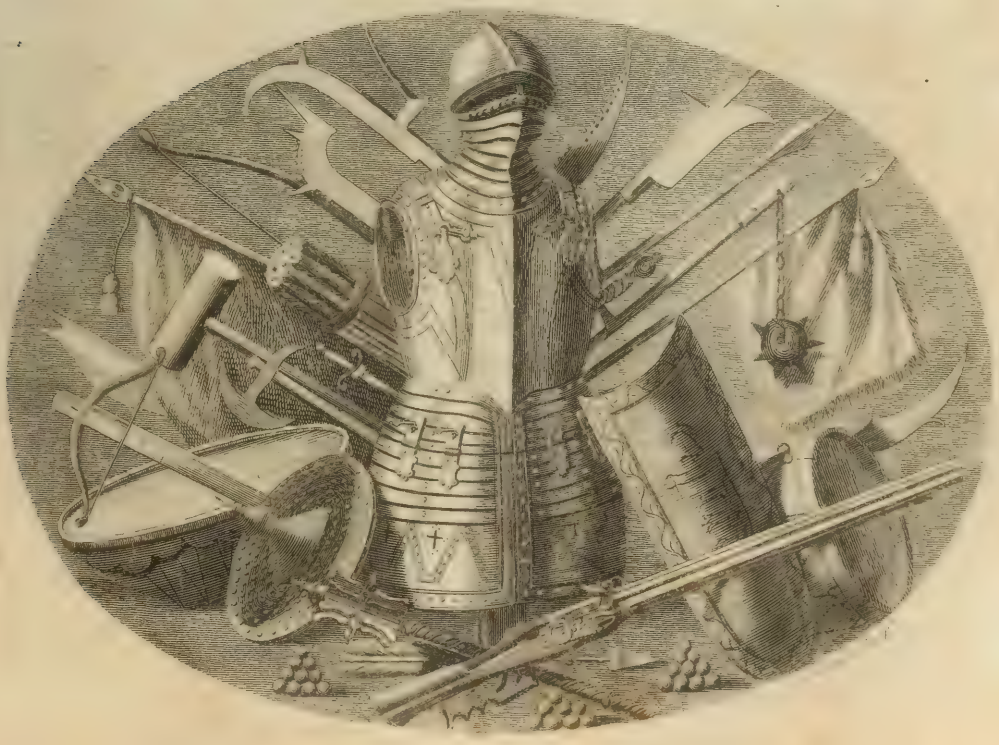
AND

WEAPONS,

ILLUSTRATED BY

Plates taken from the ORIGINAL ARMOUR in the Tower of London, and other Arfenals, Muſeums, and Cabinets.

By FRANCIS GROSE, *Eſq.* F.A.S.



PREFACE

TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THIS Treatiſe, by the ſame Author, was publiſhed ſeparately from the Military Hiſtory, in numbers, a very ſhort time before the latter was ready for the preſs. The publiſher of the preſent edition has thought it beſt to incorporate them together; for although they are diſtinct works, their object and tendency is the ſame; and together they will form a more complete body of military antiquities.

WE are informed by the Author, in his Preface, that the chief ſources from which he took his models, were the armour and weapons themſelves, preſerved either in the publick arſenals, or private cabinets; but as ſeveral ſpecimens were wanting in thoſe repoſitories, he had, to ſupply the deficiency, occaſionally availed himſelf of the aſſiſtance of ſepulchral monuments, the great ſeals of our kings and antient barons, and figures on painted glaſs: but theſe as ſparingly and cautiouſly as poſſible, and only where the firſt were deficient. For the hiſtorical part he conſulted a variety of gloſſaries, military books, and antient manuſcript inventories of armour, both in publick libraries and thoſe of his friends.

In this Work, though the Author confines himſelf chiefly to the conſideration of Engliſh armour, worn from the Conqueſt to the time of its diſuſe; yet he occaſionally digreſſes ſo far, as to give a few plates of ſuch pieces of antient or foreign armour as he thought curious and authentic, and which had not before been publiſhed.

The following is the plan and arrangement of the Work. In order the more clearly to inveſtigate his ſubject, the Author, in imitation of mathematical writers, firſt defines and deſcribes every article of armour, piece by piece, its conſtruction and uſe; he afterwards gives a general hiſtory of armour and arms, ſhewing their original forms and materials, with their ſucceſſive improvements, and the different laws and regulations made reſpecting them, together with their prices. He laſtly takes a view of the alterations in defenſive armour, cauſed by the uſe of gun-powder; the armour directed by our ſtatutes to be worn and kept by the ſeveral ranks of people; and its gradual and final diſuſe.

The plates, we are told by the Author, were etched by Mr. John Hamilton, vice-preſident of the Society of Artiſts of Great-Britain.

A

TREATISE

ON

ANTIENT ARMOUR, &c.

DEFENSIVE ARMOUR.

THE HELMET.

THE head was defended by a piece of armour, known by the general denominations of Head-piece, Caſque and Helmet. Helmets were antiently formed of various materials, but chiefly of ſkins of beaſts, braſs and iron.

A HELMET is either open or cloſe; an open helmet covers only the head, ears, and neck, leaving the face unguarded (a). Some, deemed open helmets, have a bar or bars from the forehead to the chin, to guard againſt the tranſverſe cut of a broad ſword, but this affords little or no defence againſt the point of a lance or ſword (b).

A CLOSE helmet entirely covers the head, face and neck, having on the front perforations for the admiſſion of air, and ſlits through which

(a) As fig. 5, plate 7.

(b) FOR ſpecimens of bar helmets, ſee plate 5, fig. 2 and 4.

the wearer may ſee the objects around him; this part, which is ſtiled the viſor (c), lifts up by means of a pivot over each ear.

Some cloſe helmets have a farther improvement called a (d) bever; the bever when cloſed covers the mouth and chin, and either lifts up by revolving on the ſame pivots as the viſor, or lets down by means of two or more pivots on each ſide near the jaws, in which caſe the bever conſiſts of ſeveral laminæ or plates, one ſhutting over the other.

Helmets with bevers to let down, are leſs common than thoſe whoſe bevers lift up: the uſe of the bever was to enable the wearer to eat or drink, more commodiouſly than could be done in a helmet with a viſor only.

The bars placed before the faces of the open helmets, were alſo contrived to lift up and let down by means of pivots placed as for the viſor (e).

The helmets of the Greeks and Romans were moſtly if not always open; ſome of the latter were much like ſcull caps, not long ſince worn by our dragoons (f). Montfaucon ſays he never ſaw an antient helmet with a viſor to raiſe or let down, but is nevertheleſs of opinion, that they had thoſe contrivances; it ſeems as if the Romans, at leaſt thoſe of which Pompey's army was compoſed at Pharſalia, had open helmets, as Cæſar directed his ſoldiers to ſtrike them in the face: an order he would not have given had their faces been covered.

Two Grecian Helmets (g) in the Britiſh Muſeum have a kind of contrivance to cover the noſe, ſomewhat in effect reſembling the bar.

(c) Visor, from the French word viſer, to take aim.

(d) Bever, from beveur, drinker; or from the Italian, bere, to drink.

(e) Fig. 2, plate 4, ſhews a helmet, with the viſor and bever cloſed up, the ſlits cut through the viſor for the benefit of ſight. Fig. 1, in the ſame plate, repreſents the ſame helmet, with the viſor lifted up, the bever remaining cloſe. Fig. 5, plate 5, a helmet with both viſor and bever up. And fig. 3, 5, and 6, plate 4, a helmet whoſe bever lets down. Fig. 2 and 4, plate 5, two helmets with the bars down. And fig. 1 and 3, the ſame helmets with the bars lifted up.

(f) See plate 2. fig. 2.

(g) See different views of theſe helmets in plate 1.

OVER the top of the helmet roſe an elevated ridge called the creſt (h), which both ſtrengthened it againſt a blow, and afforded a place for decoration and diſtinction.

HELMETS are again divided into different ſpecies, diſtinguiſhed by the appellation of chapelle de fer, the burgonet, bacinet, ſalet, ſcull, or hufken, caſtle, pot and morion.

THE CHAPELLE DE FER.

THE chapelle de fer is, literally tranſlated, the iron hat, or chaplet; but according to Father Daniel (i), the term chapelle was antiently uſed to expreſs every ſort of covering for the head. The chapelle de fer occurs in the ſtatute of Wincheſter (k), among the different kinds of armour therein directed to be kept; but by ſome unaccountable miſtake in Ruffhead's edition of the Statutes at large, is there repeatedly tranſlated a breaſt-plate (l). Under the denomination of the chapelle de fer may be ranged thoſe conical and cylindrical head-pieces, expreſſed on the great ſeals of our early kings, and antient great barons (m).

THE chapelle de fer is frequently mentioned by Froiſſart, and was then the head-piece worn by the light horſe, and foot ſoldiers. Fa-

---

(h) ALL the helmets, plate 5, have creſts; ſometimes the creſts repreſented lions, dragons, or other devices, tending to make the warrior appear taller and more terrible. Creſts alſo ſerved to point out kings and generals to their followers. (1) The points that made the ſpecific differences between helmets, that is, which conſtituted one a bacinet, another a ſalet, &c. are not ſo exactly defined as could be wiſhed. In ſome degree to aſcertain this matter is here nevertheleſs attempted.

(i) HISTOIRE de la Milice Francois, vol. 1. p. 389.

(k) THIS ſtatute was enacted at Wincheſter, 13 Edward I. cap. 6. whence it derived its name; it was alſo called the aſſize of arms, becauſe therein were directed the different kinds of arms to be kept by every rank and degree of perſons, according to their eſtates, or perſonal property.

(l) BY this error, defenſive armour for the head is totally omitted, for though there was a hood of mail to the hawberk, there was none to the haubergeon.

(m) SEE plate 9.

ther Daniel ſays (n), it was a light helmet, without viſor or gorget, like thoſe ſince called bacinets; perhaps a kind of iron cap attached to, or worn over a hood of mail. This iron hat is called alſo in French, armet, and was occaſionally put on by knights, when they retired from the Melee of the battle, to reſt themſelves and take breath.

THE BOURGUINOTE, OR BURGONET.

THIS kind of head-piece probably ſucceeded the cylindric and conical caſques beforementioned; that celebrated French antiquary, Monſieur Fauchet (o), ſays, "when helmets better repreſented the human head, they were called bourguinotes, poſſibly from being invented by the Burgundians." The helmet, fig. 2 of plate 3, and fig. 1 and 2 of plate 8, ſeem to anſwer this definition of the burgonet, for not only the figure of the human head is preſerved, but alſo the ſhapes or outlines of the features.

THE BACINET.

BACINETS were light helmets, ſo called from their reſemblance to a baſon, and were generally without vizors, though from divers quotations cited by Du Cange (p), they appear occaſionally to have had them. Fauchet ſuppoſes them to have been a lighter ſort of helmet, that did not cover the face, and ſays, he finds that the knights often exchanged their helmets for baſſinets, when much fatigued, and wiſhing to eaſe and refreſh themſelves; at a time when they could not, with propriety, go quite unarmed.

BASSINETS were worn in the reigns of Edward II. and III. and

(n) HIST. Mil. tom. 1. p. 389.

(o) DE lordonnance, armes & inſtrumens, deſquels les Francois ont uſé en leurs guerres, l. 2. p. 42. He there alſo ſays, that the burgonets were by the Italians called armets, ſalades, or celates.

(p) GUIL. Guiart. An. 1270. Et Clers Bacinez a Viſieres.
An. 1304. Hauberjons, & tacles Entieres
Eſcus, Bacinez a Viſieres.

Richard II. by moſt of the Engliſh Infantry, as may be repeatedly ſeen in the Rolls of Parliament, and other public recor ds

THE SALADE, SALET, OR CELATE.

Father Daniel (q) defines a ſalet to be a ſort of light caſque, without a creſt, ſometimes having a viſor, and being ſometimes without one.

In a manuſcript (r) inventory of the royal ſtores and habiliments of war in the different arſenals and garriſons, taken 1ſt of Edward VI., there are entries of the following articles. At Hampton-court, ſallets for archers on horſeback, ſallets with grates, and old ſallets with vizards: at Windſor, ſalettes and ſkulls: at Calais, ſaletts with vyſars and bevers, and ſalets with bevers. Theſe authorities prove, that ſalets were of various conſtructions.

THE SCULL

Is a head-piece, without viſor or bever, reſembling a bowl or baſon, ſuch as was worn by our cavalry, within twenty or thirty years.

THE HUFKEN.

This ſeems to be a light head-piece worn by archers; it is mentioned in a manuſcript treatiſe of martial diſcipline by Ralph Smith, dedicated to Sir Chriſtopher Hatton, then vice-chamberlain to Queen Elizabeth: its particular form or conſtruction is not deſcribed.

THE CASTLE.

The caſtle was perhaps a figurative name for a cloſe head-piece, deduced from its encloſing and defending the head, as a caſtle did the whole body; or a corruption from the old French word caſquetel, a ſmall or light helmet.

(q) Hist. Milice Francoiſe.

(r) This very curious manuſcript is the property of Guſtavus Brander, Eſq. of Chriſt Church, Hampſhire.

THE MORION.

THE morion is a kind of open helmet, without viſor or bever, ſomewhat reſembling a hat; it (s) was commonly worn by the harquebuſſiers and muſqueteers.

THE POT.

THE pot is an iron hat with broad brims: there are many under this denomination in the Tower, ſaid to have been taken from the French; one of them is repreſented in plate 7, fig. 1 and 2.

THE names of the chief pieces particularly appropriated to the defence of the breaſt and body, were the coat of mail, or haubergeon, the ſhirt of mail, the jazerant, the aketon, the jack, the vambaſium, the cuiraſs, the hallecret, and the brigandine.

THESE pieces were of different forms and various materials (t), beſides braſs and iron, ſuch as leather, horn, ſoft linen, hemp, cotton, and wool. The hawberk, almaine ryvetts, and corſelet, were terms ſignifying complete ſuits.

OF mail there are two ſorts, viz. chain and plate mail. Chain mail (u) is formed by a number of iron rings, each ring having four

---

(s) LE bacinet, le cabaſſet, le pot de fer, le chapeau de fer, la ſalade, le morion, etoient des eſpeces de caſques aſſez ſemblables, excepté que la ſalade avoit quelquefois une viſiere, & que le morion etoit propre de l'infanterie; ces caſques ſe lioient ordinairement, ſous le menton avec des courroyes & des boucles; la bourgoignote paroit avoir eté plus maſſive & a viſiere, puiſque le Preſident Fauchet, comme on la vû ci-deſſus, en parle comme d'un eſpece de heaume. P. Daniel Hiſt. de la Milice Fr. tom. 1. p. 400. Fig. 1, in plate 3, repreſents a morion.

(t) THE earlieſt armour was undoubtedly made of the ſkins of beaſts ſlain in the chace, and afterwards of jacked leather: moſt of the armour of the antients were of thoſe materials. The lorica was originally compoſed of leather, and derives its name from lorum, a thong, as does the cuiraſſe, from the French word cuir, leather.

(u) FROM macula, Lat. or maſcle, French, a term in heraldry originally meant to expreſs the meſh of a net. Richlet ſays, mailler is uſed as a verb neuter, to expreſs the act of netting. It alſo means an antient piece of ſmall money, according to ſome, of a ſquare figure, which agrees pretty well with the plate mail. Some derive it from the Iriſh word

mala,

others inſerted into it, the whole exhibiting a kind of net work, with circular meſhes, every ring ſeparately rivetted; this kind of mail anſwers to that worn on the antient breaſt plates, whence they were denominated loricæ hammatæ, from the rings being hooked together (x).

PLATE mail conſiſted of a number of ſmall laminæ of metal, commonly iron, laid one over the other like the ſcales of fiſh (y), and ſewed down to ſtrong linen or leathern jacket, by thread paſſing through a ſmall hole in each plate; this was exactly the form of the antient lorica ſquammoſa (z).

THE hauberk was a complete covering of mail from head to foot. It conſiſted (a) of a hood joined to a jacket with ſleeves, breeches, ſtockings and ſhoes of double chain mail, to which were added gaunt-

---

mala, ſaid to ſignify armour; or the word mael, which in Welch properly means ſteel, and metaphorically hardneſs and armour; ſee Rowland's Mona Antiqua. Boyer, in his French Dictionary, tranſlates the word maille, a little iron ring.

(x) LORICAM conſertam hamis, auroque trilicem. Virgil Æneid, lib. iii. v. 67.

(y) RUTULUM thoraca indutus ahenis,
Horrebat Squammis.——Lib. xi. v. 487.

ISIDORUS. Squamma eſt lorica ex laminis æreis vel ferreis concatenata, in modum Squammarum piſcis.

(z) SIMILAR to this is the Sarmatian cuiraſſe, deſcribed by Pauſanias as quoted by Lipſius and Montfaucon.—They take the hoofs of their horſes, which they cleanſe and poliſh, and then cut in little pieces like dragons' ſcales, which done they bore the ſcales, and afterwards ſew them with the ſinews of an ox or horſe: if any of my readers have not ſeen dragons' ſcales, he will better comprehend the thing when he is told that they reſemble the diviſions in a pine apple when it is green. Thus they make their cuiraſſes, which for beauty and ſtrength are not inferior to thoſe of the Greeks, for they very well ſuſtain both diſtant and cloſe blows, whereas the cuiraſſes of linen are not ſo ſure, nor proof againſt iron. The linen ones are indeed commodious for hunters, as being what lions and leopards cannot enter with their teeth.

(a) SEE the deſcription given by the preſident Fauchet. Quant aux hommes de cheval, ils chauſſoint des chauſſes de mailles, des eperons a mollettes auſi large que la paume de la main, car ceſt un vieux mot que le chevalier, commence à ſarmer par les chauſſes puis endoſſert un Gobiſſon,..... cetoit un vetement long juſques ſur les cuiſſes & contrepointe.

lets of the ſame conſtruction. Some of theſe hauberks opened before like a modern coat, others were cloſed like a ſhirt.

In France only perſons poſſeſſed of a certain eſtate, called un fief de hauber, were permitted to wear a hauberk, which was the armour of a knight; eſquires might only wear a ſimple coat of mail, without the hood and hoſe.

The haubergeon was a coat compoſed either of plate or chain mail without ſleeves: the ſhirt of mail was much in the form of the ſhirts now worn, except that it had no ſleeves; it was always of chain mail.

The jazerant (b) is, according to Du Cange, a ſort of military veſtment. A jazerant of double mail, occurs in many antient romances. But what was the ſpecific diſtinction of a jazerant ſeems at preſent uncertain.

The aketon (c), gambeſon (d), vambaſium (e), and jack (f), were

---

(b) Jaseran, Jean le Maire livre 1. chap. 4. & avoit pour ceux, ſix cottes de Maille jadis appelées Jaſſerans: toutes de fin or. Nicot. On appelle Jaſſeran auſſi la chaiſne d'or ou d'argent, qui eſt de groſſes mailles couchée & ferreés, dont les femmes font fort ſouvent des bracelets.

Jazerants of ſteel and iron are mentioned in an inventory of the armour of Louis the Great of France, anno 1316, quoted by Du Cange. Item 3 coleretes Pizaines de Jazeran d'Acier, & item une couverture de Jazeran de fer.

(c) Aketon, Acton, Sagum, Militare, quod alias Gambezonem vocant, ex Gallico, Hoqueton aut Hauqueton, ſeu potius ex Cambrico-Brittanico Actuum, Lorica dupla, duplodes. Du Cange.

Si tu veuil un Acqueton
Né L'empli mie de Coton
Mais d'Oevres de Miſericorde,
Afin que le Diable ne te morde.

Le Roman du Riche & du Ladre, MS.

(d) Gambeso, Cento, Centunculas, Thoracomachus, Veſtimentum, coactile ex coactile lana confectum ſeu veſtimenti Genus quod de coactili, ad menſuram & tutelam pectoris humani conficitur de Mollibus lanis, ut hoc inducta primum lorica vel clibanus, aut ſimilia fragilitatem, corporis ponderis aſperitate non Læderent. Du Cange. Statuta, MS.

Ce Gobeſon ou Gambeſon dont ou vient de parler, etoit une eſpece de pourpoint fort long

military veſtments, calculated for the defence of the body, differing little from each other except in their names, their materials and conſtruction were nearly the ſame; the authorities quoted in the notes

---

long, de Taffetas ou de Cuir & bourre de laine, ou d'etoupes, ou de Crin, pour rompre L'effort de la Lance, qui bien qu' elle ne penetrât pas la cuiraſſe auroit meurtri la corps en enfoncant les mailles de fer, dont la cuiraſſe étoit composée.——P. Daniel Hiſt. de la Mil. Fr. tom. 1. p. 387.

(e) WANBASIUM, vocis etymon a veteri Germanico quidam accerſerunt Wan-bon, Venter, vel Wamba, ut habet Willeramus in cantica; vel a Saxonica, Wambe, unde Angli Wombe accepere, ita ut Wambaſium fuit Ventrale, vel ventrile, Ventris & Pectoris tegmen, quod Germani Wambeys vocant, vide Cento. Thoromachus & notas ad Vellharduinum, p. 294, & ad Joinvillam, p. 74. & de Caſſeneuve in Etymol. Gall. Phillipus Cluverius, lib. 1. Germ. Antiq. cap. 16. ad Strabonis locum, ubi Belgos ait, &c. &c. hic quid aliud interpretis——ad inguina & nates uſque demiſſos niſi eam veſtium partem, quam vulgus nunc Latinorum Thoracem appellat, patria vero lingua Wammes, & inferioris Germaniæ dialectus Wambeis, Danica Wames, Hiſpani, Jubon, Itali Guiponæ, Galli Pourpoint, Angli & Leodicenſes, ad Moſam Amnem, DOBLET.

CHRONICON Colmarienſe, an. 1298, Armati reputabantur, qui galeas ferreas in capitibus habebant & qui Wambaſia, id eſt tunicam ſpiſſam, ex lino & ſtuppa, vel veteribus pannis conſutam & deſuper camiſiam ferream, &c.

(f) THE Jack. Le Jaque, ou La Jaque, etoit une eſpece de Juſtau-Corps, qui venoit au moins juſqu'aux genous. Nicot le definit ainſi, Jaque, habillement de Guerre renflé de Cotton; & Coquillart dans ſon livre des Droits nouveaux le décrit ainſi en quatre Vers,

Cétoit un pourpoint de chamois,
Farci de boure ſus & ſous
Un grand Vilain Jaque d'Anglois
Qui lui pendoit juſqu'aux genous.

DE Jaque eſt venu le mot de Jaquette, encore uſité en notre langue, pour ſignifier l'Habillement des enfans qui ne portent point encore de haut de Chauſſes. Ces Jaques étoient bourez entre les toiles ou l'etoffe dont ils étoient compoſez. Cétoit non ſeulement pour empecher que la lance ou l'epee ne percât mais encore pour empecher les contuſions, que l'effort de la lance ou de l'epée pouvoient faire. Autrefois pour la même raiſon, les Chevaliers avoient de ces Jaques bourrez ſous leur Haubert de Mailles. C'etoient ces eſpeces de Jaques qu'on appelloit du nom de Gobiſſon, de Gombiſon & de Gambeſon.

LE Jaque don't il s'agit dans le Memoire, que je vais rapporter, etoit d'un cuir de cerf, doublé de vingt cinq ou de trente toiles uſées & mediocrement déliées. L'Auteur du Memoire dit que ces Jaques étoient a l'epreve, & qu'on avoit vu rarement des ſoldatz tuez dans cette armure.

MEMOIRE

ſhew they were all compoſed of many folds of linen, ſtuffed with cotton, wool, or hair quilted, and commonly covered with leather made of buck or doe ſkin. The aketon was long the ſole defenſive armour for the body worn by the Engliſh infantry; as it not only covered the breaſt, but alſo the belly, it was by the Germans called wambaſiam, or the belly-piece; the jack gave name to its diminutive the jacket.

Although the gambeſon was chiefly worn under the coat of mail to protect the body from being bruiſed by the ſtrokes of the ſword or lance, a circumſtance that might happen without a diviſion of the mail, the verſes quoted in the note from the Poem of the Siege of

---

Memoire de ce que le Roy (Louis XI.) veut que les Francs—Archiers de ſon Royaume ſoient habillez en Jacques d'icy en avant, et pour ce a chargé au Bailly de Mante en faire un projet. Et ſemble au dit Bailly de Mante que L'Habillement de Jacques leur feroient bon, prouffitable & avantageux pour faire la guerre, veu que ſont gens de pié, & que en ayant les brigandines, il leur fault porter beaucoup de choſes que ung homme ſeul & a piê ne peut faire.

Et premierement leur fault des dits Jacques de 30 toiles, ou de 25 : & ung cuir de cerf, ſa tout le moins; et ſi ſont de 30 & ung cuir de cerf, ils ſont des bons. Les toils uſées & deliêes moyennement ſont les meilleures, & doivent eſtre les Jacques a quatre quartiers, & faut que les manches ſoient fortes comme le corps, reſervé le cuir; & doit eſtre l'aſſiete des manches grande, & que l'aſſiete preigne près du collet, non pas ſur l'os de l'eſpaule, qui ſoit large deſſoubz l'aiſelle, & plantureux deſſoubz le bras, aſſez faulce & large ſur les coſtez bas. Le colet ſoit comme le demourant du Jacques, & que le colet ne ſoit pas trop hault derriere pour l'amour de la ſalade. Et faut que le dit Jacques ſoit laſſé devant, & que il ait deſſoubz une porte piece de la force du dit Jacques. Ainſi ſera ſeur le dit Jacques & aiſé: moyennent qu'il ait un pourpoint ſans manches ne colet, de deux toiles ſeulement, qui n'aura que quatre doys de large ſur l'eſpaule. Auquel pourpoint il attachera ſes chauſſes. Ainſi ſlotera dedans ſon Jacques, & ſera a ſon aiſe. Car on ne vit oncques tuer de coups de main ne de fleſche dedans les dits Jacques ſix hommes: & ſe y ſouloient les gens bien combattre. Jobſerverai icî en paſſant que cette armure & cette eſpece de cuiraſſe de linge n'etoit point une invention nouvelle, & qu'elle avoit été en uſage chez quelques nations, dans les tems les plus éloignez, & que Xenophon en fait mention.——P. Daniel, tom. 1. p. 242 & 243.

In the MS. Inventory of Armour, &c. 1 Edward VI. before quoted, there occurs in the charge of Hans Hunter, armourer, Weſtminſter, item one Northerne Jacke, covered with lynnen.

Karleverok (g), ſhew that it was ſometimes worn as a fur coat, and ornamented with rich decorations. So other authorities (h) point out that the acketon was occaſionally put on under the jazerant, or coat of mail.

The cuiraſs covered the body before and behind; it conſiſted of two parts, a breaſt and back piece of iron, faſtened together by means of ſtraps and buckles, or other like contrivances. They were originally, as the name imports, made of leather, but afterwards of metal both braſs and iron (i). Father Daniel ſays he has ſeen cuiraſſes of various conſtructions, in the cabinet of arms at Chantilly (k).

(g) Meinte heaume et meint chapeau burni
Meint. riche Gamboiſon Guarni
De Soie et Cadas et Coton
En lour venue veiſt on.
Seize of Karlaverok, MSS. Bib. Cotton. Caligula, A. xviii.

(h) Chronicon Bert. Gueſclini, MSS.
L'Eſcu li derompi & le bon Jazerant
Mais le *Haucton* fut fort, qui fut de bouquerant.
& Le Roman de Gaydon, MSS.
Sur L'Auqueton veſt L'Auberc jazerant, et infra.
Sor L'Auqueton, qui dor fu pointurez
Veſti L'Auberc, qui fu fort & ferrez.

(i) Sometimes the part which covers the neck, and connects the helmet and cuiraſs, is fixed to the former, ſometimes it is ſeparate, and is then called a gorget, of which ſee a repreſentation in plate 26, fig. 4.

(k) J'ai vu dans le cabinet d'Armes de Chantilli, plus de quarante corps de cuiraſſe, dont pluſieurs ſont differentes les unes des autres. Il y en a une ouverte par devant, qui ſe fermoit avec trois crochets, & une autre qui ſe fermoit auſſi par devant avec deux boutons; une autre qui ſe plioit en deux par devant, & qui n'empechoit point l'homme armé de ſe pancher: une autre qui ſe plioit par en haut & par en bas, c'eſt à dire que celleci etoit de trois pieces qui rentroient les unes dans les autres, & l'autre de deux pieces jointes de même; elles étoient plus commodes pour les mouvemens du corps: mais peut-être n'étoient elles pas ſi ſures contre la lance. Hiſt. Mil. Fr. tom. 1. p. 400.

See Du Cange under the word Brigandine, and Froiſſart, vol. 1. chap. 128, 148, 160, and vol. 4. chap. 25.; alſo Monſtrellet and others. The manner in which brigandines were conſtructed is well deſcribed in the new edition of Blount's Tenures, lately publiſhed. The

THE halecret was a kind of corcelet of two pieces, one before and one behind; it was lighter than the cuiraſs.

THE brigandine takes its name from the troops by which it was firſt worn, who were called brigans; they were a kind of light armed irregular foot, much addicted to plunder, whence it is probable the appellation of brigands was given to other freebooters. Indeed this armour, which conſiſted of a number of ſmall plates of iron, ſewed upon quilted linen or leather, covered over with the ſame, was ſeemingly well calculated for robbers, as they were always armed ready for an attack, without its being obſerved, ſo as to alarm the perſons whom they meant to rob.

THE brigadine is frequently confounded with the jack, and ſometimes with the habergeon, or coat of plate mail.

IN Mr. Brander's Inventory of Armour in the Royal Arſenals, we find a variety of brigandines, ſome ſtiled complete, having ſleeves covered with crimſon, or cloth of gold; others with blue ſattin; ſome with fuſtian and white cloth, theſe were called millers' coats; ſome likewiſe are ſaid to be covered with linen cloth, and to have long taces, i. e. ſkirts: the covering was in all likelyhood according to the rank or fortune of the wearer.

THERE are ſeveral brigandines ſtill remaining in the Tower, from one of which the coat given, plate 26, fig. 1, was drawn.

ALMAINE RYVETTS.

WHAT was the particular form or conſtruction of the almaine ryvetts, I have not been able to diſcover, but conjecture they were

---

Hambergell was a coat compoſed of ſeveral folds of coarſe linen or hempen cloth, in the midſt of which was placed a ſort of net-work of ſmall ringlets of iron, about a quarter of an inch diameter interwoven very artificially together, and in others of thin iron plates about an inch from ſide to ſide, with a hole in the midſt of each, the edges laid one over another, quilted through the cloth with ſmall packthread, and bedded in paper covered with wool; parts of two ſuch haubergells are now in the editor's poſſeſſion, either of which would be ſufficient to defend the body of a man from the ſtroke or point of a ſword, if not from a muſquet ball, and yet ſo pliable as to admit the perſon wearing them to uſe all his limbs, and move his joints without the leaſt interruption.

denominated ryvetts from having the joints of the arms made flexible by means of rivets, a contrivance poſſibly invented or perfected in Germany, or perhaps that country might be famous for a manufactory of this kind of armour.

INDEED from ſeveral original contracts, preſerved in the libraries of the curious, it appears they were chiefly purchaſed from foreigners; the ſubſtance of one in the poſſeſſion of Thomas Aſtle, Eſq. is given in the note below (l). King Henry VIII. in the 38th year of his reign, had almaine armourers in his pay, as we learn from the following entry in a book, preſerved in the Remembrance Office, Weſtminſter, containing an account of the royal expences of that year. "Item, for the wages of the almaine armourers at Greenwich," &c.

THE CORSELET, OR CORSLET.

THIS was a ſuit of armour chiefly worn by pikemen, who were thence often denominated corſelets. Strictly ſpeaking, the word corcelet meant only that part which covered the body (m), but was generally uſed to expreſs the whole ſuit, under the terms of a corſelet furniſhed or complete. This included the head-piece and gorgett, the back and breaſt, with ſkirts of iron called taſſes or taſſets covering the thighs, as may be ſeen in the figures repreſenting the exerciſe of the pike, publiſhed anno 1622, by the title of the Military Art of Training; the ſame kind of armour was worn by the harquebuſiers.

(l) AN indenture between Maſter Thomas Wooley and John Dance, Gent. in the 4th year of Henry VIII. of the one part, and Guydo Portavarii, merchant, of Florence, on the other part, whereby he covenants to furniſh two thouſand complete harneſſes, called *Alemain Ryvetts*, accounting always among them a ſalet, a gorget, a breaſt-plate, a back-plate, and a payre of ſplyntes for every complete harneſs, for the price of ſixteen ſhilling ſterling.

(m) CORSELET, cuiraſſe pour un piquier. Richelet. Corſelet or Corſlet, armour for a pikeman, to cover either the whole body or the trunk of it. Boyer derives it from corſet, a French word ſignifying a woman's quilted boddice, lacing before. Richelet explains it by corps de iupe de Paiſanne; ſome deduce it from the Latin words, cor, heart, and celator, a coverer. Mallet in the Travaux de Mars ſays, a corcelet differs from a cuiraſs, in being only piſtol proof, whereas the cuiraſs is muſquet proof.

Plate 15 repreſents a corſelet complete with morion and taſſets, which are faſtened to the cuiraſs by hooks, in the manner there ſhewn.

To the back-piece of the cuiraſs for the protection of the loins, was hooked on a piece of armour called Garde des Reins, or Culettes; and the breaſt-piece was occaſionally ſtrengthened by an additional plate called a plaquet. On ſome ſuits were ſcrewed large iron cod-pieces; theſe, according to tradition, were intended to prevent the ill conſequences of thoſe violent ſhocks received in charging, either in battle, or at a tournament. Some ſay they were meant to contain ſpunges for receiving the water of knights, who in the heat of an engagement might not have any more convenient method of diſcharging it. But moſt probably they were rather conſtructed in conformity to a reigning faſhion in the make of the breeches of thoſe times (n). The armour of John of Gaunt and Henry VIII., repreſented in the plates 20 and 22, have theſe indecent appendages. Another, formerly belonging to that king, is preſerved in the Tower; and divers others occur in the different liſts of armour in our royal arſenals.

To the cuiraſs were buckled the armour for the ſhoulders and arms, the firſt called pouldrons, the ſecond braſſarts, garde bras, les avant bras, and corruptly in Engliſh, vambraces. The vambraces included all the defence for the arms from the pouldrons to the wriſt. At the joint, or bending of the arm, the vambraces were cut obliquely; the vacancies on the inſide, when the arms were ſtreightened, were covered by pieces of mail called gouſſets, and afterwards by a contrivance of plates reſembling hearts. Cuiraſſes, with entire ſleeves of mail, are mentioned in divers military writers. A defence for the

(n) These monſtrous cod-pieces were in faſhion in the time of King Henry VIII. He himſelf is painted by Holbein with a pair of breeches of this faſhion, in the picture repreſenting him granting a charter to the barber-ſurgeons. In the old Hiſtory of John Winchcombe, the famous clothier of Newbury, in the reign of Henry VIII., his dreſs, when he went to meet the king, is thus deſcribed: he had on a plain ruſſet coat, a pair of kerſie breeches, without welt or guard, and ſtockings of the ſame piece ſewed to his ſlops, which had a great cod-piece, on which he ſtuck his pins.

arms, called (o) ſplints, conſtituted part of the ſuit denominated an almaine ryvett.

The hands were defended by gauntlets; theſe were ſometimes of chain mail, but oftener of ſmall plates of iron rivetted together, in imitation of the lobſter's tail, ſo as to yield to every motion of the hand; ſome gauntlets incloſed the whole hand, as in a box or caſe; others were divided into fingers, each finger conſiſting of eight or ten ſeparate pieces, the inſide gloved with buff leather; ſome of theſe reached no higher than the wriſt, others to the elbow; the latter were ſtiled long armed gauntlets: many of them are to be ſeen in the Tower; for a repreſentation of one of them, ſee plate 26, fig. 4.

The thighs of the cavalry were defended by ſmall ſtrips of iron plate, laid horizontally over each other, and rivetted together, forming what were called cuiſſarts, or thigh-pieces; of theſe ſome entirely encloſed the thighs, and others only covered the front of them (p), the inſide, next the horſe, being unarmed. They were made flexible at the knees by joints like thoſe in the tail of a lobſter, and were called genouillieres, or knee-pieces. Taſſets, or ſkirts, hooked on to the front of the cuiraſs, were, as has been before ſaid, uſed by the infantry.

For the defence of the legs were worn a ſort of iron boots, called greeves (q). Plates of iron covering the front of the leg were alſo frequently worn over the ſtockings of mail. The greeves commonly covered the whole leg, as in the armour of John of Gaunt, and that of Henry VIII.; with theſe they had broad toed iron ſhoes, with joints at the ankle; ſometimes they had ſabatons of mail. Boots of jacked leather, called curbouly (cuir bouille), were alſo worn by horſemen; theſe are mentioned by Chaucer.

(o) Splints, harneſs or armour for the arms.—Philips's New World of Words.

(p) See plate 16.

(q) Sir James Turner, in his Eſſays on the Art of War, entitled, Pallas Armata, chap. 3. page 169, calls *Greeves* armour for the arms.

TILTING ARMOUR.

TILTING armour conſiſted in general of the ſame pieces as that worn in war, except that they were lighter and more ornamented; they had however the following peculiarities.

THE helmet was perforated only on the right ſide (r); the left ſide of the face, the left ſhoulder and breaſt were covered by a plate called a grand guard (s), which faſtened on at the ſtomach. On each ſhoulder was alſo fixed a plate declining from the face like wings (t); theſe were intended to protect the eyes from the point of the lance, and were called paſs guards; alſo from the right ſide of the cuiraſs projected a contrivance like a moveable bracket, called a reſt, for the purpoſe of ſupporting the lance.

THE laſt article of defenſive armour was the ſhield, of which there was a great variety both in form and materials. The ſhields uſed by our Norman anceſtors were the triangular or heater ſhield, the target or buckler, the roundel or rondache, and the pavais, pavache, or tallevas.

OF the triangular, or, as it is vulgarly called, the heater ſhield (u), no ſpecimen has reached us, at leaſt that I have been able to diſcover. We have nevertheleſs the united teſtimony of ſeals, monuments, painted glaſs, and antient tapeſtry, to prove that ſhields of that form were in uſe at the period above mentioned.

MOST of the monumental figures of croſs-legged knights are armed with triangular ſhields, which are generally a little convex, or curved in their breadth; their upper extremity terminated by a line parallel

---

(r) FIG. 3 and 4 in plate 10, a tilting helmet ſhewn in different poſitions: the perforations come on the left ſide inſtead of the right, from the drawing not having been reverſed.

(s) PLATE 23 repreſents a ſuit of tilting armour with the grand guard and lance reſt. Fig. 2 ſhews the grand guard on a larger ſcale, and in a different poſition.

(t) PLATE 25, the elevations or projections on the ſhoulders of the figure are the paſs guards.

(u) THEY were called heater ſhields from their reſemblance to that inſtrument of houſewifery, therefore probably a name of no very remote antiquity.

to the horizon, and their ſides formed by the interſection of the ſegments of two circles; the ſame ſort are moſtly repreſented on antient ſeals and windows; ſometimes, though not often, their ſurfaces are flat.

THE Norman ſhields repreſented on the curious tapiſtry at Bayeux, (x) have their upper extremities circular, their whole form much reſembling a ſchool-boy's kite.

ON the inſide were two or more loops of leather, or wooden handles, through which the arm and hand were paſſed, when the ſhield was braſed, or prepared for uſe; at other times it was carried by a leathern thong worn round the neck.

THE target (y), or buckler (z), was carried by the heavy armed foot; it anſwered to the ſcutum of the Romans; its form was ſometimes that of a rectangular parallelogram, but more commonly had its bottom rounded off; it was generally convex, being curved in its breadth. Targets were moſtly made of wood, covered with many folds of bull's hide or jacked leather (a), and occaſionally with plates of braſs or iron; the extremities were always bound with metal, and frequently from the centre of the front projected a boſs, or umbo, armed with a ſpike. On the inſide were two handles. Men of family uſually had their armorial bearings painted on their targets. After the invention of fire-arms, inſtead of the ſpike the centre of ſome targets were armed with one or more ſmall gun-barrels, a grate or aperture being left in the target for the convenience of taking aim; ſeveral of theſe are mentioned in Mr. Brander's manuſcript (b); one is ſtill ſhewn in the Spaniſh armory in the Tower of London.

(x) ON this tapiſtry is wrought the Hiſtory of William the Conqueror; it is engraved in Montfaucon's Hiſt. de la Monarchie Francoiſe.

(y) FROM tergum, a hide.

(z) JUNIUS derives the word Bucler from the German Beucheler or Bocken-leer, i. e. the ſkin of a goat.

(a) BY the laws of Ethelſtan, any ſhield maker covering a ſhield with ſheep ſkins, forfeited thirty ſhillings; a prodigious fine in thoſe days. See the Saxon Laws.

(b) TARGETTS ſteilde w. gonnes, 35. Targetts playne without gonnes, 7. Targett with xx litle gonnes—oone. Terget w. four gonnes—oone. A long tergett w. oone gonne—oone. A target of the ſhell of a tortys—oone, in the Tower.

THESE ſhields or targets were of different ſizes; thoſe of the antients were ſo large as to cover almoſt the whole body, ſo that when a centinel had ſet the baſe of his ſhield on the ground (c), he could reſt his head on the upper margin. They were alſo large enough to convey the dead, or thoſe dangerouſly wounded, from the field, as is evident from the well-known exhortation of the Lacedemonian women to their ſons and huſbands, "Bring this back, or come back upon it;" a circumſtance that alſo marks the ignominy attending the loſs of a ſhield. This was common to all nations; and at the cloſe of the fourteenth century a knight, who had loſt his ſhield, was ſaid to want his coat armour, and could not ſit at the table with the other knights until he had, by ſome honourable exploit, or feat of arms againſt the enemy, obliterated that diſgrace; if before this was atchieved he ſhould attempt to place himſelf among them, it was the duty of the herald to tear his mantle; an example of this is mentioned in the note below (d).

THE roundel, or rondache, derived its name from its circular figure; it was made of oziers, boards of light wood, ſinews or ropes, covered with leather, plates of metal, or ſtuck full of nails in concentric circles or other figures. The ſhields and roundels of metal, particularly thoſe richly engraved or emboſſed, ſeem rather to have been inſignia of dignity, antiently born before generals or great officers, than calculated for war, moſt of them being either too heavy for convenient uſe, or too ſlight to reſiſt the violence of a ſtroke either from a ſword or battle-axe.

ALTHOUGH moſt roundels are convex, yet we meet with many that are concave; but theſe have commonly an umbo; the reaſon for this

---

(c) AN iron ſpike was fixed to the bottom of the antient ſhields for the purpoſe of fixing them in the ground; theſe ſpikes were alſo uſeful in battle.

(d) HUJUSQUE ritus præclarum habetur exemplum apud Willelmum Hedam in Fredrico Epiſcopo Ultrajectenſi, ſub ann. 1395, quippe narrat comiti Oſtrevandiæ Willelmo, menſæ Regis Francorum aſſidenti cum alii principibus, Fecialem quem Heraldam vocant, laceraſſe mantile ſibi antepoſitum, objicientem indignum fore, quod aliquis intereſſet menſæ Regiæ, carens inſignis armorum, innuentem inſignia ipſius Willelmi apud Friſos orientales amiſſa.—Du Cange.

conſtruction is not very obvious, as the concave ſurface ſeems of all others the leaſt calculated for diverting a ſtroke. The handles are placed as in the ſhield and target; the roundel ſeems in many inſtances to reſemble the Roman parma.

THE pavais, pavache, or tallevas, was a large ſhield, or rather a portable mantlet, capable of covering a man from head to foot, and probably of ſufficient thickneſs to reſiſt the miſſive weapons then in uſe. Theſe were in ſieges carried by ſervants (e) whoſe buſineſs it was to cover their maſters with them, whilſt they with their bows and arrows ſhot at the enemy on the ramparts (f). As this muſt have been a ſervice of danger, it was that perhaps which made the office of ſcutifer, or ſhield-bearer honourable, as the mere carrying of a helmet or ſhield on a march, or in a proceſſion, partook more of the duty of a porter than that of a ſoldier. In the liſt of the army that accompanied King Edward III. to Calais, we find many paviſors; theſe were probably men trained to the uſe of the pavais, which muſt have required dexterity as well as courage. Pavaches were ſometimes ſupported by props; they were alſo uſed at ſea to defend the ſides of the veſſels, like the preſent netting of our ſhips of war; this defence was called a paviſade, and may be ſeen in the repreſentation of antient ſhips. The pavais was rectangular at the top, the ſides conſequently parallel, but the angles rounded off at the bottom.

UNDER the protection of the pavaches, workmen alſo approached to the foot of the wall in order to ſap it, as may be ſeen by the extract from Froiſſart, in the note below (g).

(e) TUNC præcedebat cum Parma Garcio, ſub qua
Nil ſibi formidans obſeſſos damnificabat.
Aſſiduè poterat nec ab illis damnificari
Aſſeribus latis dum Parma protegit ipſum.——*Guill. Breton.*

(f) QUIDAM de obſidione conſueverat venire ad foſſas Parmâ prætentâ quam quidam Famulus ante ipſum portabat, non manuali quidem Parmâ ſed immensâ, quales in obſidionibus deferri ſolent.—*Rigord, p.* 215.

(g) LORS paſſa le Comte d'Erbi outre et prit le chemin devers Aguillon, mais ainſoit qu'il y parvint, trouva le chaſtel de la Roche-Milon qui eſtoit bien pourvu de Sodoyers & d'Artillerie;

ALTHOUGH ſpurs cannot be conſidered as armour, either offenſive or defenſive, yet as they made an important part of the equipment of an antient knight, and were the inſignia of his dignity, it ſeems neceſſary to ſay ſomething of them.

Two ſorts of ſpurs ſeem to have been in uſe about the time of the Conqueſt, one called a pryck, having only a ſingle point like the gaffle of a fighting cock; the other conſiſting of a number of points of a conſiderable length, radiating from and revolving on a center, thence named the rouelle or wheel ſpur.

DELINEATIONS of the firſt occur in the ſeals of moſt of our kings and great barons, prior to the reign of Edward III. and alſo on the engraved and ſculptured figures of croſs-legged knights. The rouelle is ſometimes found on figures of equal antiquity, there being inſtances of the ſame perſon being delineated with the pryck ſpur on one ſeal, and the rouelle on another. Some ſpecimens of the pryck ſpur are ſtill to be found in the cabinets of the curious (h).

HAVING thus deſcribed the different pieces of defenſive armour uſed by our antient warriors, I ſhall proceed to explain and deſcribe thoſe worn by their horſes.

---

d'Artillerie; ce non obſtant ledit Comte d'Erbi commanda qu'il fût aſprement aſſailli: lors s'avançoient Anglois & commencerent á aſſaillir: ceux de dedans jettoient banc & grands barreaux de fer, & pots pleins de chaux dont ils occirent & bleſſerent pluſieurs Anglois qui montoient contrement & s'avancoient trop follement pour leur corps avanturer. Quand le Comte d'Erbi vit que ſes gens ſe travailloient & ſe faiſoint tuer pour neant, ſi les fit retraire. Le Lendemain fit acharier par les Villains du Pays grand foiſon de buſches & falourdes & feurre & getter és foſſez avec grand planté de terre. Quand une partie des foſſez furent emplis tant qu'on pouvoit bien aller juſquau pied du mur du chaſtel, il fit arrouter & bien armer & mettre en bonne ordonnance trois cens Archers, & puis fit paſſer pardevant eux pour les émouvir, deux cens Brigands Paveſchés qui tenoient grands pics & havets de fer, & tandis que ceux heurtoient & piquotoient au mur, les archers tiroient ſi fort, quá peine s'oſoient ceux de dedans montrer á leur defence; & encet eſtat furent la plus grand partie du jour, tant que les picoteurs firent un trou au mur ſi grand, que dix hommes pouvoient entrer de front, lors s'ebahirent ceux du Chaſtel & de la Ville, & ſe jetterent par devers l'Egliſe: & aucuns vindrent par derriere. Ainſi fut priſe la fortreſſe de la Roche Milon. *Froiſſart, vol.* I. c. 109.

(h) CAPTAIN ROBSON, of Chelſea, has one of iron.

THE defenſive armour with which the horſes of the antient knights or men at arms were covered, or, to uſe the language of the time, barded (i), conſiſted of the following pieces made either of metal or jacked leather, the chanfron, chamfrein, or ſhaffron, the criniere or main facre, the poitrenal, poitral, or breaſt-plate, and the croupiere or buttock-piece. Theſe are frequently, though improperly, ſtiled barbs (k). Horſes covered all over from head to foot with mail occur in ſome antient writers; but this, father Daniel ſays, was not common, any more than a covering of quilted linen alſo mentioned (l).

THE chanfron, chamfrein, or ſhaffron, took its denomination from that part of the horſe's head it covered (m), and was a kind of maſk of iron, copper or braſs, and ſometimes of jacked leather, encloſing the face and ears; ſome of theſe chanfrons ſeem to have been ſo contrived as to hinder a horſe from ſeeing right before him, perhaps to prevent his being intimidated by any object againſt which he might be directed, ſo as to cauſe him to ſtart aſide, or leſſen the celerity of his charge. From the centre of the forehead there ſometimes iſſued a ſpike or horn like that given by the heralds to the unicorn; but generally it was adorned with an eſcutcheon of armorial bearings, or other ornamental devices. In ſeveral of the French hiſtorians we read of chanfrons worn by their nobility, not only of gold, but alſo ornamented with precious ſtones. Chanfrons reaching only to the middle of the face are called demy chanfrons.

THE criniere, or manefaire, conſiſted of a number of ſmall plates,

---

(i) BARDE. Armure qui couvre le cou, le Poitral, & la croup du Cheval. Richelet.

(k) ITEM, two hole Barbes of ſtele for horſes, graven and enelede blue. *M. Brander's MSS.*

(l) CHRONIQUE de Colmor ſous l'an 1298.

(m) THE chanfron is defined to be the fore part of the head, extending from under the ears along the interval between the eyebrows down to the noſe. *Gentleman's Dictionary.* Perhaps from champ and frein, the field or ſpace for the bridle. The reins were generally of iron chains covered over with leather. Among the horſe armour in the keeping of Hans Hunter, armourer at Weſtminſter, 1ſt Edward VI. there is the following item, Reynes for horſes of iron xxvii. *Brander's MS.*

generally about twelve, hooked together and to the chanfron, ſo as to be moveable; their uſe was to guard the neck of the horſe from the ſtroke of a cutting ſword.

The poitrinal, pectoral, or breaſt-plate, was formed of plates of metal rivetted together, which covered the breaſt and ſhoulders of the horſe; it was commonly adorned with foliage, or other ornaments engraved or emboſſed (n).

The croupiere, or buttock-piece, was alſo ſometimes formed of plates of copper, braſs or iron, though often of jacked leather, when the chanfron and poitrinal were of metal. It deſcended down to the hocks (o).

To the article of mail armour may be added, that the hauberk was frequently called le brugne (p), in all likelyhood from its colour, when ruſted by bad weather.

Beſides the ſhields already mentioned, two other ſorts ſometimes occur in hiſtory and old romances, the firſt indeed is of greater antiquity than comes within the limits of this work, but as it is not generally known, I ſhall here deſcribe it. This is the ſhoulder ſhield, which derives its name from being fixed to that part. Procopius in his Hiſtory of the Perſian wars, ſays this kind of ſhield was worn by

---

(n) In tournaments, cavalcades and public entries the horſes, inſtead of iron, were covered with ſilken or velvet bardes embroidered with coats of arms or other devices.

Item, two harneſſes for a horſe being hed ſtall, reynes, croopers, and poytrelles of vellet, thone garnyſhed with copper and paſſemayne of Venyce gold; thother with copper ſilvered with paſſemayne of ſilver—twoo. *Brander's MS.*

(o) The arcons, bows, or ſaddle pieces, which were faced with metal, and roſe up and covered the horſemen almoſt as high as the navel, might in ſome meaſure be conſidered as defenſive armour, though not included in that denomination.

Several of theſe plated ſaddles occur in Mr. *Brander's MS.* In the king's armory at Weſtminſter, in the cuſtody of Hans Hunter: Item, in trees for ſaddles plated with ſtele, and parcel guilte and graven five paier. Item, in like trees plated with ſtele guilte wrought and laied upon vellvet nine paier. Item, in like trees plated with ſtele, vernyſhed and guilte ſeven paier. Several of the figures of our kings in the horſe armory are ſeated on theſe ſaddles.

(p) Le Hauber ou Brugne. Fauchet de l'origine des armes, &c. p. 40.

the Roman archers of his time (q); that it had no handle, but was fixed to the ſhoulder in order to guard the head and neck. This ſort of ſhield was in uſe among the Saxons. Prince Æthelſtan, in his will before quoted, bequeaths his target and ſhoulder ſhield.

THE other ſort are the perforated ſhields; ſome of theſe were pierced on the top, towards the right hand, to make a paſſage for the lance. A curious ſpecimen of them is repreſented on a bas relievo, engraved by Mr. Carter, from the carvings on the ſeats in the choir at the cathedral of Worceſter. Others were perforated in or near the centre, for ſight, in order that the bearer might at the ſame time cover himſelf, and ſee the movements of his adverſary. A ſpecimen of this kind of ſhield is exhibited in plate 48, in the ſhield ſaid to have belonged to Guy earl of Warwick.

I HAVE ſomewhere ſeen, I think in the Spaniſh armory in the Tower of London, a perforated ſhield, with a piſtol projecting from its centre or umbo, and over it a ſmall grated aperture for taking aim.

OF OFFENSIVE ARMS, OR WEAPONS.

THE firſt arms or weapons uſed by mankind were undoubtedly thoſe with which Nature had furniſhed them, that is, their hands, nails, and teeth, aſſiſted by ſtones, branches, roots of trees, and bones of dead animals. On the diſcovery of metals, weapons, firſt of braſs, and afterwards of iron, were adopted (r).

(q) BUT our archers now adaies go into the field armed with habergeons and greaves that come up as high as their knees. They have beſides their quiver of arrows on the right ſide, and a ſword on their left, and ſome of them a javelin alſo faſtened about them, and a kind of a ſhort buckler, as it were, but without any handle, made faſt to their ſhoulders, which ſerves to defend their head and neck. *Hiſtory of Perſian Wars*, book i. p. 2. tranſlated by Sir Henry Holcroft, 1653.

(r) SEE the following lines of Lucretius:

Arma antiqua manus, ungues denteſque fuere
Et lapides, & item ſilvarum fragmina, rami.
Et flammæ atque ignes poſtquam ſunt cognita primum.
Poſterius ferri, vis eſt æriſque reperta.
Et prior æris erat quam ferri cognitus uſus.

THE ſword ſeems to have been the firſt artificial weapon made uſe of, probably even before the diſcovery of metals; faſhioned, perhaps, of ſome heavy wood, hardened by fire; this conjecture is juſtified from ſimilar weapons having been found by different travellers in the poſſeſſion of divers ſavage tribes or nations.

BRAZEN, or rather copper ſwords ſeem to have been next introduced; theſe, in proceſs of time, workmen learned to harden by the addition of ſome other metal or mineral, which rendered them almoſt equal in temper to iron. Several of theſe ſwords have been found in Ireland (s), and one delineated, plate 13, was taken out of the Severn, near Glouceſter; they are all nearly of the ſame figure.

WHEN defenſive armour came into general uſe, it was neceſſary to have ſwords of good temper, otherwiſe they would not only have been incapable of piercing or dividing the armour, but alſo liable to break. Hence the art of tempering ſteel became in great requeſt, and the names of celebrated ſword-ſmiths and armourers were thought worthy of being recorded in hiſtory; thoſe of Luno, the Vulcan of the north, Galan, and the more modern Andrea Ferrara, have been tranſmitted to us.

SWORDS were in early ages of ſuch value as to be kept in temples

---

(s) SOME of theſe ſwords are deſcribed in the Archæologia, vol. 3. p. 555, by Governor Pownal, who, that the Society might have a preciſe and philoſophical deſcription of the metal, applied to the maſter of the mint, and by his direction Mr. Alchorn, his majeſty's aſſay-maſter, made an accurate aſſay of the metal, and made the following report: "It appears (ſays he) to be chiefly of copper, interſperſed with particles of iron, and perhaps ſome zink, but without containing any gold or ſilver; it ſeems probable, that the metal was caſt in its preſent ſtate, and afterwards reduced to its proper figure by filing. The iron might either have been obtained with the copper from the ore, or added afterwards in the fuſion to give the neceſſary rigidity of a weapon; but I confeſs myſelf unable to determine any thing with certainty." One of theſe ſwords is drawn and deſcribed by Colonel Vallancey, in the 13th number of his Collectanea de Rebus Hibernicis, from the original in his poſſeſſion, meaſuring twenty-two inches long: he ſays, there is one in the College Muſeum about three inches longer. Many of theſe are found in our bogs; that from which this drawing was made was found, with about two hundred others of the ſame kind, in the bog of Cullen, in the county of Tipperary. The handles were of wood or bone, and were rotted away, the ryvets only remaining.

and ſanctuaries (t), to be particularly bequeathed in the wills of princes and great warriors (u), and in the days of chivalry were diſtinguiſhed by proper names, generally deſcriptive of their ſuppoſed qualities, or alluding to their deſtructive powers: this was borrowed from the Perſians and Arabians, and was practiſed by Mahomet, whoſe bow, ſpear, and nine ſwords, had all proper names, ſuch as the piercing, death, ruin, &c. (x).

Swords were alſo of various forms and denominations, ſome calculated for being uſed with one, and ſome with both hands. Some ſwords were alſo made ſolely to thruſt, and ſome only to cut; others were equally adapted for both (y).

(t) David took the ſword of Goliah kept behind the ephod, *Samuel*, chap. 21. v. 9. the Pucelle of Orleans one from the tomb of a knight buried in the church of St. Catherine de Fierbois. (See Rapin.)

(u) In the will of Prince Æthelſtan, the eldeſt ſon of King Ethelred II. made between the years 1006 and 1008, in the collection of Thomas Aſtle, Eſq. ten ſwords are there deviſed to different perſons, one of whom is the Prince's ſword cutler, named Elfnoth, whoſe art was then in ſuch eſtimation, as to make him deemed fit company for the illuſtrious perſonages with whom he is named. Among the ſwords bequeathed are, the ſword of King Offa, the ſword with the fluted hilt, the ſword with the croſs, the ſword which Ulfcytel owned, and that with the ſilver hilt which Wulfric made. He likewiſe bequeaths his mail, his drinking horn, target, ſhoulder ſhield, and a ſilver plated trumpet.

(x) The following names of ſwords belonging to different valiant knights, occur in romances. Fuſberta joyoſa, the ſword of Charlemaigne; chryſaor, that belonging to Arthegal; aſcalon to St George; tranchera to Agrican; baliſarda to Rogero; durindana to Orlando; caliburn, mordure and margalay, to King Arthur. See a liſt of the names of weapons in Herbelot.

(y) Mr. Mallet in the Travaux de Mars, deſcribes and delineates the following different ſorts of ſwords, from the cabinet of arms at Chantilly, in France. A braquemart or ſhort ſword, a French rencontre ſword. The ſtoccado, or long ſword; the eſpadon, or two handed ſword; the Swiſs, or baſket hilted ſword; a Spaniſh ſword or toledo; a tuck encloſed in a walking ſtick; a poniard, dagger, ſabre, and cymeter; to which may be added the ſhable, a broad ſword with only one edge.

In Mr. Brander's manuſcript, ſo frequently mentioned, we have the following entries: firſt armynge ſwordes, with vellet ſkaberdes XI. Item, three-edged tockes, with vellet ſkaberdes II. Item, great Slaughe ſwordes, with lether ſkaberdes II. Item, bore ſpere ſwordes, with vellet ſkaberdes VI. Item, armynge ſwordes of Flaunders makinge CCCII. Item, one Slaughe ſworde, with iii gonnes at t'handle, and croſſe with a ſkaberde of vellet.

The ſwords uſed by the Roman legionary troops were extremely ſhort and ſtrong, their blade rarely exceeding nineteen inches in length, two edged, and made for either ſtabbing or cutting; theſe do not however ſeem to have been adopted by the Britons, whoſe ſwords called ſpathæ, are ſaid to have been both large, long, and heavy, as were alſo thoſe of the Saxons.

The Norman ſwords appear to have been alſo long and heavy; thoſe of the knights templars ſeem more to reſemble the Roman legionary ſword than any other; a drawing of one found at Sutton at Hone in Kent, is repreſented in plate 28. The different kinds of ſwords of more modern date are given in the note below. The ſword was carried in a belt of buff or other leather girded round the body, or thrown over the right ſhoulder; theſe ſhoulder belts were called baudricks.

The pugio, or dagger, was uſed by the Romans; a ſpecies of that weapon, called the hand-ſeax, was worn by the Saxons, with which they maſſacred the Engliſh on Saliſbury Plain in 476.

The dagger, under the title of cultellum and miſericorde, has been the conſtant companion of the ſword, at leaſt from the days of Edward I., and is mentioned in the ſtatute of Wincheſter. Its appellation of miſericorde is derived by Fauchet, the French antiquary, either from its being uſed to put perſons out of their pain, who were irrecoverably wounded, or, from the ſight of it, cauſing thoſe knights who were overthrown to cry out for quarter or mercy. After the invention of fire-arms, daggers were ſcrewed into the muzzles of the muſkets, to anſwer the preſent purpoſe of the bayonet. In a treatiſe, entitled, the Military Art of Training, publiſhed anno 1622, the dagger is recommended as a military weapon, in the following words (z):

"And becauſe heere comes a controverſie opportunely to be de-
"cided, I will, as near as I can, plainly and honeſtly anſwer the

(z) In the ſixteenth century, a mode of attack and defence was taught by the fencing maſters of that time, wherein the ſword and dagger were uſed in conjunction; the dagger was chiefly uſed for defence, the ſword to offend.

" ſame, and that is about the wearing of daggers; to which I an-
" ſwer directly, that it is the neceſſarieſt weapon belongs to a ſoul-
" dier, and that for many reaſons and uſes. Firſt, for ornament's
" ſake, being a handſome, ſhort light dagger, it addeth to his comely
" carriage, and ſupplieth the nakedneſs of his girdle. Secondly, for
" neceſſities ſake, in defence and offence, for ſuch may be the
" thronging of the battaile or company, that when he cannot uſe his
" ſword, he may doe good with his dagger. Thirdly, for advantage,
" if it ſhould come to a private combat, or ſingling out of an adver-
" ſary, a ſword may breake, and many men have made their peace
" with a furious cloſe, nay kept him aloofe by threatning to throwe
" it at him. Fourthly, for execution, if there ſhould be neceſſity in
" the diſpatch of the vanquiſhed. Fifthly, for tying a horſe to the
" ground in an open field, where there is neither buſh nor hedge,
" and Nature compels a man to diſcharge the burthen of his belly:
" nay, you ſhall reade that the Jews had a paddle ſtaff, and why may
" not a ſouldier's dagger ſerve to dig a hole, and cover it with a
" turffe. Sixthly, and laſt of all, for the puniſhment of offenders:
" for a captain or an inferior officer, that only drawes a dagger,
" though he ſtrike not at all, may appeaſe a ſedition, and ſometimes
" rather breake a head than wound a man. As for the objections of
" the dangers of ſtabbing one another, or that a man cannot tell
" what he will do in his fury, it is not to be talk'd of in martiall diſ-
" cipline, which is ſometimes ſevere, and the diſobedient ſouldier
" muſt be taught his duty with ſtripes."

The bow is a weapon of the moſt remote antiquity; we read of bows in holy writ, as being in uſe in the very early ages of the world. The Romans had few if any archers among their national troops, for though ſome of their emperors introduced the uſe of the bow among them, it was never generally adopted; moſt of their archers were from among the auxiliaries, particularly Aſiatics, among whom it was much eſteemed, and ſtill continues a principal weapon.

Bows were of different forms, ſometimes of two arches connected in the middle by a ſtraight piece, and ſometimes forming one uniform

curve like the Engliſh bows of the preſent time. They were chiefly made of wood, of which yew was deemed the beſt: aſh, elm, and witch-haſel were alſo uſed.

The French under Clovis, who died anno 514, made no uſe of the bow (a); but about the time of Charlemagne, who flouriſhed in the beginning of the eighth century, bows were undoubtedly in uſe, as in an article of the capitularies of that king, a count, who was to conduct ſoldiers to the army, is directed to ſee they have their proper arms, that is, a lance, a buckler, a bow, two ſtrings, and twelve arrows.

According to ſome of our antient chronicles, the bow was introduced into England by the Normans, who therewith chiefly gained the battle of Haſtings; it is not to be ſuppoſed that the bow was totally unknown to the Saxons: indeed, we have many evidences to the contrary, but only that they did not generally uſe it in war. After its introduction into this kingdom, it became the favourite weapon of the people, and by conſtant practice the Engliſh were allowed to be the beſt archers in Europe, and from time to time divers acts of parliament have been made to enforce the practice of archery; to procure a ſupply of bow-ſtaves from foreign countries, to oblige the arrow head makers to a careful finiſhing and tempering the arrow heads, and to furniſh the diſtant counties with bowyers, fletchers, and arrow head makers.

To enforce the firſt, every man under the age of ſixty, not labouring under ſome bodily or other lawful impediment (eccleſiaſtics and

---

(a) I'ai dit, ſur le temoinage de Procope & d'Agathias confirmé par celui de Corneille-Tacite, que l'uſage des cuiraſſes & des caſques ſons le commencement de la premiere Race, étoit fort rare parmi les François; & que celui de l'arc & des fléches n'étoit point non plus d'abord dans leurs Armées. Or ces uſages ſe trouvent non-ſeulement introduits, mais encore commandez ſous la ſeconde race.

Tout cela parôit diſtinctement dans un article des Capitulaires de Charlemagne, en ces termes. "Que le comte ait ſoin que les armes ne manquent point aux ſoldats qu'il doit conduire a l'armée, c'eſt a dire, qu'ils avent une lance, un bouchier, un arc & deux cordes & douze fléches . . . . qu'ils ayent des cuiraſſes, ou des caſques. P. Daniel.

judges excepted), was directed to exercise the art of shooting in the long bow, and fathers, governors, and masters to bring up their children under their care, in the use thereof; every man having a boy or boys in his house, was to provide for each of them above the age of seven, and under that of seventeen years, a bow and two shafts; if servants, the cost of the bow and arrows might be deducted out of their wages; after that age they were to provide bows and four arrows for themselves (b).

To give them an accurate eye and strength of arm, none under twenty-four years of age might shoot at any standing mark, except it was for a rover, and then he was to change his mark at every shot (c); and no person above that age might shoot at any mark whose distance was less than eleven score yards (d). The inhabitants of all cities and towns were ordered to make butts, and to keep them in repair, under a penalty of twenty shillings per month, and to exercise themselves in shooting at them on holidays.

To secure a proper supply of bow-staves, merchants trading from places whence bow-staves were commonly brought, were obliged to import four bow-staves for every ton of merchandise, and that in the same ship in which the goods were loaded (e). They were also to bring in ten bow-staves of good and able stuff for every ton of Malmsey, or of Tyre (f) wine. To encourage the voluntary importation, bow-staves of six feet and a half long, or more, were ex-

---

(b) Persons offending against these laws were liable to the following penalties; any parent or master having a youth or youths under seventeen years of age, who suffered him or them to be without a bow and two arrows for one month together, for every such neglect to forfeit 6s. 8d.; and every male servant receiving wages, above the age of seventeen, and under that of sixty, neglecting to furnish himself as above directed, for every default to forfeit 6s. 8d. 33d Henry VIII.

(c) Under penalty of 4d. for each shot.

(d) 6s. 8d. for each shot. 33 Hen. VIII.

(e) 12 Edward IV. under penalty of 6s. 8d. to the king for each bow-stave deficient.

(f) 1st Richard III. under penalty of 13s. 4d.

cuſed the payment of cuſtom (g), the chief magiſtrates were to appoint proper and ſkilful perſons at the different ports to examine the bow-ſtaves imported, and to ſee they were good and ſufficient.

To prevent a too great conſumption of yew, bowyers were directed to make four bows of witch-hafel, aſh, or elm, to one of yew; and no perſon under ſeventeen years of age, unleſs poſſeſſed of moveables worth forty marks, or the ſon of parents having an eſtate of ten pounds per annum might ſhoot in an yew bow, under a penalty of 6s. 8d.

In order that diſtant countries ſhould be furniſhed with bowyers, fletchers, ſtring and arrow-head makers, any of thoſe workmen, not being freemen of London, might be ſent by the appointment of the king's council, the lord chancellor, lord privy ſeal, or one of them, to inhabit any city, borough, or town within the realm that was deſtitute of ſuch artificers. Bowyers, &c. being duly warned, and neglecting to repair to the places directed, were liable to a penalty of 40s. a day for every day's neglect and contrary abode.

In the reign of Edward III. the price of a painted bow was 1s. 6d. that of a white bow 1s.; a ſheaf of arrows, if acerata, or ſharpened, 1s. 2d. non acerata, or blunt, 1s.

The prices of bows were occaſionally regulated by acts of parliament; from whence we learn, that the price of bow-ſtaves had encreaſed from 2l. to 12l. the hundred, between the reigns of Edward III. and the eighth of Elizabeth, though this is ſaid to have been partly effected by the confederacy of the Lombards.

In the twenty-fourth of Edward IV. no bowyer might ſell a yew bow to any of the king's ſubjects for more than 3s. 4d.; and in the thirty-eighth of Henry VIII. the price of a yew bow for any perſon between

---

(g) This ſeems to point out the length of our antient bows to have been at leaſt ſix feet, but a gentleman of the Archers' Club, who has made the properties of the long bow his ſtudy, ſays, that the beſt length for a bow is five feet eight inches from nock to nock; and that of an arrow two feet three inches. We however read of arrows a cloth ell long.

the ages of ſeven and fourteen years was not to exceed 1s.; the bowyer was beſides to have by him inferior bows of all prices from 6d. to 1s.; the price of a yew bow of the tax called elk, to any of his majeſty's ſubjects was limited to 3s. 4d. In the eighth of Elizabeth, bows of foreign yew were directed to be ſold for 6s. 8d., the ſecond ſort at 3s. 4d., and the coarſe ſort, called livery bows, at a price not exceeding 2s. each, and the ſame for bows of Engliſh yew. A clauſe of a former act directing the bowyers of London and Weſtminſter to make four bows of different wood for one of yew, was repealed on their repreſentation that the citizens of London would uſe none but yew bows, and in its place they were ordered always to have by them at leaſt fifty bows of elm, witch-haſel, or aſh (h). Bow-ſtrings were made of hemp, flax, and ſilk.

Arrows were antiently made of reeds, afterwards of cornel wood, and occaſionally of every ſpecies of wood: but according to Roger Aſcham, aſh was the beſt; arrows were reckoned by ſheaves; a ſheaf conſiſted of twenty-four arrows. Arrows were armed antiently with flint or metal heads, latterly with heads of iron (i); of theſe there were various forms and denominations (k).

By an act of parliament made the ſeventh of Henry IV. it was enacted, that for the future all the heads for arrows and quarrells ſhould be well boiled or braſed, and hardened at the points with ſteel, and that every arrow head or quarrel ſhould have the mark of the

---

(h) The bow was commonly kept in a caſe to keep it dry, and prevent it from warping. Shakſpeare, in his dialogue between the Prince of Wales and Falſtaff, makes the latter call the prince a bow caſe, in alluſion to his ſlender make.

(i) A curious particular reſpecting arrow heads occurs in Swinden's Hiſtory of Great Yarmouth, where the ſheriff of Norfolk, 42 Edward III. being ordered to provide a certain number of garbs of arrows headed with ſteel for the king's uſe, for the heading of them is directed to ſeize all the ſlooks of anchors (omnes alas ancarum) neceſſary for that purpoſe.

(k) Roger Ascham makes a diſtinction between arrow heads for war, and thoſe for pricking, that is, ſhooting at a mark: of the latter he mentions the rigged, creaſed, or ſhouldred heades, or ſilver ſpoone heades, for a certain likeneſſe that ſuch heades have with the knob end of ſome ſilver ſpoons.

maker; workmen diſobeying this order, were to be fined and impriſoned at the king's will, and the arrow heads or quarrells to be forfeited to the crown.

Arrows were carried in a quiver, called alſo an arrow-caſe, which ſerved for the magazine; arrows for immediate uſe were worn in the girdle.

The range of a bow, according to Neade, was from ſix to eighteen and twenty ſcore yards; and he likewiſe ſays, an archer may ſhoot ſix arrows in the time of charging and diſcharging one muſket.

In antient times (l) phials of quick-lime, or other combuſtible matter for burning houſes or ſhips, was fixed on the heads of arrows, and ſhot from long bowes (m); this has been alſo practiſed ſince the uſe of gunpowder. Neade ſays he has known, by experience, that an archer may ſhoot an ounce of fire-work upon an arrow twelve ſcore yards. Arrows with wild-fire, and arrows for fire-works, are mentioned among the ſtores at Newhaven and Barwick, in the firſt of Edward VI (n).

The force with which an arrow ſtrikes an object at a moderate diſtance, may be conceived from the account given by King Edward VI. in his journal, wherein he ſays, that an hundred archers of his guard ſhot before him two arrows each, and afterwards all together, and that they ſhot at an inch-board, which ſome pierced quite through, and ſtruck into the other board; divers pierced it quite through with the heads of their arrows, the boards being well-ſeaſoned timber; their diſtance from the mark is not mentioned.

To prevent the bow-ſtring from hanging on the left arm, it is covered with a piece of ſmooth leather, faſtened on the outſide of the

---

(l) Used by the Romans, and called falarica, and ſome mallioli.

(m) Mathew Paris mentions arrows headed with combuſtible matter, and ſhot from bows into towns or caſtles, and alſo arrows headed with phials full of quick-lime, p. 1090. Miſimus igitur ſuper eos ſpicula ignita. And p. 1091. Et phialas plenas calce, arcubus per parva haſtilia ad modum ſagittarum ſuper hoſtes jaculandas.

(n) In Mr. Brander's MS.

arm, this is called a bracer. And to guard the fingers from being cut by the bow-ſtring, archers wear ſhooting gloves (o).

CHAUCER, in his prologue to the Canterbury Tales, thus deſcribes an archer of his day:

" And he was cladde in cote and hode of grene,
" A ſhefe of peacock arwes bright and kene,
" Under his belt he bare ful thriftily;
" Wel coude he dreſſe his takel yewmanly,
" His arwes drouped not with fetheres lowe,
" And in his hand, he bare a mighty bowe,
" A not-hed hadde he, with broune viſage,
" Of wood crafte coude he wel all the uſage;
" Upon his arme he had a gai bracer,
" And by his ſide a ſwerd and a bokeler,
" And on the other ſide a gaie daggere
" Harneiſed wel, and ſharp as pointe of ſpere:
" A criſtofre on his breſt of ſilver ſhene,
" An horn he bare, the baudrik was of grene,
" A foreſter was he ſothely as I geſſe."

THE following deſcription of an archer, his bow and accoutrements, is given in a MS. in my poſſeſſion, written in the time of Queen Elizabeth (p).

(o) A BRACER ſerveth for two cauſes, one to ſave his arme from the ſtrype of the ſtringe, and his doublet from wearing, and the other is, that the ſtringe gliding ſharplye and quicklye off the bracer, may make the ſharper ſhot.——A ſhooting glove is chiefly to ſave a man's finger from hurting, that he may be able to bear the ſharp ſtringe to the uttermoſt of his ſtrength. *Roger Aſcham.*

(p) ENTITLED, a Treatiſe of Martial Diſcipline, collected and gathered together out of the opynions of dyverſe and fundry of the beſte and moſte approved ſouldiers, with certaine other additions thereunto by Ralphe Smithe, ſeperately dedicated to the Right Honourable the Lord Burrows, governor of the towne of Brille, in the lowe countries, and to the Right Honourable Sir Chriſtopher Hatton, Knt. vice-chamberleine to her majeſtie, and of her highnes moſt honorable privy council.

ARCHERS, OR LONG BOWS.

" CAPTENS and officers ſhould be ſkilfull of that moſt noble weapon, " and to ſee that their ſoldiers, according to their draught and ſtrength, " have good bowes, well nocked, well ſtrynged, everie ſtringe whippe " in their nocke, and in the myddes rubbed with wax, braſer, and " ſhuting glove, ſome ſpare ſtringes trymed as aforeſaid, every man " one ſhefe of arrowes, with a caſe of leather defenſible againſt the " rayne, and in the ſame fower and twentie arrowes, whereof eight of " them ſhould be lighter than the reſidue, to gall or aſtoyne the " enemye with the hailſhot of light arrows, before they ſhall come " within the danger of their harquebuſs ſhot. Let every man have a " brigandine, or a little cote of plate, a ſkull or hufkyn, a mawle of " leade, of five foot in lengthe, and a pike, and the ſame hanging by " his girdle with a hook and a dagger; being thus furniſhed teach " them by muſters to march, ſhoote, and retire, keepinge their faces " uppon the enemys. Sumtyme put them into great nowmbers, as " to battell apperteyneth, and thus uſe them often times practiſed, " till they be perfecte; ffor thoſe men in battell, ne ſkimiſh can not " be ſpared. None other weapon maye compare with the ſame noble " weapon."

THE long bow maintained its place in our armies long after the invention of fire-arms. Nor have there been wanting experienced ſoldiers who were advocates for its continuance, and who in many caſes even preferred it to the harquebuſs or muſket. King Charles I. twice granted ſpecial commiſſions under the great ſeal, for enforcing the uſe of the long bow, the firſt in the fourth year of his reign (q); but this was revoked by proclamation four years afterwards, on account of divers extortions and abuſes committed under ſanction thereof. The ſecond anno 1633, in the ninth year of his reign, to William Neade and his ſon, alſo named William, wherein the former is ſtyled an antient archer, who had preſented to the king a warlike invention

(q) To Timothy Taylor, John Hubert, Henry Hubert, Gentlemen, and Jeffery le Neve, Eſq.

for uniting the uſe of the pike and bow (r), ſeen and approved by him and his council of war; wherefore his majeſty had granted them a commiſſion to teach and exerciſe his loving ſubjects in the ſaid invention, which he particularly recommended the chief officers of his trained bands to learn and practiſe; and the juſtices, and other chief magiſtrates thoughout England, are therein enjoined to uſe every means in their power to aſſiſt Neade, his ſon, and all perſons authoriſed by them in the furtherance, propagation, and practice of this uſeful invention; both the commiſſions and proclamation are printed at large in Rymer.

At the breaking out of the civil war the Earl of Eſſex iſſued a precept, dated in November, 1643, for ſtirring up all well affected people by benevolence, towards the raiſing of a company of archers for the ſervice of the king and parliament.

To protect our archers from the attacks of the enemy's horſe, they carried long ſtakes pointed at both ends; theſe they planted in the earth, ſloping before them. In the firſt of Edward VI. three hundred and fifty of theſe were in the ſtores of the town of Berwick, under the article of archers ſtakes; there were alſo at the ſame time eight bundles of archers ſtakes in Pontefract Caſtle (s).

THE SLING.

The ſling (t) is alſo a weapon of great antiquity, formerly in high eſtimation among the antients. But as it does not appear from hiſtory

---

(r) Printed under the title of the Double Armed Man. The different motions are illuſtrated by wooden cuts, very well drawn.

(s) Mr. Brander's MS.

(t) The Romans had companies of ſlingers in their armies; the inhabitants of the Balearic Iſlands, now called Majorca and Minorca, were peculiarly famous for their dexterity in the uſe of this weapon. Diodorus Siculus ſays, that they always carried three ſlings, one they bound round their heads, another they girded round their waiſts, and the third they held in their hands. In fight they threw large ſtones with ſuch violence, that they ſeemed to be projected from ſome machine, inſomuch that no armour could reſiſt their ſtroke. In beſieging a town, they wounded and drove the garriſon from the walls, throw-

to have been much uſed by the Engliſh, at leaſt within the period to which this work is confined (u), it will be ſufficient to ſay, that ſlings were conſtructed for throwing ſtones, leaden bullets, and clay balls, baked or hardened in the ſun. That they were made of different materials, chiefly flax, hair, or leather, woven into bands, or cut into thongs, broadeſt in the centre, for the reception of the ſtone or ball, and tapering off gradually towards both ends: with one of theſe ſlings a good ſlinger would (it is ſaid) throw a ſtone ſix hundred yards. An antient Iſlandic treatiſe, entitled, Speculum Regale, ſuppoſed to have been written about the twelfth century, mentions ſlings fixed to a ſtaff.

Under the general appellation of ſpear, lance, and pike, may be included a great variety of weapons of the kind, antiently comprehended by the French under the term of bois (wood); ſpears or lances, particularly thoſe uſed by the cavalry, are by many of our old writers called ſtaves.

The ſpear, or lance, is among the oldeſt weapons recorded in hiſtory, and is nearly coëval with the ſword or bow, and even ſeems a much more obvious weapon than the latter, probably originating in

---

ing with ſuch exactneſs, as rarely to miſs their mark; this dexterity they acquired by conſtant exerciſe, being trained to it from their infancy, their mothers placing their daily food on the top of a pole, and giving them no more than they beat down with ſtones from their ſlings. This art is ſtill, in ſome meaſure, preſerved by the Minorquin Shepherds. Some writers have, though falſely, attributed the invention of the ſling to the inhabitants of theſe iſlands.

(u) Froissart, vol. 1. chap. 85. p. 304. gives an inſtance in which ſlings were employed for the Engliſh, by the people of Brittany, in a battle fought in that province during the reign of Philip de Valois, between the troops of Walter de Mauni, an Engliſh knight, and Louis d'Eſpagne, who commanded ſix thouſand men in behalf of Charles de Blois, then competitor with the Earl of Montfort, for the duchy of Brittany. Froiſſart ſays, that what made Louis loſe that battle was, that during the engagement the people of the country came unexpectedly and aſſaulted his army with bullets and ſlings. According to the ſame author they were alſo uſed in naval combats. Slings were uſed in 1572, at the ſiege of Sancerre, by the Huguenots, in order to ſave their powder; D'Aubigné, who reports this fact, ſays they were thence called Sancerre harquebuſſes.

a pole or ſtake, ſharpened at one or both ends, afterwards armed with a head of flint, and in proceſs of time, on the diſcovery and uſe of metals, with copper, braſs, or iron. Flint heads for both ſpears and arrows are frequently found in England, Scotland, and Ireland, as are alſo ſpear, javelin, and arrow heads of a metal nearly reſembling braſs (x).

The ſpear, lance, javelin, darts of different kinds, and even the more modern pikes, all come under one common deſcription, that is, a long ſtaff, rod, or pole, armed with a pointed head of ſtone or metal at one or both ends, conſtructed for the purpoſe of piercing, or wounding with their points only, either by being puſhed or thrown with the hand. But as the conſideration of every ſpecies would greatly exceed the limits of the plan laid down for this work, I ſhall confine my enquiries to thoſe ſpears, lances, and pikes uſed by our anceſtors.

Long ſpears and lances were uſed by the Saxons and Normans, both horſe and foot, but particularly by the cavalry of the latter, who in charging reſted the butt end of the lance againſt the arçon or bow of their ſaddle; the mail-armour not admitting the fixture of lance reſts, as was afterwards practiſed on the cuiraſs (y).

It does not appear from hiſtory that there was ever any particular ſtandard or regulation, reſpecting the length or thickneſs of the antient lances, or the ſize or form of their heads, but it rather ſeems that every military man had his lance, as well as his other arms, conſtructed of the dimenſions that beſt accorded with his ſtrength and

---

(x) Gustavus Brander, Eſq; has ſpecimens in his collection of both flint and braſs heads for ſpears and arrows; and many others are to be found in the different cabinets and collections of curioſities, both public and private. In the year 1782 a ſervant of Mr. Fuller's digging for turf, on Sullington Common, near Storrington, in Suſſex, found very near the ſurface a great number of ſpear and dart, or arrow heads, pieces of ſword-blades, and ſome celts, all of metal like braſs; they are now in the poſſeſſion of Thomas Aſtle, Eſq. The ſpear and arrow heads greatly reſemble ſome of the ſame metal found in Ireland, engravings and deſcriptions of which may be ſeen in the thirteenth number of Colonel Vallancy's Collectanea, where there is alſo a delineation of a ſpear head of flint.

(y) A lance reſt was a kind of moveable iron bracket, fixed to the right ſide of the cuiraſs, for the purpoſe of ſupporting the lance; ſee a repreſentation of one in the Miſcellaneous Plate.

ſtature. It is however certain, that the heads of lances and ſpears were always made of the beſt tempered ſteel, and their ſtaves of the ſoundeſt aſh, of which wood they were ſo generally made, that the writers of Latin verſe, frequently uſed the Latin word for the aſh (Fraxinus), to expreſs a lance or ſpear.

ALTHOUGH lances and ſpears were chiefly the weapons of horſemen, they were alſo uſed by the infantry, and diſmounted knights, to keep off the cavalry; for this purpoſe they fixed the butts in the ground, their points ſloping towards the breaſts of the enemy's horſes. Two inſtances of this occur in hiſtory; one is mentioned by Joinville, in the Life of St. Louis, the other by William Patin, in his account of the battle of Muſſelborough, in Scotland, the firſt of Edward VI.; ſee both accounts in the note below (z). In tournaments, the knights ſometimes fought on foot with their lances; in that caſe, Father Daniel ſays, it was cuſtomary to ſhorten them, by cutting off part of the ſtaff.

TILTING lances differed from thoſe uſed in war, both in their heads and ſtaves, the heads of tilting lances being blunt, or occaſionally fitted with a contrivance to prevent penetration, called a coronel or cronel (a), from its reſemblance to a crown. The ſtaves were thick

---

(z) AINCOIS nous fiz ariver devant un groſſe bataille de Turs, la oú il avoit bien, ſix mille homes a Cheval. Siloſt comme il nous virent á terre, il vindrent ferant des Eſperons vers nous. Quant nous les veiſmes venir, nous fichames les pointes de nos eſcus ou Sablon, & le fuſt de nos lances ou ſablon & les pointes vers eulz. Maintenant que il virent ainſi comme pour aler parmi les ventres, il tournerent ce devant darieres & sênfouérent. *Joinville*, p. 34.

" STANDING at defence, they (i. e. the Scots) thruſt ſhoulders likewiſe ſo nie together, " ye fore rankes wel nie to kneling ſtoop lowe before, for their followers behynd holdyng " their pykes in both handes, and thear with in their left, their bucklers, the one end of " the pyke agaynſte the right foot, tother againſt their enemie breſt hye, their followers " croſſing their pyke poyntes with them forewarde, and thus each with tother ſo nye as " place and ſpace will ſuffer, though the hole was ſo thick, that as eaſy ſhall a bare finger " perce through the ſkyn of an angrie hedgehog, as any encounter the frunt of their " pykes."

(a) THE following deſcription of the coronels, or coronets, is given by Guillim in his diſplay of heraldry. Theſe cronels, or coronets (for I find them called by both theſe names) are

at the butt end, tapering off gradually to the point, and generally fluted; near the butt end they had a cavity for the reception of the hand. The front of it was defended by an iron-plate, called a vamplat, that is, an avant plat, and behind it was a broad iron ring, called a burr. Theſe handles ſeem not confined to the tilting lance, but were made alſo on thoſe deſigned for war. Fauchet ſays, they were not in uſe before the year 1300 (b).

Lances were ornamented with a banderole near the point, which gave them a handſome appearance, theſe were alſo called pencells (c).

Of the pike, Father Daniel ſays, that although the name is modern, and not to be found in the hiſtories of France before the time of Louis XI., it is nevertheleſs an antient weapon, much reſembling the fariſſa of the Macedonians, but not quite ſo long. It was introduced into France by the Switzers.

Markham, in his Soldiers' Accidence (d) ſays, the pikemen ſhould

---

are the iron heads of tilt-ſpears, or tilt-ſtaffs, which uſually have ſix or eight mourns (for ſo are thoſe little piked things called, which are on the top or head of this cronel, or coronet), three of which appear in each of theſe; the other three which are not here ſeen, cannot be demonſtrated by the art of cutting or painting; ſome have termed, or rather miſ-termed theſe cronels, burrs, for the confutation of which error I have cauſed the true figure of a tilt-ſtaff, or tilt-ſpear, to be here repreſented unto your view without the vamplet.—For this another delineation of a tilt-ſtaff with the vamplet, ſee the plate 48. The family of Wiſeman, bear ſable, a chevron ermine, between three cronels of a tilt-ſpear, argent; this was meant as a pun on that name, ſignifying that a wiſe man never meddled with any other arms but ſuch as were blunted, or prevented from doing miſchief.

(b) A weapon, termed a launceguay, is mentioned in ſeveral ſtatutes, made during the reign of King Richard II. Many of the commentators on our antient laws declare their inability to explain what kind of weapon it was. Perhaps it may not be a too far-fetched interpretation to ſuppoſe the term launceguay, a corruption of the French words lance aigue, a ſharp or pointed lance; and if the intention of thoſe acts is conſidered, it will, in ſome meaſure, juſtify this ſuppoſition, they being evidently framed to prevent thoſe violent affrays that frequently aroſe among the gentry of that time, commonly attended by a numerous ſuite, who, if armed with miſchievous weapons, might have ſpilt much blood. A lance fit for war was, perhaps, termed ſharp, or pointed, in oppoſition to a blunt or tilting lance.

(c) In an antient MS. mark l. 8, in the College of Arms, deſcribing the field equipage neceſſary for a baron, banneret, or riche bacheler, is the following item: "pencells for your ſpeers."

(d) Published 1648.

have ſtrong, ſtreight, yet nimble pikes of aſh-wood, well headed with ſteel, and armed with plates downward from the head, at leaſt four feet, and the full ſize or length of every pike ſhall be fifteen feet, beſides the head. The general length fixed for the pike, by moſt princes and ſtates, was, according to Sir James Turner (e), eighteen feet, but he obſerves that few exceeded fifteen. In a ſmall anonymous treatiſe, entitled, Engliſh Military Diſcipline (f), it is ſaid, "All pikes now a dayes are of the ſame length, made of ſtrong aſhe, and very ſtreight, about fourteen or fifteen foot long between the head and foot. The head is four inches long, and two and a half broad at the largeſt place, the iron bands at the head muſt be long and ſtrong, otherwayes it would be an eaſie matter for the horſe to cut off the ends of the pikes with their ſhables."

Lord Orrery in his Treatiſe on the Art of War, complains that it was too common to have in one regiment pikes of different lengths, and recommends it to have all pikes ſixteen feet and a half long, made of ſeaſoned aſh, armed at the points with lozenge heads, the cheek or ſide of the pikes to be of thin iron plates, four feet long, to prevent the head of the pike from being cut off by the ſwords of the cavalry.

In a military work, ſtiled the Art of Training (g), a kind of ornament for the pike, called an armin, is thus deſcribed. "You had "then armins for your pikes, which have a graceful ſhew, for many "of them were of velvet, embroidered with gold, and ſerved for "faſtneſs when the hand ſweat; now I ſee none, and ſome incon-"veniences are found by them."

The London price of a pike as ſettled by the Lords Commiſſioners of the Council of War, anno 1631, the ſeventh of Charles II., was 4s. 6d., each article thus eſtimated, head 1s. 8d., ſtaff 2s. 6d., ſocket and colouring 4d.

(e) Pallas Armata, written in 1670 and 1671.

(f) Published 1680.

(g) 12°. R. D. Publiſhed 1622, with a curious portrait of King Charles I. on horſeback, whilſt a boy, and alſo engravings of the exerciſe of the muſquet and pike.

The giſarme, called alſo giſaring, and, by Fleta, ſiſarmes, is likewiſe an antient weapon of the ſtaff kind, but of what form ſeems doubtful. In the ſtatute of Wincheſter, it is named among the weapons appropriated to the lower order of people (h), that is, ſuch as were not poſſeſſed of forty ſhillings in land. An antient ſtatute of William, king of Scotland, explains it to be a hand bill (i).

It is mentioned in the poem of Flodden Field, in a manner that ſeems to ſhew it was a weapon for cutting, grinding being rather more applicable to an edged, than a pointed weapon.

Some made a mell of maſſey lead,
Which iron all about did bind,
Some made ſtrong helmets for the head,
And ſome their griſly giſarings grind.

The Reverend Mr. Lamb, editor of this poem, has the following notes on this weapon. "Giſarings, halberts, from the French guiſ-"arme, a kind of offenſive long handled and long headed weapon, or "as the Spaniſh viſarma, a ſtaff that has within it two long pikes, "which with a ſhoot or thruſt forward, come forth."

Every knight
Two javelins, ſpears, or than giſarm ſtaves.

Gowan Duglas.

Du Cange in his Gloſſary, renders this word by ſecuris, and derives it from the geeſum of the Gauls.

La Combe, in the ſupplement to his Dictionary of the Antient French, has the term giſarme, which he calls a ſort of lance or pike; and Bailey defines giſarme to be a military weapon with two points or

(h) E que meins ad de quaurante ſouz de terre feit juré a fauchons, giſarmes e coutaux e autres menus armes.

(i) —— De Venientibus ad Guerram. Et qui minus habet quam quadraginta ſolidos terræ habeat gyſarum quod dicitur hand bill, arcum et ſagittam. William began his reign, A.D. 1165.

pikes. Strutt, I know not from what authority, has in his Horda Angel-cynnan, repreſented the giſarme like a battle-ax on a long ſtaff, with a ſpike projecting from the back of the ax.

PERHAPS it may have been the weapon afterwards called the black, and ſometimes the brown bill, the former name poſſibly derived from its being occaſionally varniſhed over to preſerve it from rain, like the black armour; the appellation of brown might ariſe from the ruſt careleſsly wiped off, which would leave it of that colour. Bills were not only borne by ſoldiers, but alſo by ſheriffs' officers at executions, watchmen, &c. with whom it was no uncommon practice to chalk the edges, which gave them the appearance of having been newly ground. A delineation of a black bill is given in the plate of halberts.

ANOTHER kind of pike, called a morris, that is, a Mooriſh pike (k), was much in faſhion about the reigns of Henry VIII. and Elizabeth. Morris pikes were uſed both by land and at ſea; what were their characteriſtic peculiarities I have not been able to find. From the following directions in Ralph Smith's manuſcript, many of the motions, uſed in the exerciſe of them, greatly reſembled thoſe practiſed with the common pike.

MORRIS PIKES.

" CAPTAINES and officers leadinge morris pikes, ſhoulde bee ex-
" perienced in that ſtronge and warlike weapon. Teache the ſoul-
" diers ſometimes to puſhe, traile, and order the ſame both for the
" bewtie of the battaile, and for the neceſſitie of the ſame, and to ſee
" them have white corſeletts, which muſte bee allwaies cleane kepte,
" ffor it is a bewtifull ſight in the battell, and a great terror to the
" enemies. Suche men in the fronte of battailes in ould tymes, weare
" called men at armes; on foote theſe men ſoe armed and placed,

(k) THEN on the Engliſh part with ſpeed
The bills ſtept forth, and bows went back,
The Mooriſh pikes and mells of lead
Did deal there many a dreadful thwack. *Battle of Flodden*, v. 498.

" bee in more jeapordie then other men bee, their armour bee " more coſtlie then other mens bee, wherefore they merite more " wages than other men have; thoſe be choſen chieflye for the bat- " tell, with baces, long taces, vambraces, and morians. They muſte " have ſwordes and daggers; their pikes of uſuall length, ſharpe " grounded and well nayled, cauſe them in tymes to lay their pikes " upon their ſhoulders, their thumbe under the ſame, the butte end " on the out ſide of their loades man. After this ſorte to muſter, " marche, retire, and embattell them as aforeſaide: that noe ſouldier " of purpoſe or negligence doe cutt or breake his pike, for the " greater ſtrengthe of the battaile conſiſteth in the ſame."

Halberts differ very little from the bill, being, like them, conſtructed both for puſhing and cutting: a halbert conſiſts of three parts, the ſpear, or ſometimes a kind of ſword blade for puſhing, an ax, or hatchet for ſtriking and cutting, and a flook or hook for pulling down faſcines, in the attack of trenches, or temporary fortifications. The halbert is ſaid to have been originally invented by the Switzers. Halberts are of a variety of forms; they are commonly mounted on ſtaves of ſeven feet long, with a pointed ferril at the end, for the purpoſe of ſticking them in the ground.

The mallet of arms ſeems to have been formerly a weapon much uſed by the Engliſh and Scots, as well as by the French (l). In the memorable combat recorded in the hiſtory of Bretagne, and fought in that province, anno 1315, between thirty champions on the part of the French, and the like number on that of the Engliſh, an Engliſh champion, named Billefort, was armed with a leaden Mallet weighing twenty-five pounds. Father Daniel quotes the manuſcript Memoirs of the Mareſchal de Fleurange, in the king of France's library,

(l) Two Scotch earls of an antient race,
One Crawford call'd, the other Montroſs,
Who led ten thouſand Scotchmen ſtrong,
Who manfully met with their foes,
With leaden mells and lances long.

to prove that the Engliſh archers ſtill uſed mallets in the time of Louis XII., who began his reign in the year 1515, and died 1524. In the antient poem on the battle of Floddon Field, leaden mallets are ſeveral times mentioned. Some of the verſes have been quoted in the articles of giſarmes and morris pikes. Mr. Brander's curious manuſcript ſo often referred to, among the different ſtore-houſes at Calais, there named, deſcribes one by the title of the malle chambre, in which were then eight hundred and eighty leaden malles. There is alſo an entry of two hundred malles in a ſtore-houſe at Berwick. A mawle of lead of five feet long, and a pike with the ſame hanging by a girdle with a hook, is recommended by Ralph Smith for the arms of an archer; it has been quoted at length under the article of the long bow.

The mallet of arms, according to the repreſentation of it given by Father Daniel, exactly reſembles the wooden inſtrument of that name now in uſe, except in the length of the handle; it was like the hammer of arms, to be uſed with both hands (m); indeed it differed very little from that weapon in its form (n).

The mallet was alſo common in France; for in a ſedition of the Pariſians, in the beginning of the reign of Charles VI. on account of

---

(m) In the Manuſcript Chronicle of Bertrand de Gueſcelin, are theſe lines.

Olivier de Clicon dans la bataille va,
Et tenoit un martel qu'a ſes deux mains porta,
Tout ainſi qu'un Boucher abbatit & verſa.

And a little lower:

Bertran de Glaiequin fu ou champ plenier,
Ou il affaut Anglois au martel d'acier,
Tout ainſi les abbat comme fait le boucher.

(n) La difference qu'il y avoit entre le Mail ou Maillet & le Marteau D'Arme, eſt que le revers du maillet étoit quarré ou un peu arondi, par les deux bouts & que le Marteau D'Armes avoit un côté quarré & arrondi & l'autre en pointe ou tranchant. *P. Daniel*, vol. I. p. 439.

ſome new taxes, the populace forced the arſenal, and took out ſo many mallets, that they were called mailliotins. Indeed, when we conſider the intercourſe between France and England, it ſeems probable that ſcarce any approved armour or weapon could be uſed in one kingdom, that would not be alſo adopted in the other.

THE mace is an antient weapon formerly much uſed by the cavalry of all nations, and likewiſe by eccleſiaſtics, who in conſequence of their tenures frequently took the field, but were by a canon of the church forbidden to wield the ſword. Of this we have an inſtance in Philip de Dreux, biſhop of Beavais, who fought with a mace at the battle of Bovines, where he beat down Long Sword, Earl of Saliſbury. Richard I., who inſtituted the corps of ſerjeants at arms, for the guard of his perſon, armed them with maces, bows, and arrows.

THE mace is commonly of iron; its figure much reſembles a chocolate mill; many ſpecimens may be ſeen in the Tower and other armouries (o). Several are mentioned in Mr. Brander's manuſcript (p). Among ſome ancient armour formerly preſerved at Pile Well, the ſeat of the Worſeleys, was a mace, with a dagg or piſtol in the handle.

SIR JOHN SMITH, and ſeveral other writers before and of the laſt century, ſpeak in favour of the mace; among them is Sir James Turner. The mace is, ſays he, an antient weapon for horſemen, neither was it out of uſe long after the invention of hand-guns, for we read of it uſed by moſt nations an hundred years ago, and certainly in a medley they may be more ſerviceable than ſwords, for when they are guided by a ſtrong arm, we find the party ſtruck with them was either felled from his horſe, or having his head-piece beat

---

(o) MR. BRANDER has a very fine one; another much like it belongs to the Antiquarian Society; both of them have been gilt.

(p) IN the cuſtody of Hans Hunter, armourer at Weſtminſter. Item. A maſe of dameſkine work. Item. One white maſe. Item. In maſes guilte and faier wroughte, five of them having ringes and plates of ſylke and gold xi. Hampton Court maces of ſteel 59, maces of ſteel receyved of William Damſell 26.

cloſe to his head, was made to reel in his ſaddle, with his blood running plentifully out of his noſe (q).

Father Daniel has engraved two weapons, ſhewn in the abbey of Roncevaux, as the maces of thoſe famous heroes of romance, Roland and Oliver, who are ſaid to have lived in the time of Charlemagne. One is a large ball of iron, faſtened with three chains to a ſtrong truncheon, or ſtaff, of about two feet long; the other is of mixed metal, in the form of a channelled melon, faſtened alſo to a ſtaff by a triple chain; theſe balls weigh eight pounds. At the end of both the ſtaves are rings for holding cords or leathers to faſten them to the hand.

Contrivances like theſe, except that the balls were armed with ſpikes, were long carried by the pioneers of the trained bands, or city militia; they are generally called morning ſtars (r). One of this ſort is alſo given by Father Daniel.

The horſeman's hammer is a leſſer kind of hammer of arms, reſembling it in its general form, but calculated to be uſed with one hand. It is commonly made of iron, both head and handle, the latter rarely exceeding two feet in length; ſome of theſe hammers are highly ornamented with ſculpture and engraving. The equeſtrian figure of King Edward I., in the horſe armoury in the tower of London, is armed with a hammer of this ſort (s). Some horſemens'

(q) This kind of mace, which is the ſame as uſed by the Turks, ſome military writers improperly call the club of Hercules; the club given to that demi-god, by the Grecian ſtatuaries, is a huge knotty limb of a tree.

In the antient MS. in the college of arms before quoted, among the neceſſaries for an eſquire in taking the field, there occurs the following articles. Store of ſure ſpeere hedys. Item. An ax, or an halbert to walke with in the felde. Item. An armynge ſword, a dager, and hit were well doon to have a maſe at the ſadell pomell.

(r) Morgan ſtern, or morning ſtar, a weapon formerly uſed for the defence of trenches. It was a large ſtaff banded about with iron, like the ſhaft of a halbert, having an iron ball at the end with croſs iron ſpikes. *Monro.*

(s) It may be agreeable to ſome of my readers to be informed, that many of the figures of our kings, ſhewn in the Tower of London, are the work of ſome of the beſt ſculptors of the time in which they were ſet up. The kings, Charles I. and II., with their horſes, were

hammers equipped with guns, and ſome having battle axes, occur in the inventory of armour and weapons in the royal armoury at Weſtminſter, in the firſt of King Edward VI. (t)

Of weapons denominated axes, ſuch as battle axes, pole axes, and the like, there are a great variety, many of them having very little reſemblance to an ax, in any of their parts; this probably may in ſome meaſure be owing to modern alterations, as is the caſe with the weapons carried by the gentlemen penſioners, which are ſtill called axes. In plate 34 are divers repreſentations of battle axes: ſome richly ornamented are mentioned in Mr. Brander's manuſcript (u).

The Welch glaive is a kind of bill, ſometimes reckoned among the pole axes. They were formerly much in uſe. In an abſtract of the grants of the firſt of Richard III. among the Harleian manuſcripts (x). In the Britiſh Muſeum there is an entry of a warrant, granted to Nicholas Spicer, authoriſing him to impreſs ſmiths for making two thouſand Welch bills or glaives.

And in the ſame book 18s. is charged for ſtaving and making

---

were executed by Grinlin Gibbons, in the year 1685 and 1686. Thoſe of ten other kings, not named, with their horſes, were done by the following artiſts, anno 1688. One by William Morgan, one by John Noſt, one by Thomas Quillans, and two by Marmaduke Townſon. In the year 1690, five not named, and their horſes, by John Noſt; and June 22d, 1702, the face of King William III. by —— Alcock, probably fixed to one of the anonymous figures. Theſe particulars were extracted from an authentick manuſcript in the poſſeſſion of a friend.

(t) Item, in horſemens hammers with gonnes viii. Item, in horſemens hammers with battle axes xiv. Brander's MS.

(u) Item, four battle axes partely guilt, with long ſmall ſtaves of braſſell, garniſhed with velvet white and greene, and ſilke iv. in the armory at Weſtminſter.

Poleaxes with gonnes in th'endes xxvii.
Poleaxes without gonnes ii.
Short poleaxes playne c.
Two hand poleaxes iv.
Hand pollaxes with a gonne and a caſe for the ſame oone,
Poliaxes gilte, the ſtaves covered with cremyſyne velvet, fringed with ſilke of golde iv.
} in the Tower.

(x) Marked No. 443.

twenty-four billes, and 20s. 6d. for making and ſtaving thirty glaives; theſe appear to have been made at Abergavenny and Llanllolved.

Besides the weapons of the ſtaff kind already mentioned, there were divers others, whoſe names only are to be found in accounts of arſenals, and caſually in the works of antient military writers, who do not deſcribe their forms or dimenſions; ſeveral ſuch appear in the inventory ſo repeatedly quoted (y). Theſe are javelins with broad heads, demy launces, boar ſpears, northern ſtaves, and three grayned ſtaves.

But the moſt ſingular kind of weapon or utenſil there mentioned, and of which there appears to have been a great number in the Tower, is the holy water ſprincle (z), ſome of them having guns at their ends, and others at the top: what they were, or for what uſe, I have neither been able to find out, or even to form a probable conjecture.

The antient croſs-bow, which differed in many particulars from thoſe of late times, is thus deſcribed by Father Daniel, who formed his deſcription from one or more then before him.

(y) Mr. Brander's MS., in which are the following entries in different ſtore-houſes.

Item, ten javelins with brode heddes, parteley guilt, with long braſſell ſtaves, garniſhed with vellet and taſſels.

Northern ſtaves with yrone heddes 340.

Demy launces 120.

Bore ſpeares with aſhen ſtaves, trymed with cremyſyn velvet, and fringed with redde ſilke 291.

Bore ſpeares knotted and leather'd 162.

Javelyns with ſtaves, trymed with white, greene, and black ſilke, and fuſtanyne, of axes 209.

Partyſans heddes without ſtaves partie guilte 152.

Rancons with ſtaves garnyſhed with velvett and fringed 56.

(z) Great holly water ſprincles 118.

Holly water ſprincles, with gonnes in th'ende 7.

Holly water ſprincles, with thre gonnes in the topp one.

Little holly water ſprincles 392.

Item. one hatte of ſtele, and two ſtaves, called holly water ſprinkles.

Gaddes of ſteile 300.

THE croſs-bow, called in Latin arcus baliſtarius, or baliſta manualis, was thus named to diſtinguiſh it from certain larger machines, called baliſtæ and catapultæ, which the antients uſed for battering the walls of towns with ſtones, and for lancing darts of an extraordinary magnitude. The croſs-bow, I ſay, was an offenſive weapon, which conſiſted of a bow fixed to the top of a ſort of ſtaff, or ſtock of wood, which the ſtring of the bow when unbent, croſſed at right angles.

THE handle or bed, which was called the ſtock of the croſs-bow, had towards the middle a ſmall opening or ſlit, of the length of two fingers, in which was a little moveable wheel of ſolid ſteel; through the centre of it paſſed a ſcrew that ſerved for an axis; this wheel projected a little beyond the ſurface of the ſtock, and had a notch, or catch, which ſtopped and held the ſtring of the bow when bent. In the oppoſite ſide of the circumference was a much ſmaller notch, by the means of which the ſpring of the tricker kept the wheel firm, and in its place; this wheel is called the nut of the croſs-bow. Under the ſtock, near the handle, was the key of the tricker, like that of the ſerpentine of a muſquet; by preſſing this key with the hand, to the handle of the croſs-bow, the ſpring releaſed the wheel that held the ſtring, and the ſtring by its motion drove forward the dart.

UPON the ſtock below the little wheel was a ſmall plate of copper, which lifted up and ſhut down, and was fixed by its two legs, with two ſcrews to the two ſides of the ſtock; this was a ſight; it was pierced above by two little holes, one over the other, and when the plate was raiſed, theſe two holes anſwered to a globule, which was a ſmall bead no bigger than that of a chaplet, that was ſuſpended at the end of the croſs-bow by a fine wire, and faſtened to two ſmall perpendicular columns of iron, one on the right, the other on the left, and this little globule, anſwering to the holes in the plate, ſerved to direct the aim, whether for ſhooting horizontally, upwards, or downwards.

THE cord or ſtring of the bow was double, each ſtring ſeparated by two little cylinders of iron, equidiſtant from the extremities of the

bow and the centre; to theſe two ſtrings in the middle was fixed a ring of cord, which ſerved to confine it in the notch I have mentioned when the bow was bent. Between the two cords in the centre of the ſtring, and immediately before the ring, was a little ſquare of cord, againſt which was placed the extremity of the arrow or dart, to be puſhed forwards by the cord.

Such was the antient croſs-bow, on which I formed this deſcription, and I believe they were all much alike in their internal parts. The ſmaller croſs-bows were bent with the hand, by the means of a ſmall ſteel lever, called the goat's foot, from its being forked on the ſide that reſted on the croſs-bow and the cord; the larger were bent with one or both feet, by putting them into a kind of ſtirrup. According to this verſe of William le Breton,

Balliſta duplici tenſa pede miſſa ſagitta.

They were alſo bent with a moulinet and with a pulley.

These croſs-bows were either of wood, horne, or ſteel, which muſt be underſtood of the bow only, it not being likely the whole body of the croſs-bow ſhould be of ſteel.

Cross-bows not only ſhot arrows, but alſo darts called quarrels, or carreaux, from their heads, which were ſquare pyramids of iron, ſome of them feathered (as the term was) with wood. They alſo ſhot ſtones or leaden balls.

There were two ſorts of Engliſh croſs-bows, one called latches, the other prodds (a).

According to Sir John Smith, in his inſtructions and obſervations,

(a) The croſſe bowe chamber at Calais. Croſſe bowes, called prodds, 418. Croſſe bowes, called latches, winlaſſes for them 120. Benders to bend ſmall croſſe bowes 14. Quarrells headed and fethered with woode 2300. Quarrells unheaded and fetherede with woode 2300.

Crosse bowes of ſundry making, with four paier of windelaiſes being broken. Croſs bowes to ſhoot ſtoone oone, rack to bend a croſs bowe oone. Quyver for pricke arrows for croſs bowes oone.

&c. p. 204, a croſs-bow will kill point blank between forty and ſixty yards, and if elevated ſix, ſeven, or eight ſcore yards, or farther (b).

A RECORD printed in Rymer's Fœdera, of the third of Edward II., recites that croſs-bows, bauders, and quarrells, were purchaſed for the garriſon of Sherborne Caſtle, each croſs-bow at 3s. 8d. each, bauder at 1s. 6d., and every hundred of quarrells, at 1s. 6d.

FATHER DANIEL ſays, that croſs-bows were of different ſizes; there were ſome at Chantilly a foot and a half, two, and three feet in length, and others ſtill longer, furniſhed with their goats' feet, their moulinets, and their pullies.

THE excellency of the croſs-bow was the great exactneſs of its ſhot, croſs-bow men being much more certain of hitting their mark, than archers with the long-bow, but on the other hand it would not carry to ſo great a diſtance, neither could it be ſo often diſcharged in the ſame time.

(b) MONSIEUR William de Bellay in his inſtructions for the wars, tranſlated by Paul Ive, gent. and publiſhed anno 1589, gives the croſs-bow a ſtill greater range; "and were it "ſo, that the archers and croſſe-bow men could carry about them their proviſion for their "bowes and croſſe-bowes, as eaſily as y^e^ harquebuſiers may do theirs for their harquebuſſe, "I would commend them before the harquebuſſe, as well for their readineſſe in ſhootinge, "which is much more quicker, as alſo for the ſureneſs of their ſhot, which is almoſt never "in vayne. And although the harquebuſier may ſhoote further, notwithſtanding the archer "and croſſe-bowe man will kill at C. or CC. paſes off, as well as the beſt harquebuſier: "and ſometime the harneſſe, except it be the better, cannot holde out: at the uttermoſt "the remedy is, that they ſhould be brought as neare before they do ſhoote as poſſibly they "may, and if it were ſo handled, there would be more ſlain by their ſhot, than by twice "as many harquebuſiers, and this I will prove by one croſſe-bow man that was at Thurin, "when as the Lord Marſhall of Annibault was governor there, who, as I have underſtood, "in five or ſix ſkirmiſhes did kill or hurt more of our enemies, than five or ſix of the beſt "harquebuſiers did during the whole time of the ſiege."

FIRE-ARMS.

THE firſt guns fired in hand, were called hand-cannons, coulouverines, and hand-guns. The hand-gun uſed in England was a ſhort piece, as appears from the ſtatute of the 33d of Henry VIII. whereby it was enacted, that no hand-gun ſhould be uſed of leſs dimenſions than one yard in length, gun and ſtock included.

THE haquebut, or hag but, was a ſtill ſhorter piece; by the ſtatute above mentioned, it might not be under three quarters of a yard long, gun and ſtock as before included. This piece is by ſome writers ſuppoſed to have been called a haquebutt, from its butt end being hooked or bent like thoſe now uſed, the ſtock of the hand-gun being nearly ſtraight; there were alſo guns called demi-haques, either from their being leſs in ſize, or from having their butts leſs curved. Fauchet ſays, the haquebut was in his time called a harquebuſs: a ſort of piſtol called a dag, was alſo uſed about the ſame time as hand-guns and haquebuts. Mr. Brander's manuſcript records a variety of antient fire arms, which ſee in the note below (c).

GREENWICH.

(c) ITEM. one chamber pece blacke, the ſtocke of redde woode ſet with bone worke, with a fier locke in a caſe of crymſen vellet. Item. one longe white pece with a fier locke. Item. one longe pece graven and guilte, with a ſtocke of redde woode ſet with white bone with a fier locke in a caſe of lether. Item. two chamber peces guilt and graven, with a fier locke in a ſtocke of yellow. Item. one guilte chamber pece parcell guilt, with a redde ſtocke, with a fier locke in a caſe of purple vellet. Item. one lytle ſhorte pece, for a horſeman, of damaſkine worke, the ſtocke of woode and bone, ſet with a chamber. Item. one dagge with two peeces in one ſtock. Item. two backe ſwordes in a caſe of lether, and two letle dagges garniſhed with ſilver, parcell guilte and emaled, with knyves and bodkyns. Item. c. Italion peces, and everie one hys moulde, flaſke, touche boxe, and matche. Item. one horne for gonne powder, garniſhed with ſilver. Item. iii. grete flaſkes covered with vellet, and thre lytle touche boxes. Item. ii. longe ſmall cofers for gonnes. Item. a white tacke with a fier locke graven, and all the ſtock white bone; a great flaſke varniſhed and painted, a touche box of iron graven and gilded. Item. ii. tackes after the faſhion of a dagger,

THE firſt introduction of hand-guns into this kingdom was in the year 1471, when King Edward IV. landing at Ravenſpurg in Yorkſhire, brought with him, among other forces, three hundred Flemings, armed with "Hange-gunnes." This is an earlier date than has generally been aſſigned for that event. Among the Rev. Mr. Lamb's notes on the battle of Flodden is the following: "It is ſaid, that the firſt time muſkets were uſed in Britain was at the ſiege of Berwick, anno 1521, when they were called hand-cannon;" but for this report or tradition he cites no authority. Mr. Anderſon, in his Hiſtory of Commerce, gives the ſame date for that introduction.

THE harquebuſs is by Fauchet derived from the Italian arca bouza, or the bow with a hole (d). It does not appear that harquebuſſes were originally of any particular length or bore; the harquebuſs, as well as the hand-gun, hackbutt and dag, were at firſt fired with a match, and afterwards ſome of them with the wheel lock. The former, by a ſpring, let down a burning match upon the priming in the pan, and the latter was a contrivance for exciting ſparks of fire, by the friction of a notched wheel of ſteel, which grated againſt a flint; theſe wheels were wound up with an inſtrument called a ſpanner (e).

---

dagger, with fier lockes verniſhed, with redde ſtockes, ſhethes covered with blacke vellet, garniſhed with ſilver, and guilt, with purſes, flaſkes and touch boxes of black vellet garnyſhed with iron guilte. Item. ii. tackes hafted like a knyff with fier locks, and doble lockes a pece, th'one graven parcell guilte, and tother vernyſhed with two purſes, two flaſkes, and two touch boxes of black vellet, th'one garniſhed with iron and guilt.

TOWN of BERWICK. Demy hackes ſtocked 50. Hand gonnes unſtocked 80. Hornes with purſes, and without purſes 20. Moulds for ſaid hackes 100.

ALNWICK CASTLE. Hagbuttes of croke of yrone 2. Hagbuttes well ſtocked 20.

(d) CET inſtrument s'appella depuis haquebute, & maintenant a pris le nom de harquebuze: que ceux qui penſent le nom eſtre Italien luy ont donné: comme qui déroit Arc á trou, que les Italiens appellent *Bouzo*, finablement ces baſtons ont eſté reduits a un pied & moins de longeur: & lors ils ſont nommez piſtolles & piſtolets, pour avoir premierement eſté faits a Piſtoye. *Livre de L'Origine des Armes, &c.* p. 57.

(e) FATHER DANIEL, vol. I. p. 465. has the following deſcription of a wheel lock. Les arquebuſes & les piſtolets a rouet ſont oujourdhui des armes fort inconnues, & l'on n'en

trove

THE balls were carried in a bag or purſe, the powder in a horn or flaſk, and the priming, which was of a finer ſort of mealed powder, in a touch-box; this powder was called ſerpentine powder, from the part of the match lock that held the match, denominated the ſerpentine.

THE petronel, or poitrinal, according to Fauchet, was the medium between the harquebuſs and the piſtol. Nicot defines it in his dictionary, as a ſpecies of harquebuſs ſhorter than the muſquet, but of a greater calibre, which, on account of its great weight, was carried on a large bauldrick, worn croſs the ſhoulders like a faſh, and when fired was reſted on the breaſt of the perſon who uſed it.

IN the eſtimate of an army made in 1620, before mentioned, petrinells with firelocks, flaſkes, touch-boxes, and caſes, are charged at 1l. 8s. each.

THE muſquet was a heavier kind of harquebuſs, carrying alſo a larger ball. Sir Thomas Kellie, in his Art Militaire, publiſhed anno 1621, ſays, the barril of a muſquet ſhould be four feet in length, the bore capable of receiving bullets, twelve whereof weigh a pound (f). Muſquets were ſo heavy as to require a fork, called a reſt (g), to

---

trove guéres que dans les arſeneaux & dans les cabinets d'Armes où l'on en a conſervé quelques uns par curioſité; ainſi je dois expliquer ce que cêtoit que ce rouet qui donnoit le mouvement á tous les reſtorts.

C'ETOIT une petite roue ſolide d'acier qu'on appliquoit contre la platine de l'Arquebuſe ou d'un piſtolet: elle avoit un eſſieu qui la percoit dans ſon centre. Au bout interieure de l'eſſieu qui entroit dans la platine étoit attachée une chainette qui s'entortilloit autour de cet eſſieu, quand on le faiſoit tourner, & bandoit le reſſort auquel elle tenoit. Pour bander le reſſort ou ſe ſervoit dune clef oú lon enſeroit le bout exterieur de l'eſſieu. En tournant cette clef de gauche a droit, ou faiſoit tourner le Rouet; & par ce mouvement une petite couliſſe de cuivre qui couvroit le baſſinet de l'amorce, ſe retiroit de deſſus le baſſinet. Par le même mouvement le chien armé d'une pierre de mine, comme le chien du fuſil l'eſt dune pierre a fuſil, etoit on état d'être lâché dès que l'on tireroit avec le doigt la détente comme dans les piſtolets ordinaires; alors le chien tombant ſur le rouet d'acier faiſoit feu, & le donnoit a a l'amorce.

(f) SOME antient muſquets carried balls of ten to the pound.

(g) RESTS were of different lengths, according to the heights of the men who were to uſe

ſupport them when preſented in order to fire; ſometimes theſe reſts were armed with a contrivance called a ſwine's feather, which was a ſort of ſword blade, or tuck, that iſſued from the ſtaff of the reſt, at the head; this being placed before the muſqueteers when loading, ſerved, like the ſtakes placed before the archers, to keep off the cavalry: theſe preceded the uſe of the bayonet; the invention of which originated in the ſoldiers ſticking the handles of their daggers into the muzzles of their pieces, when they had diſcharged all their ammunition. Muſquets were fired with match locks; muſqueteers of the reign of James and Charles I. carried their powder in little wooden, tin, or leather cylindric boxes, each containing one charge.

TWELVE of theſe, fixed to a belt worn over the left ſhoulder, were called bandileers; this contrivance ſeems to have been borrowed from the Dutch or Walloons (h). To prevent the matches from being

---

uſe them; they were ſhod with ſharp iron ferrils, for ſticking them into the ground, and were on the march, when the muſquet was ſhouldered, carried in the right hand, or hung upon it by means of a ſtring or loop tied under the head.

" MUSKET-RESTS were uſed a long time, and in ſome places are yet, to eaſe the muſket-
" eers in diſcharging their guns, and when they ſtood centinel; but in the late expeditions
" in moſt places of Chriſtendom, they have been found more troubleſome than helpful.
" A muſketeer in any ſudden occaſion not being well able to do his duty with muſket,
" ſword, and reſt, eſpecially if you give him a Sweediſh feather to manage with them.
" Bockler, the engineer, ſpeaks of an inſtrument that might ſerve for both reſt and feather,
" and ſuch perhaps would be very uſeful and convenient; he would have it at the top as all
" reſts are, like a fork on the one ſide, whereof he would have an iron of one foot and a
" half long ſticking out ſharply pointed; theſe planted in the van or flanks, where you ex-
" pect the charge, as the Sweediſh feathers uſed to be, will ſufficiently palliſade and defend
" a body of muſketeers from horſe, and upon them they may lean their muſkets when they
" give fire." *Turner's Pallas Armata*. p. 176.

THE Duke of Albemarle in his obſervations upon Military and Political Affairs, printed anno 1671, recommends the arming muſqueteers and dragoons with muſquets having ſwines' feathers, with the heads of reſts faſtened to them. A part of a reſt that contained a ſwine's feather is ſhewn in the miſcellaneous plate; it was formerly in the collection of the Rev. Mr. Goſtling of Canterbury.

(h) " AND therefore thoſe ſouldiers which in our time have beene for the moſt part levied
" in the lowe countries, eſpecially thoſe of Artoyes and Henault, called by the generall name
" of

ſeen in the night, ſmall tubes of tin, or copper, pierced full of holes, were invented, it is ſaid, by a Prince of Orange, probably Prince Maurice: they are deſcribed by Walhuyſen (i). It is neceſſary, ſays he, that every muſqueteer knows how to carry his match dry in moiſt and rainy weather, that is, in his pocket; or in his hat, by putting the lighted match between his head and hat; or by ſome other means to guard it from the weather. The muſqueteer ſhould alſo have a little tin tube of about a foot long, big enough to admit a match, and pierced full of little holes, that he may not be diſcovered by his match when he ſtands centinel, or goes on any expedition; this was the origin of the match-boxes, till lately worn by our grenadiers.

In the eſtimate for a royal army in 1620, a muſquet with bandeliers and reſt is valued at 1l. os. 8d., and by the council of war in the 7th of Charles I. 18s. 10d., thus made out:

	s.	*d.*
For a new muſquet with mould, worm, and ſcowrer -	15	6
For a muſquet-reſt - - - - - -	0	10
For a new bandelier with twelve charges, a primer, a priming-wire, a bullet-bag, and a ſtrap, or belt, of two inches in breadth - - - - - -	2	6

" of Wallownes, have uſed to hang about their neckes, upon a baudrick or border, or at their " girdles, certain pipes which they call charges, of copper and tin made with covers, which " they thinke in ſkirmiſh to bee the moſt readie way. But the Spaniard deſpiſing that order, " doth altogether uſe his flaſke." *Davis's Art of War*, p. 8.

" To a muſketier belongs alſo a bandilier of leather, at which he ſhould have hanging " eleven or twelve ſhot of powder, a bag for his ball, a primer, and a cleanſer. But it is " thirty years ago ſince I ſaw theſe laid aſide in ſome German armies; for it is impoſſible " for ſoldiers, eſpecially wanting cloaks (and more want cloaks than have any), to keep " theſe flaſhes, though well and ſtrongly made, from ſnow and rain, which ſoon ſpoils " them, and ſo makes the powder altogether uſeleſs: beſides the noiſe of them betray thoſe " who carry them, in all ſurprizals, anſlachts, and ſudden enterprizes." *Turner's Pallas Armata*, p. 176.

(i) L'Art Militaire pour l'Infanterie, &c. par Jean Jaques de Walhauſen, principal capitaine des gardes, & capitaine de la lovable ville de Dantzig, &c. en folio, p. 136. *Printed in* 1615.

A MORE ſimple kind of lance-reſt than thoſe repreſented in plate 31 were in uſe in Germany and Italy. Theſe were only formed by a hook, faſtened to the right ſide of the breaſt-piece, into which the lance was laid. A reſt of this kind is ſhewn in plate 43; but from the plate being reverſed, appears on the left ſide inſtead of the right.

THE caliver was a lighter kind of muſquet with a match-lock, and was made to be fired without a reſt. It ſeems either to have acquired its name from being of a certain approved bore or calibre, emphatically ſtiled, by way of eminence, the calibre, according to that mode of expreſſion, whereby we teſtify our approbation of any machine or contrivance, by ſaying it is *the thing*, or from the term "a piece of calibre," being reſtricted to thoſe not under a certain bore; juſt as the appellation of a horſe of ſize, is confined to a tall horſe not leſs than fifteen hands high, although every other horſe is undoubtedly a horſe of ſize, either great or ſmall. From calibre it was corrupted to caliver. That this was, in ſome meaſure, the caſe, we learn from Edmund York, an officer who had ſerved in the Low-countries, and was employed by Queen Elizabeth to drill the militia of London, at the time theſe kingdoms were threatened with the Spaniſh Invaſion. "I remember," ſays he, "when I was firſt brought up in Piemont, "in the countie of Briſacks regiment of Old Bandes, we had our par- "ticular calibre of harquebuſe to our regiment, both for that one "bullet ſhould ſerve all the harquebuſes of our regiment, as for that "our colonel ſhould not be deceived of his arms; of which word calibre "come firſt that unapt term we uſe to call a harquebuſe a calliver, "which is the height of the bullet and not of the piece. Before the "battle of Moungunter, the princes of the religion cauſed ſeveral "thouſand harquebuſes to be made, all of one calibre, which was "called harquebuſe de calibre de Monſieur le Prince; ſo I think "ſome man, not underſtanding French, brought hither the name of "the height of the bullet of the piece, which word calibre is yet con- "tinued with our good canoniers (k)." Sir John Smith (l) gives the

(k) MAITLAND's Hiſtory of London, vide Artillery.

(l) SIR JOHN SMITH's Confutation of Captain Berwick, MSS. No. 4685. B. Muſeum

following definition of a caliver, which ſeems rather to fall in with my ſecond conjecture. His words are, "It is ſuppoſed by many that "the weapon, called a caliver, is another thing than a harquebuſe; "whereas, in troth, it is not; but only a harquebuſe; ſavinge, that "it is of greater circuite, or bullet, than the other is of; wherefore "the Frenchman doth call it a peece de calibre; which is as much "as to ſaie, a peece of bigger circuite." From this it ſeems as if a caliver was a harquebuſe of a certain calibre, or bore, larger than that of the common ones. That it was leſs and lighter than a muſquet is evident, from its being fired without a reſt (m), as is ſhewn in a military treatiſe, containing the exerciſe of the muſquet, caliver, and pike, with figures finely engraved by J. de Gheyn. The explanations were originally in Dutch, but were tranſlated into Engliſh, and printed with the ſame plates for the uſe of King Charles I.

Pecke, in his Deſiderata Curioſa, has preſerved the price of a caliver and its accoutrements, as paid in Queen Elizabeth's time by the ſheriff of Lancaſhire, anno 1584, for the uſe of recruits raiſed for the Iriſh ſervice; which was, the caliver furniſhed with flaſke and touche box, laces and moulds, thirteen ſhillings and ſixpence.

In an eſtimate made 18th James I., anno 1620, of the expences of a royal army of thirty thouſand men, intended to be ſent into the Palatinate (n); a caliver with bandaleers is valued at fourteen ſhillings and ten pence.

A currier was another kind of piece formerly uſed, chiefly I believe in ſieges. Very little is ſaid of it by military writers. It is once or twice mentioned in Lord Wentworth's Letter to Queen Mary, re-

(m) This is confirmed by a paſſage in Shakeſpeare, where Falſtaff, reviewing his recruits, ſays of Wart, a poor weak underſized fellow, "Put me a caliver into Wart's hands," &c. meaning that, although Wart is unfit for a muſketeer, yet if armed with a lighter piece he may do good ſervice.

(n) This eſtimate was made by a committee conſiſting of the Earls of Oxenford, Eſſex and Leiceſter; Viſcount Wilmot; Lords Danvers and Caufield; Sir Edward Cecil and Sir Richard Morriſon, Knts. and Captain John Bingham, which met at the Old Council Chamber, in Whitehall. Their report is in the Britiſh Muſeum among the Harleian MSS. marked 5109; the army propoſed was to conſiſt of 25,000 foot, 5,000 horſe, and twenty pieces of artillery.

ſpecting the ſiege of Calais, among the ſtate-papers, publiſhed by Lord Hardwick.

From the following paſſages in Sir John Smith's animadverſions on the writings of Captain Berwick (o), it appears, that a currier was of the ſame calibre and ſtrength as a harquebuſs, but had a longer barrel. His words are—" but yet in one thinge his lack of conſi-" deracion is to be noted, and that is, that he doth make no diſtinc-" tion nor difference betwixt a currier and a harquebuze, in the " which he is greatly deceived; for in thoſe there is as great or more " difference betwixt a currier of warre and a harquebuze, in the length " of cannon, and for ſhooting, as there is betwixt a harquebuze and " a mouſquet, which I perceive by his writing he doth not conſider " of, and therefore doe overpaſſe the ſame." And in another place—" ſo likewiſe, of a harquebuze and a currier, both renforced back-" ward as they ought to be, and of one caliver heighthe of bullet; " and the currier in reſpect of the greate lengthe, muſt have a greater " advantage and quantitie of powder to appulſe and impulſe the " bullet to his fardeſt object marke within point blanke; then the " harquebuze to impulſe his bullet to his furdeſt object marke; and " all this in reſpect to the different lengthes of the pieces, being in " the reſt of one caliver and renforced alike."

Markham, in his Souldiers Accidence, publiſhed in 1648, p. 37, mentions a kind of piece I do not recollect to have met with elſe-where, which he calls a dragon; and, in his direction for arming the dragon, thus deſcribes it: " And for offenſive arms they have a fayre " dragon fitted with an iron work to be carried in a belt of leather, " which is buckled over the right ſhoulder, and under the left arm; " having a turnell of iron with a ring through which the piece run-" neth up and downe, and theſe dragons are ſhort pieces, of ſixteen " inches the barrell, and full muſquet bore, with firelocks or ſnap-" haunces (p)."

(o) Harleian MSS. No. 4685.

(p) The piece derived its name from the ſpecies of ſoldiers by whom it was carried, who

With this weapon I ſhall cloſe the deſcription of armour and arms, and next endeavour to point out the various changes they have undergone, whether occaſioned by ſtatutes, royal ordonnances, or other cauſes, with the dates when thoſe changes happened. For the convenience of artiſts, I ſhall alſo deſcribe the armour and weapons, with which the different kinds of ſoldiers ſhould be repreſented at the three following periods, viz. about the time of Henry II., the reign of Henry VI., and that of Charles II.

Although the particular kinds of armour and weapons uſed by the Engliſh, about the time of the Norman invaſion, is not deſcribed by any writer of that time; yet it is certain they were defenſively armed, and even heavily, for which we have the teſtimony of Ingulphus; who relates, that in the year 1063 King Edward having ſent an army, under the command of Harrold, Earl of the Weſt Saxons, againſt the Welch, that General obſerving his men were unable from the weight of their armour to overtake the enemy, who having committed their depredations ſuddenly retired, cauſed them to uſe armour of boiled, or jacked leather, and other light defences. That the heavy armour here mentioned was of mail, there is every reaſon to believe. Mail was a contrivance of very great antiquity; it was known to the Saxons, and worn by their princes and great men (q); it was alſo uſed by the Danes, and conſidering the vicinity of the kingdoms of England and France, and the conſtant intercourſe between them, might be imported, or the art of making it acquired by Engliſh workmen. The Engliſh had alſo helmets and ſhields; their offenſive weapons were the ſpear, the ſword, and the battle ax; the bowe was not then in general uſe.

The defenſive armour of a Norman knight, about this time, and

---

to this day are, in France, called and ſpelt dragons, and were from the celerity of their movements compared to the fabulous monſter of that name. Dragons, or dragoons, were originally not conſidered as cavalry, but only as infantry mounted for the ſake of being ſpeedily tranſported from one place to another. The ſnaphaunce is the Dutch name for the preſent locks uſed to our pieces.

(q) Mail is mentioned in the will of Prince Æthelſtan, p. 263. *note* (*u*).

long after the conqueſt, conſiſted of a helmet, a hawberk, or complete ſuit of mail, the gambeſon, the plaſtron, and ſur-coat of arms; this laſt was a looſe garment of ſilk or ſattin lined, and frequently embroidered, much in form reſembling a carter's frock, but without ſleeves, and reaching only to the middle of the thigh.

THE helmets then chiefly worn were either of a conical, or a pyramidical figure open before, the latter having a ſmall plate, or naſal of iron or braſs, projecting over the noſe to defend it from the ſtroke of a broad ſword. William the Conqueror is repreſented with the conical helmet, on two of his great ſeals publiſhed by Sandford (r). Many of the principal figures in the Bayeux tapeſtry have pyramidical helmets, with the naſals beforementioned. William, Earl of Mellent and Worceſter, who lived in the middle of the twelfth century, is alſo repreſented in a pyramidical helmet and naſal (s); theſe, as well as moſt of the other helmets of that time, appear to be generally worn over hoods of mail, which guarded the neck (t).

ANOTHER kind of helmet ſeems ſhortly after to have been in faſhion, both in England and France; its form was nearly that of a cylinder, and ſometimes of a truncated cone, the baſe upwards; both were flat on the top. Theſe flat helmets, Montfaucon ſays, were in uſe during the age of St. Louis (u), but being ſoon after left off were never revived (x). Indeed, as he juſtly obſerves, it was the worſt form that could have been adopted, as a ſtroke of a ſword or mace would fall with its full force on that flat ſurface, whereas on a conical or pyramidical helmet both thoſe weapons would either glance off, or act

(r) SEE thoſe helmets, fig. 1 and 2, plate 9, and ſeveral others here mentioned.

(s) SEE fig. 3, plate 9.

(t) WHEN the wearer of one of theſe pyramidical helmets had occaſion to drink, or wiſhed to uncover his face, to breathe freely or converſe, it was effected by thruſting back the helmet, by which the naſal was raiſed up almoſt parallel with the horizon; an inſtance of this may be ſeen in the Bayeux tapeſtry.

(u) MONARCH. Franc.

(x) ST. LOUIS died 1270, he was contemporary with Henry III.; ſome of theſe flat helmets laſted in England till the reign of Edward II., at leaſt are to be ſeen on tombs of that date.

obliquely. Many of our kings, great barons, and knights, are repreſented on their coins, ſeals and tombs with theſe cylindric head-pieces. On them kings wore their crowns, which originally were meant as diſtinguiſhing helmets, and great men different ornaments and devices; from behind them there ſometimes hung a kind of ſtreamer called a ſouleret (y).

THE ſhields uſed at this period by the cavalry were large, triangular, and convex; their weapons were the ſword, ſpear, and long bow.

THE horſes of the knights when equipped for war, were barded with iron or jacked leather to defend them from wounds; for, as the laming or killing a horſe would effectually render the knight unfit for ſervice, that would undoubtedly be always attempted; but as on the contrary, at tournaments, it was againſt the laws of chivalry to ſtrike a horſe; they were on thoſe occaſions, and in ſolemn proceſſions or entries, capariſoned or covered with ſilk or velvet bards, embroidered with armorial bearings or other ornaments.

THE infantry wore coats of mail, aketons, and open bacinets. They had ſhields, ſome round and ſome ſquare, and made of hurdles covered with leather; ſome of the round ſhields were remarkably conical (z), and armed with a projecting ſpike: their weapons were ſwords, ſpears, clubs, battle-axes, and the long bow.

THE armour and weapons in uſe at the time of Edward I. may be collected from the ſtatute of Wincheſter, made the 13th of that reign, where the particular ſpecies for every rank are ſpecified.

BY this ſtatute, every man having lands of the value of fifteen

---

(y) ALTHOUGH the conical, pyramidical, and cylindric helmets were chiefly worn about the twelfth century; yet there were ſome of a different ſhape. John, ſon of Richard I., afterwards King John, is repreſented on his great ſeal in Sandford, with a round helmet, like thoſe of more modern date; it is open before except the covering of a naſal. See it fig. 4. p. 9.

(z) SEVERAL ſpecimens of theſe may be ſeen in the Bayeux tapeſtry; the round ſhields of later times were frequently concave.

pounds (a), and chattels of forty marks, was bound to keep a haubergeon, an iron head-piece called a chapel, a ſword, a dagger, and a horſe. Thoſe poſſeſſing ten pounds in land, and twenty ſhillings in chattels, a haubergeon, chapel of iron, ſword and dagger. Perſons having an hundred ſhillings in land, were to keep a doublet (b), a chapel of iron, a ſword and dagger. Such as had from forty ſhillings in land to any ſum leſs than an hundred ſhillings, a ſword (c), bow and arrows, and a dagger. Perſons poſſeſſing leſs than forty ſhillings land, to keep faulchions, giſarmes, daggers, and other inferior weapons; thoſe who had only chattels under the value of twenty marks, to have ſwords, daggers, and other inferior weapons. In this regulation there are two remarkable circumſtances, one that the horſeman is not armed with a lance, and the other that a ſhield is not mentioned, either for him, or thoſe of the inferior degrees; theſe regulations were, it is true, made more with a view to the preſervation of the internal peace of the kingdom againſt ſudden commotions, than for the regular purpoſes of war; they were, however, occaſionally to ſerve for both; the lance and ſhield were among the arms directed to be kept by the country people in France, as is ſhewn by the verſes in the note below, quoted by Fauchet, from an antient poem witten about the time of St. Louis, called the furniture of a villain, or villager (d).

(a) The ſtatute does not explain whether the annual value is meant, or that of the fee ſimple.

(b) Pourpoint, a haqueton, or jacket of defence.

(c) Thoſe who were to keep bows and arrows might have them out of the foreſt; a review of theſe arms to be made twice a year by two conſtables out of every hundred, who were to report the defaulters to the juſtices, and they to preſent them to the king.

(d) Si le convient armer
Por la terre garder
Coterel & Haunet
Et Macue & Guibet,
Arc & lance enfumée
Quil nait ſoin de meſlée
Avec lui ait couchiée
Leſpee enroüille, &c.
Puis ait ſon viel Eſcu
A la parrois pendu.
A ſon col' le doit pendre,
Pour la terre deffendre
Quand il vient Oſt banie.

THE hawberk and haubergeon long continued almoſt the ſole defenſive armour of this country; the firſt material change that happened reſpecting it was the introduction of plate-armour, that is, armour compoſed of plates of iron rivetted together; but as this change was not brought about by the mandate of the ſovereign, or any publick ordonnance or regulation, it naturally took place but ſlowly, and by degrees; a ſtriking proof of this may be gathered from an entry in our publick records, whence we learn that plate-armour was known in England two years (e) before the ſtatute of Wincheſter was enacted; yet by that ſtatute, the uſe of the haubergeon was directed, beſides which, many monuments and ſeals ſhew that the general uſe of mail-armour continued long after that period, and that it was even uſed with the plate-armour (f).

Two reaſons probably conſpired to check the progreſs of this innovation, one, the great price of a ſuit of plate-armour, which therefore could be purchaſed only by men of fortune; the other, that attachment which moſt men have for their antient cuſtoms and faſhions, and the great reluctance with which they exchange them for new inventions. Fauchet ſays, this change happened in the year 1330; father Daniel does not entirely ſubſcribe to that opi-

---

(e) FROM an entry in the Eſcheat roll of the 11th of Edward I., quoted in Blount's Tenures, it appears that Painell de Chaworth was found ſeized of four hundred acres of land in Eaſt Gaveſton, in the county of Berks, held by the ſervice of finding a knight armed in plate armour in the king's army, when it ſhould be in the territory of Kidwelley, in Wales.

IF the ſuit of armour ſhewn in the Tower (ſee plate 14.) was really what it is ſaid to have been, that is, the armour of John de Courcy, Earl of Ulſter in Ireland, brought with him to the Tower; it will prove that plate armour was in uſe as early as 1204, the date of his confinement; indeed, it is moſt probable, that plate armour was known and uſed by princes and great men from the time of the Romans; but not commonly adopted.

(f) MAIL was never entirely left off; ſleeves and guſſets of mail being worn long after the common uſe of plate armour. Many antient knights ſeem to have worn a ſhirt of mail under their cuiraſſes, as in their figures on monuments; it is ſeen both below their taſſets and round their necks, ſerving in the place of a gorget. Mail is recommended by ſome military writers as late as the middle of the 16th century.

nion (g). Plate-armour was, however, completely introduced both here and in France about the middle of the fourteenth century.

It ſeems moſt likely that the exchange of the hawberk for plate-armour, was firſt occaſioned by the inſufferable heat and incumbrance of the former, and its appendages; for though the plate-armour was undoubtedly heavier than the hawberk (h), it was by no means ſo ſweltering and cumberſome; the heat of the gambeſon and fur-coat alone, without reckoning the plaſtron and hawberk, were more than a man could well bear in the throng and duſt of an engagement, particularly in ſummer; and indeed we read of more than one inſtance of knights being ſuffocated in their armour.

Another innovation of an inferior kind, but prior in its date, aroſe from the re-introduction or revival of the croſs-bow, which had been for ſome time laid aſide in obedience to a decree of the ſecond Lateran council held in 1139 (i), afterwards confirmed by Pope Innocent III.

This weapon was again introduced into our armies by King Richard I., who being ſlain with a quarrel ſhot from one of them, at the ſiege of the caſtle of Chaluz in Normandy, it was conſidered as a judgment from Heaven inflicted upon him for his impiety (k).

(g) Tout ces faits prouvent que ce changement d'armure & du Hauber á quoi ſucceda l'armure fait de pur fer, commença au plutard ſous Phillipe Le Bel; & il eſt vrai auſſi que ſous Phillipe de Valois l'armure de fer fut preſque ſeul en uſage. Froiſſart que je viens de citer, qui vivoit ſous le Regne de ce prince, & qui a écrit l'hiſtoire de ce tems la, ne fait guéres mention de Haubers, & ne parle par tout que des armures de fer. P. Daniel Hiſt. de la Mil. Franc. vol. 1. p. 396.

(h) The weight of a complete ſuit of proof armour is from ſixty to ſeventy-five pounds; the weight of Mr. Green's hawberk, helmet included, is only thirty-five pounds. See plate 21.

(i) Artem illam mortiferam & Deo odibilem balliſtariorum & ſagittariorum adverſus Chriſtianos & Catholicos exerceri de cætero ſub anathemate prohibemus. Can. 29.

This prohibition was obſerved under the reign of Louis the Young, and in the beginning of that of Philipe Auguſte, but afterwards no regard was paid to it, neither in France nor in England, notwithſtanding that Innocent III. had renewed it, and again recommended the obſervance of it.

(k) Guilliaume le Breton, relating the death of this king, puts the following into the mouth of Atropos one of the Parcæ. L. 5. Philipid.

Hac

THE croſs-bow is by ſome ſaid to be of Sicilian origin; others aſcribe the invention of it to the Cretans; it is ſuppoſed to have been introduced into France by ſome of the firſt cruſaders. The croſs-bow is mentioned by the Abbé Suger in the life of Louis le Gros, as being uſed by that prince in the beginning of his reign (l). Louis le Gros aſcended the throne of France in the year 1108; he was contemporary with king Henry I.

VERSTEGAN ſeems to attribute the introduction of the croſs-bow into England to the Saxons under Hengiſt and Horſa, but cites no authority to ſupport that ſuppoſition. In a print repreſenting the landing of thoſe generals, the foremoſt of them is delineated with a croſs-bow on his ſhoulder. Of this print the author ſays, "And be-" cauſe theſe noble gentlemen were the firſt bringers in, and con-" ductors of the anceſtors of Engliſhmen into Britaine, from whence " unto their poſterity the poſſeſſion of the countrey hath enſued, I " thought fit here in pourtraiture to ſet down their firſt arrivall, " therewithall to ſhewe the manner of the apparell which they wore, " the weapons which they uſed, and the banner or enſign firſt by " them there ſpread in the field (m)." Some writers ſay, William the Conqueror had croſs-bows in his army at the battle of Haſtings.

AFTER the revival of this weapon by Richard I. it was much uſed in our armies. In the liſt of forces raiſed by King Edward II. againſt the Scots, anno 1322, the croſs-bow men make the ſecond article in the enumeration of the different kinds of ſoldiers of which it conſiſted (n).

Hac volo, non alia Richardum morte perire
Ut qui Franci genis balliſtæ primitus uſum
Tradidit, ipſe ſui rem primitus experiatur,
Quamque alios docuit, in ſe vim ſentiat artis.

(l) SEE Pere Daniel. Hiſt. de la Mil. Fr. vol. 1. p. 425.

(m) RESTITUTION of decayed Intelligence, p. 117.

(n) TITULUS de vadiis tam peditum, baliſtariorum, lanceatorum & ſagittariorum Angliæ, Walliæ & Vaſcon; quam quorundam hominum ad arma et hobelariorum, retentorum ad vadia

THE croſs-bow was alſo conſidered as a royal weapon; Gerard de la Warre is recorded as being croſs-bow bearer to Henry III.; and diverſe manors, lands, and tenements were held by finding croſs-bows, ſtrings, or the materials for making them, for our different kings (o). King Henry VII. uſed frequently to exerciſe himſelf in ſhooting with a croſs-bow for wagers; ſeveral ſums loſt by him to his courtiers are entered in the book belonging to the Remembrancer's office, before quoted. Notwithſtanding which, a ſtatute was made in the nineteenth year of that king's reign forbidding the uſe of croſs-bows, as tending to leſſen the practice of archery with the long bow (p).

THE croſs-bow continued to be generally uſed in our armies, even ſo late as the year 1572, when Queen Elizabeth, in a treaty with King Charles IX. of France, engaged to furniſh him with ſix thouſand men, armed part with long-bows and part with croſs-bows. And in the attack of the iſle of Rhee by the Engliſh, anno 1627, ſome croſs-bows were ſtill ſaid to be in that army (q).

THE croſs-bow makers uſed to exerciſe themſelves and try their weapons at the popinjoy or artificial parrot, in a field called Taſſel-cloſe, in London, from the number of thiſtles growing there; this was afterwards hired by the Artillery Company, and is called the

---

vadia domini Regis Edwardi, filii Regis Edwardi in Guerra Scotiæ & alibi, a primo die Maii, anno quinto decimo, uſque Septimum diem Julii anno regni ejuſdem, ſexto decimo, finiente tempore. Rogeri de Waltham tunc cuſtodis, et Roberti de Baldok tunc contra-rotulatoris Garderobæ. MS. in the library of Thomas Aſtle, Eſq.

(o) SEE Blount's Tenures, a new edition of which, with many curious illuſtrations, has been lately publiſhed by Mr. Joſiah Beckwith.

(p) RASTELL's Stat. 19 H. 7. c. 4.

(q) THE monthly wages of a croſs bowe maker, a yeoman and groom of the croſſe bowes, are charged in the expences of Henry VIII. an. 38. in the curious MSS. in the Remembrancer's office, the firſt 10s. 4d., the ſecond 20s. 8d., the third 10s. 4d. And in the hiſtory of the firſt fourteen years of King James I. among the artificers of the ordnance, is Rodger Choven, croſs bowe maker, with a ſallery of 4d. per diem.

Old Artillery Ground (r). Croſs-bows were uſed by the fraternity of St. George (s).

Sir John Smith ſays (t) he ſaw many large croſs-bows in the armoury of the grand maſter of Maltha, and in thoſe of many princes in Germany, ſuch as no armour nor target could reſiſt, although capable of turning a muſket ball, ſhooting quarrels of ſuch bigneſs with ſquare tempered heads, ſome of them three inches long.

The ſhield, although it was not entirely relinquiſhed ſo long as the uſe of the long and croſs-bows continued, ſeems to have undergone ſome alteration in its form, the triangular or heater ſhield gradually giving place to thoſe of a circular or rectangular figure; ſhields were firſt left off by the cavalry; they were, however, uſed in the army of King Edward I. at the ſiege of Karlaverok in the year 1300 (u).

(r) See Maitland's Hiſtory of London.

(s) The king (i. e. Hen. VIII.) having reſtrained the annual cuſtom of the city watch, owing to its great expence, endeavoured to preſerve the manly exerciſe of ſhooting, by granting a charter to the company of Archers, who were called the fraternity of St. George, by which they had the power to uſe and exerciſe ſhooting at all manner of marks, as well in the city as ſuburbs, with long bows, croſs bows, and hand guns, with theſe clauſes, that in caſe any perſons were ſhot or ſlain in theſe ſports by an arrow ſhot by one of theſe archers, the ſhooter was not to be ſued or moleſted, if he had immediately before the ſhot uſed the common word *faſt*. The chieftain of theſe archers was called Prince Arthur, and the reſt of them his knights; the principal place of exerciſing this ſport was Mile End, where they were frequently honoured with the preſence of the king himſelf. *Chamberlain's Hiſt of London, p.* 192.

(t) Sir John Smith's Confutation of Captain Barwick. MSS. No. 4685. Harl. Collect. Britiſh Muſeum.

(u) Lors i peuſt on revoir,
Auſſi eſpes pieres chaoior;
Com ſi on en deuſt poudrer,
E chapeaus et heaumes offronder,
Ecus et targes depeſcier.

And in another place,

Car meinte targe freſchement,
Peinte, et guarnie richement,

Meinte

Mr. Pennant, in his Journey to Snowden, ſpeaking of Wales in the time of Henry IV., ſays, as a proof of the high value of arms, and that we had few manufactures of that kind; a two-handed ſword was valued at ten ſhillings, a one-handed at ſix ſhillings and eight-pence, and a ſteel buckler at two ſhillings and eight-pence: but what is very ſingular, a bow which themſelves could make, was valued at ſixteen pence, and an arrow at ſix-pence (x).

A sort of ſhields were worn by the Scots at the battle of Muſſelborough, the firſt of Edward VI., which Paton thus deſcribes: "Nye "this place of Onſet, whear the Scottes at their runninge away had "let fall their weapons (as I ſayd), thear found we beſyde their "common manner of armour, certeyn nice inſtruments for war (as "we thought), and they were nue boardes endes cut of, being aboute "a foote in breadth and half a yarde in lengthe, havyng on the "inſyde handels made very cunningly of two cordes endes; theſe, "a God's name, wear their targettes againe the ſhot of our ſmall "artillerie, for they wear not able to hold canon. And with theſe "found we great rattels ſwellyng bygger than the belly of a pottle "pot, covered with old parchment, or dooble papers, ſmall ſtones "put into them to make noys, and ſet upon the ende of a ſtaff of "more than two ells long, and this was their fyne devyſe to fray "our horſes, when our horſemen ſhoulde cum at them. Howbeit, "becauſe the ryders were no babyes, nor the horſes no colts: they "could neyther duddle the t'one, nor fray the toother, ſo that the "pollecye was as witles as their powr forceles."

Among the artificers in the pay of Henry VIII., in the 38th year of his reign, is a buckler maker, Geffrey Bromfield, whoſe quarter's

---

Meinte heaume et meint chapeau burni,
Meint riche gamboiſon guarni,
De ſoie et Cadas et cotoun
En lour venue veiſt on.

Siege of Karlaverok. MSS. Bib. Cotton Caligula A. XVIII.

(x) Journey to Snowden, p. 86.

wages are there charged 15s. 2d. (y) Shields or bucklers ſeem to have been uſed in affrays and private quarrels by perſons in the civil line, as late as the reigns of Elizabeth and King James I. Dugdale records an order made in the Temple in the firſt of Queen Elizabeth, that no fellow of that ſociety ſhould wear any ſword or buckler, or cauſe either to be borne after him into the town under the penalty of three ſhillings and four-pence for the firſt time, ſix ſhillings and eight-pence for the ſecond, and expulſion from the ſociety for the third (z). George Silver mentioning an affray that happened between an Engliſh and an Italian fencing-maſter, ſays, the former was armed with a ſword and buckler, the latter with a two-handed ſword (a). The common appellation for a quarrelſome or fighting fellow about that period, was a ſwaſh-buckler, that is, a breaker or claſher of bucklers (b).

MAURICE, prince of Orange, was a great advocate for the ſhield, and even attempted to revive the uſe of it. His company of Dutch guards were armed with targets and roundels, and he formed a regular plan of exerciſe for them. A book in folio, containing all the motions for both, finely engraved, and accompanied with explanations in French, was publiſhed by his order, anno 1618 (c).

THE target and broad ſword were the favourite arms of the Scotch highlanders as late as the year 1746, and even after; for I remember many private men of the old highland regiment in Flanders in the

---

(y) MSS. in the office of the Remembrancer of the Exchequer.

(z) DUGDALE's Origin. Jurid. p. 345.

(a) GEORGE SILVER's Paradoxes of Defence. N. B. The copy here quoted wants the title and date.

(b) PHILIPS in his New World of Words, defines, to ſwaſh, to make fly about; to claſh, or make a noiſe with ſwords; and a ſwaſh-buckler, a vain glorious ſword player or fencer, a meer braggadochoe, a vapouring fellow.

(c) LE Maniement d'Armes de Naſſau avecq Rondelles, piques eſpees & targes, repreſentez par figures ſelon le nouveau ordere du tres illuſtre prince Maurice de Naſſau, &c. &c. par Adam van Breen, avec inſtruction par eſcript pour tous cappitaines & commandeurs nouvellement mis en lumiere, imprimé anno 1618.

years 1747 and 1748, armed with targets, which though no part of their uniform, they were permitted to carry.

Swords and bucklers were antiently borne before great military officers, as inſignia of their dignity; thoſe carried before King Edward III. in France, are ſhewn in Weſtminſter-abbey. The ſhield borne before the commandant of the forces on board the Spaniſh Armada is preſerved in the Tower, and a ſword was borne before the biſhop of Norwich as commander of the troops, with which he indented to ſerve King Richard II. (d). Moſt of the ornamented metal ſhields, and many of the very large ſwords, were deſigned for this uſe.

The application of gunpowder to projectile engines at firſt cauſed little or no alteration in the article of defenſive armour, ſince none could be made ſo ſtrong as to reſiſt a cannon ball, and the number of men who carried hand-guns, for a long time, bore a very ſmall proportion to thoſe armed with other weapons; that uſual predilection for antient uſages operating in this inſtance ſo ſtrongly againſt the admiſſion of theſe new weapons, that though artillery was, as it is ſaid, uſed at the battle of Creſſy, fought in the year 1346; the general introduction of ſmall arms was not thoroughly eſtabliſhed in England, at the time the kingdom was threatened with an invaſion by the Spaniſh Armada in 1588; a period of more than two hundred and forty years (e).

(d) See the rolls of Parliament, 7 R. II.

(e) Although the invention of gunpowder and its application to artillery and ſmall arms have been commonly ſuppoſed modern diſcoveries, there is great reaſon to believe they have both been very long known to, and uſed by the Chineſe, and other eaſtern people. Artillery is mentioned in the Gentoo code of Laws, ſuppoſed of very high antiquity; and our countryman, Friar Bacon, who lived before Bartholdus Swartz, particularly recites the compoſition of gunpowder, and ſays he learned it from a Greek writer. This invention, although by Milton, and other poets and writers, aſcribed to the devil, was, without doubt, a moſt fortunate diſcovery for mankind, and has greatly leſſened the ſlaughter and miſeries of war. Formerly when men engaged hand to hand, they were ſo intermingled that the only criterion of victory was the having no more of the enemy to kill; the duration of ſieges has alſo been conſiderably ſhortened ſince the uſe of gunpowder and artillery, by which the lives of many millions have been ſaved, who would otherwiſe have periſhed by hardſhips or diſeaſe, commonly in ſieges more fatal than the ſword.

In the 41ſt of Edward III., A.D. 1368, both plate and mail armour were worn, as may be gathered from the following inſtance recorded in Rymer. Thomas de Erſkine, and James the heir of William Douglas, of Degliemont, being engaged to fight a duel, according to the laws of Scotland, obtained a licence from King Edward directed to all ſheriffs, mayors, &c. to provide themſelves with the following armour and weapons in London. Thomas de Erſkine, a pair of plates (f), a bacinet, a pair of braſers (g), quiſſets (h) greeves, a chafron for a horſe, a dagger, a long ſword, a ſhort ſword, and a pair of iron gauntlets. James Douglas, a pair of plates, a haubergeon, a pair of ſteel gauntlets, a helmet, a pair of braſers, and long armour, and covering for two horſes; two daggers, and the head of a lance, with other armour for the ſaid duel (i).

The common armour for the infantry was in this, as in the preceding reigns, the aketon and baſſinet. Men thus equipped received a penny per diem more pay than thoſe without defenſive armour (k).

The armour worn about the time of King Henry VII. by both barons and knights, is deſcribed in an antient manuſcript in the college of arms already quoted (l), and as the camp equipage then deemed

---

(f) Breast and back plates.

(g) Brasers for the arms.

(h) Quissets for the thighs.

(i) As ſome ſtatutes in the reign of Edward III. and Richard II. regard armour, an abſtract of them is here given. By the 2d of Edward III., no perſon to ride armed, either by night or day in fairs, markets (nor in the preſence of the juſtices or other miniſters), upon pain to forfeit their armour to the king, and their bodies to priſon at the king's pleaſure.

Seventh of Richard II. chap. 13. None ſhall ride with harneſs, contra 2d Edward III., nor with *launcegays*, "the which launcegays be clerely put out within the ſaid realm as a "thing prohibited by our lord the king, upon pain of forfeiture of the ſaid launcegays, "armour, and other harneſs."

Twenty-first of Richard II. a confirmation of this ſtatute under the former penalties, with the additional ones of fine and impriſonment, excepting the king's officers and miniſters in doing their offices. In this act is moreover added, that no lord, knight, nor other, little nor great, ſhall go nor ride by night nor day armed, nor bear ſallet nor ſkull of iron.

(k) Roger de Waltham's account of the army ſent to Scotland, 1322.

(l) See note c. p. 277. this MS. is ſuppoſed to have been written about the time of Richard III. or Henry VII.

neceſſary for perſons of thoſe ranks is alſo there ſpecified, it is here tranſcribed at length, ſerving to ſhew the monſtrous quantity of baggage and number of ſervants of different denominations, with which our antient armies were encumbered.

Extract from a MS. l. 8. fol. 85. in the College of Arms.

Th' apparell for the feld for a baron in his ſouvereyn compeny, or for a baneret, or a ryche bacheler.

Oon whyte harneſſe complette w^t^ 2 hed peces according.

Item, 2 peyre of lege harneſſe.

Item, 2 peyre of gauntelets.

Item, a peyre of brygandyrons w^t^ foldes and flanchardes and ſtandards.

Item, 1 axe.

Item, 1 holebarte.

Item, 1 ſpere.

Item, a armyne ſwerde.

Item, a dager.

Item, 2 peyre of armyng ſpores.

Item, cayffs breches.

Item, a peyre of cofres for the harneys or gardeveynes.

Item, garnyſhe for your ſallat or elemet, w^t^ your devyſe for the creſt.

Item, a ſumpter hors for the armory.

Item, 2 or 3 courſers.

Item, a large amylyng hors to hymſelffe armed byſydes an hakeney or tweyne for to ryde at pleas^r^.

As for traper demy trapers of your armes, or of Seynt George, or of oder deyſe, or bardes peynted, hyt is more worſhyppfull than neceſſary.

Item, to remember hors herneſs of velvet of ledd, or of goldſmethes werke.

Also change of ſadell for your courſers, ſum covered w^t^ leder and

ſum wt velvet; item, for your hakeneys wt harneſſe according. Item, ſtuffe of harſhouſes 12, and furſyngles 12, of twyne, ſtore of gurthes, 12 tramelles, 12 par paſtrons, 13 halters, horſcombes 6, manecombes 6 wt ſponges, wateryng brydells, canvaſs for duſtinge cloths, portmares, bodekyns, halter, reyngnes, ledeyng reygnes; ſtore of double ſterrop leders, ſtore of horſay, and horſe nayles, 1 pere gilt ſterops, ſterropis of blacke vernyſhe werke.

Item, foure ſterrop lederes for herynſmen.

Item, ſockets for ſtandards or baners.

Item, ſpores for heynſmen.

Item, a charyett ſtrongly made wt hors and draught harneys according wt byndyng and braying ropes. Supterclothe wt your armes or badge. Item, a hyd of whytleder, or at the leſt half a hyd for mendynd of your drawgharneys, ſupterhorſe wt the ſadelles wanteys and long ledyng reynes.

Item, a cart, or a charyet for your tentes and pavylions.

Spere ſhaftes, bowes, arrowes, bow ſtreynges, bylles, and a cart to carry them.

M. a pavylion for your ſelf.

Item, a hale for horſes.

Item, a hale for your ſervantes.

Item, cotes of your armes for yourſelf and for your pſuivant.

Item, a penon of your armes.

Item, ſtandardes of your devyſe.

Item, logyng ſtandard.

Item, logyng ſcotchyns.

Item, pencells for your ſpeers.

Item, connoyſaunce betyn in oyle colour for your carriage.

Officers neceſſaries—a chappeleyn, that to the maſſe belongeth, harberours, purveyours for your ſtable and for your vitayles, a barber, ſurgeon, a ſmythe wt his neceſſaries, a ſadeler, an armourer wt bycorn, and hys oder neceſſaries; a truſty choſen man to bear the banr, anoder for the ſtandred, a yeoman for your tentes, byſides horſekeepers, ſumptermen, carters.

For the wache.

First, a jake, or a good doublet of fence.

Item, a hede-pece for the fame.

Item, a large wachynge gowne.

Item, furred or lyned, butteaux.

Th' apparell for your bodye.

First, 2 armynge doublets.

Item, 2 jaketts of leder under your harneys.

Item, ſtore of dozen of armynge poyntes ſum wt gylt naighletts.

Item, a jaket of white damaſk or ſattin, cloth of gold, ſilver, or velvett, with a red croſſe.

Item, a ryche journett or tweyn. Item, a bend of Saint George over your harneys.

Item, long gownes of ſilke both furred and lyned.

Item, demy gownes both of ſilke and clothe.

Item, rydyng gownes of ſilke, dowbletts, ſhirtes, hoſen, poyntes, ribandes for laces or gurdyls.

Bonets, hatts, bottes, ſpores, burgegiſes, ſhoes, and ſuch things as ſhalbe neceſſary for apparell.

Item, a bed wt ſtuff accordinge, a table made light for cariage, flagons, piece, a low ſalt, table clothes, a baſyn to waſhe in, towells, a piece of kannevas.

Item, a caudron or two to ſethe in mett.

Item, a ſpett, a gredyron, dyſhes, a ladyll.

Item, a hatchett to make logyngs, and to hew wode to make fire.

Item, a ſhort ſithe to mow graſs.

Item, two or three hokeys to cut corne and fetches.

Item, a chappelyn wt the oornamentes, that ys to ſay, veſtymentis, maſsbooke, chales, ſuperaltare, a box with ſtore of ſyngyng bred, ſtore of wax-candell, byſydes his portens.

And a cooke wt a caudron, a gredyron, a ladill, diſhes, a ſpit, a bage wt poudres, ſalt, a flagon, a bottell wythe vyneger and oyle olyve.

Item, ſtore of dyverſe ſpices as almands, &c.

Rembrans of the apparell for the felde belonging to a Knight, or a Eſquire, of faire lande wiche hath a retinu.

In prim. an whyt harneys cōplette, with two hede peces accordinge.

Item, 2 good horſes, at the leſt oon for hymſelf anod[r] for his page.

Item, a large amelyng hors to bere hymſelfe armed to ſpare the courſer.

Item, good ſtrong ſadels of warre w[t] harneys accordyng.

Item, harneys for hys amelyng hors.

Item, ſtore of gurthes and ſurſengles of twyne, of ſtirroppes and ſterrop ledders both for hymſelfe and hys page.

Halters, horſe combes, mane combs, waterynge brydels, horſ-houes, canvas for duſtynge clothes, halter reyngnes, ledyng reyngnes, kaſes of leder for the ſadels.

Item, 2 pere of armyng ſpores.

Item, and he may have a barde for the courſer hyt is commendable.

Item, to remember the garnyſhe of oone hedpece at the leſt.

Item, ſtore of ſure ſpeere hedys; item, an axe or an halbert to walke w[t] in the felde; item, an armynge ſword, a dager, and hit were well doon to have a maſe at the ſadell pomell; item, a ſumpter-horſe harnyſhed and w[t] coffers or gardeinans for his harnoys.

Item, a cote of armes for hymſelfe.

Item a penon of his armes, and a baneret to have a baner of hys armes.

Item, a ſtandard of his devyſe.

Item, oone or 2 getours at the leeſt.

Item, pencells for his ſpeere.

Item, cognyſaunces for his carriage.

Item, loging ſcochyngs both on bokeram in oyle and ſum in paper, both in colour and metall.

For the wache.

A payre of breygandyrons, or a ſtrong doublett of feure, with a hede pece for the ſame.

ITEM, a large wachynge gowne forred or lyned yet better lyned.
ITEM, good warme boteaulx or burgegyſes.

THE appareille for his bodye.

FIRST, ij armyng doubeletts.
ITEM, a jakett of leder under his harneis.
ITEM, ſtore of armyng poyntes.
ITEM, a jakett of white damaſke or ſaten with a red croſſe.
ITEM, a bend of Seynt George above your harneys.
ITEM, gownnes both lang and demy sū of ſilke, and sū of clothe bothe furred and lyned.
ITEM, rydyng gownes of ſilke.
ITEM, doubelettes and ſhertes.
ITEM, hoſyn and poyntes.
ITEM, ſtore of rybandes for laces and gurdells.
ITEM, ſtore of bonettes, hattes, botes, ſpores, burgegeſes, and ſhon for hymſelfe and hys page.
ITEM, flagons and botayles peces or gobeletts.
ITEM, a good pelow to ſleppe on.

FOR his botye felow and hym.

IN pmis, a pavylyon and an hale for their horſes and ſervantes, and yeff they ij may have a good ſtrong chariatt w^t ſtronge draught for ther tent hale and oder rayment and neceſſaries, hit wer well doon, for a cart is ſoon over throwyn, and may nott cary oon of your ſtuff. Item, a low ſalt.
ITEM, a barber w^t his baſyn, wiche may ſerve theym bothe w^t ſtore of towells, I meen to weſhe in dayly as well as for ſhavyng.
ITEM, oon or ij hachettes to hew wod, and to make logynge for the yemen.
ITEM, a ſhort ſythe or ij to mow graſs of the medowe for ther horſemen.
ITEM, iij or iiij hokys to cutt fecheſs and corne. Item, and ther carters bey weell choſyn, they may bothe ſett your tentes wythe of

oon or ij of ther foottmen, and wythe ther cart-horſes to feche ther forage, and to make ther logyng.

As for cooke, every man can be cher w^t^ help of vitalers, hit wer good to have ſtore of ſalt, poudre and vynegar, and ſalet oyle and ſpyce.

The ſtatute of the 4th and 5th of Philip and Mary (repealing all other acts reſpecting keeping armour and horſes), ſhews the quantity and kind of armour and weapons that were to be kept at that time by perſons of different eſtates.

All temporal perſons having eſtates of a thouſand pounds or upwards ſhall, from the 1ſt of May, 1588, keep ſix horſes or geldings fit for mounting demi launces, three of them at leaſt to have ſufficient harneſs, ſteele ſaddles, and weapons requiſite and appertaining to the ſaid demy launces, horſes, or geldings; and ten light horſes or geldings with the weapons and harneſs requiſite for light horſemen. Alſo forty corſelets furniſhed, forty almaine rivetts, or inſtead of the ſaid forty almaine rivetts, forty coats of plate, corſelets or brigandines furniſhed; forty pikes, thirty long bowes, thirty ſheaf of arrowes, thirty ſteele cappes or ſculles, twenty black bills or halberts, twenty haquebuts, and twenty morians or ſallets.

Temporal perſons having eſtates to the value of a thouſand marks and upwards, and under the clear yearly value of a thouſand pounds, to maintain four horſes or geldings for demi launces, whereof two, at the leaſt, to be horſes, with ſufficient weapons, ſaddles, meete, and requiſite to the ſaid demi launces; ſix light horſes with furniture, &c. neceſſary for the ſame; thirty corcelets furniſhed, thirty almaine rivetts, or in lieu thereof, thirty coats of plate, corcelets, or brigandines furniſhed; thirty pikes, twenty long bows, twenty ſheaf of arrowes, twenty ſteel caps or ſculls, ten black bills or halberts, ten haquebuts, and ten morians or ſallets.

Every temporal perſon having 400l. per annum, and under the clear yearly value of 1000 marks, to keep two horſes, or one horſe and one gelding, for demi launces, furniſhed as above; four geldings

for light horſes, twenty corcelets furniſhed, twenty almaine rivetts furniſhed, or inſtead thereof, twenty coats of plate, corcelets, or brigandines furniſhed; twenty pikes, fifteen long bowes, fifteen ſheaves of arrowes, fifteen ſteel caps or ſculls, ſix haquebuts and ſix morians or ſallets.

Temporal perſons having clear 200l. per annum, and under 400l. per annum, one great horſe or gelding fit for a demi launce, with ſufficient furniture and harneſs, ſteeled ſaddle, &c. two geldings for light horſe, with harneſs and weapons as aforeſaid: ten corcelets furniſhed, ten almaine rivetts, or inſtead thereof, ten coats of plate, corcelets, or brigandines furniſhed, ten pikes, eight long bows, eight ſheafs of arrowes, eight ſteel caps or ſculls, three haquebuts, and three morians or ſallets.

Every temporal perſon, &c. having 100l. or under 200l. per annum, two geldings and furniture, &c. for light horſemen, three corcelets furniſhed, three almaine rivetts, corcelets or brigandines furniſhed, three long pikes, three bowes, three ſheafes of arrowes, three ſteel caps or ſculls, two haquebuts, and two morians or ſallets.

Temporal perſons having 100 marks and under 100l. per annum, one gelding and furniture for a light horſeman, two corcelets furniſhed, two almaine rivetts, coat of plate or brigandines furniſhed, two pikes, two long bowes, two ſheafs of arrowes, two ſteel caps or ſculls, one haquebut, one morian or ſallet.

Temporal perſons having 40l. or under 100 marks per annum, two corcelets furniſhed, two almaine rivetts, corcelets or brigandines furniſhed; two pikes, one long bowe, one ſheaf of arrowes, one ſteel cap or ſcull, two haquebutts, two morians or ſallets.

Persons having 20l. and under 40l. per annum, one corcelet furniſhed, one pike, one haquebut, one morian or ſallet, one long bowe, one ſheaf of arrowes, and one ſteel cap or ſcull.

Temporal perſons having 10l. and under 20l. per annum, one almaine rivett, a coat of plate or brigandine furniſhed, one haquebut, one morian or ſallet, and one long bowe, one ſheaf of arrowes, and one ſteel cap or ſcull.

Temporal perſons having 5l. and under 10l. per annum, one coat of plate furniſhed, one black bill or halbert, one long bowe and one ſheaf of arrowes, one ſteel cap or ſcull.

Temporal perſons having goods and chattels to the amount of 1000 marks, one horſe or gelding furniſhed for a demi launce, one gelding furniſhed for a light horſeman, or eighteen corcelets furniſhed inſtead of the ſaid horſe and gelding, and furniture of the ſame, at their choice; two corcelets furniſhed, two almaine rivetts, or inſtead thereof two corcelets or two brigandines furniſhed, two pikes, four long bowes, four ſheafs of arrowes, four ſteel caps or ſculls, and three haquebuts, with three morians or ſallets.

Temporal perſons having goods, &c. to the amount of 400l. and above, and under 1000 marks, one gelding for a light horſeman, properly furniſhed, or inſtead thereof nine corcelets furniſhed at his choice, and one other corcelet furniſhed; one pike, two almaine rivetts, or plate coates, or brigandines furniſhed, one haquebut, two long bowes, two ſheafs of arrowes, and two ſteel caps or ſculls.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 200l. and upwards, and under 400l. one corcelet furniſhed, one pike, two almaine rivetts, plate coats, or brigandines furniſhed; one haquebut, one morian or ſallet, two long bowes, two ſheafs of arrowes, and two ſculls or ſteel caps.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 100l. or above, and under 200l. one corcelet furniſhed, one pike, one pair of almaine rivetts, one plate coat, or pair of brigandines furniſhed, two long bowes, and two ſheafs of arrowes and two ſculls.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 40l. and under 100l. two pair of almaine rivetts, or two coats of plate or brigandines furniſhed, one long bowe, one ſheaf of arrowes, one ſteel cap or one ſcull, and one black bill or halbert.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 20l. and upwards, and under 40l. one pair of almaine rivetts, or one coat of plate, or one pair of brigandines, two long bowes, two ſheafs of arrowes, two ſculls or ſteel caps, and one black bill or halbert.

Goods, &c. to the amount of 10l. and above, and under 20l. one

long bowe, one ſheaf of arrowes, with one ſteel cap or ſcull, and one black bill or halbert.

Temporal perſons not charged by this act, having annuities, copyholds, or eſtate of inheritance to the clear yearly value of 30l. or upwards, to be chargeable with furniture of war, according to the proportion appointed for goods and chattels.

And every perſon who by the act of the 33d of King Henry VIII. cap. 5., was bound by reaſon, that his wife ſhould wear ſuch kind of apparell, or other thing, as in the ſame ſtatute is mentioned and declared, to keepe or find one great ſtoned trotting horſe, viz. Every perſon temporall whoſe wife (not being divorced nor willingly abſenting herſelf from him) doth weare any gowne of ſilke, French hood, or bonet of velvet, with any habiliment, paſt, or edge of golde, pearle, or ſtone, or any chaine of golde about her necke, or in her partlet, or in any apparell of her body, except the ſonnes and heires apparent of dukes, marqueſes, earles, viconts, and barons, and others having heriditaments to the yearly value of 600 marks or above, during the life of their fathers; and wardes having heriditaments of the yearly value of 200l., and who are not by this act before charged, to have, maintaine, and keep any horſe or gelding; ſhall from the ſaid 1ſt of May, have, keep, and maintain, one gelding, able and meete for a light horſeman, with ſufficient harneſs and weapon for the ſame, in ſuch manner and forme, as every perſon having lordſhips, houſes, lands, &c. to the clear yearly value of 100 marks is appointed to have.

Any perſon chargeable by this act, who for three whole months from the 1ſt of May ſhall lack or want the horſes or armour, with which he is charged, ſhall forfeit for every horſe or gelding, in which he is deficient, ten pounds; for every demi launce and furniture, three pounds; for every corcelet and furniture of the ſame forty ſhillings; and for every almaine rivett, coat of plate, or brigandine and furniture of the ſame, twenty ſhillings; and for every bow and ſheaf of arrows, bill, halbert, hacquebut, ſteel cap, ſcull, morian, and ſallet, ten ſhillings; one half of theſe forfeitures to the king and queen, the other half to the parties ſuing for the ſame.

The inhabitants of all cities, burroughs, towns, pariſhes, &c. other than ſuch as are ſpecially charged before in this act, ſhall keep and maintain at their common charges, ſuch harneis and weapons as ſhall be appointed by the commiſſioners of the king and queen, to be kept in ſuch places as ſhall by the ſaid commiſſioners be appointed.

Indentures to be made of the numbers and kinds thereof between two or more of the ſaid commiſſioners, and twelve, eight, or four, of the principal inhabitants of every ſuch city, borrough, &c. &c. one part to remain with the chief officer of the ſaid city, &c. and the other part with the clerk of the peace of the county.

And if any of the inhabitants ſhall be deficient for three months in any of the articles directed to be found, they ſhall forfeit for every article according to the proportion before mentioned, to be applied and levied as there directed.

The lord chancellor for the time being ſhall have full power to grant commiſſions under the great ſeal of England, to as many juſtices of every ſhire, or county, as he ſhall deem neceſſary for making this appointment of horſes and armour. This act not to invalidate any covenant between a landlord and his tenant for finding of horſes, armour, or weapons.

The juſtices of every county are hereby authoriſed to make ſearch and view from time to time of and for the horſes, armour, &c. to be kept by perſons poſſeſſed of 200l. per ann. and not above 400l. per ann., or to be found by perſons chargeable on account of their goods, chattels, &c. as aforeſaid, and to hear and determine at their quarter ſeſſions every default committed or done, contrary to this act, within the county, and to level the penalties.

Any ſoldier making ſale of his horſe, harneis, or weapon, or any of them, contrary to the form of the ſtatute made in the ſaid 2d and 3d year of the late king, i. e. the 2d and 3d of King Edward VI. (which ſee in Captains), ſhall incur the penalty of the ſaid ſtatute, and the ſale ſhall be void, the purchaſer knowing him to be a ſoldier.

All preſentments and proſecutions to be within one year after the commiſſion of the offence.

Persons proſecuted for deficiencies of armour may plead their in-

ability to procure it, on account of the want of it within the realm, which plea, if true, ſhall be a ſufficient juſtification; if denied, iſſue to be joined, and the trial of ſuch iſſue, only had by the certificate of the lord chancellor, lord treaſurer, the lord preſident of the council, the lord ſteward of the king's and queen's moſt honourable houſehold, the lord privie ſeal, the lord admiral, and the lord chamberlain of the ſaid houſehold, or by three of them, under their hands and ſeals, &c. &c. this act or any uſage to the contrary notwithſtanding. No perſons to be charged both for lands and goods. This act not to repeal the act of the 33d Henry VIII. for having long bowes, and exerciſing archery.

Provided any horſes ſhall die, or be killed, or armour be loſt or expended in the defence of the realm, the owner ſhall not be proſecuted for the deficiency within one year after ſuch loſs.

The want of a gantlet or gantlets ſhall not be reckoned a deficiency for a corcelet.

The ſervants of ſuch perſons as are bound to find a haquebut, may exerciſe themſelves in ſhooting at ſuch marks as are limited and appointed by the 33d of Henry VIII. (which ſee in croſs-bows), ſo that they do not uſe ſuch haquebut in any highway. This act not to extend to Wales, Lancaſter, or Cheſter, nor to oblige any one to have or to find a haquebut, but that they may, at their will and pleaſure, have and keep, inſtead of every haquebut charged in this act, one long bowe, and one ſheaf of arrowes, over and above ſuch other armour and munition, as is by the laws of the realm appointed (m).

The lord chancellor or lord keeper of the great ſeal may from

---

(m) This clauſe plainly ſhews that the rulers of thoſe times were not very ſolicitous to introduce the uſe of fire-arms into the nation, but conſidered a long bow, as equal to a haquebut.

In a ſet of inſtructions for executing the commiſſion for muſtering and training all manner of perſons, 15 Elizabeth, 1572, ſubſcribed by the privy council. No. 6844, Harleian MS. In every hundred footmen, forty are directed to be harquebuſiers, twenty archers, if ſo many can be procured, the remainder to be bill-men, halberdiers, or morris-pykes.

time to time, by virtue of the king's commiſſion, appoint commiſſioners in every city, borrough, &c. &c. as well in England as Wales, conſiſting of juſtices, with other perſons joined with them, as he ſhall think meet, to take a view of armour, and to aſſign what harneis, &c. they ſhall be bound to provide and keep.

BARDED horſes continued to be uſed in our armies at leaſt to the time of Queen Elizabeth; ſeveral contemporary writers mentioned them in the reigns of King Henry VIII. and Edward VI. Among them is Patin, who, in his deſcription of the battle of Muſſelborough, ſays, "becauſe the Scottiſh mens pykes were as long or longer than their (i. e. the Engliſh horſemens') ſtaves, as alſo that their horſes wear al naked without BARBES, whereof though thear were right many among us, yet not one put on, foraſmuch as at our cumming foorth in the morning we looked for nothing leſs then for battail that day."

IN the reign of Queen Elizabeth the antient armour ſeems to have fallen into diſrepute, as in the fifteenth year of that queen, anno 1597, a motion was made in the houſe of commons by Mr. George Moor, complaining, that the ſubjects of this realm were compelled under great penalties, to have and keep ſundry ſorts of armour and weapons, at preſent altogether unneceſſary and uſeleſs, beſides being charged with the finding and providing of other ſuch weapons and armour from time to time, as the captains who are appointed to this charge, upon any occaſion of ſervice will call for, and appoint at their own pleaſure; wherefore he moved for a law to eſtabliſh ſomething certain on this head, on which a committee was appointed; what was their determination does not appear, it is however certain that defenſive armour began to be laid aſide about this time, of which Sir John Smith complains in the manuſcript before quoted (n), ſaying, that captains embarking men for foreign ſervice, ordered them to throw away their

(n) No. 4685, Harl.

poldrons, vambraces, and taſſes, as being incumbrances without uſe (o).

In the reign of King James I. no great alterations were made in the article of defenſive armour, except that the buff coat or jerkin, which was originally worn under the cuiraſs, now became frequently a ſubſtitute for it; it having been found, that a good buff leather would, of itſelf, reſiſt the ſtroke of a ſword; this, however, only occaſionally took place among the light armed cavalry and infantry, compleat ſuits of armour being ſtill worn by the heavy horſe. Buff coats continued to be worn by the city trained bands, till within the memory of perſons now living, ſo that defenſive armour may in ſome meaſure be ſaid to have terminated in the ſame materials with which it began, that is the ſkins of animals, or leather.

Respecting offenſive arms, the chief difference of this period, was a gradual diſuſe of halberts, bills, morris pikes, and all the other weapons termed ſtaves, except the common pike, together with a more general reception of fire arms, ſo that muſkets, calivers, pikes, and ſwords, became the chief and almoſt the only weapons carried by the infantry; ſwords, carabines, and piſtols, by the cavalry.

King Charles I., ſoon after his acceſſion to the crown, cauſed a ſurvey to be made of all the armour, arms, and ammunition in the Tower of London, the ſeveral forts and caſtles throughout the kingdom, and alſo on board the different ſhips of war (p); and in the ſeventh year of his reign, appointed commiſſioners, conſiſting of a number of experienced armourers, gun, pike, and bandalier makers,

---

(o) This ſeems to ſhew that nothing like any uniform pattern of defenſive armour was then adopted, but every ſoldier was permitted to wear and uſe ſuch armour and weapons as they themſelves could provide, for which in antient times they had an allowance made them in their pay. It is clearly pointed out by many articles in the code of military laws, enacted by Henry V. and others, that the horſes, armour, and weapons of the private men, were their property, as divers offences were therein puniſhed with forfeiture of horſes, armour, and weapons.

(p) A. D. 1629, 5 Charles I. See Rymer in anno.

to travel throughout England and Wales, to ſurvey, prove, repair, and put the armour and weapons of the militia into a ſtate fit for ſervice. He alſo took meaſures for bringing about an uniformity in the faſhion of their armour and arms, a circumſtance never before attended to; the want of which muſt have been productive of many inconveniencies.

He at the ſame time ſettled the prices for making and repairing the different pieces of a ſuit of armour, for both horſe and foot; the rates to be charged for the ſeveral parts of a muſket, piſtol, or carbine, with thoſe for a pike and bandaliers.

As this commiſſion and ſchedule of the prices eſtabliſhed contain many curious particulars reſpecting the arms and armour of thoſe times, they are here given at length (q).

A special commiſſion for the ſurveying of the armours, arms, &c. of the trained bands, and for ſettling the rates and prices of the ſame.

Charles, by the Grace of God, &c. To our truſty and wel-beloved John Franklin, William Crouch, John Aſhton, Thomas Stephens, Rowland Foſter, Nicholas Marſhall, William Cove, and Edward Aynesley, workemen, armourers, and freemen of the company of armourers of our cittye of London; and Henry Rowland, Richard Burrowe, Thomas Addis, John Norcott, William Dawſtin, John Watſon, and William Graves, of our ſaid cittie of London, gun makers; and John Edwards, Robert Tucker, and Bartholomew Ray, pike-makers of our cittie of London, and John Gate and William Beauchamp, bandalier makers of our cittie of London aforeſaid; and to every of them, greeting.

Wee foreſeeinge in our princely judgment, how neceſſary it is for the preſervation of our ſelfe, and the ſubjects of our kingdome in generall, that the armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers thereof, be from tyme to tyme repaired, amended, dreſſed, and ſtamped; and that they according to the juſt and full number charged by the muſter

(q) Rymer, tom. xix. p. 914, A.D. 1631. 7 Charles I.

rolls in every ſeverall county, be fully furniſhed and compleatly mayntayned, which now as we are credibly informed, are in many parts of this kingdom much decayed and neglected; and that expert and ſkilfull workmen may be trayned up, imployed, and maintayned, as well in tyme of peace as of warre, to the end wee may not be inforced in tyme of warre to ſeeke for armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, in forraigne parts, as it hath been heretofore accuſtomed, and ſoe be eyther unprovided of them, or ſupplyed at deare and uncertaine rates, at the pleaſure of forraigne princes and ſtates, when any unexpected occaſion of imployment, or ſudden ſervice, for the ſafety and honour of our perſon and ſtate ſhall require; and wee well weighing in our princely conſideration, the dangerous conſequence thereof, did, for our better information, refer the further conſideration thereof to our counſell of warre, and other ſpeciall committees; who upon mature deliberation have certified us, that the company of workmen, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers of our cittie of London (being the ſkilfulleſt and prime workmen of this land), are moſt fit to be employed and encouraged in this ſervice, that ſoe they having convenient employment in tyme of peace, wee may be aſſured of their true and effectuall ſervice in the tymes of warre, and yett they to performe the ſaid ſervice at ſuch rates and prices as ſhall not be left at their owne diſcretion, but ſhall be particularly agreed upon, and ordered herein; and they have alſo certifyed unto us, that they find it very behoofefull for our ſervice, and for the ſtrength and ſafety of this kingdom, and for the increaſing of the number of ſkilfull and expert workemen of the ſeverall trades and profeſſions of armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers; that a commiſſion ſhould be awarded to the tenor and effect of theſe preſents, and a proclamation thereupon made and publiſhed, to ſignifie what wee herein command or forbid, for the general good of this kingdome: and whereas the ſaid armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, are accordingly willing to accept of and undertake this ſervice, and according to the ſaid certificate, have given caution in our office of ordinance to be ready, when we ſhall

have occaſion to ſett them on worke, at ſeven dayes warning, and that the ſaid armourers will deliver into our ſtores, for ready money, fifteen hundred armours every month, and the gun makers as many muſkets and baſtard muſkets, (r), and ſmall ſhot, upon the ſame warninge; as alſo the pike makers, and bandalier makers, a proportionable number upon the like warning, four our ſervice; and that the ſaid armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, will bring up apprentices from tyme to tyme, to be expert and ſkilfull in theſe ſeverall occupations, which are ſoe neceſſary for the defence of this kingdome, ſoe as they may be imployed in making, mending, dreſſinge, ſtamping, and repayring of armours, guns, pikes, and bandaliers in the cittie and country, and have agreed and entred into bond as aforeſaid, that they will not exceed the rates and prices in a ſchedule hereunto annexed, expreſſing the ſeveral rates and prices which ſhall be allowed them reſpectively for the ſaid worke, which are very reaſonable, and not only without grievance, but very much for the eaſe and benefit of our ſubjects, who are or ſhall be thereby concerned in reſpect of their former trouble and charges in that kynde; and likewiſe will perform ſuch other directions as wee ſhall from tyme to tyme preſcribe unto them, for the better advancing of ſo neceſſary and publique a ſervice as need ſhall require.

Know yee therefore that wee, by and with the advice of the lords and others our counſell of warre, and other committees to whom wee referred the conſiderations of this good worke for the better effectinge and advancing of the ſame: and repoſing aſſured truſt and confidence in the fidelity, experience, and diligence of you the ſaid John Franklyn, William Crouch, John Aſhton, Thomas Steevens, Rowland Foſter, Nicholas Marſhall, William Coxe, Edward Aneſley, Henry Rowland, Richard Berrowe, Thomas Addis, John Norcott, William Dawſtin, William Watſon, John Watſon, and William Graves, armourers and gun makers; and John Edwards, Robert Thacker, and Bartholomew

(r) Probably calivers.

Raye, pike makers; and John Gate and William Beachamp, bandalier makers of our citty of London, have authorifed, affigned, and appointed you to be our commiſſioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers: And we doe by theſe preſents give unto you, or any one, two, three, or more of you, and to your deputies, aſſiſtants, and aſſignees, and every of them, by you, or the greater part of you, lawfully authorifed, free libertie, licence, power, and authority, to travell or goe into any county, place, or places, within this our realme of England, and the dominion of Wales, as well within liberties as without; and there with the approbation and aſſiſtance of the lord lieutenant and deputy lieutenants where you ſhall happen to come, or of any other to be by them deputed and appointed, to make diligent ſurvey of all armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers whatſoever, appoynted to be found and maynteyned at the common charge of every cittie, towne, or village, and of the trayned bands in every county, as well horſe as foot, throughout our ſaid realme of Englande and dominion of Wales; and upon and after the ſaid ſurvey, to new make, alter, amend, dreſs, repayre, prove, and ſtampe (as need ſhall require), all or any of the ſaid armour, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, and make them compleate and fit for ſervice, as by the ſaid lord lieutenant and deputy lieutenants, or any other by them deputed and appoynted as aforeſaid, ſhall be appoynted and directed; and that by the direction of the ſaid lord lieutenants, or the deputy lieutenants of the ſeverall countyes and diviſions reſpectively, the ſaid armour, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, once or twice every yeare or oftner (if need ſhall be), be brought to ſuch convenient place or places, upon the muſter days, or at ſuch other convenient tyme or tymes as they ſhall think fit, to the end that the ſame may be then and there viewed and ſurveyed, and as occaſion ſhall require, be altered, amended, or renewed as aforeſaid.

And that you may the better performe this ſervice, and informe us by the lords lieutenants and deputy lieutenants as aforeſaid, as occaſion ſhall require, of all ſuch defects and negligences as may happen from tyme to tyme, wee doe hereby give full power and au-

thority unto you, or any one, two, three, or more of you, your deputies, and aſſigns, by the direction of the lords lieutenants or deputy lieutenants as aforeſaid (if they ſhall ſoe think it fitt and behoofefull for our ſervice), to require all miniſters of muſters, who have the records or keeping of the muſter rolls of the ſaid armours, forthwith to deliver unto you true copyes of the ſaid muſter rolls, to the end that you may be truely informed who ought to be charged with the ſaid armour, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, according to the juſt numbers and natures of them.

And further our will and command is, that you our ſaid commiſſioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, your deputies or aſſigns (upon your ſaid ſurvey), do obſerve what numbers of armes, armourers, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers are wholly wanting as aforeſaid, that are appointed and ought to be charged upon any perſon or perſons in any place, and that you diſtinguiſh the utterly unſerviceable, from ſuch as by mending and repairing may be made ſerviceable; and that you ſet downe the numbers and natures of their defects, and that you may make up the ſurvey in a booke to be certified under the hands of you our ſaid commiſſioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, or any two, three, or more of you, to be ſigned and approved of by the lord lieutenant, or deputy lieutenants, or ſuch as they in every place ſhall depute for that purpoſe to aſſiſt in the ſaid ſurvey; and likewiſe that, upon ſuch your ſurvey, you approve of all ſuch armours of the ſaid common armes and trayned band, as ſhall be found fit for ſervice, and to prove and trye all ſorts of gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers of the ſaid common armes and trayned band, before they be uſed or exerciſed, and to approve of ſuch as are ſerviceable for warres at the owners charge, and being proved, ſhall allow as fit for ſervice; and allowing ſhall ſtamp the ſame with the "A and "Crown," being the hall mark for the company of workmen armourers of London, which marke or ſtamp, our pleaſure is, ſhall, with the conſent of the lord lieutenant, or his deputy lieutenants, remayne in their cuſtodye, who ſhall have the charge to be intruſted

with the execution of this ſervice, wherein, and in this whole commiſſion, they are further to follow ſuch inſtructions as are and ſhall from tyme to tyme be given forth from us, or the lords of our privy councell, or councell of warre, in that behalf.

And to the end noe abuſe or deceipt may be in the number of armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers borrowed one of another, wee doe hereby give power and authority to you, or the major part of you, to cauſe to be framed and made, and to you, or to any one, two, three, or more of you, your deputies or aſſignes, to uſe two other markes or ſtamps, to be firſt allowed by the lords lieutenants, or deputy lieutenants, or ſuch as they ſhall depute for that purpoſe, the one to diſtinguiſh the county, the other the place or diviſion where the ſaid armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers are charged and be, which markes and ſtamps, our will and pleaſure is, ſhall remayne in the cuſtodye of you, our ſaid commiſſioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, or ſome of you, your deputies or aſſignes, and ſhall be entred in the ſaid booke of ſurvey, to be ſigned as aboveſaid; for the uſing and putting to, of which markes and ſtamps of the place or diviſion aforeſaid, wee hold it very fitting, that our lord lieutenants, or their deputye lieutenants, in every place and diviſion, do appoint and ſet downe ſome competent allowance unto you the commiſſioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, bandalier makers, your deputies or aſſigns, for your labour and attendance upon our ſervice herein.

And further our will and pleaſure is, that upon the intreaty of you our ſaid commiſſioners, or any one, two, three, or more of you, your deputies and aſſignes, according as the wants and defects of the ſaid armour, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, ſhall appear upon the ſaid booke of ſurvey, ſigned as aforeſaid, our ſaid lords lieutenants, and their deputye lieutenants of the ſeveral counties reſpectively in our name, doe commaund, and give order to the ſeverall places and perſons chargeable therewith, within a reaſonable tyme, and at ſome convenient place to be preſcribed, to ſupply ſuch defects, either by

providing new armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, or by mending and repayring the old, as there ſhall be cauſe.

And becauſe divers cutlers, ſmyths, tynkers, and other botchers of armes, by their unſkilfulneſs have utterly ſpoiled many armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, which by a ſkilful workman might have been altered, dreſſed, amended, and made ſerviceable, and yet have required great rates of the country for the doeing thereof; and diverſe tradeſmen of other trades and myſteries, do buy, barter, and ſell armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers; which are badd and inſufficient, to the great prejudice of our loving ſubjects: To the end theſe abuſes and diſorders may be from henceforth reſtrayned and wholly prevented, we doe hereby prohibit and abſolutely forbid, that noe perſon or perſons whatſoever, not having ſerved ſeven years, or been brought up as an apprentice or apprentices in the trade and myſterie of an armourer, gun maker, pike maker, and bandalier maker, and thereat ſerved their full tyme of ſeven years as aforeſaid, and be bound to do us ſervice as aforeſaid, when they ſhall be thereunto required, and have their name and dwelling thereunto entred by you or ſome of you, by your recommendation in our office of the ordinance as aforeſaid, do make, mend, alter, change, dreſs, or repayr, prove, or ſtampe, any armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers of the common armes of trayned band whatſoever, or any others, or any of them, or any part of them, or intermeddle therein: Nevertheleſs, it is our pleaſure and ſtrict commaund, that you give encouragement and reſpect to all ſuch ſkilfull and well-deſerving workmen of all ſortes of armes, as you ſhall find in every place within our kingdome and domynion aforeſaid, to have them employed and ſet on worke; and it is our further will and pleaſure, that if you or our ſaid commiſſioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, ſhall not be preſent, either by yourſelves, your ſervants, deputies, or aſſignes, in every county and place, when and where any defects in arms, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, at muſters or any other ſuch publique meetings, in each countye, ſhall be found; or if you, or any for or under you, being ſo preſent in each countye

and place, ſhall be unwilling and negligent to make, amend, dreſs, repayre, and ſtamp the ſaid armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers, according to the intent of this our commiſſion, then it ſhall be lawful in any ſuch your negligence or default, at ſuch tyme or tymes, and in ſuch caſes only, for the owners of armes to carry their armours, gunnes, pikes, and bandaliers unto ſuch countrye workmen as heretofore have made or mended any of them, to make, amend, alter, and repayre them as heretofore they have done, without any trouble or interruption by you, or any for or under you, any thing in this our commiſſion to the contrary notwithſtanding: And we do abſolutely forbid, that no ironmonger, cutler, chandler, or other perſon whatſoever, doe vent or ſell any armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or any part of them, except ſuch as ſhall be proved and ſtamped with the ſaid hall marke of the company of workemen, armourers aforeſaid, being the proofe marke; and alſo warranted by our ſaid commiſſioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, or ſome of them, or ſuch as they ſhall appoint thereunto, and be allowed by them to be ſufficient, upon payne and penaltie of our high indignation and diſpleaſure, and ſuch other penalties and impriſonments as by the lawes of this realme, or by our prerogative royall, may be inflicted upon them.

And to the end that by occaſion of this reſtraynt, no exceſs of prices may either through neceſſity or ignorance be put upon the country for new armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or for the dreſſing, repairing, proving, and ſtamping the old and ſerviceable, we doe hereby require and commaund, that no armourer, gun maker, pike maker, or bandalier maker, who ſhall be employed in this ſervice doe demand, take, or receive for any new armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or for dreſſinge, repayring, proveinge, or ſtamping the old or any part of them, above the rates and prices in the ſchedule hereunto annexed and expreſſed (which wee hold very much for the eaſe and benefit of our loving ſubjects, which now are or hereafter ſhall be charged with armes;) willing alſoe, requireing and commaunding all perſons charged with armes, armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers of the common armes, or the trained bands

as aforeſaid, that ſhall hereafter have of our ſaid commiſſioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, or bandalier makers, their deputies or aſſignes, anie new armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or upon their haveing of their armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers, or any of them dreſſed, amended, altered, repayred, proved, or ſtamped as aforeſaid, ſhall and will ſatisfie, content, and pay our ſaid commiſſioners, armourers, gun makers, pike makers, and bandalier makers, their deputies or aſſignes, or any of them for the ſame, according to the rates and prices in the aforeſaid ſchedule annexed, expreſſed, and ſet down; and if any difference at any tyme hereafter ſhall ariſe touching the natures or numbers of defects, between the armourers, gun makers, pike makers and bandalier makers, imployed for the ſaid new making, amending, dreſſing, repayring, and ſtamping of any of the armours, gunnes, pikes, or bandaliers of the common armes or trayned bands aforeſaid, and thoſe in whoſe cuſtody the ſaid armours, gunnes, pikes and bandaliers, ſhall be or remaine; then our pleaſure is, that the ſame ſhall be ordered by the lords lieutenants, or deputy lieutenants, or any of them, or ſuch as ſhall be by them, or any one of them deputed, for the tyme being, who ſhall make the ſurvey above mentioned.

And becauſe we are credibly given to underſtand that the often and continuall altering and changing of the faſhion of armes and armours, ſome countrys and parts of this kingdome, haveing armours of one faſhion, and ſome of another, do put many of our ſubjects to a great and unneceſſary charge, and more than need requireth: for the avoiding whereof, our will and pleaſure is, and wee doe hereby appoint and command, that hereafter there ſhall be but one uniform faſhion of armours, of the ſaid common and trayned bands, throughout our ſaid kingdome of England, and domynion of Wales, when as any of the ſaid armours ſhall be ſupplied and new made, and that that form and faſhion of armour ſhall be agreeable to the laſt and modern faſhion lately ſet downe and appoynted to be uſed, by the lords and others of our councell of warre, (the patterns whereof are now and ſhall remayn in the office of our ordinance from tyme to tyme, which is our pleaſure likewiſe concerning gunnes, pikes and bandaliers, where-

of patterns are, and ſhall remayne from tyme to tyme in our ſaid office) and our will and pleaſure is, that for the better compleating of every of the muſkettiers of our ſaid trayned bands, and that they may be better fitted and appoynted for ſervice, (if need requires) every muſkettier of the ſayd common and trayned bands, ſhall have and be from tyme to tyme furniſhed and provided of a headpeece agreeable to the modern faſhion of the headpeeces of the footemans armour, whereof the pattern remayneth alſo in our aforeſaid office of ordnance.

Willing alſoe, requireing and commaunding all and ſingular our lieutenants, their deputye lieutenants, juſtices of the peace, majors, ſheriffs, muſter maſters, captaines of bands, and their lieutenants, his conſtables, conſtables, headboroughs, and all other our officers, miniſters, and loving ſubjects whomſoever, that they and every of them, be from tyme to tyme aydeing, helping and aſſiſting unto you our commiſſioners, armourers, gun-makers, pike-makers, and bandalier-makers, and every or any of you, your deputies, aſſiſtants, ſervants and aſſignes, and to all ſuch others as ſhall be employed in the execution of this our commiſſion, or the ſervice thereby required and intended, in all things as ſhall be moſt meet, and to perform what to them or any of them ſhall reſpectively appertayne, according to our pleaſure herein and hereby ſignified and declared.

And our farther will and pleaſure is, that if you our ſaid commiſſioners, or any of you, your deputyes, aſſiſtants or aſſignes or any of them, ſhall find that this our commiſſion in any part be not executed with effect, according to the tenor and intent thereof, by reaſon of the oppoſition, contradiction, remiſneſs or negligence of any perſon or perſons whatſoever, that then you or ſome of you doe certifye the cauſe, with the names of the perſons offending, unto the lords lieutenants and deputy lieutenants of each county, and in caſes ſo requireing, to the lords of our privy councell, or councell of warre, by whom wee may be informed thereof, to the end the offenders may be puniſhed according to their demerits.

And wee doe likewiſe hereby command and require our ſaide lords lieutenants and their deputy lieutenants, within their countyes and

diviſions, reſpectively from tyme to tyme to puniſh any of you, our ſaid commiſſioners, armourers, gun-makers, pike-makers and bandalier-makers, their deputies, ſervants and aſſignes according to the quality of their faults, when they ſhall neglect the truſt and duty committed unto them by this our commiſſion.

And laſtly, our will and pleaſure is, that this our commiſſion ſhall ſtand in force, and that you our commiſſioners, armourers, gun-makers, pike-makers, and bandalier-makers, and every of you, your deputies, aſſiſtants and aſſignes, and every of them may proceed in the execution thereof, although the ſame be not from tyme to tyme continued by adjournment.

In witneſs, &c.

Witneſs our ſelfe at Weſtminſter, Viceſimo nono die Junii,

Per Breve de Privato Sigillo.

Rymer, tom. xix. p. 314.

An. 7, C. 1.

A SCHEDULE containing the new Rates and Prices of the ſeveral Parts and whole Armes, both for Horſe and Foot, throughout the Kingdom of England and Dominion of Wales, ſet downe and eſtabliſhed by the Right Honourable the Lords Committees of the Counſell of Warre, as every of the ſaid Armes may be afforded at London, by the Armourers, Gun-makers, Pike-makers, and Bandalier-makers, according to the intent of the Commiſſion, herunto annexed, viz.

The Prices of the ſeveral Parts and whole Armour of a Cuiraſſier ruſſetted, viz.

	£.	s.	d.
A breaſt of piſtol proofe	o	xi	o
A backe - - - - -	o	vii	o
A cloſe caſke lyned -	o	xvii	o
A payre of pouldrons -	o	xii	o
A payre of vambraces	o	xii	o
A payre of guiſſets -	o	xvii	o
A cullet or guarderine	o	vii	o
A gorget lyned - -	o	iii	vi
A gauntlett gloved -	o	iii	vi
Soe the price of the whole cuiraſſiers armour amounteth unto	iiii	x	o

The Prices of the Parts and of the whole Corſlet or Footman's Armour ruſſetted, viz.

	£.	s.	d.
The breaſt - - - - -	o	v	vi
The backe - - - - -	o	iiii	vi
The taſſets - - - - -	o	v	o
The comb'd headpeece lyned - - - - -	o	iiii	vi
The gorgett lyned - -	o	ii	vi
The totall of the footman's armour	i	ii	o

	£.	s.	d.
If the breaſt, back, and taſſets, be lyned with red leather, the price will be	i	iiii	o

The Prices of the Parts and of the whole Armour for a Harquebuzier, on Horſeback ruſſetted, viz.

	£.	s.	d.
A breaſt of piſtoll proofe	o	ix	o
A backe - - - - - -	o	vii	o
A gorgett - - - - - -	o	iii	o
A headpeece with great cheeks, and a barr before the face - -	o	xi	o
The totall of the whole, and all the parts of a harquebuzier, or light horſeman's armour is	i	xii	o

	£.	s.	d.
A comb'd headpeece for a muſkettier ruſſetted and lyned - - -	o	v	o

Price of the Pike.

	£.	s.	d.
The ſtaffe - - - - - -	o	ii	vi
The head - - - - - -	o	i	viii
Socket and colouring - -	o	o	iiii
Summe - - - -	o	iiii	vi

The Rates for repayring and dreſſing of a Horſemans Armour and Footmans Armour.

	£.	s.	d.
For unſtriking, new fyling, ruſſetting, new nayling, leathering and lyning of a cuiraſſiers armour - -	i	iii	o
For yearly dreſſing and keeping clean a cuiraſſiers armour that needs not new ruſſetting or ſetting - - -	o	iiii	o
For new ruſſetting and lyneing the head peece, and ſetting a harquebuziers armour - - - - - - - - - -	o	vi	viii
For yearly dreſſing and keeping clean a harquebuziers armour, that needs not new ruſſetting or ſetting - -	o	ii	vi
For cutting and new faſhioning a long bellied breaſt -	o	ii	vi
For new ruſſetting of an ordinary corſlet of the modern faſhion - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	o	iiii	o
For a furniture of joynts, viz. two ſhoulder joynts, and fower taſſet joints, with hookes and pinnes, being all new ſett - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	o	ii	viii
For yearly dreſſing and keeping clean every ordinary croſlet and pike that needs not new ruſſetting - -	o	i	viii
For ſtamping every horſemans armour fit to be allowed - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	o	o	o
For ſtamping every harquebuziers armour fit to be allowed - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	o	o	o

The Gun Makers Rates.

For a new muſket with mould, worm and ſcowrer -	o	xv	vi
For new wolnut-tree ſtock for a muſket plated at the butt end with iron - - - - - - - - - - -	o	ii	vi
For a muſket ſtock of beech plated at the butt end with iron - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	o	i	viii
For a match tricker-lock compleat - - - - - - -	o	i	o
For a whole worke conſiſting of the pan, the cover of the pan, the ſcutchion and the ſcrew pynn - - -	o	i	o
For a ſtick, worm, ſockett, ſcowrer and bone - - -	o	i	o

	£.	s.	d.
For a handle or guard of a tricker - - - - - - -	o	o	vi
For a new cock fitted - - - - - - - - - - - -	o	o	viii
For a new breech - - - - - - - - - - - - -	o	i	o
For furniſhing and ſetting of a tricker lock in place of a ſeare lock, with a handle, tricker, and tricker pynnes	o	ii	vi
For a new touch-hole ſcrewed - - - - - - - - -	o	o	x
For a new barrell of a muſkett, only forged and bored fower foote in length, the bore according to the bullet of ten in the pound ſtanding, and twelve rowleing -	o	viii	o
For making clean and new ruſſetting of a muſkett - -	o	o	iiii
For a muſkett reſt - - - - - - - - - - - - -	o	o	x
For making clean a ſquare fyled muſkett white - -	o	i	viii
For the yearly dreſſing and keepeing clean a muſkett that needs not new ruſſetting, with the furniture and reſt - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	o	o	x
For powder and ſhot for proving every muſkett - -	o	o	o
For ſtamping every muſkett proved and allowed - -	o	o	o
For a new bandalier with twelve charges, a prymer, a pryming wyre, a bullet bag, and a ſtrap or belt of two inches in breadth - - - - - - - - - -	o	ii	vi
For a pair of firelock piſtols, furniſhed with a key, mould, ſcowrer, worm, flaſk, and caſes of leather, of length and boar according to the allowance of the counſel of war - - - - - - - - - - - -	iii	o	o
For a pair of horſemans piſtols furniſhed with ſnaphances, mouldes, worms, ſcowrer, flaſk, a charger and caſes - - - - - - - - - - - - - -	ii	o	o
For a harque-buze with a firelock and belte, ſwivell, flaſk, key, moulde, worme, and ſcowrer - - - -	i	xvi	o
For a carabine with a ſnaphance, belt, ſwivell and flaſk, &c. as aforeſaid - - - - - - - - - - - -	i	o	o

The armour and weapons directed to be worn by the militia after

the reſtoration, are thus deſcribed in the ſtatute of the 13th and 14th of King Charles II.

"THE arms offenſive and defenſive, with the furniture for horſe, are to be as followeth: the defenſive arms, a back, breaſt and pot, and the breaſt and pot to be piſtol proof; the offenſive arms, a ſword and a caſe of piſtols, the barrels whereof are not to be under fourteen inches in length: the furniture for the horſe to be a great ſaddle or padd, with burrs and ſtraps to affix the holſters unto, a bit and bridle with a pectoral and crupper. For the foot, a muſqueteer is to have a muſquet, (s) the barril whereof is not to be under three foot in length, and the gauge of the bore to be for twelve bullets to the pound, a collar of bandeleers with a ſword. Provided that all muſter maſters ſhall for the preſent admit and allow of any muſquets already made,

---

(s) As the muſquet reſt is not here mentioned, it is probable reſts were then laid aſide; the price of a muſquet reſt is given in the ſchedule of rates for armour and weapons, ſettled the 7th of Charles I. The uſe of the reſt is alſo taught in a treatiſe publiſhed in the year 1634, called the Soldier's Practice, written by Thomas Fiſher, an officer who had ſerved twenty-ſix years in the Low Countries, and was afterwards employed by Philip earl of Pembrook Lord Lieutenant of the county of Kent, to diſcipline the militia of that county. We may, therefore, with great probability, date the diſuſe of the reſt ſome time about the commencement of the civil war under Charles I. when the weight and incumbrance of the muſquet and its apparatus might be found too great for the active ſervice, inſeparable from war carried on in ſmall detachments. Muſquet reſts were not only uſed by the infantry, but were alſo borne by the cavalry. Sir John Smith in the MS. before quoted, mentions a very particular kind of them: "I myſelf (ſays he) have ſeen moſquetteers on horſeback in two divers armies, and that in this ſorte, I have ſeen ſquadrons of lances have in one only wing ten or twelve muſquetiers in one ranke, and ſometimes in two winges, upon cold and quiet horſes, onely to carry them a marche, or a trott with the ſquadron of launces, and the moſquetiers were armed with half breaſts or cuyrats with long reaſts of ſteele ſtrong and firmly ſet in them, to put backward over their ſhoulders, and when they liſt to pull them forwardes, for the moſquetiers to lay their moſquets upon when they woulde diſcharge them. Even ſuch Sir William Pelham did cauſe to be made at the Mynories, by one Henricke a Dutchman, before his laſt going over into the Lowe Countries, which invention came not from his own devyce, but from that he had ſeene the like uſed by certen muſquetiers on horſeback in the warres of the Emperor Charles V."

which will bear a bullet of fourteen to the pound, but no muſkets which henceforth ſhall be made are to be allowed of, but ſuch as are of the gauge of twelve bullets to the pound. A pikeman is to be armed with a pike made of aſh, not under ſixteen feet in length, the head and foot included, with a back, breaſt, headpiece and ſword: provided that all muſter maſters ſhall for the preſent admit and allow of any pikes already made, that are not under fifteen foot in length, but no pikes which ſhall be hereafter made are to be allowed of, that are under ſixteen feet in length.

In the ſhort reign of James II. the firſt ſtep was taken towards the abolition of the uſe of pikes in England, by the introduction of the practice of ſticking the dagger into the muzzel of the muſquet, in order to protect the muſquetteers from being charged by the horſe immediately after they had fired. This practice, which was borrowed from the French, and confined to the grenadiers only, was the origin of the bayonet.

The regular introduction of bayonets took place in France about the year 1671; the firſt corps armed with them was the regiment of fuſileers raiſed that year, and ſince called the royal regiment of artillery (t); but although the adoption of the bayonet is ſo recent, the idea of it had long occurred to different officers, ſome of whom had occaſionally put it in practice; among them was Monſieur de Puiſegur in the diſtrict in Flanders where he commanded: "For my part," ſays he, in his Memoirs, "when I commanded in Bergue, in Ypres, Dixmude and Quenoque, all the parties I ſent out paſſed the canals in this ſort; it is true that the ſoldiers had no ſwords, but they had bayonets with handles of a foot long, the blades of the bayonets were as long as the handles, the ends of which were fitted for being put into the barrels of the fuſils, to defend themſelves if attacked after they had fired (u).

(t) P. Daniel.

(u) Mr. William Bariffe, in his Treatiſe of Military Diſcipline, entitled the Young Artillery Man, the ſecond edition of which was printed in 1639, deſcribes and conſiders ſeveral

THE firſt time this contrivance occurs in any Engliſh military writer, at leaſt that I have ſeen, is in a treatiſe publiſhed in the year 1686, where it is mentioned under the denomination of the dagger (x), but is confined to the grenadiers only, and in their

---

ſeveral contrivances invented in England, to protect the muſquetteer againſt Cavalry, after he had parted with his fire, and before he had reloaded. "Having often (ſays he) conſidered the *danger of the muſkettier*, and how unable he is to reſiſt the horſe, after he hath *poured forth his ſhotte*, without he be *ſheltered*, either by ſome *naturall or artificial defence*; and withall having knowledge that in ſeverall parts of *Chriſtendome*, divers *Captaines and Souldiers* have oft beene trying concluſions, to make the muſketteer as well *defenſive as offenſive*. Some by *unſcrewing the heads of their reſts*, and then *ſcrewing the ſtaffe of their reſts into the muzzle of the muſket*, with the *arming of a pike at the lower end*, by which means they would uſe the muſket and reſt together, in the nature of a *whole pike*: but this proved ſo tedious and troubleſome, that it fell without profit. Another ſort had made *reſts* with the one end of the *forke* (or head) being like *a ſpike*, about eighteen inches in length; this alſo proved extreme troubleſome to themſelves, *dangerous* to their *followers*, and of no *validity* againſt the enemie. A third ſorte had *half-pikes* of about ſeven or eight foot in length, uſeing it after the manner of a *reſt*: but all the while the *muſkettier was charging* (his muſket) one of them was *enough* to trouble a *whole file*, beſides the danger in the *recovery*. A fourth ſorte there was (yet better than the former) that with a *hooke was faſtened to the girdle, while the muſkettier was making ready*: but this had its defects alſo, as being both *tedious and troubleſome*. Many other wayes and concluſions have alſo been tryed, with ſucceſſe like the former; which I forbeare to demonſtrate, for as their conceits proved uſeleſſe, ſo the diſcourſe would prove as fruitleſſe. Laſtly, *myſelfe*, with another gentleman of our ground, (Maſter *John Davies* of *Blackefriers*) both well effacting the uſe of the muſket, found out a *way* to uſe the *half pike and muſket*, with ſo much *facilitie and eaſe*, that is *farre leſſe troubleſome than the reſt*, and yet of greater length than any of the former *reſts* or *halfe pikes*, as being compleat ten foot in length, with the *arming*.

ALL the former *devices*, if they could have beene brought to any maturitie, yet would have falne farre ſhort of this, for the *triple uſe thereof*, as being a *reſt*, if there be no farther occaſion; as being a *palliſado* (if there be occaſion) to defend the muſkettier from the horſe; as being a *halfe pike* to uſe in trenches; as alſo when our *ſhotte* have *poured out* a great volly or ſhowre of lead on the *adverſe* muſkettiers, they may then *nimbly* with their *halfe pikes*, fall in amongſt them. And laſtly for the *purſuite* of an *enemy*, it being of all others the beſt weapon. A ſerviceable halfe-pike may be had for two ſhillings and ſix-pence, which exceeds not much the price of a *reſt*.

(x) THE dagger was fixed by the following words of command, to which were added the annexed directions: the grenadiers having fired and recovered their arms, the word of command

hands it continued anno 1690; where in a treatiſe of military diſcipline, publiſhed by authority, it is called a bayonet (y). It is not however mentioned in ſome inſtructions for the manual exerciſe publiſhed two years after, for the uſe of the militia, but from divers other military books written about the ſame time, it appears that the dragoons as well as grenadiers, both horſe and foot, had daggers or bayonets, and fixed them in the muzzles of their pieces; neither Father Daniel nor Monſieur St. Remy give the particular date, when the preſent mode of fixing bayonets took place, nor by whom it was invented; the improvement is ſaid to have originated in France, which ſeems to be corroborated by the following anecdote communicated to me by Lieut. Col. Chriſtopher Maxwell of the 30th regiment of foot, who had it from his grandfather, formerly Lieutenant Colonel of the 25th regiment of foot. In one of the campaigns of King William III. in Flanders, in an engagement, the name of which my informant has forgot, there were three French regiments, whoſe bayonets were made to fix after the preſent faſhion, a contrivance then unknown in the Britiſh army; one of them advanced againſt the 25th regiment with fixed bayonets; Lieutenant Colonel Maxwell who commanded it, ordered his men to ſcrew their bayonets into their muzzles to receive them; but to his great ſurpriſe, when they came within a proper diſtance, the French threw in a heavy fire, which for a moment ſtaggered his people, who by no means expected ſuch a greeting, not conceiving how it was poſſible to fire with fixed bayonets; they nevertheleſs recovered themſelves, charged and drove the enemy out of the line.

At what time the mode of fixing the bayonet, ſo as not to prevent

---

command was, *caſt over to the left*, on which, they were to lay their right hands on their daggers, *draw your dagger*, holding it faſt before you upright, *ſcrew it into the muzzle of your firelock*, ſo that the flat ſide may be toward you when reovered.

(y) Bayonet, from being firſt made at Bayonne in Spain. Thoſe ancient bayonets are called by the French, bayonets à manche. Many of them may be ſeen in the ſmall armory in the Tower; the handles are plain, fitting tight into the muzzle of the muſket, and rather enlarging towards the blade, to prevent their entering too far into the piece.

loading and firing with it, was adopted in England, I have not been able to diſcover, but believe it was not at firſt done quite in the preſent form; the late Rev. Mr. W. Goſtling of Canterbury, a man very curious reſpecting military matters told me he had ſeen two horſe grenadiers riding before Queen Anne's coach with fixed bayonets, that theſe bayonets were of the dagger kind having handles originally intended for ſcrewing into the muzzles of the pieces, which handles then had two rings, fixed to them for the admiſſion of the barrel of the piece. In a book of exerciſe, for the horſe dragoons and foot, printed anno 1728 by authority, the bayonet of the preſent faſhion is deſcribed.

The introduction of the bayonet naturally procured the diſmiſſion of the pike, which with the exchange of the matchlock for the ſnaphance, the original name of the preſent lock took place about the third or fourth year of the reign of King William III. this exchange ſeems not to have been made all at once, but by degrees, wherefore an exact period for that alteration cannot be aſſigned.

In the beginning of the reign of King William III. notwithſtanding the act of the 13th of Charles II. defenſive armour was ſo much laid aſide, that we learn from the Journals of the Houſe of Commons, in the year 1690, a petition was preſented by the workmen armourers of the city of London, ſetting forth that by the act of the 13th of Charles II. it was provided that at every muſter and exerciſe of the militia, every horſeman is to bring with him defenſive arms, viz. breaſt and potts, piſtol proof; and the back, ſword proof: every pikeman to have a back, breaſt, and head-piece; and every muſquetier a head-piece: for want of due execution of which laws, the petitioners trade is like to be utterly loſt: and praying the conſideration of the houſe for reviving and encouraging the art of making armour. In anſwer to which it was ordered, that the conſideration of the above-mentioned petition of the workmen armourers of the city of London be referred to the committee, to whom it is referred to prepare and bring in a bill for the better regulating and making the militia of the kingdom more uſeful.

About the ſame time moſt of the defenſive armour was returned into the Tower, by the different corps of the army, and has never ſince been called for, except ſome cuiraſſes, and plain iron ſcull caps like baſons, both occaſionally uſed by the heavy cavalry; ſcull caps were likewiſe till lately worn by the dragoons. Of the cuiraſs, frequently the breaſt-piece only was put on, the back-pieces having been deemed more cumberſome than uſeful, particularly as the backs of the Britiſh troops are rarely expoſed to an enemy. Cuiraſſiers are ſtill to be found in moſt of the European armies; thoſe of this kingdom muſt in future be ſupplied from the old ſtores, the profeſſion of an armourer being now totally extinct. The father of Mr. Cooper of the armory in the Tower, was the laſt perſon regularly bred to that art.

Since the printing of the preceding ſheets, accident has thrown into my hands Sir Richard Hawkin's account of his Voyage to the South Sea, A. D. 1591, wherein he mentions ſhooting arrows from muſkets, with great ſucceſs. Although this does not ſuit in point of time, with the part of this work now under conſideration, yet rather than omit ſo curious a fact, that irregularity is diſpenſed with, and the paſſage here given in his own words.

"In this diſcourſe General Michaell Angell demanded, for what purpoſe ſerved the little ſhort arrowes, which we had in our ſhippe, and thoſe in ſo great quantitie; I ſatisfied him that they were for our muſkets. They are not as yet in uſe amongſt the Spaniards, yet of ſingular effect and execution, as our enemies confeſſed; for the upper worke of their ſhippes being muſket proofe, in all places they paſſed through both ſides with facilitie, and wrought extraordinary diſaſters, which cauſed admiration to ſee themſelves wounded with ſmall ſhott, where they thought themſelves ſecure; and by no means could find where they entered, nor come to the ſight of any of the ſhott. Hereof they proved to profit themſelves after, but for that they wanted the tampkings, which are firſt to be driven home, before the arrow be put in, and as then underſtood not the ſecret, they rejected them as uncertaine, and therefore not to be uſed: but of all the ſhot uſed now a dayes, for the annoying of an enemie in fight by ſea, few are of greater moment for many reſpects, which I hold not convenient to treat of in publique." P. 164. Sec. LXVI.

FINIS.

DESCRIPTION

OF

THE PLATES,

ILLUSTRATIVE OF

THE TREATISE ON ANCIENT ARMOUR.

FRONTISPIECE.

A RICH embossed steel shield, representing the delivery of the keys of some ancient city, to a conquering General. The chief figures, which are ten inches high, are richly inlaid with gold; the whole is encompassed with a border of fruits, flowers, foliage and grotesque work, likewise inlaid with the same metal.

The work of this shield seems in the stile of the fifteenth century. It was probably used as one of the insignia of dignity, commonly borne before the generals in chief of that time. It was purchased in Italy by the late Dr. Ward, who gave five hundred pounds for it; at present it is the property of Gustavus Brander, Esq; of Christ Church, Hants.

Its height is two feet three inches, measured over the convexity: its breadth, taken in the same manner, one foot eleven inches. The border, which is included in the above, is two inches.

It has four holes in the face, for the conveniency of fixing a handle, and divers others round the exterior edge of the border, a little within the rim, at the distance of two inches from each other, probably for fixing a lining of silk or some other stuff.

Weight of the shield nine pounds three quarters.

PLATE I.

FIG. 1. A braſs helmet, formerly the property of Sir William Hamilton, but ſince, with divers other articles of his collection, purchaſed by the public, and now depoſited in the Britiſh Muſeum.—Mr. D'Hancarville, author of the Etruſcan Antiquities, who was employed to make a catalogue of this collection, ſays this helmet is of Grecian workmanſhip, and intended to reſemble the face of an owl, the favourite bird of Minerva, protectreſs of Athens. Its front is ornamented with a rude pattern of leaf-work and flowers, coarſely engraved; the top is perforated, probably for the inſertion of ſome contrivance to faſten the creſt, or pennache; there are two other holes at the points near the chin, and one under each ear, near the bottom, undoubtedly uſed for faſtening it on. It is remarkably thick, and weighs eight pounds and one ounce. According to Mr. D'Hancarville, it was found, anno 1752, in the memorable field of Cannæ, where Hannibal gained a complete victory over the Romans. As there were many Greeks in the Carthaginian army, this helmet is ſuppoſed to have belonged to one of them, who probably fell in the combat, and was buried in his armour.

FIG. 2, and 3, are different views of the ſame helmet.

FIG. 4, and 5, repreſent another helmet of the ſame form and metal, but much lighter and conſequently thinner. It was purchaſed by Sir William Hamilton, at Rome, but where it was found, or any farther particulars concerning it are unknown.

PLATE II.

FIG. 1. An ancient Venetian morion, or head-piece, ornamented with arms, armour, and other military trophies, chaſed on a thin plate of iron, faſtened to another more ſubſtantial.

FIG. 2. This according to Mr. D'Hancarville's catalogue, before recited, is a Roman helmet, found alſo at Cannæ; on the top are two

moveable pins, ſeemingly intended for faſtening a creſt or plume of feathers. This helmet is of braſs, extremely thin, and without a lining; it ſeems incapable of reſiſting the ſlighteſt ſtroke of a ſword, or blow from a ſtone thrown by a ſling.

PLATE III.

FIG. 1. The Venetian morion, of which the former plate gave a front view, is here ſhewn *en profile*. In the centre, immediately under the creſt, is the figure of Acteon; anſwering to it, on the other ſide, is the figure of ſome hero in complete armour. From the ſtile of the armour and ornaments, this morion ſeems to be the work of the fifteenth century. It is the property of Mr. Rawle, military accoutrement-maker in the Strand, London.

FIG. 2. The helmet here repreſented is drawn from one in the Tower. It is of a very ſingular conſtruction; the naſal part in the viſor projecting much farther than uſual; it is of the burgonet kind, having the viſor and bever both in one.

PLATE IV.

THE originals of all the helmets in this plate, are in the Tower.

FIG. 1. A black helmet, its viſor lifted up.

FIG. 2. The ſame helmet, with the viſor let down or cloſed.

FIG. 3. A grated helmet, with a bever that lets down.

FIG. 4. A grated helmet.

FIG. 5, and 6. Different views of the helmet, fig. 3. with its bever down.

PLATE V.

FIG. 1. A barred helmet; the bar lifted up.

FIG. 2. The ſame helmet, with the bar let down.

FIG. 3. A helmet with three bars; the bars lifted up.

FIG. 4. The ſame helmet, with the bars let down.

FIG. 5. A helmet, having both its viſor and bever open.

FIG. 6. The ſame helmet, with its bever and viſor down or cloſed.

The originals of theſe are all in the Tower.

PLATE VI.

FIG. 1. A black helmet in the Tower, with its viſor down or cloſed.

FIG. 2. The ſame helmet, with its viſor raiſed or open.

FIG. 3. An open head-piece, ſaid to have belonged to Oliver Cromwell. It is of iron, the ornaments and nails or ſtuds are of braſs: the original is in the collection of Mr. Rawle.

FIG. 4, and 5. Different views of the helmet, fig. 2. plate 3.

PLATE VII.

FROM THE TOWER.

FIG. 1, and 2. Iron hats called pots, ſaid to be taken from the French in the time of King Charles I.

FIG. 3. A curious ſteel cap richly engraved, ſeemingly in the ſtile of the beginning of the 16th century.

FIG. 4. A large bright helmet, of very neat workmanſhip.

FIG. 5. An open helmet.

FIG. 6. A large helmet richly ornamented and inlaid with creſcents of gilt metal: its viſor opens with a hinge, the creſt of gilt metal.

PLATE VIII.

ALL drawn from the originals in the Tower.

FIG. 1. The helmet to a ſuit of armour ſaid to have belonged to John de Courcy Earl of Ulſter in Ireland, confined there anno 1204.

FIG. 2. The ſame in profile.

FIG. 3. The helmet of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaſter, fourth ſon of King Edward III. who died anno 1399.

FIG. 4. A helmet ſimilar to that of Oliver Cromwell's; the back view of this is given, in order to ſhew the contrivance for raiſing or depreſſing the head.

FIG. 5. The helmet to a ſuit of armour made for K. Henry VIII. when but eighteen years of age. It is rough from the hammer.

PLATE IX.

TAKEN from the Great Seals of the following Kings and ancient Barons.

FIG. 1, and 2. The helmets of William the Conqueror, both from Sandford.

FIG. 3. Of William Earl of Mellent and Worceſter, who lived ſoon after the conqueſt; vide Dugdale's Baronage, and Mills's Catalogue, created Earl of Worceſter, anno 1144, died 1166. Taken from his ſeal in the library of Thomas Aſtle, Eſq.

FIG. 4. John, ſon of Richard I. from his great ſeal in Sandford.

FIG. 5. William, ſon of Robert, Duke of Normandy, from his tomb at the Abbey of St. Bertin's at St. Omer's; vide Montfaucon's Monarchie Françoiſe.

FIG. 6. Richard I. from his great ſeal in Sandford.

FIG. 7. Ferdinand III. King of Caſtile and Leon, from a window of Notre Dame de Chartres. He died anno 1248.

FIG. 8. Alexander II. King of Scotland, from his ſeal in Anderſon's Diplomata. He began his reign anno 1214. His helmet has much the reſemblance of a Scottiſh bonnet.

FIG. 9. Alexander III. King of Scotland, alſo from Anderſon. He began to reign anno 1249.

FIG. 10. John Earl Warren, 10th April, 1276, from Thomas Aſtle, Eſq.

FIG. 11, Robert de Ghiſnes, who lived about the year 1250, from the ſame.

FIG. 12. King Edward I. from Sandford.

FIG. 13. Hughes Vidame de Chalons, who died anno 1279, taken from an engraved figure in the Abbey of Chalons in Champaigne, vide Montf. Monarch. Françoiſe.

FIG. 14. Raoul de Beaumont founder of the Abbey of Eſtival, anno 1210, from his monument in the Chapel of that Abbey, vide Mon. Françoiſe.

FIG. 15. Richard Earl of Cornwall, from Sandford.

FIG. 16. Edward eldeſt ſon of Edward III.

PLATE X.

FIG. 1, and 2. Two views of De Courcy's helmet (ſee plate 8), with the viſor lifted up.

FIG. 3. The head-piece of Oliver Cromwell. (See plate 6.)

FIG. 4, and 5. A tilting helmet in two different poſitions. It is the property of Mr. Rawle.

N.B. This drawing having been etched without reverſing it, divers particulars in Oliver Cromwell's and the tilting helmets appear on the wrong ſide.

PLATE XI.

FIG. 1, and 2. A bar helmet ſeen in different points of view.

FIG. 3, and 4. The helmet to a ſuit of armour, ſaid to have belonged to the Duke of Monmouth, beheaded July 15, 1685. The ſpring ſhewn in the front was intended to ſupport a pennache; both theſe helmets are the property of Mr. Coſway, of the Royal Academy. The laſt is twice introduced by Mr. Weſt, in his Battle of the Boyne.

PLATE XII.

FLEMISH helmets from the armory at Breda.

PLATE XIII.

FIG. 1, and 2. The breaſt and back-piece of an ancient braſs cuiraſs, part of Sir William Hamilton's Collection, now preſerved in the Britiſh Muſeum. On this cuiraſs are marked the ſwell of the breaſts, and ſome of the principal muſcles of the body. This ſhews that the repreſentations of the muſcles, ſeen on the armour of the ſtatues of the Grecian and Roman ſoldiers, are not fictions of the artiſts, but were to be found on the real armour of thoſe times, a matter which has been much doubted. Mr. Hancarville in his catalogue, mentions this cuiraſs as a great curioſity, and judges it to be Roman. The breaſt-plate is nearly ſquare, meaſuring thirteen inches in length, and twelve in breadth. From each breaſt projected a kind

of button, probably uſed to faſten it to the back piece; that on the right breaſt is loſt; it appears by the remaining cavity to have been let into the cuiraſs; this button is ſeparately repreſented over it.

Fig. 3. A Roman Lituus, or military trumpet, ſuch as is mentioned by Horace in his firſt ode. It was found in digging a well, near Battle, in Suſſex, and was then filled with ſmall ſhells. It is of caſt braſs, and bears the ſame proportion to the cuiraſs as delineated: it is now the property of Mr. Rawle. A ſimilar trumpet is engraved in Montfaucon's Roman Antiquities.

Fig. 4. An ancient braſs ſword, found in the Severn near Glouceſter, now in the poſſeſſion of Owen Saliſbury Brereton, Eſq. It is drawn on the ſame ſcale as the other objects in the plate.

PLATE XIV.

Fig. 1. An ancient ſuit of bright armour, exhibited in the Tower of London, as the armour of the famous De Courcy. The helmet in different poſitions has been before ſhewn.

Fig. 2. A pouldron and garde-braſs, avant-braſs or vambrace belonging to the ſuit of the Duke of Monmouth, the helmet of which has been repreſented in different poſitions, plate 11, fig. 3, and 4.

PLATE XV.

A corcelet or ſuit of bright harquebuſs armour from the Tower, the head-piece a morion.

PLATE XVI.

A suit of horſeman's armour, ſuch as was worn about the time of Henry VIII. or Queen Elizabeth, drawn from a ſuit in the horſe-armory in the Tower of London.

PLATE XVII.

The figures 1 and 2, both repreſent the ſame ſuit, which is in the Tower; the helmet is an open one. On the right ſide of the cuiraſs

is part of a lance reſt, which by the inverſion of the object in printing, here appears on the left.

Fig. 3. A ſuit of harquebuſs armour.

Fig. 4. Another ſuit of the ſame denomination, with long taſſets to cover the thighs, the originals of both are in the Tower.

PLATE XVIII.

A suit of black morion or harquebuſs armour.

PLATE XIX.

A suit of armour made for King Henry VIII. when he was but eighteen years of age. It is rough from the hammer, the joints in the hands, arms, knees and feet, move with amazing facility.

PLATE XX.

The ſame ſuit viewed from a different point.

N. B. The originals of plate 18 and 19, both in the Tower.

PLATE XXI.

This plate exhibits two ancient ſuits of mail, in the muſeum of Mr. Richard Green, of Litchfield; the rings are nearly of the ſize delineated, fig. 3, but at the extremities of the arms, and lower parts of the ſkirts, are of ſmaller wire than thoſe of the ſhoulders, back, &c. every ring is drilled and rivetted. On the breaſt and back are a ſet of plates; on thoſe of the breaſt are claſps to make them faſt, by means of a leather ſtrap, the whole coat being open before. The hood or cap is compoſed of rings ſimilar to thoſe of the coat, but the crown or upper part, has a ſet of thin narrow plates, diverging from a center or knob on the top of the head, beſt expreſſed in the ſuit marked 5, which is more complete than the former by having hoſe or trowſers.

Length of the ſuit, fig. 1, from the top of the hood to the bottom of the ſkirts, 4 feet 3 inches.

LENGTH of the ſuit, fig. 5, from the top of the cap or hood, to the bottom of the ſkirts, four feet four inches; from thence to the bottom of the hoſe or trowſers twenty-one inches. The waiſtband of the hoſe is in breadth about two inches and a half; it is of coarſe linen, and covered with a dark coloured ſilk; inſtead of buttons it is faſtened by two leather ſtraps. The buttons of the hoſe are bound with ſilk ferret or ribband. The weight of the cap or hood, fig. 5, is three pounds eight ounces: that of the coat twenty-two pounds eight ounces: the trowſers thirteen pounds: weight of the whole ſuit thirty-nine pounds. The profile of the hood, fig. 2, ſhews the particular conſtruction of the neck.

PLATE XXII.

THIS ſuit, according to the account given by the warders of the Tower, was the armour of John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaſter. It ſeems made for a man of gigantic ſize. The projection of the cuiraſs is ſo conſtructed as to tend to a point over the breaſt, which gives it a ſingular appearance, but was an admirable contrivance to divert the thruſt of a lance, by cauſing it to glance off on one ſide. On the ſhoulders are the paſs-guards mentioned in the deſcription of the different pieces of tilting armour.

PLATE XXIII.

FIG. 1. A ſuit of tilting armour from the Tower, with the defence called the grand guard, and the lance reſt.

FIG. 2. The helmet and grand guard, on a larger ſcale, and in a different point of view.

FIG. 3. The breaſt-piece of a cuiraſs.

PLATE XXIV.

CONSISTS of chanfrons, champfrein or ſhaffrons for barded horſes.

FIG. 4 and 5, are different views of the ſame ſhaffron, which from the device of the bear and ragged ſtaff, on the plate in the center, appears to have belonged to the Warwick family.

PLATE XXV.

THE armed knight here repreſented is taken from the figure of King Edward III. in the horſe armory in the Tower of London: as is alſo the war ſaddle: but the chafron, criniere, poitrinal and buttock piece of the horſe, are drawn from other originals in that place. The horſe was drawn by Mr. Gilpin.

PLATE XXVI.

FIG. 1. A helmet and brigandine.

FIG. 2. An iron greave or armour for the leg.

FIG. 3. One of the gauntlets belonging to the ſuit of John of Gaunt.

FIG. 4. A long armed gauntlet of iron, the inſide of the hand, gloved with buff leather.

FIG. 5. A gorget.

FIG. 6. An iron mace. N. B. The hole through the handle, for paſſing a thong or ring for the convenience of carriage, could not be ſeen in this view.

FIG. 7. An antique pryck ſpur of iron, in the collection of Captain Robſon.

ALL the different articles except the ſpur, are drawn from the originals in the Tower of London.

PLATE XXVII.

FIG. 1. An ancient two-handed ſword, kept in the caſtle of Rocheſter, Kent; ſuppoſed to have been a ſword of ſtate; length of the ſword, the handle included, five feet and half an inch; length of the blade, three feet ſix inches; breadth of ditto near the hilt, three inches; near the point, two inches and a quarter: weight ſeven pounds and a half. When found, the remains of ſome gilding was diſtinguiſhable on the pommel and croſs.

FIG. 2. An ancient two-handed ſword, kept among other old weapons in the town-hall at Canterbury, anno 1776. Length of the

handle, the gripe of which was covered with black leather, two feet; length of the blade, four feet two inches; breadth of the blade, &c. in the proportion here delineated.

Fig. 3. The dagger belonging to it.

Fig. 4, and 5. A ſword and dagger digged up at Sutton at Hone in Kent, formerly a preceptory of the knights of St. John of Jeruſalem, many of whom were buried in the chapel there. Mr. Haſted, author of the Hiſtory of Kent, in cauſing a cellar to be made, found two bodies in armour, with a ſword and dagger lying by them: the armour, was a helmet, back and breaſt-piece with cuiſſets for the thighs. The length of the ſword, blade, and handle, two feet ten inches; length of the blade, two feet; the pommel ſeems to have been gilt. On the blade, was this inſcription, I. N. R. I. Jeſus of Nazareth King of the Jews.

Fig. 6. A kind of battle-ax, in the collection of Captain Robſon, of Chelſea.

Fig. 7. Another battle-ax, in the ſame collection.

N.B. All the weapons of this plate are drawn on the ſame ſcale.

PLATE XXVIII.

Fig. 1. An ancient ſword-blade halbert, in the collection of Mr. Cotton, F.R.S.

Fig. 2. An ancient brown bill, anno 1776, kept in the Town-hall at Canterbury; it was mounted on a ſtaff ſeven feet long, with a pointed ferril of iron at the end.

Fig. 3. An ancient ſword-blade halbert, in the collection of Capt. Robſon; its ſtaff, which was once covered with green velvet, meaſures five feet ſix inches.

Fig. 4. A Lochaber-ax, mounted on a ſtaff five feet long.

Fig. 5. An antique ſword-blade halbert, in the collection of Capt. Robſon, ſuppoſed of the time of Henry VII.

Fig. 6. An ancient bill.

Fig. 7. A hand bill, in the collection of Mr. Cotton. It is hung round with ſmall bells; probably a contrivance to frighten horſes.

FIG. 8. A bill digged up at Battefield, near Shrewſbury; in the poſſeſſion of Mr. Dodd, the comedian. It is mounted on a ſtaff about ſix feet long.

PLATE XXIX.

FIG. 1 and 2. Two views of a ſingular helmet, in the Tower.

FIG. 3. A curious antique pryck ſpur, in the collection of John Fenn, Eſq. F.A.S. The drawing of which was made by him, and kindly communicated to me.

FIG. 4. A ſhirt of chain mail, in the collection of curioſities at Don Saltero's coffee-houſe, Chelſea.

PLATE XXX.

FIG. 1 and 2. A helmet found in Boſworth-field, now in the collection of Captain Robſon.

FIG. 3. A cuiraſs, ſaid to have belonged to King Henry VIII. It conſiſts of ſmall laminæ of metal fixed on leather, which yield to any motion of the body by ſliding over each other.—The original is at Don Saltero's coffee-houſe.

PLATE XXXI

FIG. 1. Section of a lance reſt, drawn from the original in the Tower of London.

FIG. 2. The ſame ſeen above the eye.

FIG. 3. The ſame viewed beneath the eye.

FIG. 4. The head of a muſquet reſt, late in the collection of the Rev. Mr. Goſtling. A tuck iſſued from the ſquare hole ſeen in the center, which was covered by a valve, in this view lifted up. It was intended to keep off the enemy's horſe, whilſt the muſquetteer was loading; his reſt was for that purpoſe ſtruck down before him, the point of the tuck ſloping towards the breaſt of the horſe.

FIG. 5. A muſket reſt taken out of the Thames, at Windſor, now in the collection of Captain Robſon.

Fig. 6. A coronel or crownel, uſed for the head of a tilt ſtaff or lance.

Fig. 7. Part of the ſtaff and handle of a tilt ſtaff or tilting lance, the larger conical plate, is called the van plat, or avant plat, and was meant to protect the hand; the leſſer conical projection is called the burr, deſigned to prevent the hand from ſlipping backwards.

Fig. 8. The ſame ſtaff without the van plat.

PLATE XXXII.

Five Venetian helmets, drawn from the originals in the armory at Venice, by that ingenious artiſt Mr. Miller.

PLATE XXXIII.

Fig. 1 and 2. Different views of a head-piece, being part of a ſuit of armour of the time of King Charles I. belonging to Mr. Coſway, R. A.

Fig. 3. The ſame with the back, breaſt, taſſets, and pouldron.

Fig. 4. An ancient pertuiſan, in the poſſeſſion of Mr. Miller.

Fig. 5. A ſword belonging to Mr. Rawle, the hilt of ſilver elaborately ornamented.

Fig. 6. A hammer of arms, from the Tower of London.

PLATE XXXIV.

Fig. 1. A concave Roundel, in the collection of Mr. Green of Lichfield, Staffordſhire, to whom I am obliged for the drawing. It is thirteen inches diameter, made of wood covered with leather, and an iron plate decorated with nails and mouldings; the boſs or umbo projects four inches.

Fig. 2. A ſection of the ſame.

Fig. 3. A battle-ax, in the collection of Mr. Rawle.

Fig. 4. Its butt end and iron ferril; the ſtaff on which it is fixed is octagonal, and meaſures five feet four inches.

FIG. 5. An ancient pole ax, late in the collection of the Rev. Mr. Goſtling of Canterbury.

FIG. 6. Its butt end and ferril.

FIG. 7. A curious and ancient weapon in the poſſeſſion of Colonel Ogle of Caulſey Park, Northumberland, uſed by ſome of his anceſtors in the defence of the borders againſt the Scots.

FIG. 8. Its butt end. It is mounted on a ſtaff ſeven feet long.

ALL theſe articles are drawn on the ſame ſcale.

PLATE XXXV.

A CURIOUS ſuit of armour belonging to Mr. Coſway, of the age of King James, or Charles I. It is ſaid to be tilting armour, but from the circumſtance of having the back piece made ſtrongly defenſible, ſeems rather to have been intended for military ſervice, as in tilting no ſtrokes might have been levelled at the back; the whole is covered with a cinnamon coloured ſilk, and is ſtrongly quilted and ſtuffed; beſides which, it ſeems ſtrengthened either with jacked leather, or thin iron plates, ſewed on in the nature of a brigandine. The head-piece has alſo an iron cap between the outſide and lining. Moſt probably this ſuit is what was called ſilk armour. A ſpecies often mentioned in hiſtory, and found in the inventory of ancient armories.

FIG. 1 and 2. The head-piece ſhewn in different points of view. Its weight three pounds thirteen ounces.

FIG. 3. The breaſt and back. Weight of the breaſt ſeven pounds fourteen ounces, the back ſix pounds thirteen ounces.

FIG. 4. The taſſet or ſkirt, weight one pound five ounces.

FIG. 5. A covering for the left arm, curiouſly ſtuffed and quilted, intended to anſwer the uſe of a ſhield, weight two pounds three ounces.

FIG. 6. The head-piece diſplayed on the ground.

PLATE XXXVI.

A KNIGHT or man at arms completely armed and mounted, according to the faſhion of the time of King Henry II. that is, with a hawberk of plate, or ſcale mail, over which is his fur coat. On his head is one of thoſe flat helmets ſhewn in plate 8, ſuch as are repreſented on the great ſeals of our kings and ancient barons, about and before that period, as well as in divers antient paintings on glaſs, alſo on ſepulchral monuments, particularly thoſe in the Temple Church, London. In his right hand he carries a plain lance, that is a lance without avant plat, or burr, and on his left arm a triangular, or heater ſhield. The fore part of his legs are defended by iron plates, called jambeſons, his heels are armed with pryck ſpurs, and he ſits on a war ſaddle, whoſe burrs and cantles are covered with ſteel.

PLATE XXXVII.

AN ancient concave roundel, late in the collection of the Rev. Mr. Goſtling of Canterbury. It was a circle of one foot diameter, formed of three ſkins of leather, covered with a plate of iron, ſtrengthened and decorated with ten concentric circles of braſs nails, and ſecured within by three thin hoops of iron; the umbo, its ſpike included, projected five inches; it was hollow and ſtuffed with hair: the handle was of wood much decayed, and faſtened by thin iron plates.

FIG. 1. Repreſents the back or inſide of the roundel.

FIG. 2. Its front viewed obliquely.

FIG. 3. The ſection ſhewing its concavity and handle.

FIG. 4. The handle ſhewn ſeparately.

PLATE XXXVIII.

THIS plate alſo ſhews a man at arms of the 12th and 13th century, in the act of charging an enemy. He is armed much the ſame as the knight repreſented in plate 36, except that he has a hawberk of chain mail, i. e. formed of ſmall iron rings.

PLATE XXXIX.

THIS plate contains a buff coat, ſword, ſhoulder-belt, and waiſt-belt, toledo, and a defence for the left arm, worn in the time of Charles I. by Sir Francis Rhodes, Bart. of Balborough-Hall, Derby-ſhire.

FIG. 1. Fore part of the buff coat, which was formerly decorated with gold lace; the body is lined with coarſe linen, the buttons and hoops of ſilver wire and brown ſilk, the lacing ſtring of coarſe white tape.

FIG. 2. The back part of the coat.

FIG. 3. A buff belt intended to be ſlung over the right ſhoulder, and fixed there by a loop on fig. 1. This belt has a loop and ſwivel, for the purpoſe of carrying a carabine.

FIG. 4. A ſword whoſe hilt is of gilt ſilver, the gripe wire-work, the blade triangular, two feet five inches long; to it is a buff belt two inches three quarters broad.

FIG. 5. A buff covering for the left arm, contrived to anſwer the purpoſe of a ſhield, being compoſed of three ſkins of leather, with one of cartoon or paſteboard; the length twenty-five inches, the width at the opening twelve inches, tapering towards the wriſt; to it is fixed a buff glove.

FIG. 6. The outſide of the glove and arm-piece.

FIG. 7. A long toledo, with a hilt of filigrained ſteel, length of the blade three feet nine inches, finely tapering to a point.

FIG. 8. Section of the blade and ſcabbard.

FIG. 9. A more diſtinct deſign of the hilt of the forementioned ſword.

N.B. THIS ſword belonged to a ſuit of common iron armour, with a barred helmet, the cuiraſs whereof is almoſt deſtroyed by ruſt. On the helmet are the letters J. R. John Rodes, ſon of Judge Francis Rodes, which Francis built Balborough-Hall in 1583, and died in 1585.

N. B. THE coat and ſome other parts of the drawing having been etched without reverſing, brings the loop deſcribed in No. 1. and the ſword No. 4, on the wrong ſide.

PLATE XL.

FIG. 1. A matchlock muſquet from the Tower of London.

FIG. 2. The inſide of its lock on a larger ſcale.

FIG. 3. Its bayonet, to be fixed by ſticking the handle into the muzzle of the muſquet.

FIG. 4. The ſame ſort of bayonet, to be fixed by means of the rings, as deſcribed and drawn by Mr. Goſtling.

FIG. 5. The head of a muſquet reſt armed with a bayonet, as deſcribed by Bariffe.

FIG. 6. A common muſquet reſt, in the collection of Mr. Goſtling.

FIG. 7. A ſet of bandileers, with powder flaſk, and bullet bag.

FIG. 8. A wheel lock piece in the collection of Mr. Brander.

FIG. 9. The lock on a larger ſcale.

FIG. 10. The ſpanner for ſpanning or winding up the ſpring of the wheel lock.

PLATE XLI.

AN ancient iron mace in the collection of Guſtavus Brander, Eſq.

THE whole length of this mace is two feet one inch, the length of the head ſeven inches.

WEIGHT, three pounds nine ounces, the handle hollow. The whole mace appears to have been gilt; at preſent moſt of the gilding is rubbed off. The handle is perforated near the middle for the paſſing of a ring, chain, or thong, to hang it to the ſaddle bow.

PLATE XLII.

FIG. 1. Part of a helmet ſhewn in Warwick Caſtle, ſaid to have belonged to Guy earl of Warwick.

FIG. 2. A ſide view of the ſame helmet, with the pivot, and a ſmall fragment of the viſor.

FIG. 3, and 4. Two views of an iron chafron of uncommon conſtruction, ſaid to have belonged to the above-mentioned earl.

PLATE XLIII.

AN elegant ſuit of fluted armour brought by Lord Warwick from Germany.

PLATE XLIV.

A FRONT view of the ſame ſuit.

PLATE XLV.

A SUIT of armour ſaid to have belonged to the Duke of Monmouth.

PLATE XLVI.

FIG. 1. Another view of the ſame ſuit; fig. 2 and 3, different views of the helmet belonging to it.

PLATE XLVII.

THE head-piece, breaſt and back, which Lord Brooke had on when killed in the cloſe at Lichfield. A. D. 1643.

PLATE XLVIII.

Two ancient ſingular pieces of armour, and a two-handed ſword ſaid to have belonged to Guy earl of Warwick.

FIG. 1. A breaſt plate, in length three feet one inch, in breadth at the top one foot four inches, at the bottom two feet, weight fifty-two pounds.

FIG. 2. A ſhield perforated in the center, enabling the bearer to cover his head without interrupting his fight. Its meaſure two feet two inches, by two feet one inch. Its weight thirty-two pounds.

FIG. 3. The ſword, its length five feet ſix inches long, its weight twenty pounds.

THESE ſix plates were drawn from the original armour by that in-

genious artiſt Mr. Danks, at the expence of the Right Honourable the Earl of Warwick, who permitted engravings to be made for this work, for which the author here begs leave to return his moſt grateful acknowledgements.

PLATE XLIX.

Represents an uncommon engine, ſuppoſed to be a tinker's mortar, which being fixed on a ſtick was uſed for throwing grenades; the upper view of it ſhews it open, that at the bottom gives its appearance when ſhut: the original is in the collection of Captain Robſon of Chelſea.

N. B. The two views of the back and breaſt pieces not before deſcribed in plate xiv. are the property of Mr. Coſway, and belong to the ſame ſuit as the poldrons and avant bras. The knee piece was drawn from one in the Tower.

SUPPLEMENT

TO

A TREATISE

ON

ANTIENT ARMOUR,

BEING ILLUSTRATIONS OF ANTIENT AND ASIATICK ARMOUR AND WEAPONS.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

ADVERTISEMENT

(Prefixed to the Firſt Edition).

MANY of the Purchaſers of the Treatiſe on Antient Armour and Weapons, having intimated that they wiſhed to ſee a ſimilar Repreſentation of the Arms, offenſive and defenſive, formerly uſed, and ſtill in Uſe among the different Aſiatick Nations, particularly thoſe of the Eaſt-Indies; the Author having ſeveral favourable Opportunities of conſulting many very curious Cabinets and Collections of thoſe Curioſities, has gladly ſeized the Opportunity of indulging his favourite Purſuit; and here begs Leave to lay before the Public divers additional Plates, moſt of them Eaſtern Subjects, with ſome antient Britiſh, Daniſh, and Saxon Inſtruments and Weapons, found in different Parts of Great Britain.

Mr. HAMILTON's Health not permitting him to etch the whole of theſe Drawings, as he originally intended, they have been executed by the beſt Engravers of thoſe Subjects; to which are added, the moſt authentick and accurate Accounts of them that could be obtained.

THE Aſiatick Arms will be found particularly uſeful to ſuch Artiſts as ſhall, in future, be employed to celebrate and immortalize, either by Painting or Sculpture, the Acts of Britiſh Valour in thoſe Regions.

DESCRIPTION

OF

THE SUPPLEMENTAL PLATES

TO

THE ANTIENT ARMOUR.

OF ASIATICK ARMOUR AND WEAPONS.

PLATE L.

FIG. 1. A Maratta horſeman's ſword.

FIG. 2. Another ſhewn in a different point of view.

FIG. 3. An Aſiatick ſhield made of a buffalo's hide.

FIG. 4. Another ſhewing the inſide, with the rings for the arms.

FIG. 5. An eaſtern quiver and bow-caſe.

FIG. 6. A Perſian quiver, for holding darts or javelins to be thrown by hand.

FIG. 7. One of the javelins.

FIG. 8. A Seapoy's ſword.

FIG. 9. Another of a different form.

FIG. 10. A Perſian ſcymeter.

FIG. 11. An eaſtern battle-axe.

FIG 12. An eaſtern dart.

FIG. 13. An eaſtern Naicaire, or kettle-drum

N.B. Numbers 1 and 2 are in the collection of Captain Robſon, who brought them from India; numbers 3, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 13, are in the cabinet of Mr. Rawle; and numbers 5, 11, and 12, in the Muſeum of the Honourable Horace Walpole, at Strawberry-Hill.

PLATE LI.

FIG. 1 and 2. A head-piece, with a hood of chain mail, formerly worn by Souja Dowla.

FIG. 3. Souja Dowla's battle-axe.

FIG. 4 and 5. Breaſt and back pieces to the ſame ſuit.

FIG. 6. Aſiatick avant braſs or armour for the arm.

All theſe were given by the Nabob to Mr. Conway, and purchaſed at his ſale by Mr. Rawle, in whoſe poſſeſſion they were A. D. 1789.

PLATE LII.

FIG. 1. A Polygar ſword.

FIG. 2. A Colleree-ſtick, which being of hard heavy wood, is thrown with ſuch violence by the Collerees as to break the legs of men and horſes: brought from India by Captain Robſon.

FIG. 3. A Malay dagger.
FIG. 4. Its ſheath.
FIG. 5. The pommel and hilt, on a large ſcale.
FIG. 6. Another of a different form.
FIG. 7. Its ſheath.
FIG. 8. Its pommel and hilt, on an enlarged ſcale.
FIG. 9 and 10. Malay creſſes, or daggers.
FIG. 11 and 12. A Malay ſabre and ſheath.
FIG. 13. A Malay dagger.

All in the collection of —— Marſden, Eſq. author of the Hiſtory of Sumatra.

PLATE LIII.

FIG. 1 and 2. Aſiatick match-lock guns, of different ſpecies.
FIG. 3. A brazen appendage, ſerving for a reſt.
FIG. 4 and 5. Turkiſh guns.
FIG. 6. A Turkiſh match-lock gun, on a larger ſcale.

The three firſt guns are in the collection of Mr Rawle; the two laſt, in that of the late Guſtavus Brander, Eſq.

PLATE LIV.

FIG. 1. A ſurtout of chain-mail, belonging to Souja Dowla's ſuit of armour.
FIG. 2. A back view of the ſame.
FIG. 3. A Malay creſſe, or dagger.
FIG. 4. An Aſiatick bow.

Theſe are in the collection of Mr. Rawle.

ASIATICK PACK-SADDLE.

PLATE LV.

A SADDLE for a dromedary, in the collection of Mr. Rawle; length about one foot. It is ſhewn in different points of view.

ASIATICK ARMS.

PLATE LVI.

FIG. 1. A battle-axe, in the collection of Mr. Rawle.

FIG. 2. A dagger, in the ſame collection.

FIG. 3. A Rohilla battle-axe, in the collection of Mr. Martin, of Edinburgh.

FIG. 4. An Indian Creſſe, in the collection of Mr. Dalton.

FIG. 5 and 6. An eaſtern powder-flaſk, embroidered with gold, in the collection of Mr. Rawle.

ANTIENT CARABINE.

PLATE LVII.

CARRYING two charges in the ſame barrel; to be fired ſucceſſively by two wheel-locks.

FIG. 1 and 2. Different views of the carabine.

FIG. 3. The locks.

FIG. 4. The end of the ramrod.

FIG 5 and 6. Spanners, ſerving alſo for holding fine powder for priming.

PLATE LVIII.

ANTIENT DART AND ARROW HEADS.

FIG. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 8. Arrow heads of different forms. From the collection of John M'Gowan, Eſq. of Edinburgh.

FIG. 9. The braſs head of a dart. From the ſame collection.

FIG. 10. An iron head of a dart for a ſmall machine. From the collection of the late Guſtavus Brander, Eſq.

FIG. 11. An iron head of a dart for a catapulta, or mangonel, found in the ditch of the Tower of London. From the collection of Mr. Rawle.—They are all of the ſame ſize as the originals.

SAXON WEAPONS.

PLATE LIX.

FIG. 1 and 2. Antient iron ſwords, found in cleaning the bed of the river Wytham, in Lincolnſhire. The inſcription on fig. 1, is ſuppoſed to be a charm or amulet.

FIG. 3 and 4. Dirks or daggers, found in the ſame place. They are all in the Muſeum of Sir Joſeph Banks, Bart. preſident of the Royal Society.

FIG. 5. Is a bolt for a croſs-bow; it is made of bone; in the notch at the point, a piece of iron or ſteel was inſerted; one was ſticking in it when found in the camp at Danbury, in Eſſex. The original is in the collection of William Bray, Eſq.

ANTIENT BRASS SWORDS, AND A SPEAR-HEAD, FOUND IN SCOTLAND.

PLATE LX.

FIG. 1. Found on the borders between Scotland and England.

FIG. 2. Found in Duddingſton Lake, near Edinburgh.

FIG. 3. Ditto.

FIG. 4. The handle of a braſs ſword, found near Peebles.—They are all in the collection of John M'Gowan, Eſq. of Edinburgh, and are three times the dimenſions here delineated.

FIG. 5. A braſs head of a ſpear, found in Duddingſton Lake, from the ſame collection.

HELMETS.

PLATE LXI.

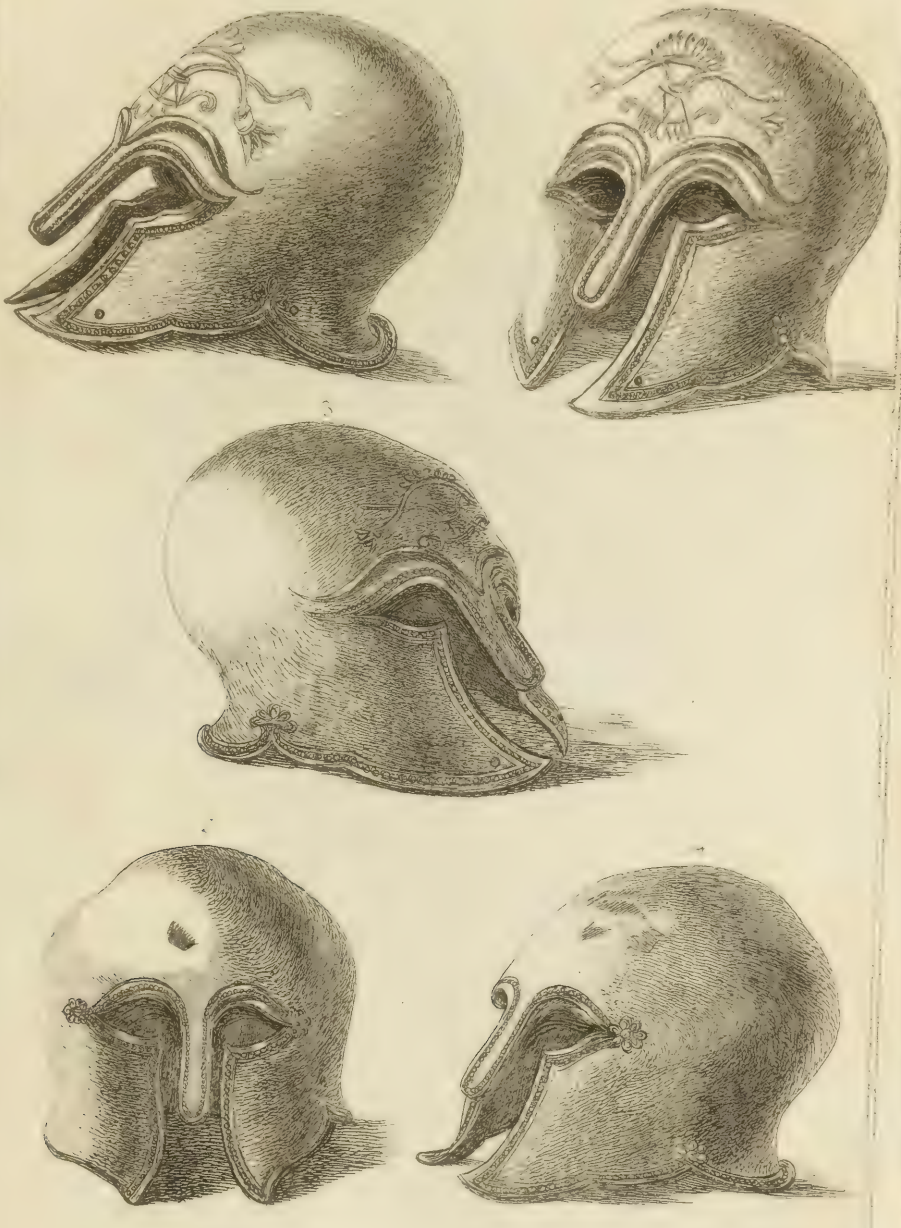
FIG. 1. A helmet in the Tower of London, whoſe beaver opens by letting down.

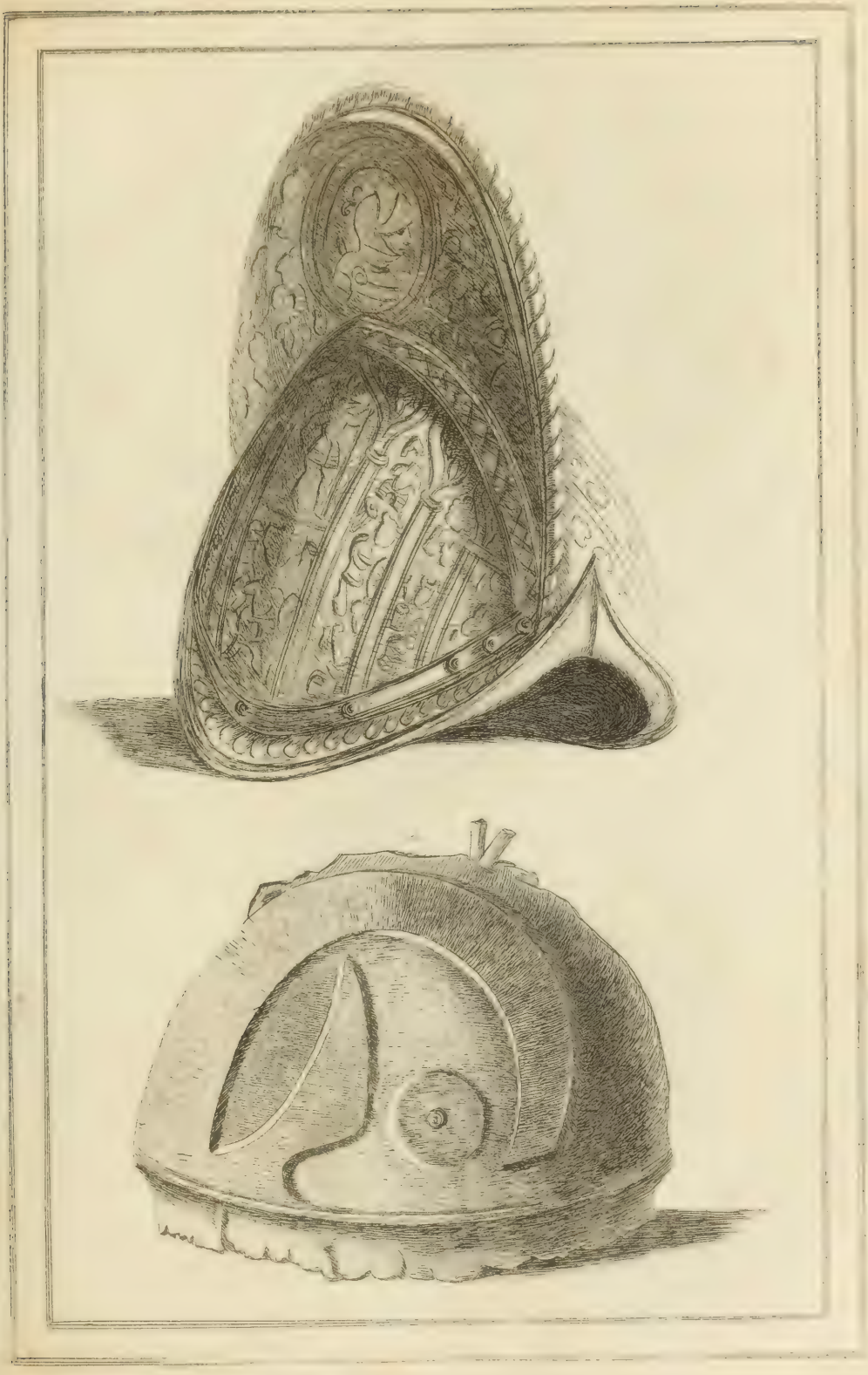
FIG. 2. A double-barred helmet. In the collection of the Hon. Mr. Walpole, at Strawberry-Hill.

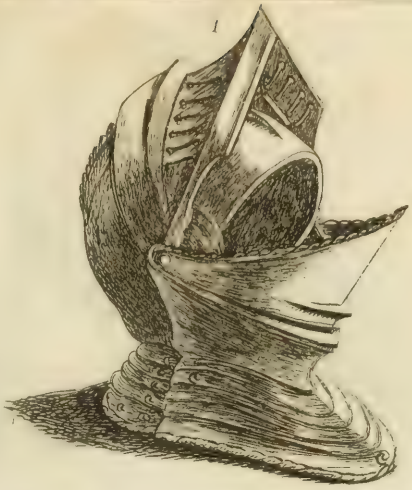
FIG. 3, 4, 5, 6. Different views of a ſalet, with oreilliets or ear-pieces. In the poſſeſſion of Mr. Carter.

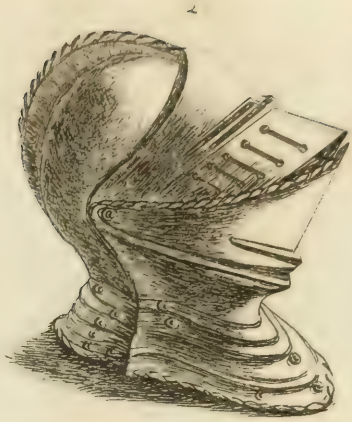
FINIS.

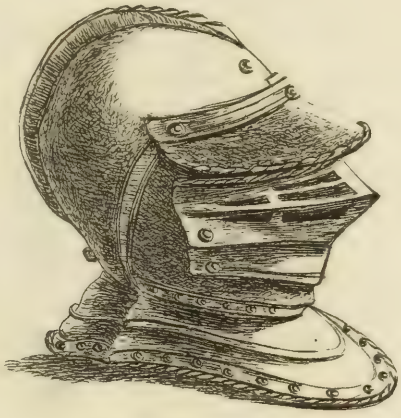
GENERAL






1

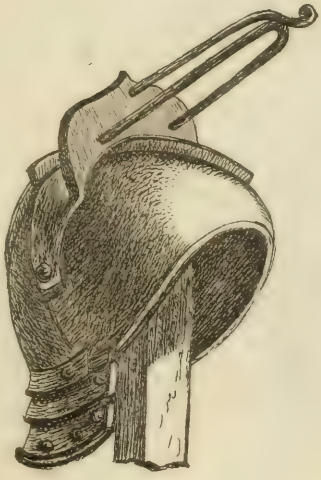

2

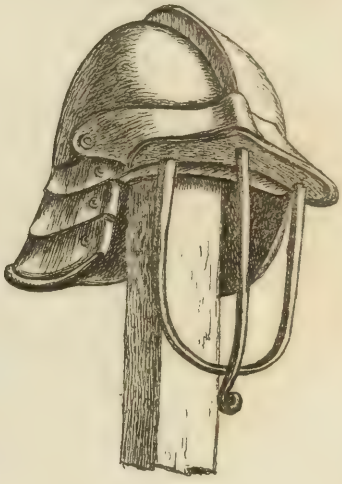

3

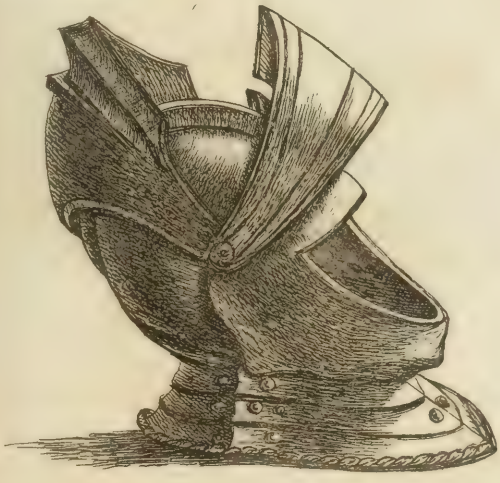
4

5

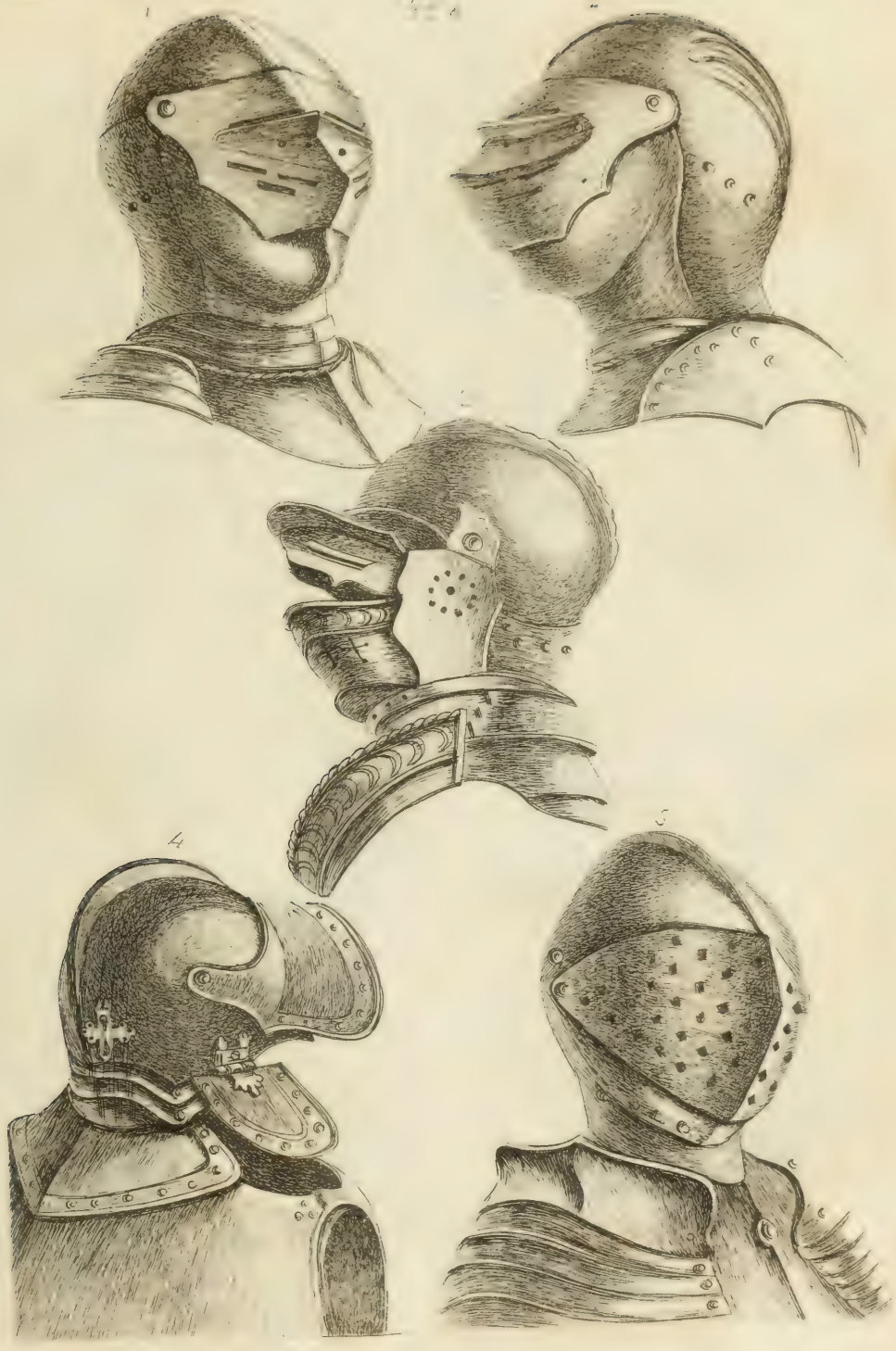
6

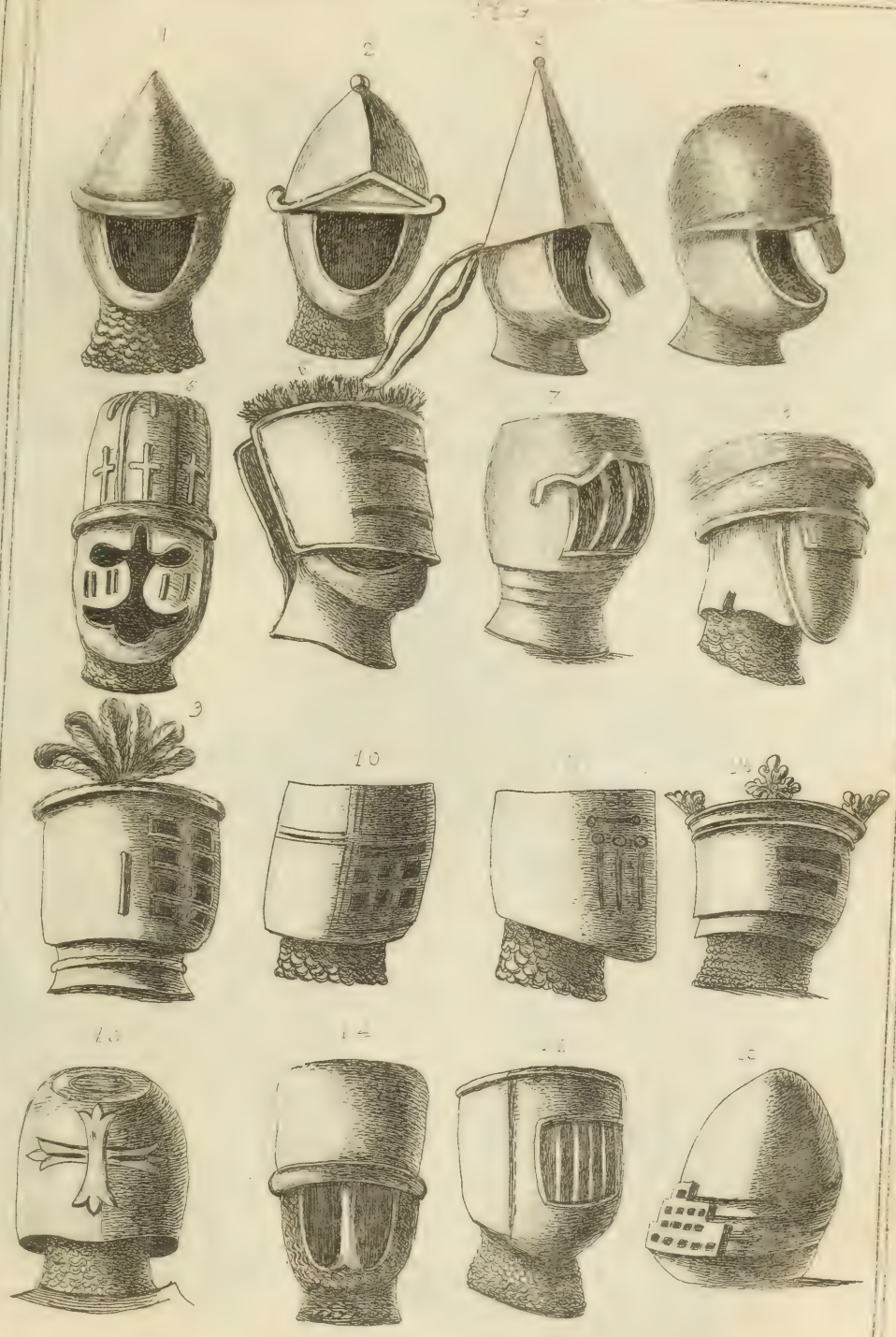


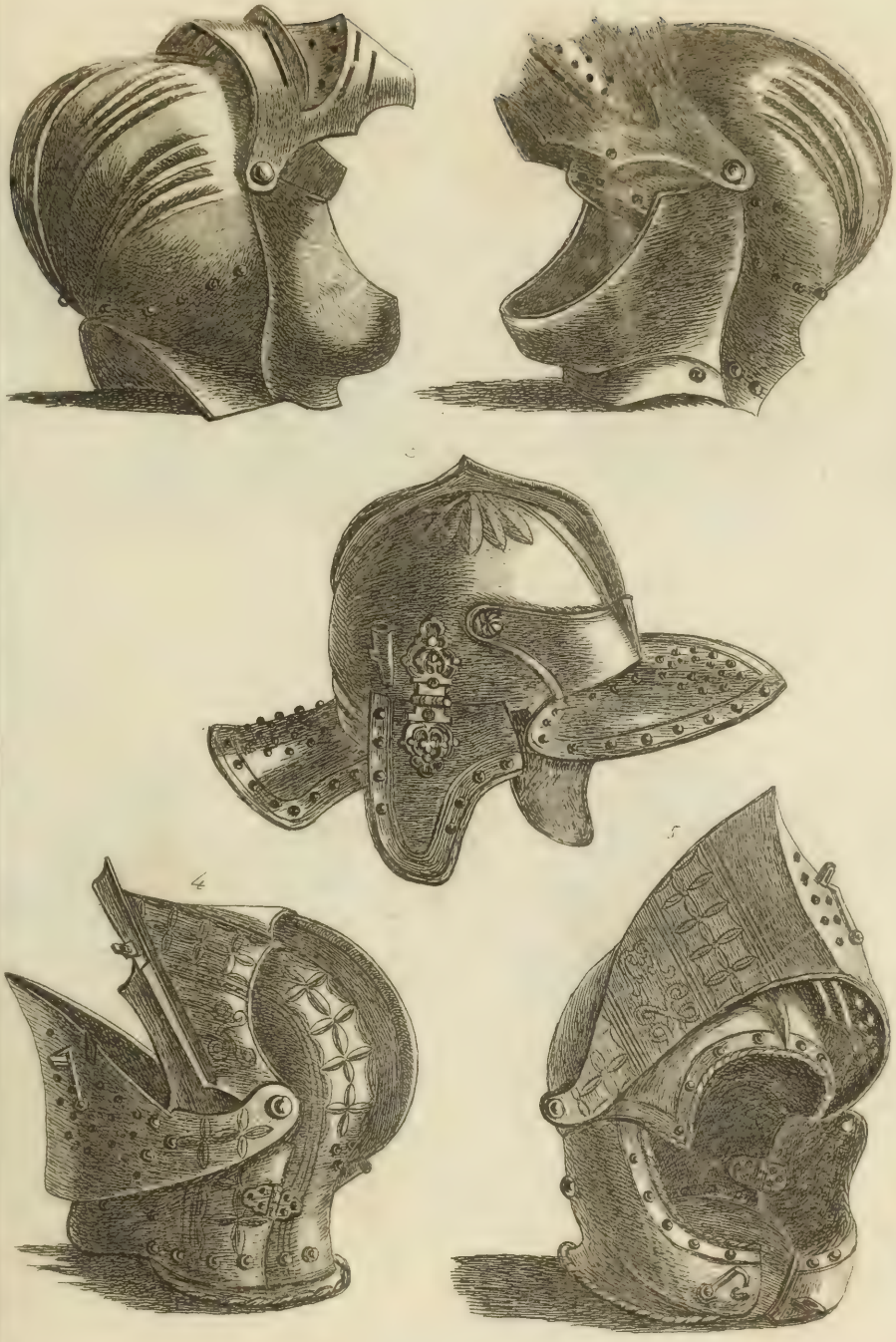




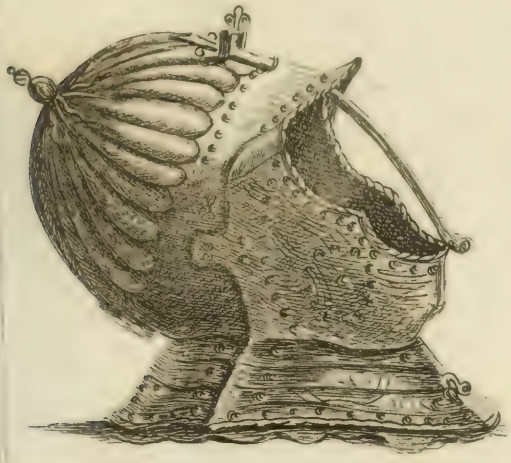
1
2
3
4
5
6


1
2
3
4
5





1



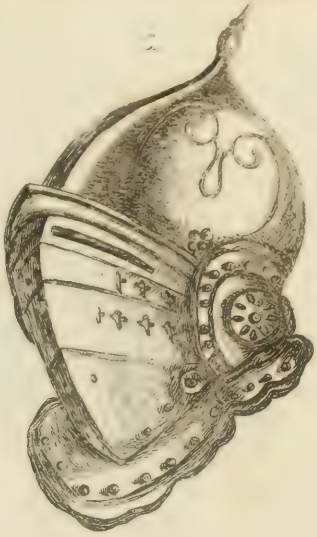
2

3

4

1

2

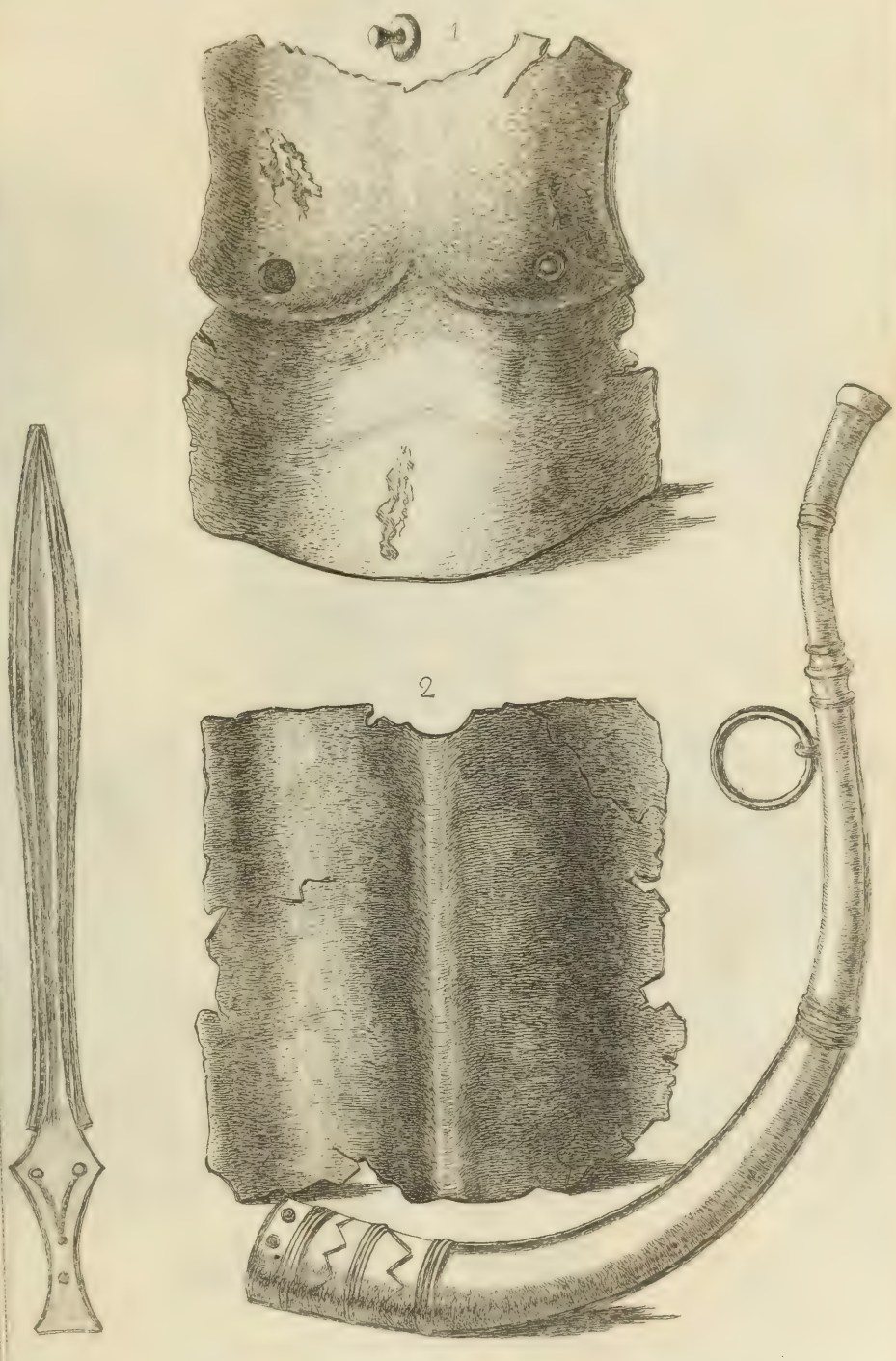


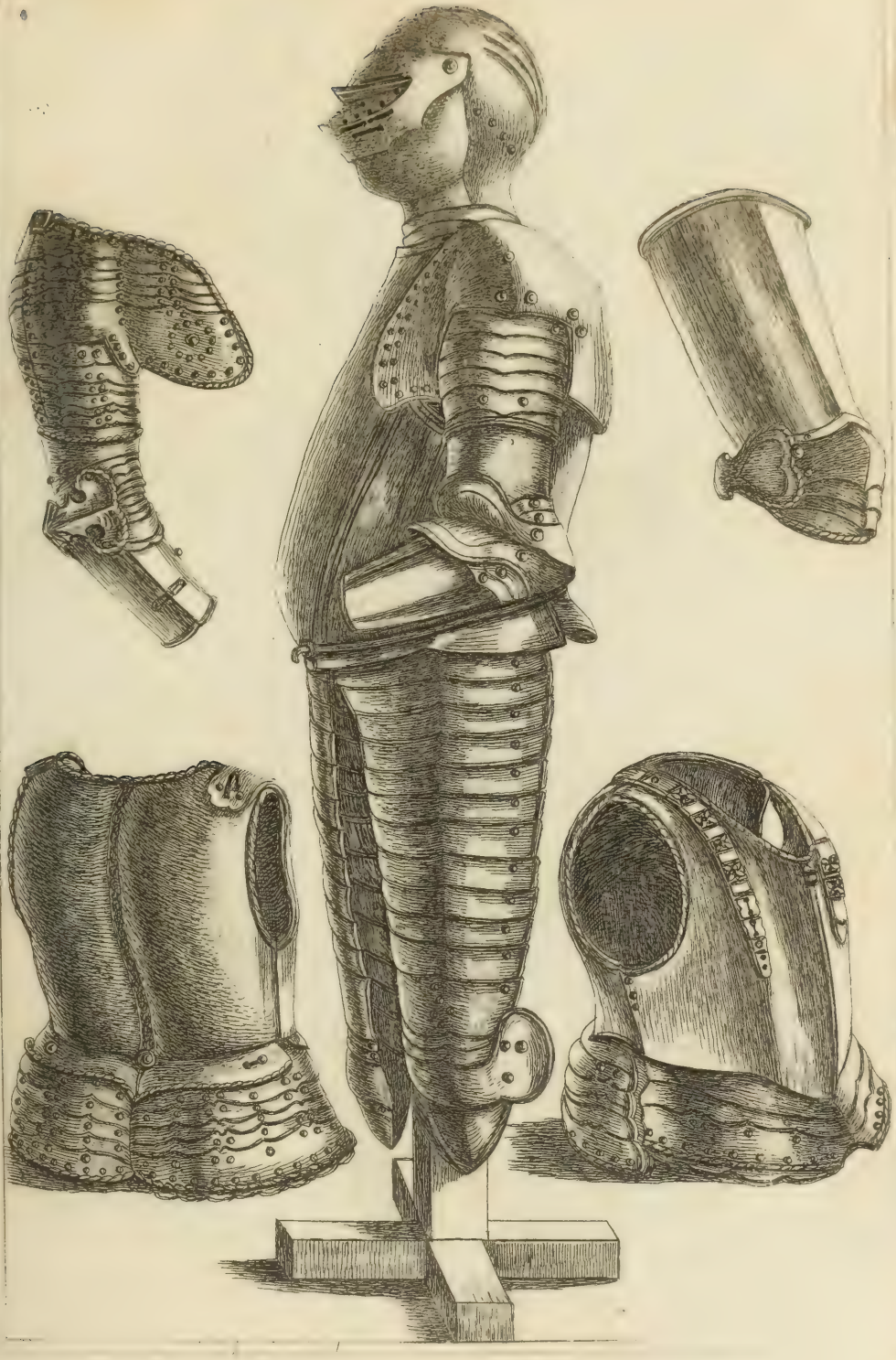
3

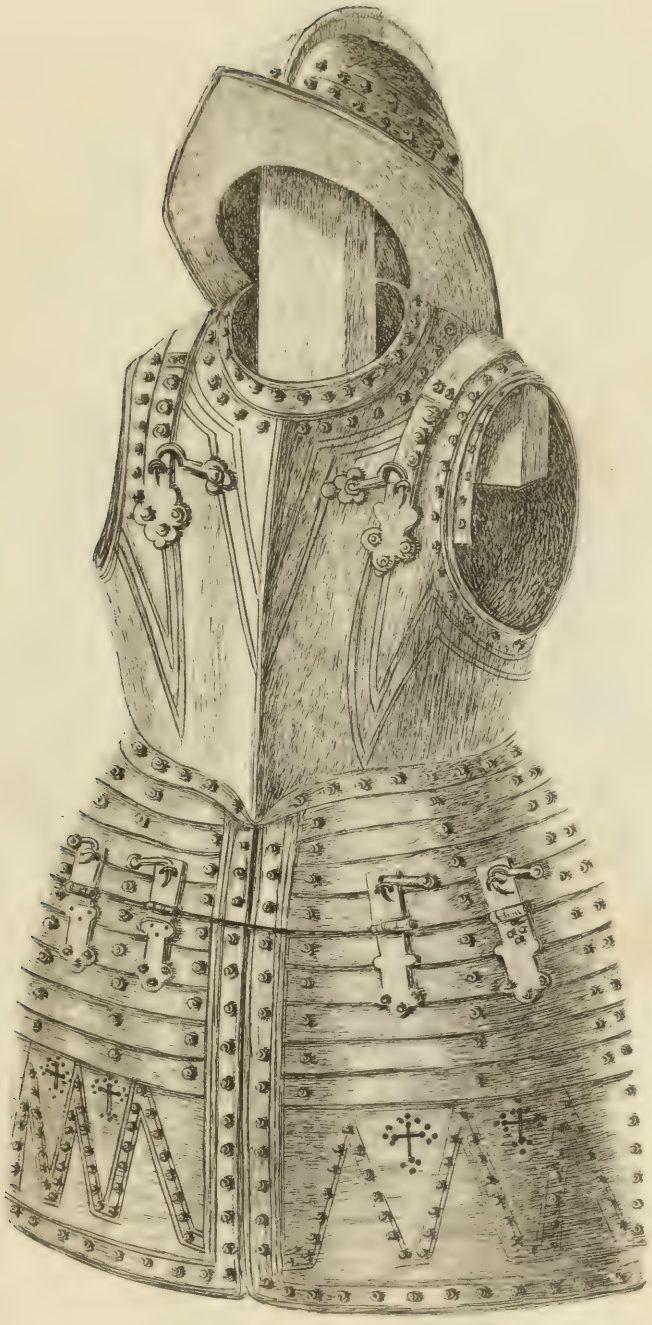
4

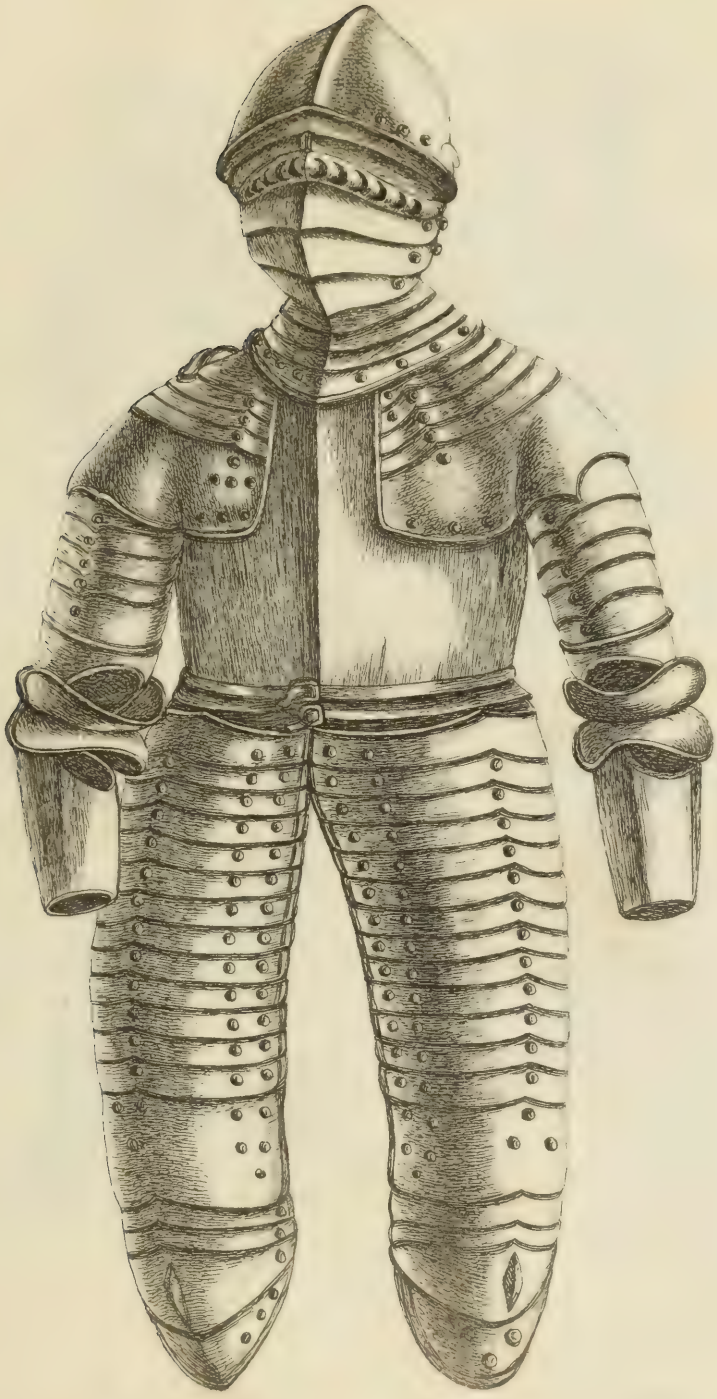
5

6

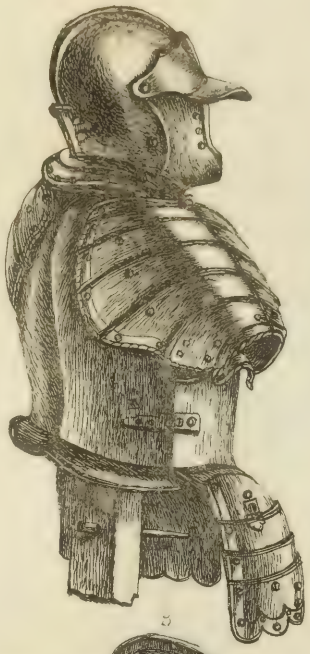

1
2

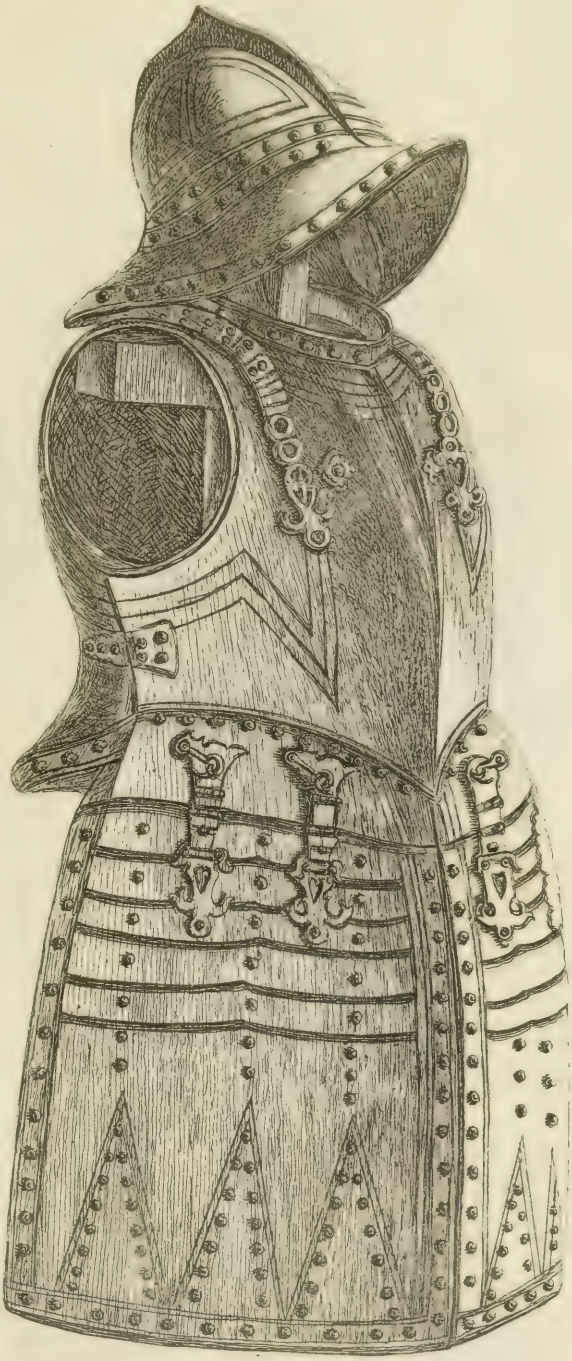


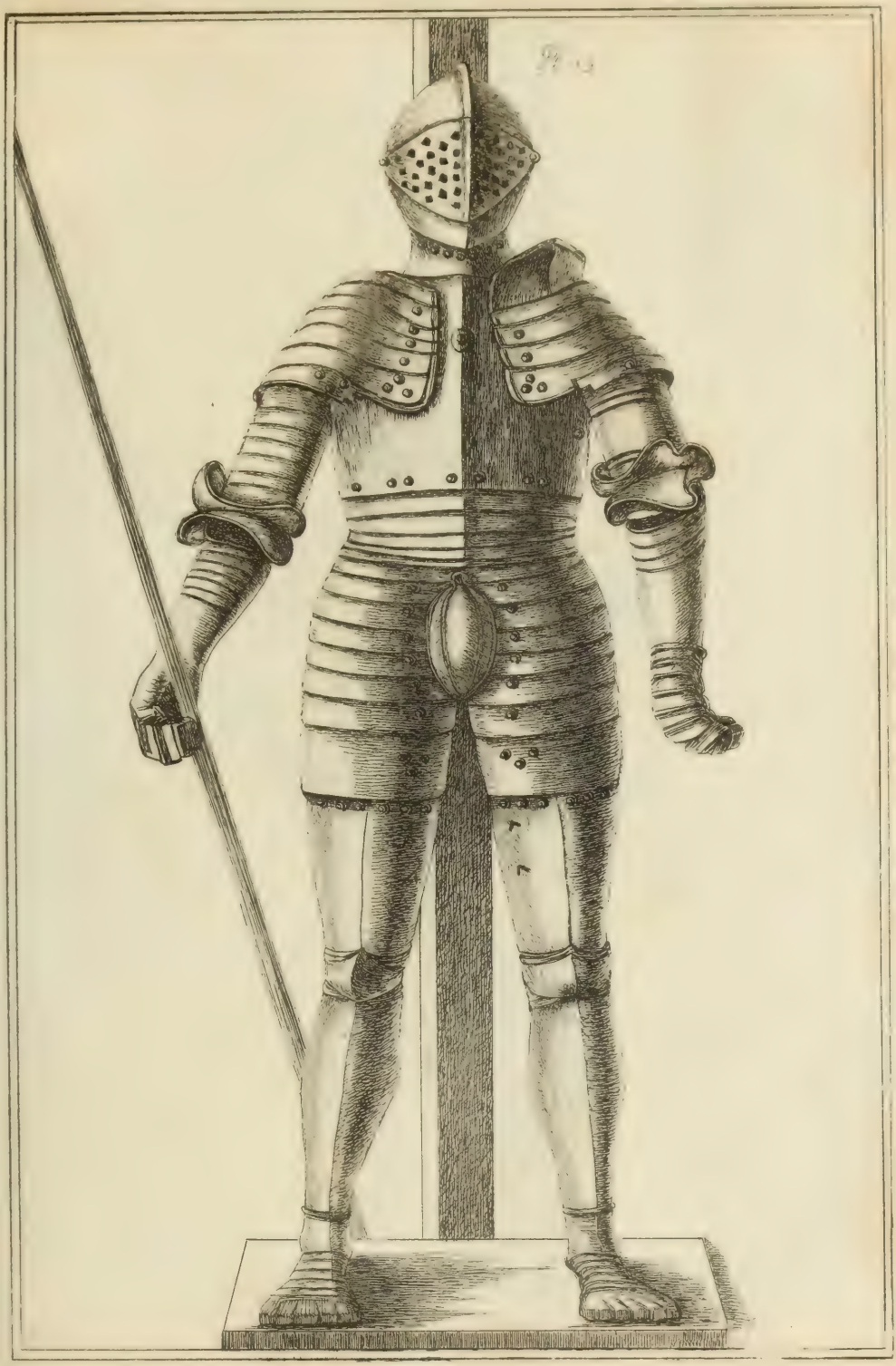


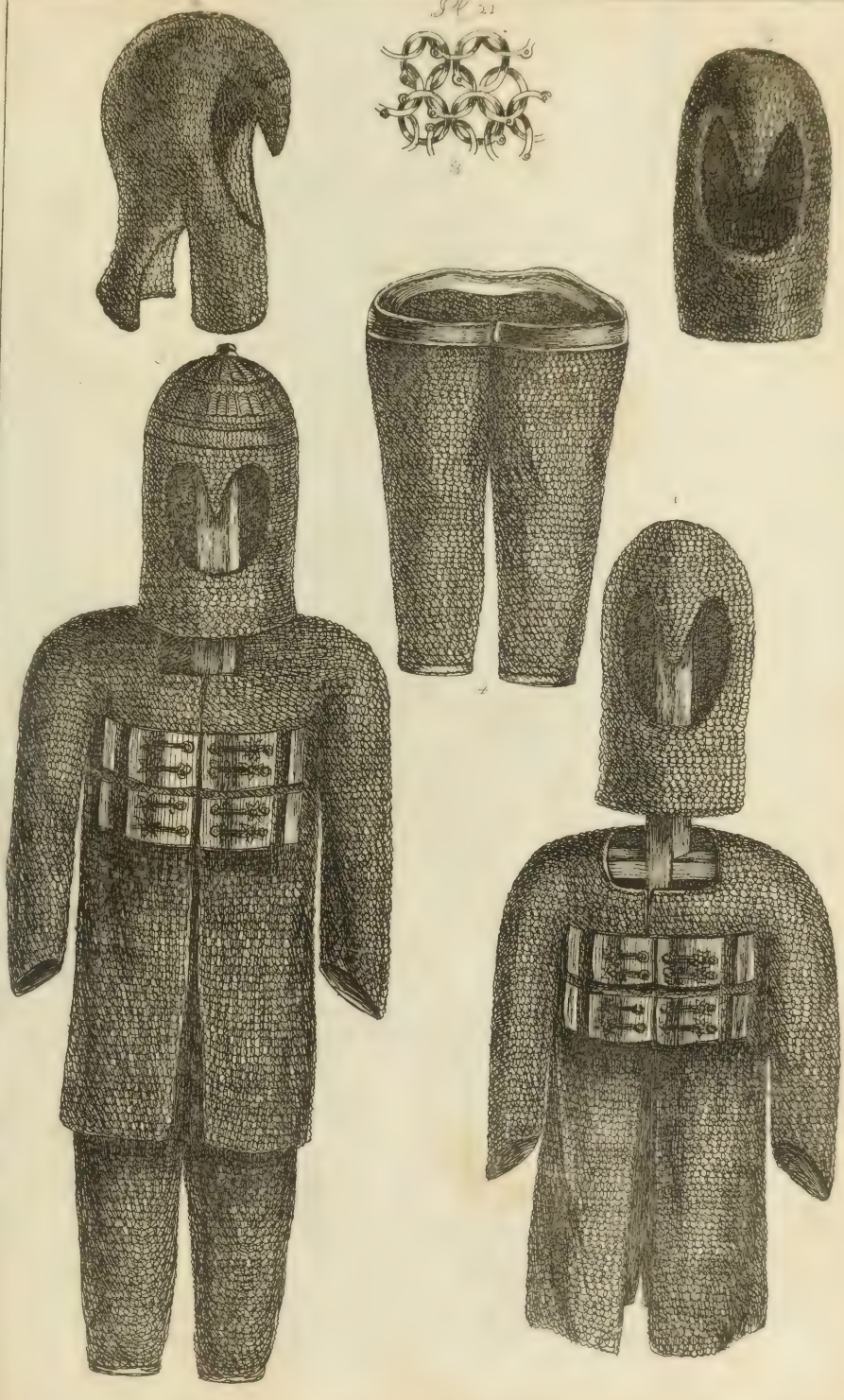


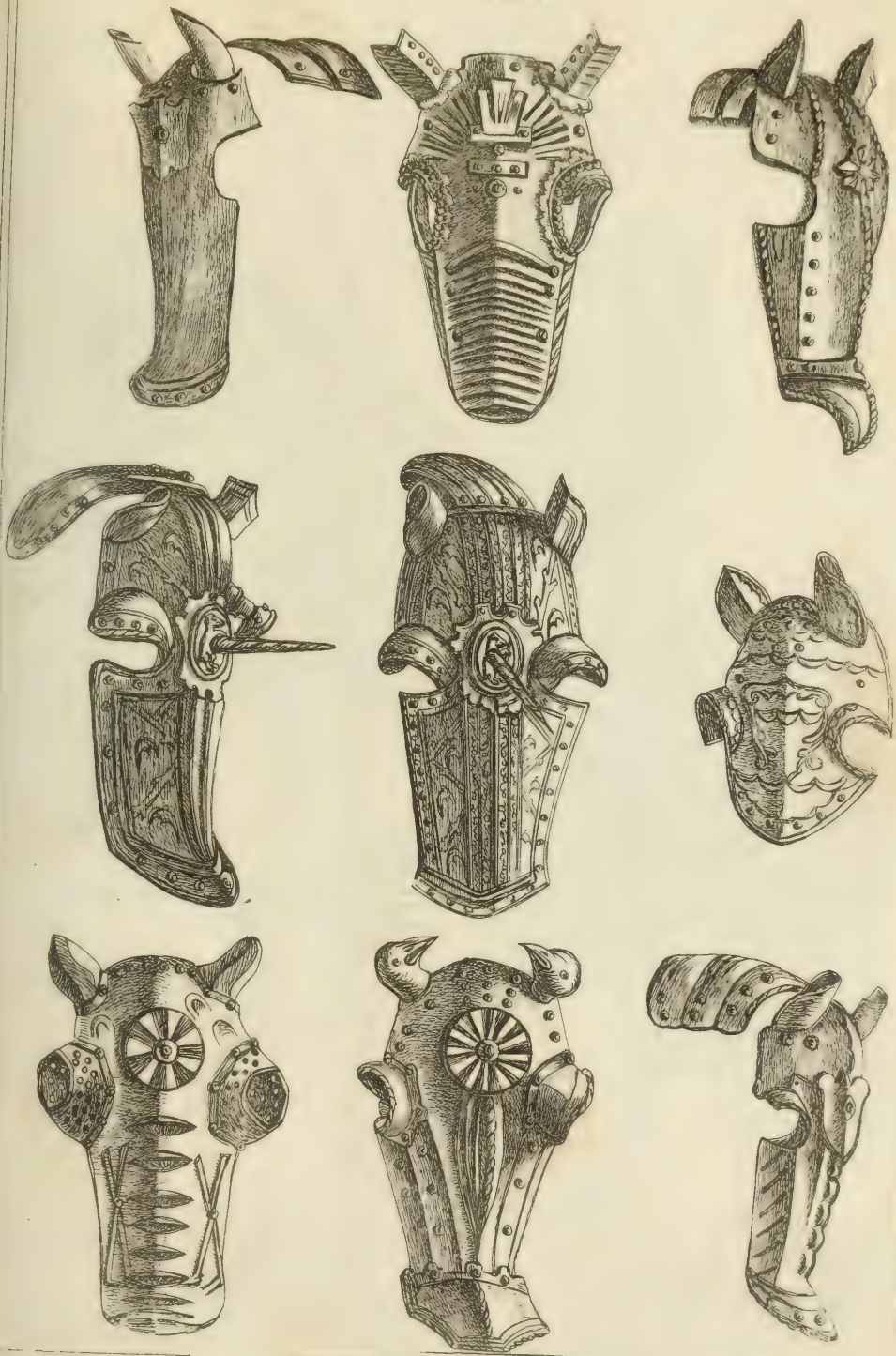
Pl. 17



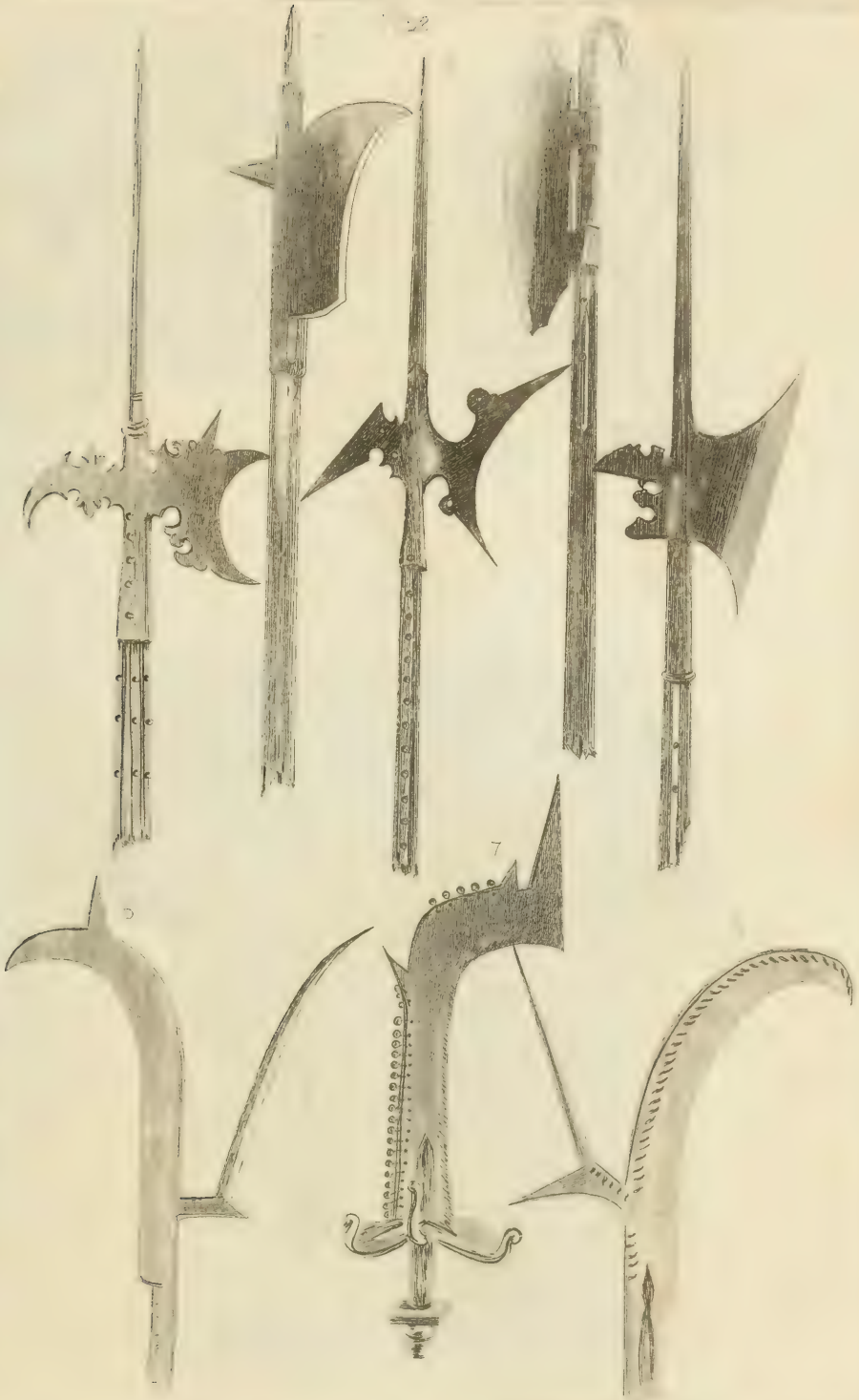




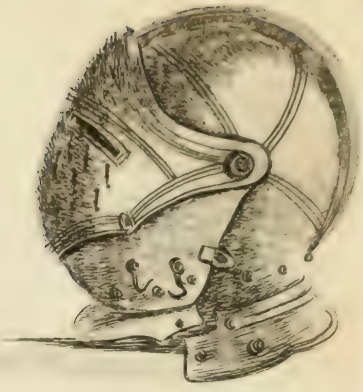


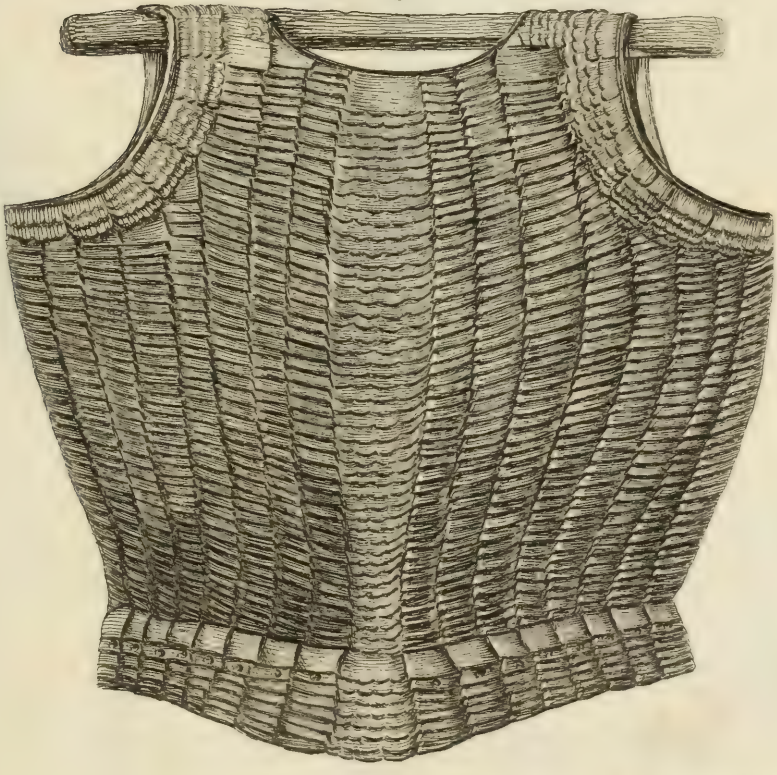


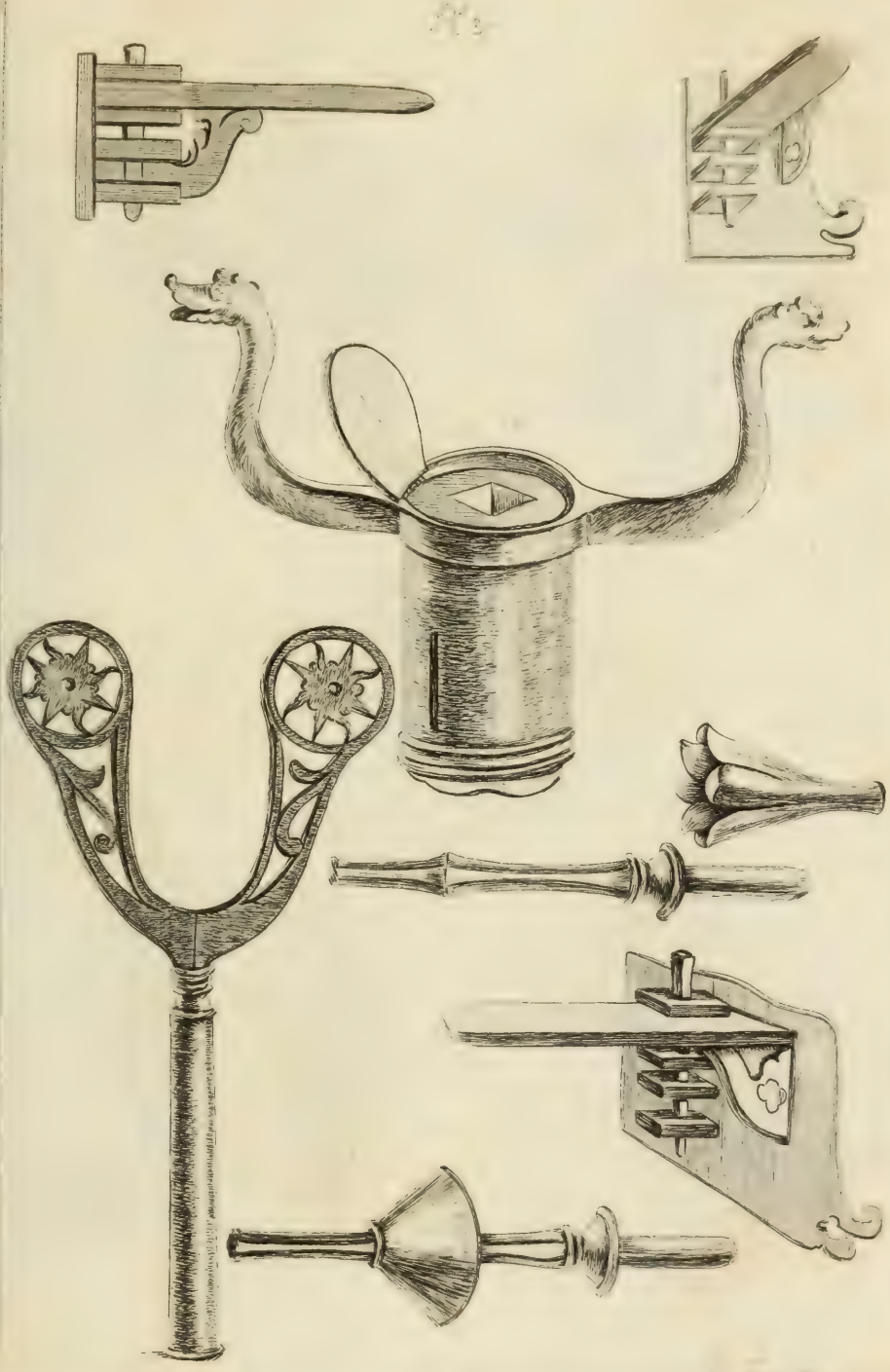
1
2
3
4
5
6
7



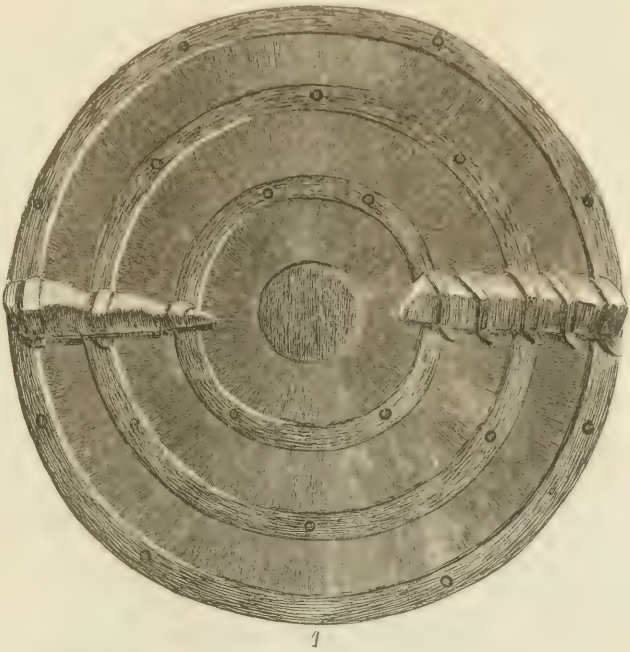
4



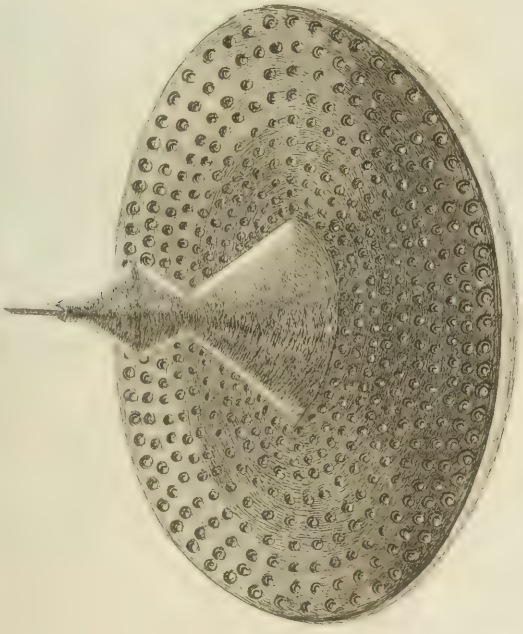


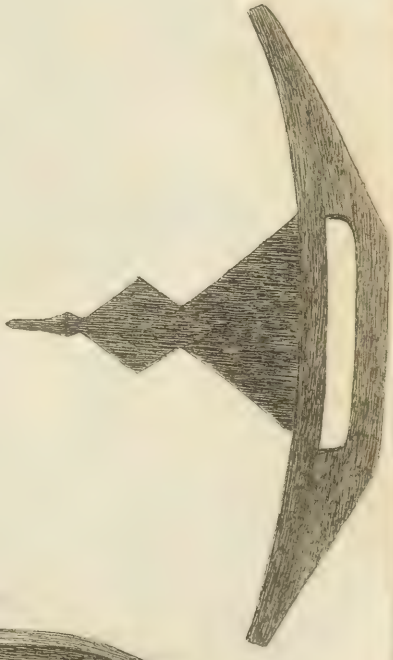


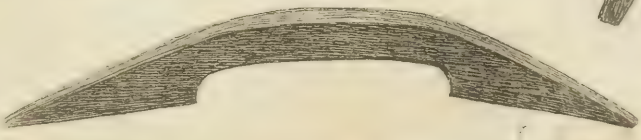
N 34
5
7
2
3
6
8
4

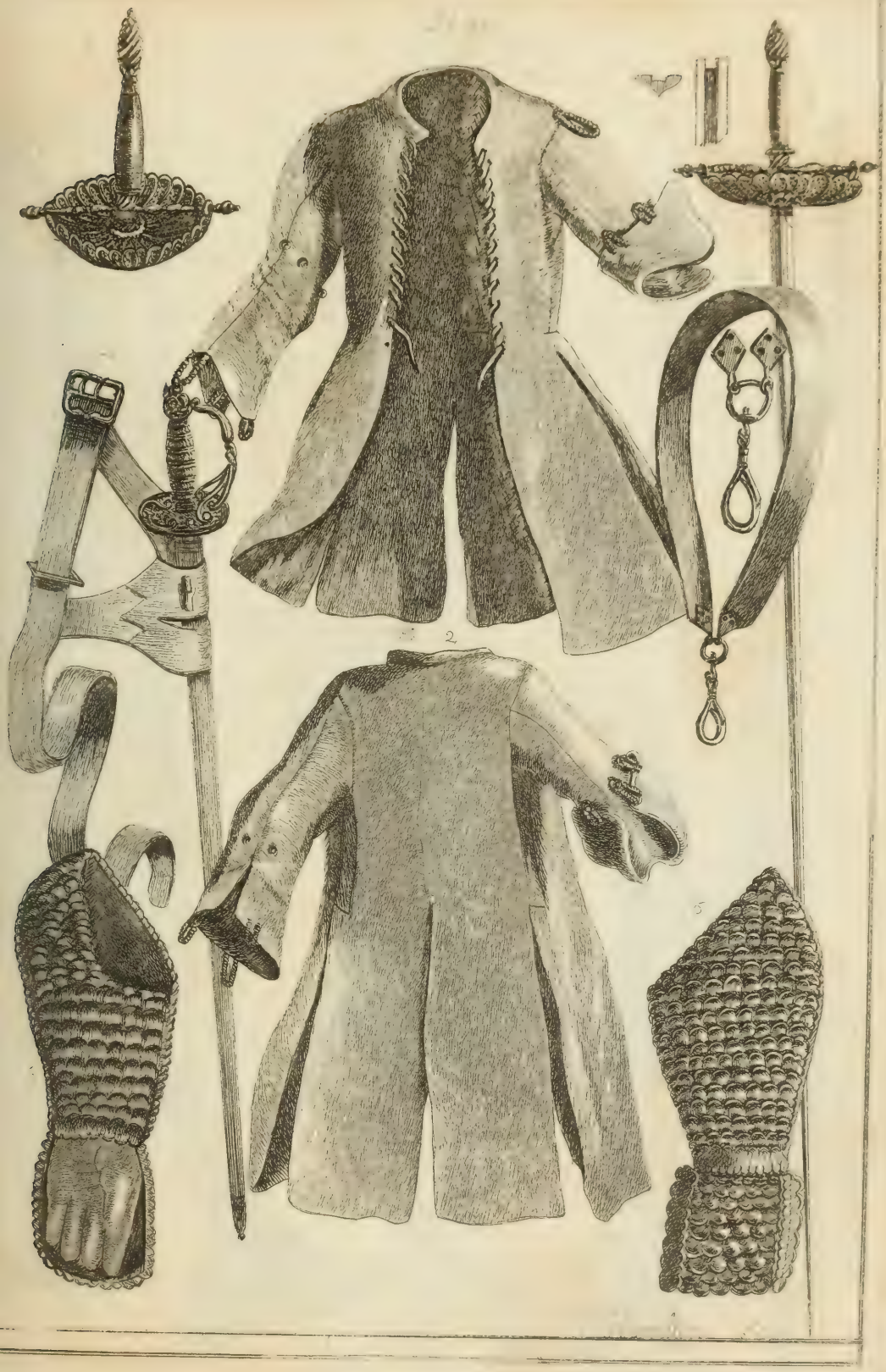


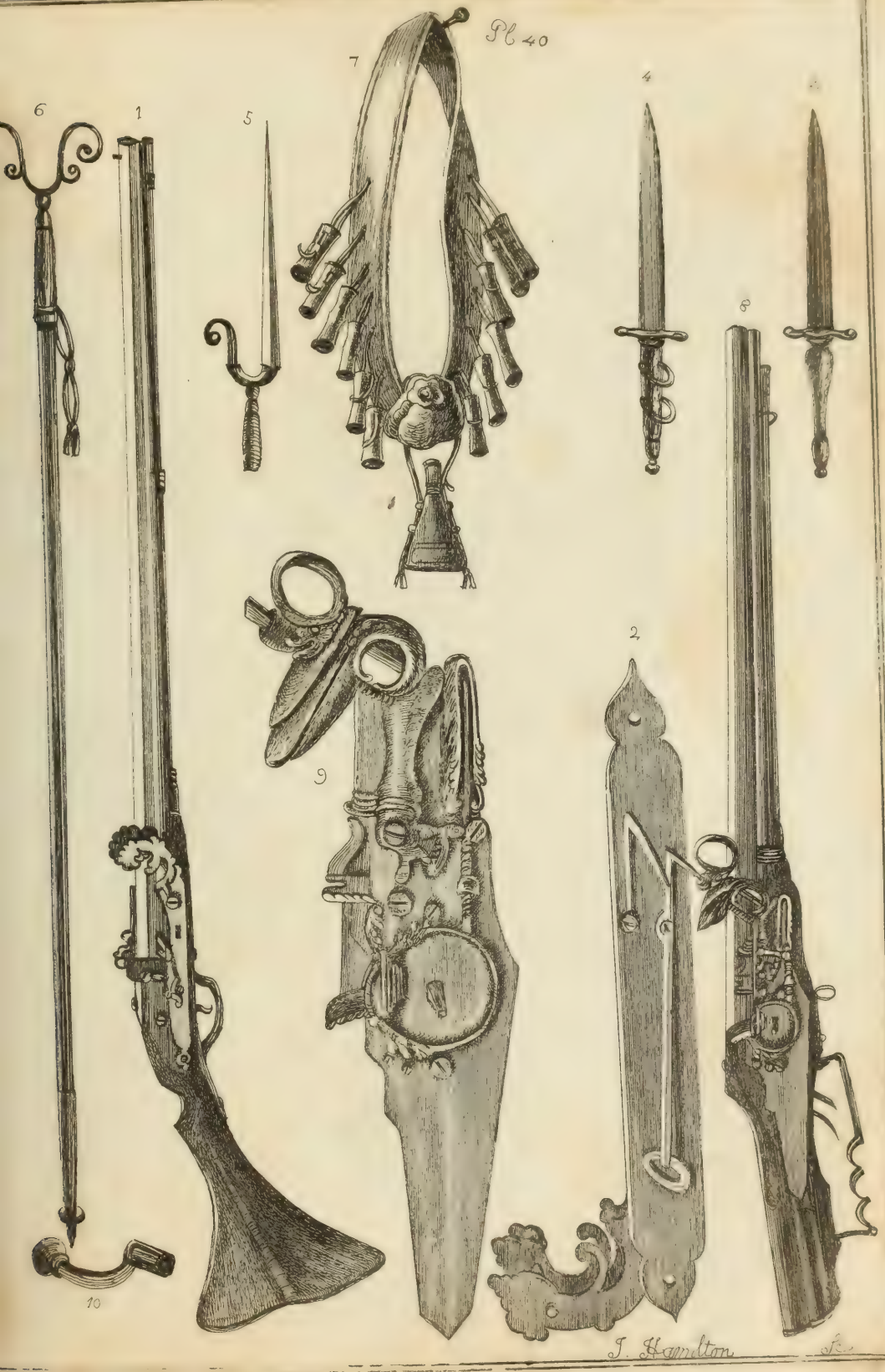
1

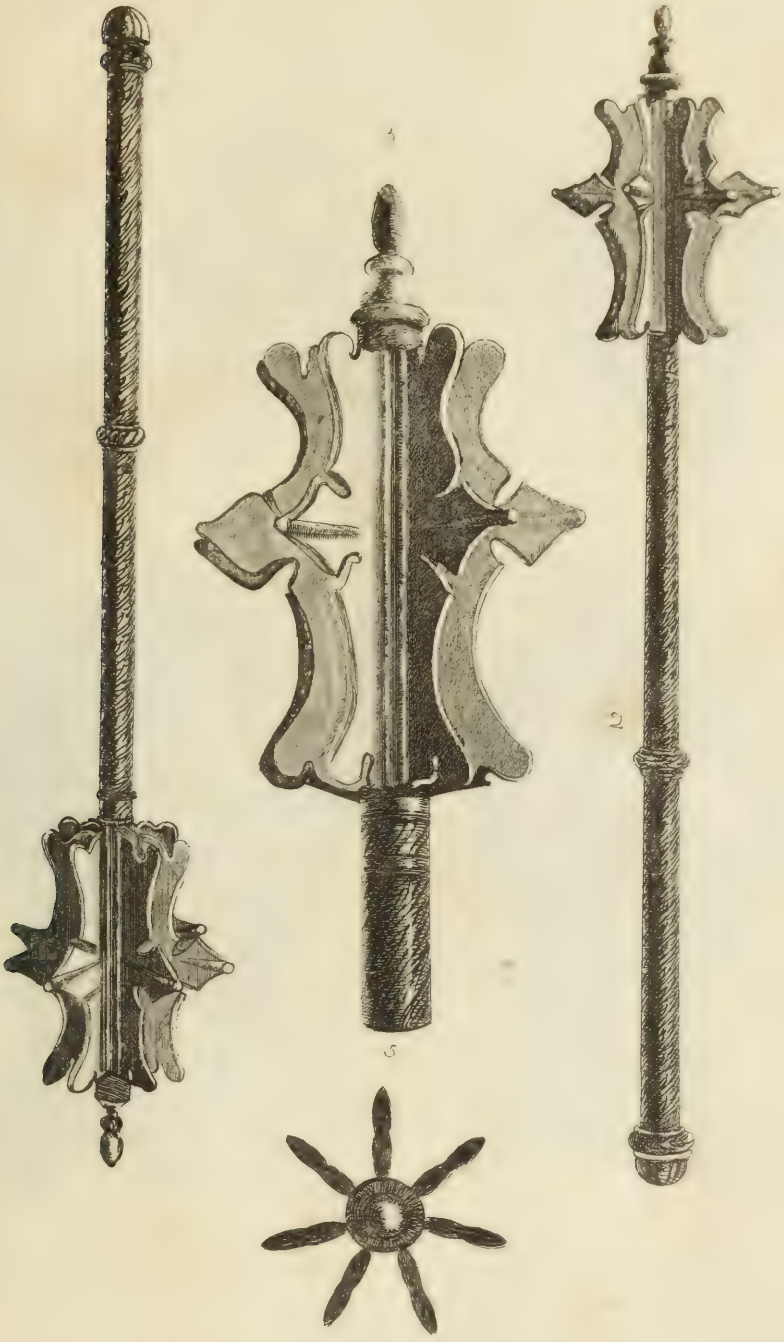






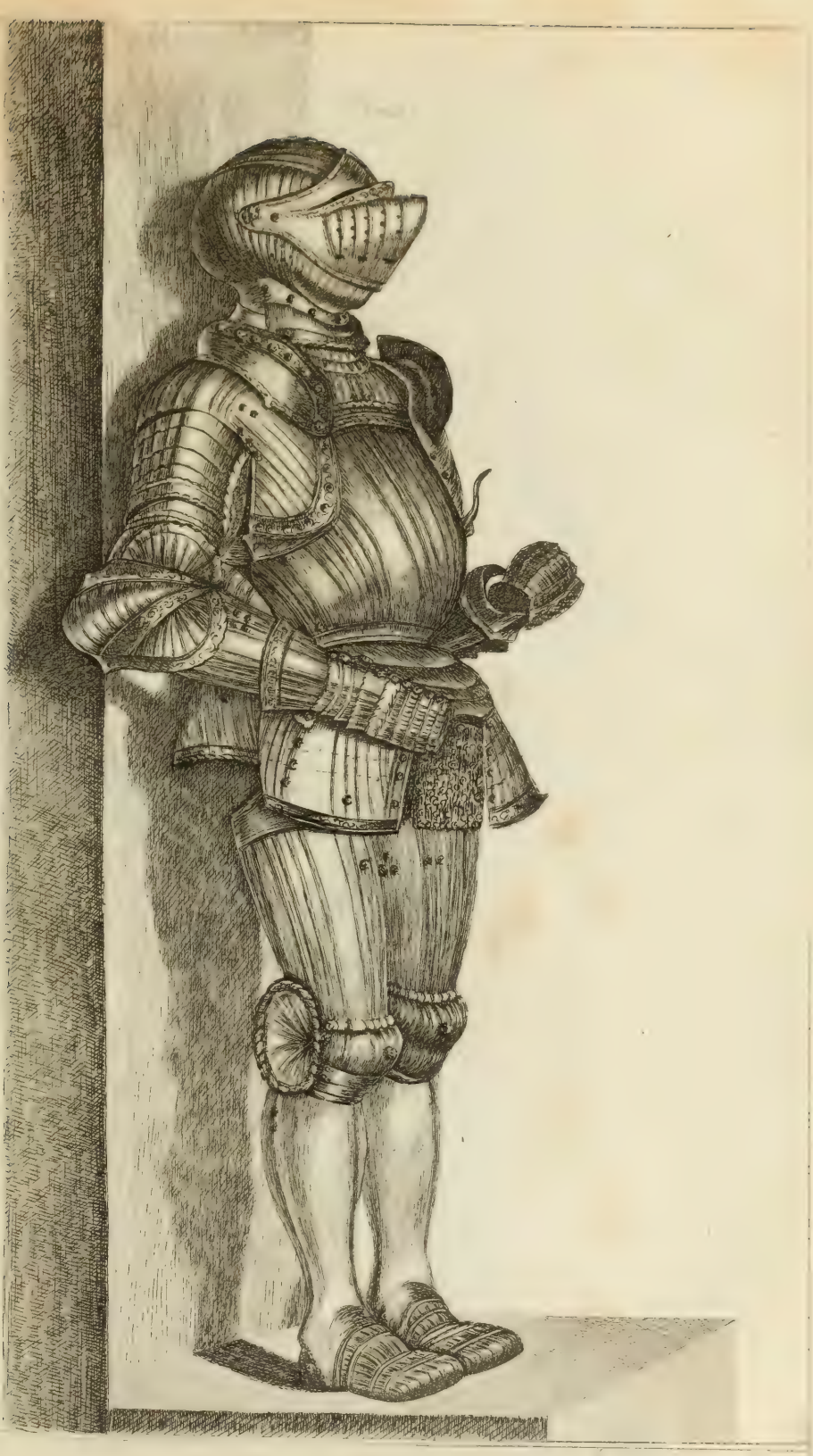



Pl 40
6
1
5
7
4
3
8
9
2
10
J. Hamilton

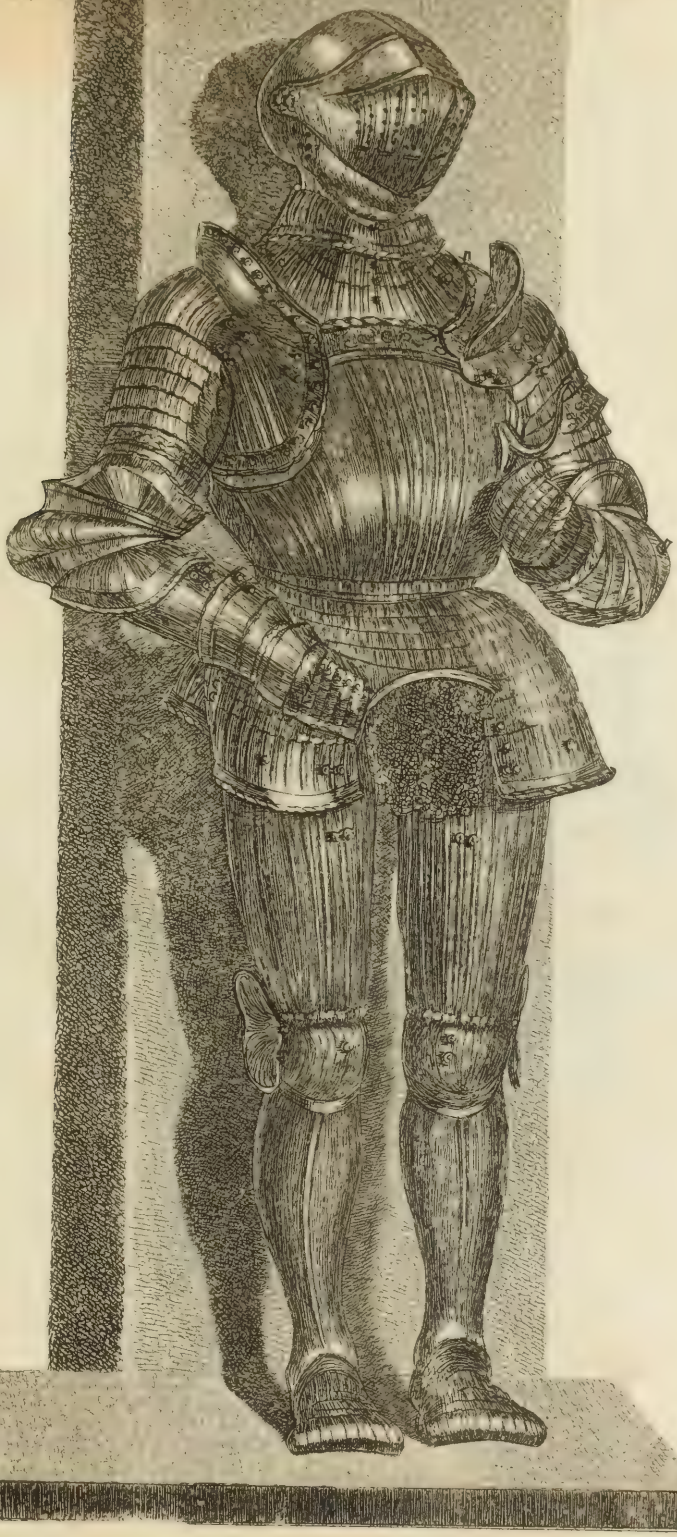


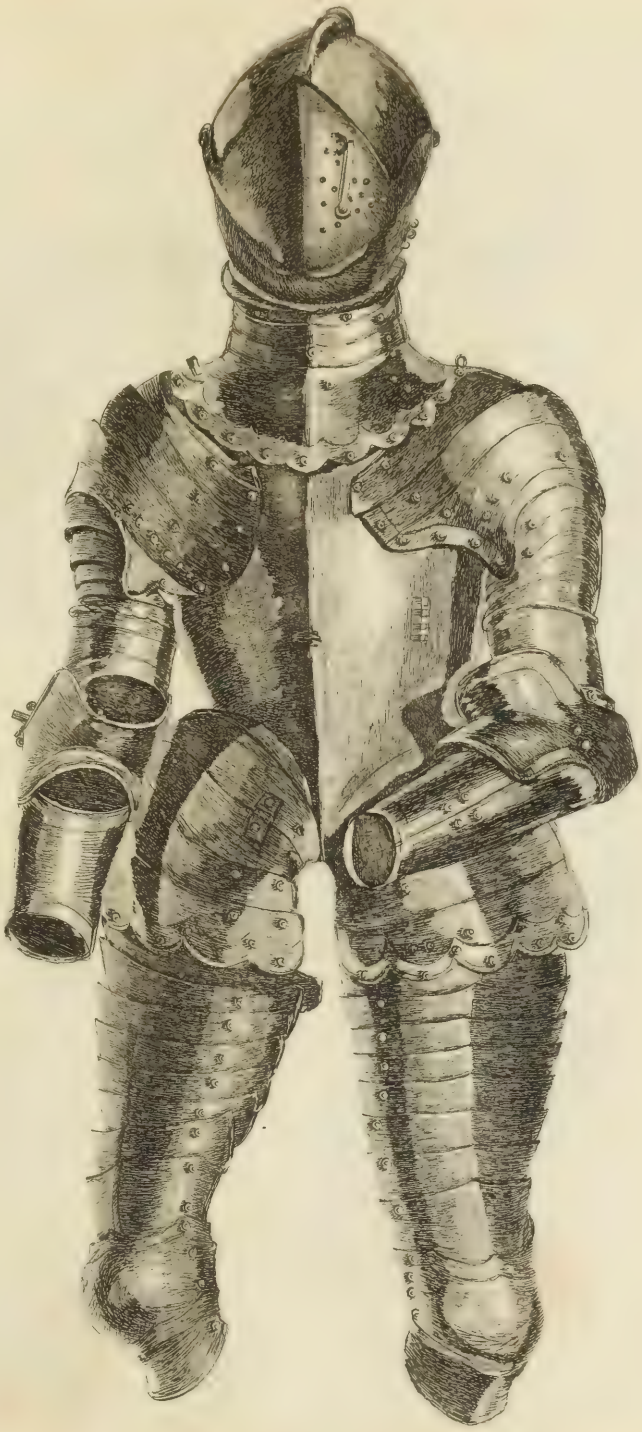
J. Hamilton

1
2
3
4



Pl 44

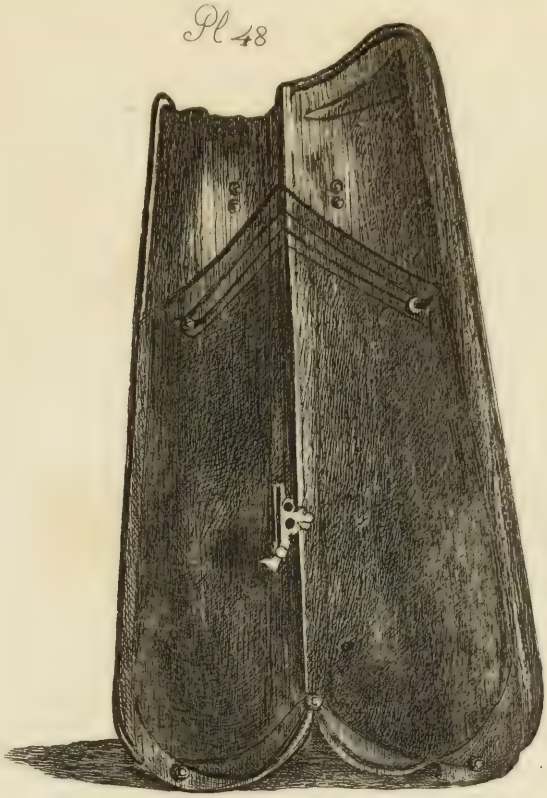


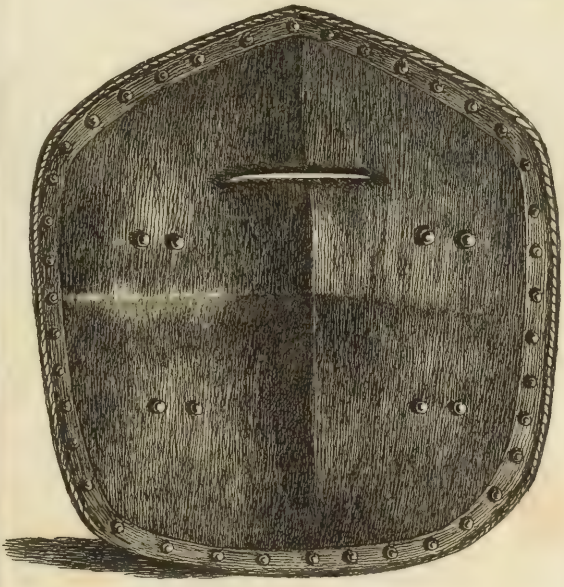


Pl 47

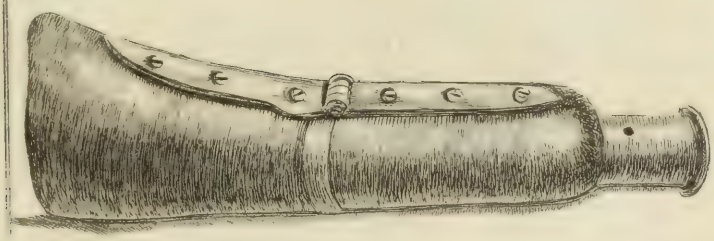
Hamilton Sc

Pl 48



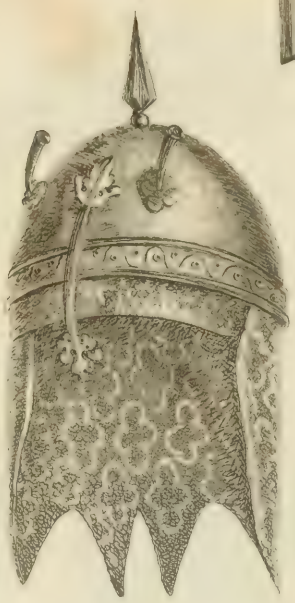


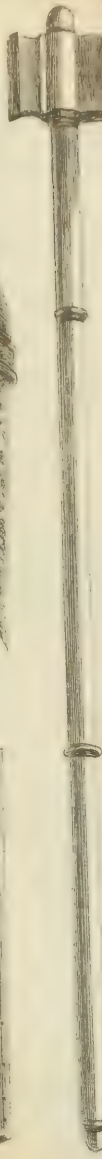
Pl. 49.

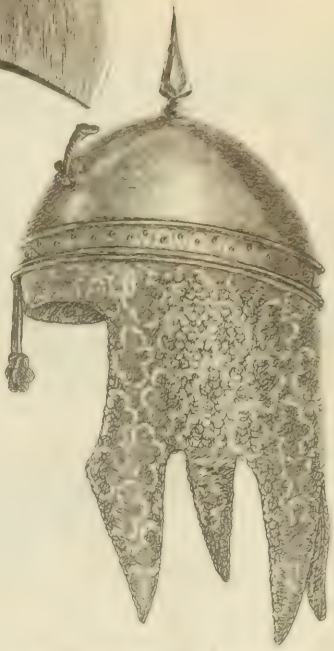


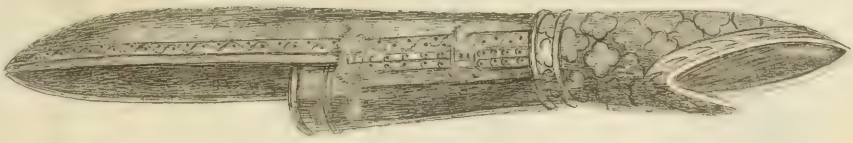
Pl. 5c.

ASIATIC ARMOUR & WEAPONS.



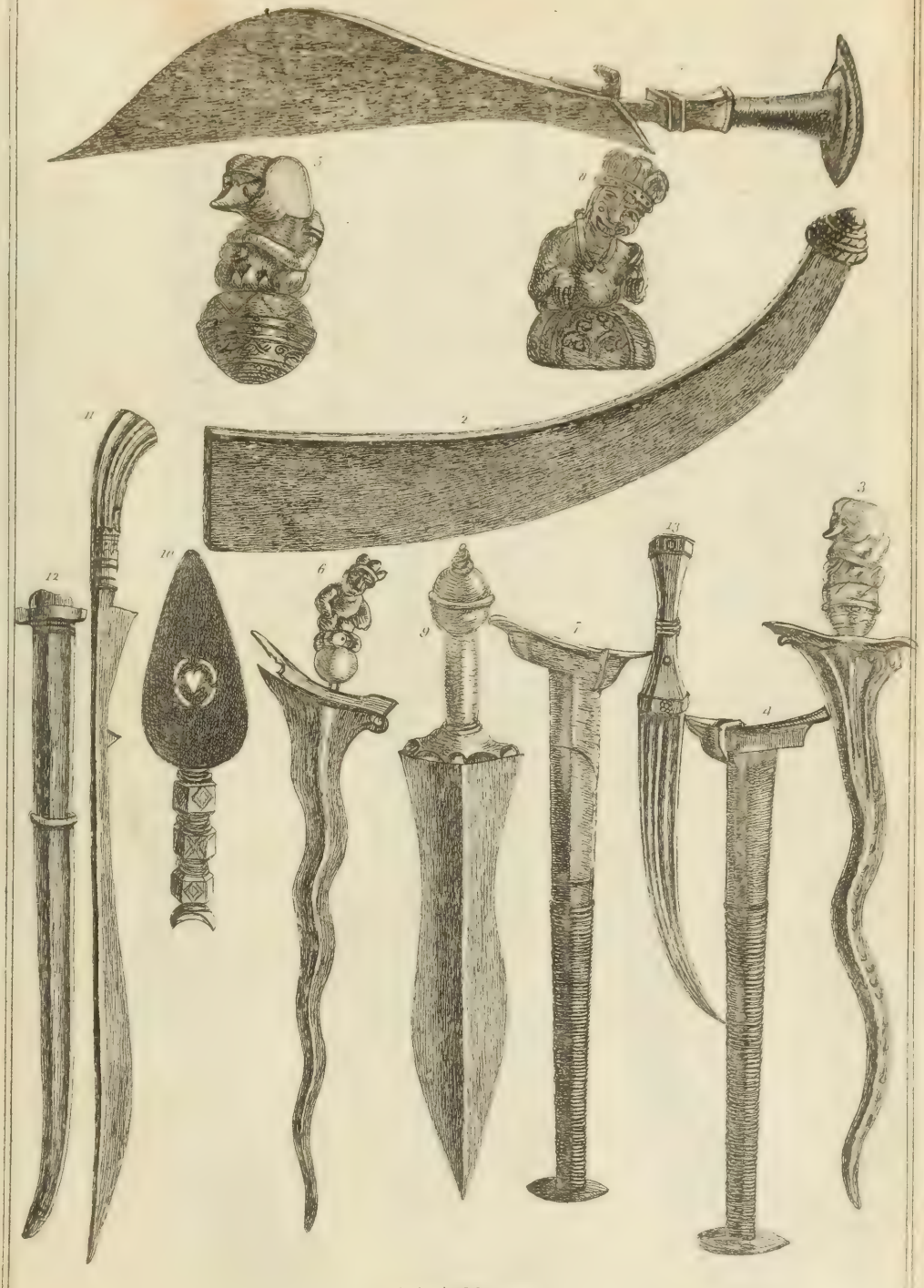






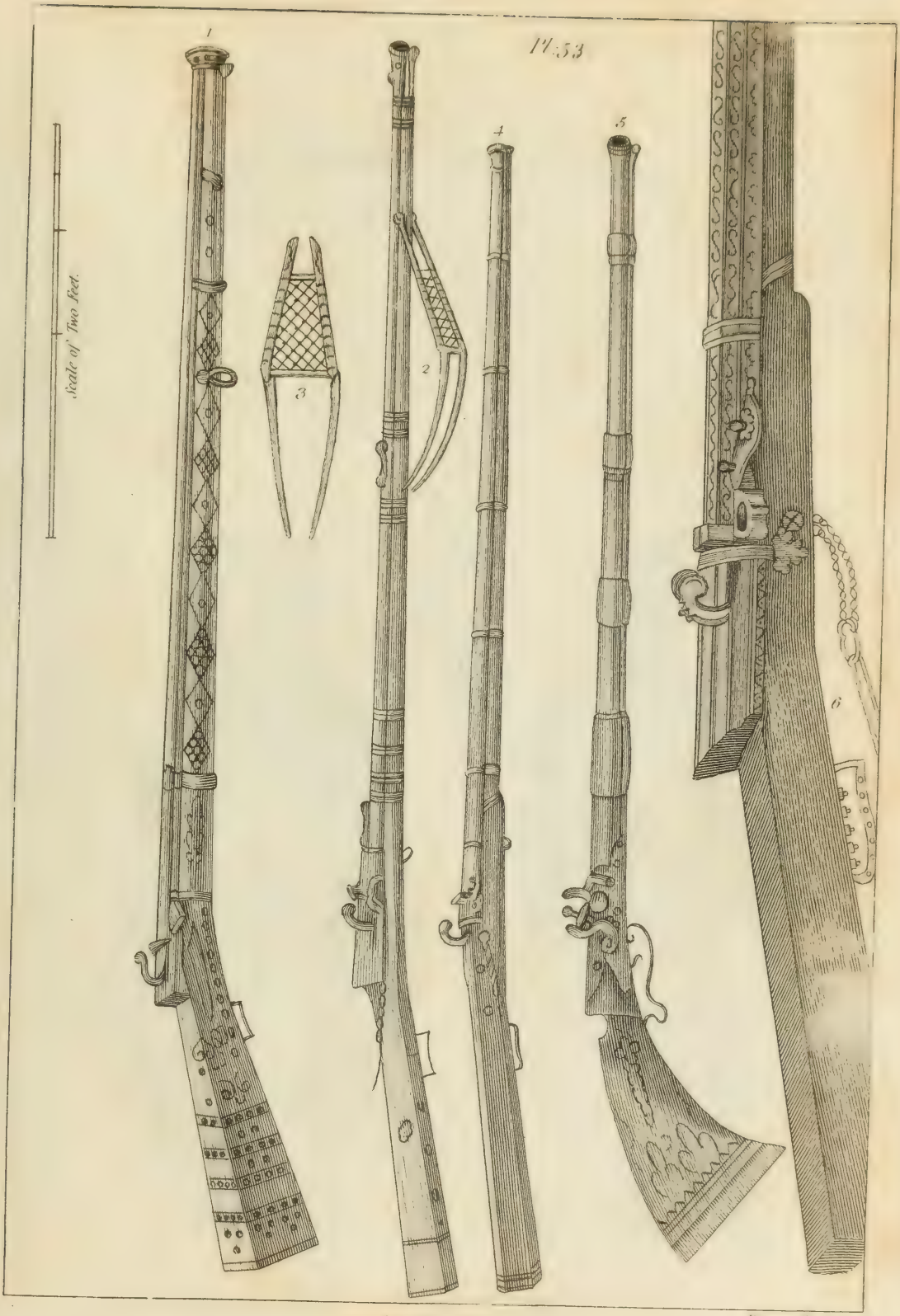
Asiatic Armour

Pl. 52



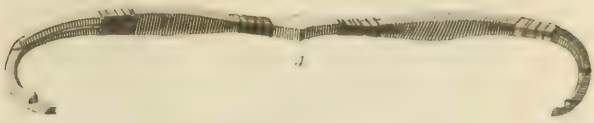
Asiatic Weapons

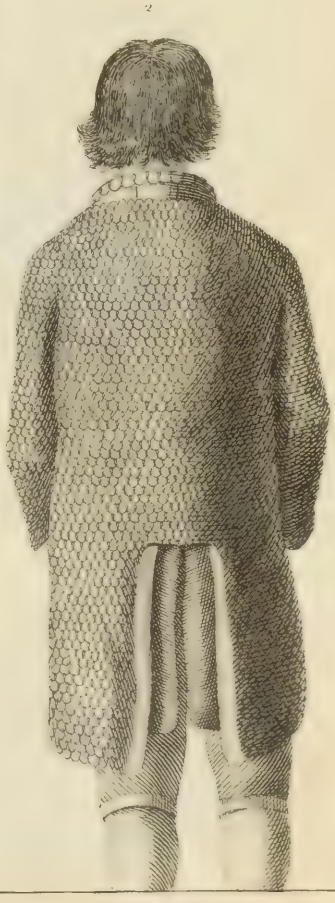
J. Hamilton, del.



Asiatic Arms

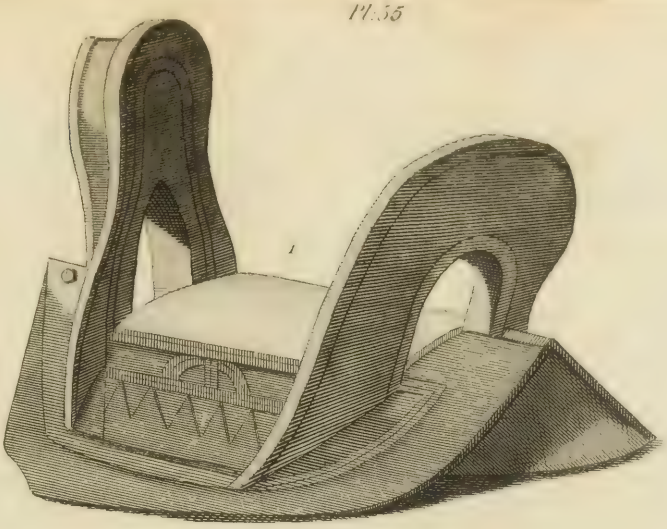
Pl. 3d

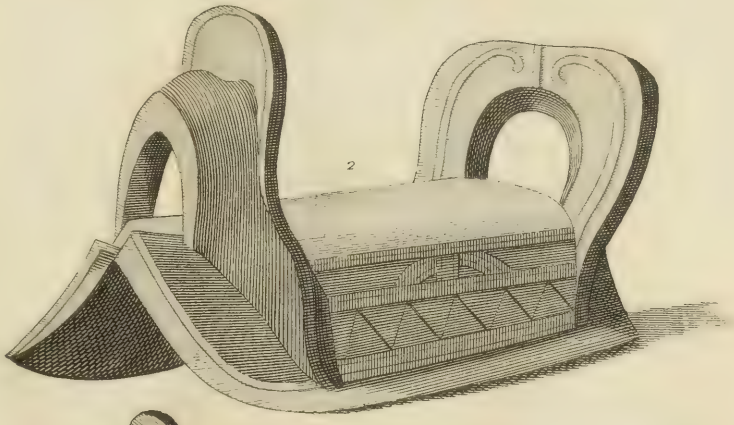


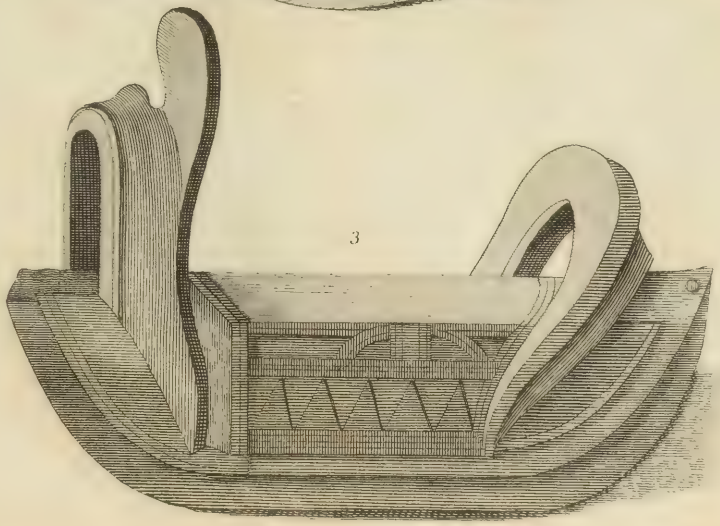


Asiatic Armour

Pl. 35

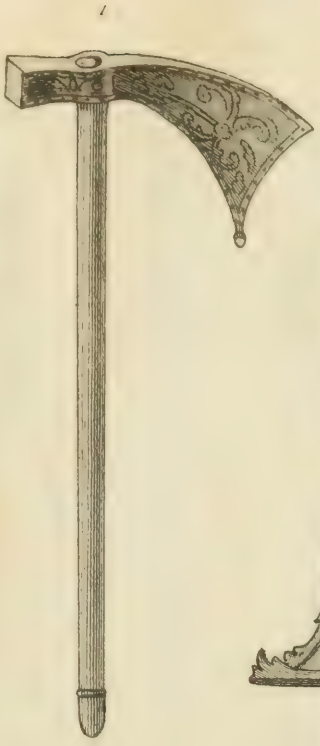




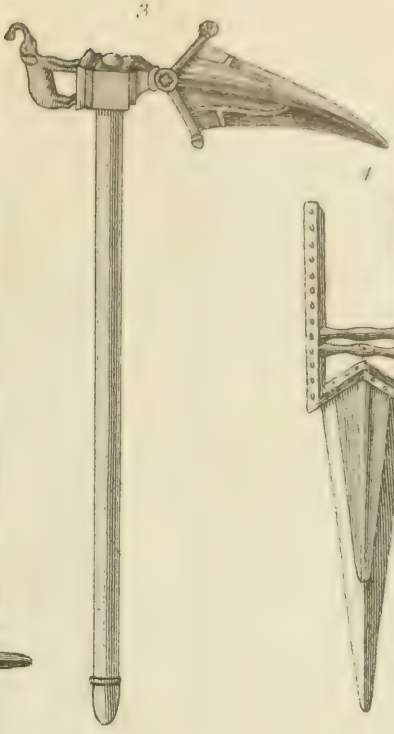


Asiatic Pack Saddle

Pl. 16

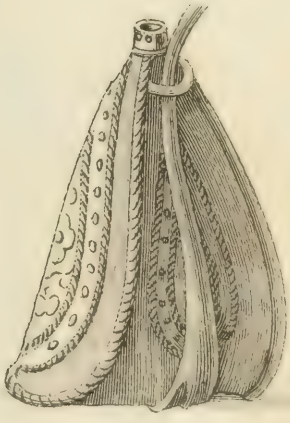

1

2


3

4

5

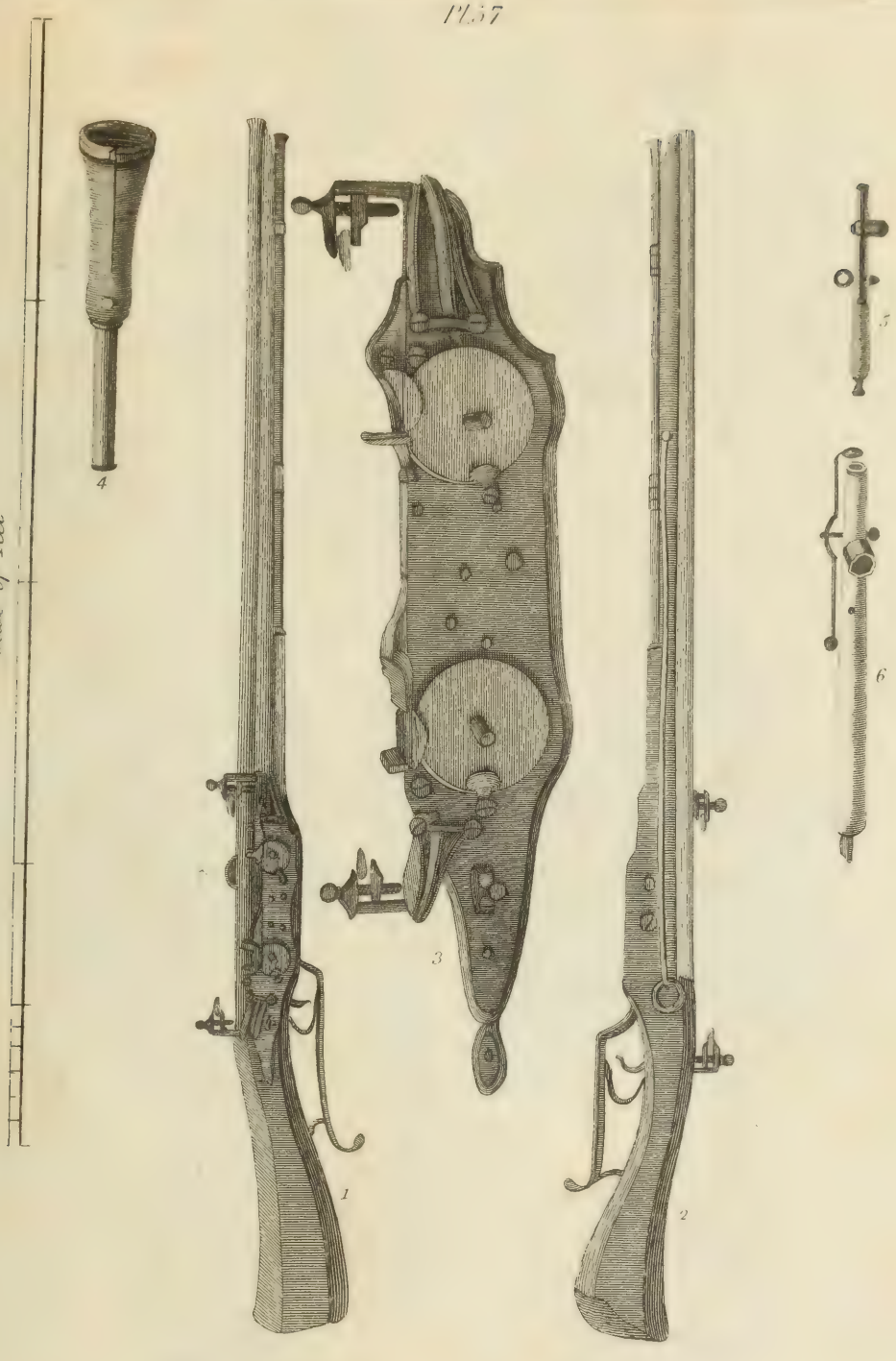

6

Scale of 2 Feet.

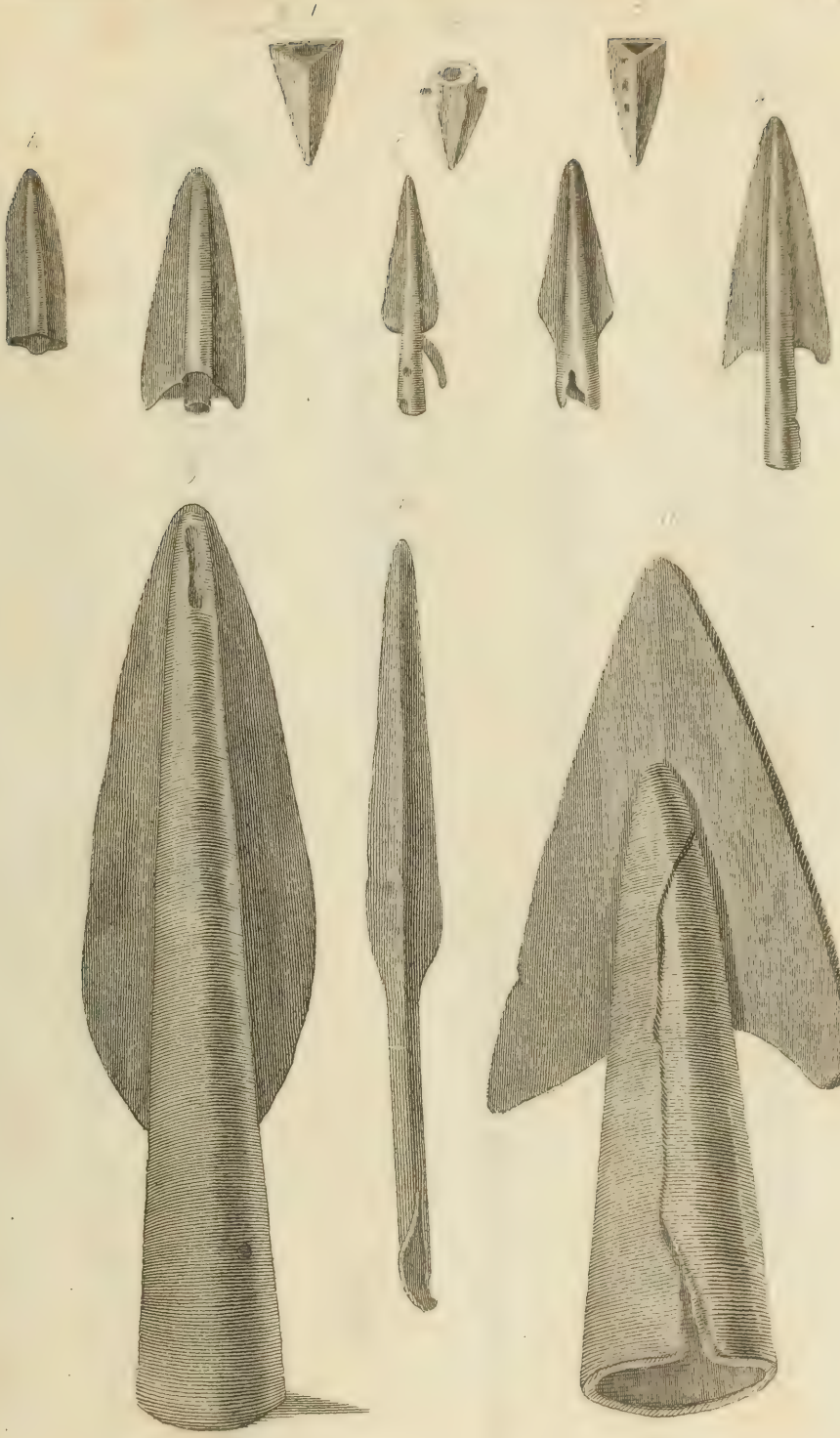
1 2 3 4 Inches

Asiatic Arms

Pl. 57



Ancient Carbine

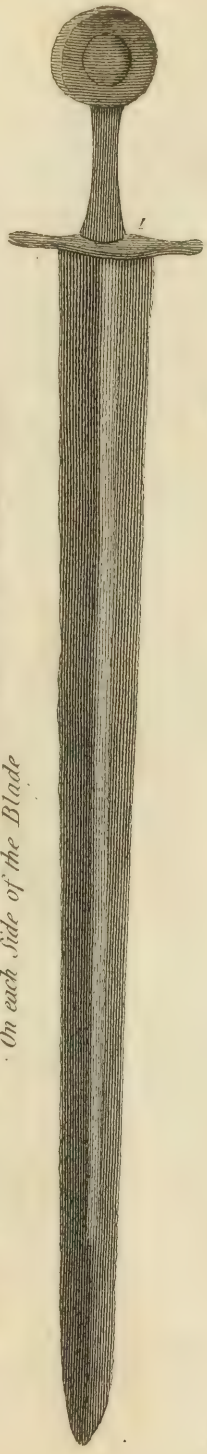


Ancient Dart & Arrow Heads.

Scale of Two Feet

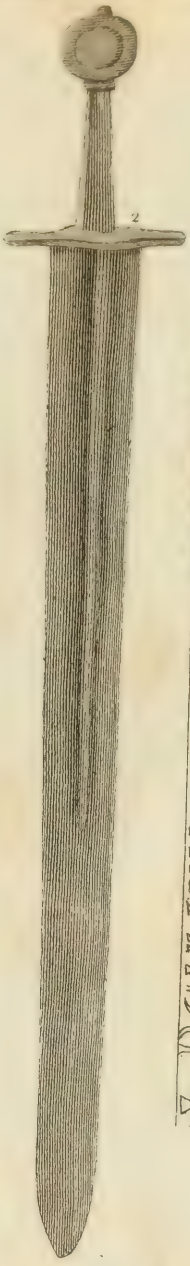
3 6 Inches

Pl 59



✠ SNEKORENEKORENEKORES ✠

On each Side of the Blade



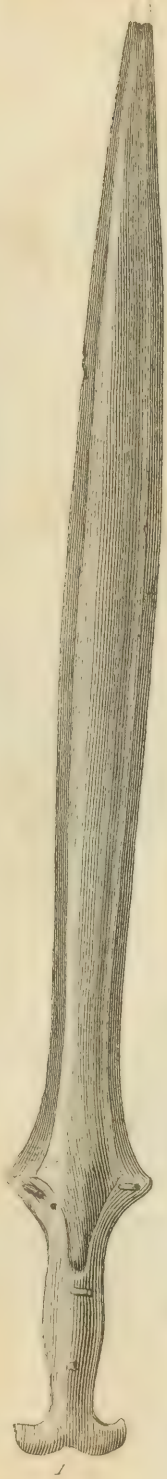
✠ BENVEHVTVS ✠ MEDICIT

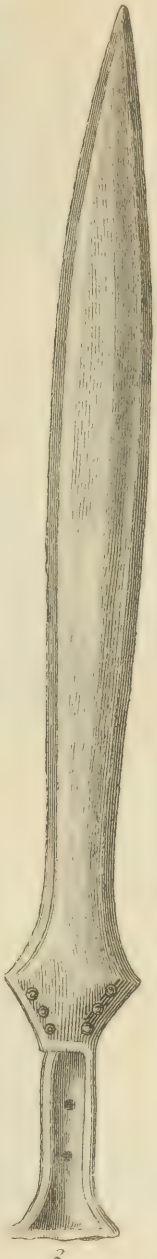
First Side

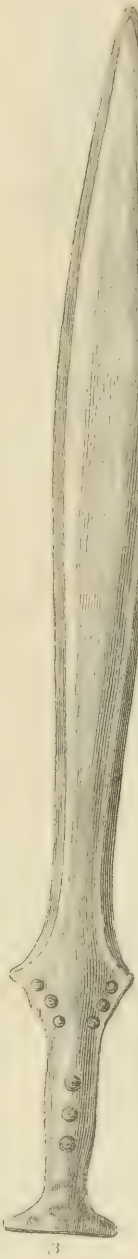
Second Side

Saxon Weapons.

Pl. 60

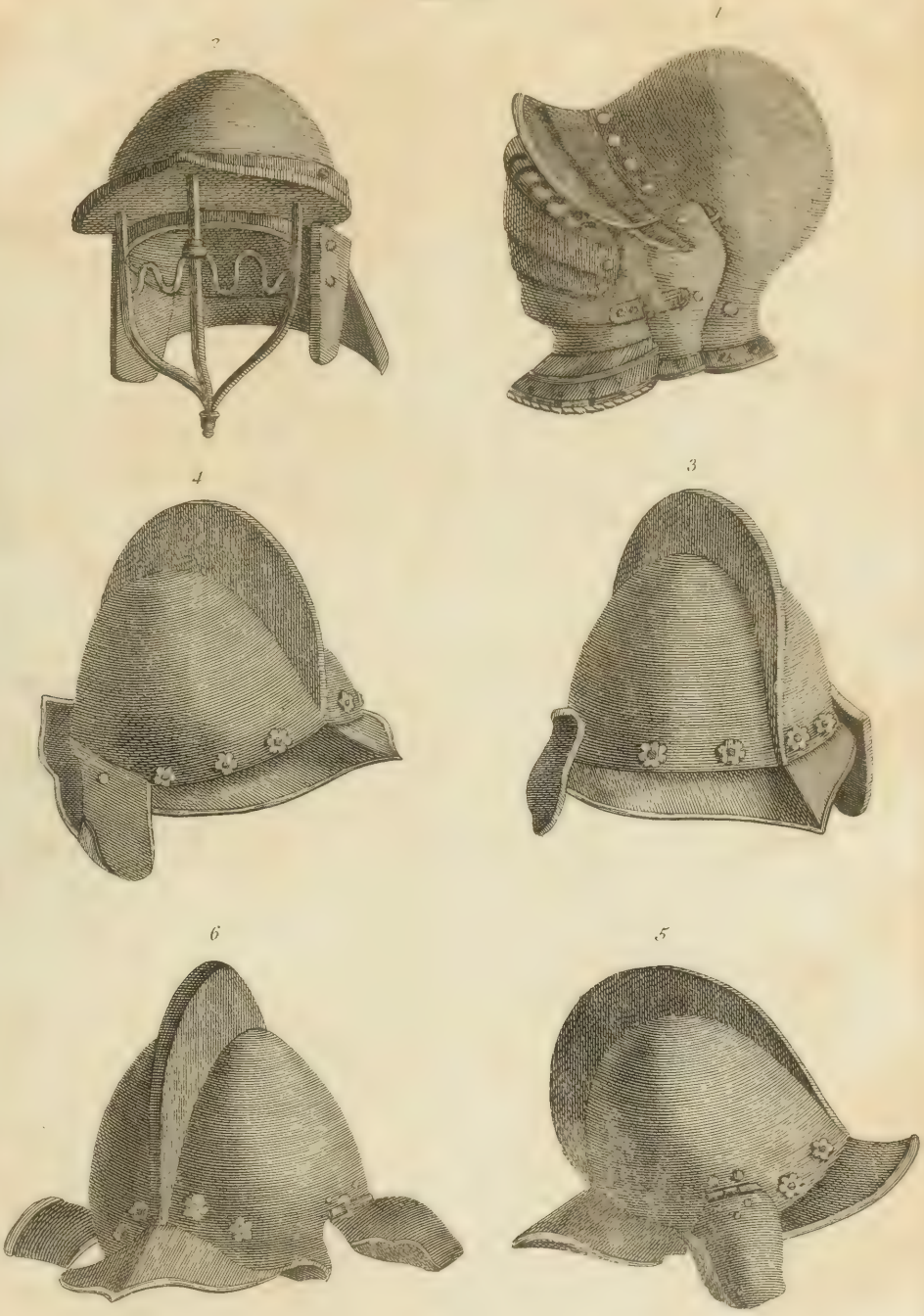






Ancient Brass Swords &c

Pl. 67



Helmets.

GENERAL INDEX.

	VOL.	P.
ABOE, a cry of the antient Iriſh clans - - -	ii	10
Abridgment of Engliſh military diſcipline, A. D. 1686 -	ii	29
Abridgment of Engliſh military diſcipline, printed by eſpecial command, for the uſe of his majeſty's forces, A. D. 1686 -	ii	72
Account of Roger de Waltham, keeper of the great wardrobe, temp. Edw. II. - -	i	276
—— of Walter Wentwaght, in the 21ſt year of K. Edw. III.	i	279
Act for puniſhing officers or ſoldiers, who ſhall mutiny or deſert their majeſties' ſervice, 1689 -	ii	73
Adjutant, or aide-major, his duty	i	265
Adminiſtration of military juſtice	ii	58
Agents - - - - -	ii	155
Aketon, defenſive armour -	ii	248
Allowances, or regards - -	i	321
Almayne ryvets - - - -	ii	250
—— armourers in the pay of Henry VIII. - - -		ibid.
Anglo-Saxons, their military eſtabliſhment - - - - -	i	1
Antient armour fell into diſrepute in the reign of Q. Elizabeth	ii	322
Antient cavalry, how divided -	i	179
—— its exerciſe -	i	363
Antient croſs-bow, deſcribed by Father Daniel - - -	ii	286
Antient encampment - -	ii	11
Antient enſigns, of different kinds	ii	51
Antient mode of aſſembling the national forces - -	i	65
Antient muſketeer - -	ii	121
—— his duties and the manner of performing his exerciſe		ibid.
Apothecaries to the forces -	i	241
Arbaliſt, or croſs-bow - -	i	148
Archer, Chaucer's deſcription of one in his time - - -	i	139
—— deſcription of one by Ralphe Smithe - - - -	i	140
—— Chaucer's deſcription of one in his day - - -	ii	271
—— deſcription of one in the time of Queen Elizabeth - -	ii	272
Archers protected from cavalry, by long ſtakes pointed at both ends	ii	273
Arms offenſive and defenſive of the old militia - - -	i	26
Armin, an ornament for a pike	ii	278
Armour and weapons ordered to be uſed after the reſtoration -	ii	338
Armourer, that profeſſion now totally extinct - - -	ii	343
Armour to be kept by perſons of different eſtates - -	ii	316

	VOL.	P.
Army, new modelled at the revolution	i	64
—— of K. Edw. III. before Calais, its eſtabliſhment and pay	i	278
Arraying and muſtering, method of	i	178
Arrows	i	137
—— account of them	ii	269
—— ſhot from muſkets	ii	343
Articles of war after the revolution	ii	62
Artillery company, when firſt raiſed	i	19
—— its hiſtory	i	143
—— improvements made in it, in the time of Charles I.	i	403
—— late improvement in the ſcience of artillery	i	410
—— firſt eſtabliſhment of the royal artillery in England	i	411
—— the quantity uſed in Flanders, in 1745, and in 1762		ibid.
—— its preſent ſtrength		ibid.
—— horſe artillery	i	412
—— royal, an account of this corps	ii	211
—— arrayers or muſter-maſters of the troops	i	178
—— uſed in England, from the time of Edw. III.	i	402
—— purchaſed from abroad till the time of Henry VIII.		ibid.
—— various ſorts of ordnance caſt then and in the time of Edw. VI.		ibid.
—— in order to improve the ſcience of artillery, Flemiſh gunners introduced by Henry VII. and VIII.	i	403
—— wretched ſtate of that art as related by William Bourne		ibid.
Arundel caſtle, taken by the parliamentary forces, by means of a petard	i	409
Aſſeſſment of counties for the militia	i	28
Authority exerciſed by the naval officers over the land-forces, when in king's ſhips	ii	78
Avenues defended by a chain	ii	4
Axes, ſuch as battle-axes, pole-axes, &c. divers repreſentations of them	ii	285
B.		
Bacinet	ii	241
Bacon, Friar, his account of gunpowder from Marcus Græcus	i	394
Badges, frequently worn by ſoldiers as a diſtinction	i	324
—— miſtake occaſioned by them at the battle of St. Alban's		ibid.
—— forbidden	i	325
Baggage, quantity of, with which our antient armies were incumbered	ii	311
Baliſta, deſcription of that machine	i	373
—— its uſe to throw large ſtones		ibid.
—— how made	i	375
—— how worked	i	377
—— different kinds of Baliſtas and Catapultas uſed by the antients	i	379
—— their power and range	i	380
Ballad, made on the victory of K. Edw. III. over the Scots	ii	41
Ballium or bailey, outer and inner in ancient fortification	ii	3
Balloting for the militia	i	42
Banderoles, ornaments of pikes or lances	ii	277
Banderolls, or camp colours	ii	52
Bandileers, borrowed from the Dutch, or Walloons	ii	293
Bands of muſic, and their inſtruments	ii	50
Banneret, his pay	i	272

	VOL.	P.
Banneret, origin of this rank -	i	179
Bannerets (knights) - -	ii	52
Banners, their antiquity and uſe	ii	51
Barbacan, a work in antient fortification, beyond the ditch -	ii	2
Barbers, or inferior ſurgeons -	i	242
Barded horſes continued to be uſed in our armies to the time of Q. Elizabeth - - -	ii	322
——— or covered horſes -	i	104
Battalion guns - - -	i	411
Battle-axes, the different kinds of	i	122
Battle-axes - - - -	ii	285
Baudricks, or ſhoulder-belts -	ii	264
Bawd, Peter, a gun-founder, employed by Henry VIII. -	i	402
Bayle, a ſpace in antient fortification, on the outſide of the ditch	ii	2
Bayonets of the preſent form of French invention - -	i	162
——— remarkable inſtance of the ſuperiority of the ſocket-bayonet	i	163
——— introduction of it -	i	133
——— regularly introd. in France about 1671 - - -	ii	339
——— uſe of it, when firſt introduced - - - - -	i	112
Beats of the drum formerly uſed by the infantry - - -	ii	47
——— thoſe in preſent uſe -	ii	48
Beheading, an antient military puniſhment - - -	ii	103
Belfreys, or moveable towers -	i	384
——— deſcription of thoſe of the antients - - - - -	i	385
——— of thoſe of more modern times - - - -		ibid.
——— one conſtructed ſo lately as in the reign of Charles I. -		ibid.
Bever, deſcribed - - -	ii	240
Billeting troops - - -	i	339
Biſhop of Norwich indented to ſerve K. Richard II. - - - -	ii	309
Biſhops, ſerving in and ſometimes commanding armies - -	i	69
Black and brown bills - -	ii	280
Black or brown bill - -	i	123
Blowdell's account of an extraordinary method of throwing ſtones into a beſieged town, without making uſe of a mortar -	i	406
Boar, a machine uſed at the ſiege of Corfe-caſtle - - -	i	387
Bombards, large cannon for diſcharging ſtone balls of a monſtrous ſize - - - -	i	400
——— an extraordinary one at the ſiege of Oudenarde, deſcribed by Froiſſart - - -		ibid.
Bombs, their antiquity - -	i	404
——— Strada's account of them		ibid.
——— Valterinus's hiſtory of them	i	405
——— Improvements in the conſtruction of them ſince their firſt invention - - -		ibid.
Bourne, William, his treatiſe on the art of ſhooting - -	i	403
Bow, a weapon of the moſt remote antiquity - - - -	ii	265
——— different kinds of bows	ii	266
——— became the favourite weapon of the Engliſh - -		ibid.
——— rules for the exerciſe of it	ii	267
Bow-ſtrings - - - -	ii	269
Bowyers, laws reſpecting them -	i	137
Brabançons, Provençals, Cotterelli, and Flemings, mercenary troops, frequently hired by our kings	i	57
Bracers for bow-ſtrings - -	ii	270
Braſſarts, garde bras, or vambraces	ii	252
——— vulgarly vambraces -	i	105
Braſs drums - - - -	ii	49

	VOL.	P.
Brazen or copper ſwords -	ii	262
Bricolle - - - - -	i	382
Brigandines, whence they derived their name - - - -	ii	250
——— ſeveral remaining in the Tower - - - - -		ibid.
Broadſword and target, the favourite arms of the Scotch highlanders	ii	303
Bruce, Robert, his wife confined by order of K. Edward I. -	ii	117
Brugne, the hauberk, ſometimes ſo called - - - - -	ii	260
Buchan, Counteſs of, confined in a cage, by order of K. Edw. I.	ii	116
Bucklers, or ſhields, uſed in affrays and private quarrels by perſons in the civil line, as late as the reigns of Elizabeth, and James I. -	ii	308
Buckler, or target - - -	ii	255
Bugle, or bible - - -	ii	382
Burgonet - - - - -	ii	241
Burr, a broad iron ring for a lance	ii	277

C.

Cage, Counteſs of Buchan, and the wife of Robert Bruce, confined in one - - - - -	ii	116
Caliver, or light match-lock piece	i	156
——— or calibre, a light kind of muſket, account of it -	ii	295
——— price of one and its accoutrements in Q. Elizabeth's time	ii	296
Camp equipage, deemed neceſſary for different ranks, about the time of Henry VII. - -	ii	311
—— of K. Edw. II. in his expedition to Scotland - -	ii	11
Cannon, when firſt uſed in Europe	i	398
——— different relations on the ſubject by Father Daniel, Villani, and Luigi Collado - -	i	399
Cannon, various formations and ſucceſſive improvements of them	i	399
Captain-general of the footmen	i	208
——— of the pioneers, the duties of his office in the field or camp	i	228
Captains of halberts, or black bills, their duties - - -	i	124
Captain, the firſt meaning of that title - - - - -	i	181
——— his office and duties -	i	248
Carcaſſes, a conſequence of the invention of bombs - -	i	407
Carriage-maſter-general, his office	i	224
Cartridge-box, when it ſuperſeded the bandaleers - - -	i	159
Caſheering, or diſmiſſal of officers admits of three degrees -	ii	109
Caſtle, the, a cloſe head-piece	ii	243
Catapulta, deſcription of that machine - - - - -	i	369
——— how worked - -	i	371
Cattus, Gattus, or Cat, nature of that machine and its uſe -	i	386
——— caſtellated cat - -		ibid.
Cavalry officers - - -	i	266
——— of the antient armies -	i	100
——— of the Saxons - -	i	3
Celebrated ſword-ſmiths, and armourers - - - - -	ii	262
Chains of iron drawn acroſs ſtreets	ii	4
Chanfron, Chamfrien, or Shaffron, armour for a horſe's head, deſcription of it - - -	ii	259
Chapelle de fer, iron hat, or chaplet, deſcribed - - -	ii	241
Charles the Firſt, his commiſſion for ſurveying the arms, armour, &c. containing many curious particulars reſpecting the arms and armour of thoſe times -	ii	324
Charter of King Richard I. for the		

	VOL.	P.
government of thoſe going by ſea to the holy land - -	ii	63
Chelſea-college, or hoſpital -	ii	88
——— when originally begun -	ii	89
——— plan of it - - - -	ii	91
Chivalry, feats of, at antient ſieges	ii	4
City trained-bands, their origin -	i	145
——— account of them -	i	146
Clergy, not exempted from performing military ſervice -	i	5
——— of all denominations directed by the king's writ to be arrayed, armed, and regimented -	i	67
——— their livings aſſeſſed to find armour - - - - -	i	76
——— Queen Elizabeth ordered the biſhop of Cheſter to contribute to the raiſing of horſe for the aſſiſtance of the Hollanders	i	78
Clerk of a company, what -	i	265
Clothing of an army in the reign of Henry VIII. - - - -	i	324
——— in the reign of Queen Elizabeth - - - -	i	326
——— of the army in Ireland, in 1599 - - -	i	327
——— in the time of Charles II., and after the revolution -	i	329
——— in 1736 - - - -	i	332
——— enquiry reſpecting it, made by a committee of the houſe of commons, in 1746 - -	i	335
——— report of the committee of the houſe of commons, reſpecting it - - - - -	ii	155
——— new regulations relative to it - - - - - -	ii	186
——— of the militia - -	i	46
Coat and conduct money -	i	341
Coldſtream regiment of guards	i	98
——— its origin - - -	ii	207
Colonel, whence the name of that officer derived - - -	i	243
——— duties of his office -	i	244
Colours of the foot, called enſigns	ii	53
Commiſſaries of muſters -	ii	155
Commiſſioners appointed in the reign of King James the Firſt, to try military offences -	ii	61
Conſtable, his pay and allowances	i	271
Conſtables and conſtabularies -	i	179
Conſtitution of King John -	ii	62
Corporal, or caporal, the origin of his office and its duties -	i	260
——— puniſhments - -	ii	106
——— of the field - -	i	233
Correlet, or corſlet, a ſuit of armour chiefly worn by pikemen -	ii	251
Councils of war, or courts-martial in the time of James II. -	ii	72
Courts-martial, general and regimental - - - - -	ii	61
Crecy, battle of, effect of 15,000 Genoeſe archers - -	ii	9
Crenellated parapet - -	ii	3
Creſt of a helmet - - -	ii	241
Cries of war - - -	ii	9
Criniere, or manefaire - -	ii	259
Croſs-bow, the antient, deſcription of it - - - - -	ii	287
——— two ſorts of Engliſh croſs-bows, latchets, and prodds -	ii	288
——— they not only ſhot arrows, but darts, called quarrils -		ibid.
——— its advantages over the long-bow - - - - -	ii	289
——— or arbaliſt, account of it	i	148
Croupiere, or buttock-piece, horſe-armour - - - - -	ii	260
Cuiſſarts, or thigh-pieces -	ii	253
Cuiraſs, formed of back and breaſt-piece - - - - -	i	105

	VOL.	P.
Cuiraſs, deſcribed	ii	249
Cuiſſarts	i	105
Cuiraſſiers	i	106
—— deſcription of them	i	109
Culettes, or garde-des-reins	ii	252
Curbouly, or boot of jacked leather	ii	253
Currier, a kind of piece formerly uſed in ſieges	ii	396
Cuſtom of war	ii	62

D.

Dagger, cultellum, or miſericorde, account of it	ii	264
—— recommended in a treatiſe publiſhed anno 1622		ibid.
Dead aryles in antient fortifications	ii	2
Decimation, how this was practiſed	ii	103
Defenſive armour of a man at arms	i	200
—— armour of the antient knights	ii	239
—— ditto of their horſes	ii	259
—— armour uſed by the Engliſh, at the time of the Norman invaſion	ii	298
—— of a Norman knight	ii	299
Defenſive armour, none uſed of late years, except ſome cuiraſſes, and plain iron ſcull-caps, by the heavy cavalry	ii	343
Degradation, a ſentence inflicted on non-commiſſioned officers	ii	110
Demi-launce, or light-horſeman	i	108
Demy chanfrons	ii	259
Deputy-lieutenants of counties	i	30
Deſcription of an antient ſiege from the romance of Claris	ii	78
Deſerters from the militia, their puniſhment	i	48
Different kinds of troops of which our armies conſiſted ſoon after the conqueſt	i	100
Diſgrace attached to a knight, who had loſt his ſhield	ii	256
Double-armed man	i	354
Dragon, an offenſive weapon, as deſcribed by Markham	ii	297
Dragoons, or dragooniers	i	110
Dreux, Philip de, biſhop of Beauvais, a ſtory told of him by Matthew Paris	i	69
Drowning, an antient military puniſhment	ii	103
Drum-major and drummers	i	262
Drum-major-general	ii	49
Drum, ſide, antiently called the tabour	ii	42
—— different beats of the drum	ii	48
Drummers and fifers of the militia	i	40
Drum, when introduced into Europe	ii	42
Duel, preparations for one in the 41ſt of Edward III.	ii	310
Duke of Alva, ſtrange account of his manner of claſſing the courteſans in his army	i	227
—— arrangement of the courteſans following his army in the Netherlands	i	22
Dungeon, or keep, in antient fortification	ii	3
Dutch guards of Prince Maurice, armed with targets and roundils	ii	308

E.

Eccleſiaſtics ſerving in the armies	i	69
Edward the Firſt, the armour and weapons in uſe in his time	ii	300
Embattled parapet	ii	4
Encampments	ii	11
—— in the time of Henry VIII.	ii	12
—— under Queen Elizabeth	ii	13
—— in 1686	ii	29

	VOL.	P.
Encampments, as laid out at the preſent time	ii	32
——— orders relative to them, iſſued in 1799	ii	40
Engine à verge	i	383
Engliſh cavalry, after the revolution	i	112
Engliſh minſtrels	ii	41
Enſign, his office and duties	i	255
Enſigns, colours, &c.	ii	51
——— or colours, their dignity, and the diſgraces to which they are liable	ii	137
——— right uſe and ordering of them, with the poſtures and flouriſhes thereunto belonging	ii	143
Entertainment of the officers of companies, appointed for the ſervice of the year 1588	i	288
Epizyges, bars of iron	i	370
Eſprinjal	i	382
Eſquire, his pay	i	273
Eſtabliſhment of the army, in 1799	i	99
Exchange of priſoners of war, has taken place of ranſom	ii	120
Exerciſe, tactics, &c. new regulations, reſpecting them	ii	188
——— great alterations that have taken place of late in them	i	365
——— the whole rendered uniform		ibid.
——— Pruſſian exerciſe and evolutions, chiefly copied by our army		ibid.
——— exerciſe of the piſtol	i	364
——— of the pike	i	355
——— of the antient cavalry	i	363

F.

Farrah, the antient Iriſh war-cry	ii	10
Faulchions, by whom kept	ii	301
Fencible corps, and provincial regiments	i	172
Feudal ſyſtem, the military eſtabliſhment under it	i	4
Fief de haubert	ii	246
Fife introduced by the Switzers	ii	42
Fifers	i	265
——— number of, appointed to each troop, or company	ii	43
——— their qualifications and duties		ibid.
——— laid aſide for a long time, and reſtored in 1745	ii	44
Fifth, or royal Iriſh dragoons	ii	226
——— regiment of dragoon-guards, commonly called the green-horſe	ii	224
——— regiment of foot	ii	217
Fire-arms, the firſt uſe of them	i	152
Firelock, or ſnaphance, when introduced	i	152
Firſt eſtabliſhed force in Ireland	i	58
Firſt, or king's regiment of dragoon-guards	ii	220
——— or regiment of dragoons	ii	225
——— or royal regiment of foot	ii	213
Flags, banners, &c.	ii	51
——— ſize of	ii	54
Flodden-field, at that battle ſlain of the Scots, one archbiſhop, two biſhops, and four abbots	i	70
Foot-guards, account of	ii	207
Forage-maſter-general	i	233
Forreſt, or collection of hiſtories, account in it of the invention of gunpowder and artillery	i	394
Fortification, modern improvements in it	ii	192
Fourth, or king's own regt. of foot	ii	216
——— or royal Iriſh regiment of dragoon-guards	ii	223
Furniture of a villein or villager	ii	301
——— of horſemen	i	92
Fuſileers, originally a ſort of grenadiers	i	159

	VOL.	P.
G.		
Gambeſon	i	101
Gambeſon, what	ii	248
Gantelope, running, the form of	ii	109
Gard de reines, or culet		ibid.
Garde des reins	ii	252
Gaſtrapheten	i	369
Gaunt, John of, his armour	ii	252
Gauntlets		ibid.
——— and ſleeves of mail	i	100
——— deſcribed	ii	253
General of the horſemen	i	208
——— ſtaff of the army, its preſent eſtabliſhment	i	270
Genouillieres, or knee-pieces	ii	253
Gentleman of a company	i	262
——— penſioners, account of their eſtabliſhment	i	113
——— penſioners, when firſt inſtituted	i	19
George, St. the Engliſh war-cry	ii	9
Gerard de la Warre, croſs-bow bearer to Henry III.	ii	305
Giſarme, an account of that weapon	ii	279
——— variouſly deſcribed	i	122
Glaive, or bill	ii	285
Gloves for ſhooting, worn by Archers	ii	271
Gorget, or hallercet	i	105
Gouſſets, what	ii	252
Governors of the ſeveral forts, and caſtles, their pay	i	303
Greaves, or iron boots	i	105
Greek fire, its origin	i	387
——— when in common uſe		ibid.
——— account of it by Anna Commena	i	388
——— deſcription of it by Joinville		ibid.
——— its effects deſcribed by Geoffry de Veneſauf	i	389
——— according to Father Daniel, uſed not only in ſieges, but alſo in battle	i	389
——— art of making it loſt	i	390
——— a chymiſt rewarded by government, for ſuppreſſing a ſimilar compoſition		ibid.
Greeves, armour for the legs	ii	253
Grenades, when firſt uſed	i	407
Grenadiers, their inſtitution	i	160
——— when firſt introduced into the Engliſh army	i	161
——— how firſt armed		ibid.
Guards, when firſt uſed	i	61
Guidons	ii	52
Gun-makers' rates	ii	336
Gun-powder, its invention, and the changes occaſioned by it	i	150
——— ditto	i	390
——— its antiquity, according to many modern writers	i	392
——— how long known in China		ibid.
——— ſuppoſed to have been known to Archimedes	i	393
——— account of it by Friar Bacon		ibid.
——— when firſt made in England	i	395
——— proportion of ingredients for making it	i	396
Guy, Earl of Warwick, his perforated ſhield	ii	261
H.		
Halberts, by whom invented	i	130
——— originally invented by the Switzers	ii	281
Haleeret, a kind of corcelet	ii	250
Half-pay, a military reward of modern date	ii	94
——— when firſt allowed	i	306
Hand-cannon, the nature of them	i	401
Hand-guns, alſo called Culverines and hand-cannons	ii	290
——— when firſt uſed in England		ibid.

	VOL.	P.
Hand-guns, when firſt came into uſe	i	157
Hanging, an antient military puniſhment	ii	103
——— how executed in the preſent times	ii	105
Hanoverians and Heſſians called in for the defence of the country	i	33
Haquebut, or hagbut	i	155
——— or hag-but, a ſhort hand-gun	ii	290
Harbinger, or quarter-maſter	i	181
Harquebuſs, account of it	ii	291
——— ſucceeds the long-bow	i	150
Harrington, Sir John, his account of the clothing of Q. Elizabeth's army in Ireland	i	327
Haubergeon, a coat of plate, or chain-mail, deſcribed	ii	246
Hauberk, a covering of mail deſcribed	ii	245
——— defenſive armour	i	100
Head-piece, caſque, or helmet, deſcription of the different kinds	ii	239
Healey's mortar, copy of a letter concerning it	ii	161
Helmet, different kinds	i	104
Helmets of the Greeks and Romans	ii	240
——— with or without bevers		ibid.
——— worn by the men at arms	i	101
——— with bevers and viſors	i	102
Henry VIII. tents uſed by him	ii	11
High conſtable, his rights	ii	131
——— the firſt ſtaff officer of our antient armies	i	190
——— his duties and allowances	i	191
——— when his office ceaſed	ii	59
High harbinger, or quarter-maſter-general, of former times, his duties	i	213
Highlanders, how armed	i	163
——— hiſtory of the 42d or royal highlanders	i	164
Hiſtorical account of particular regiments	ii	205
Hobbies, their deſcription	i	107
Hobilers, or light-horſemen	i	106
Holy, or ſacred banners	ii	53
Holy-water-ſprinkle, a ſingular kind of weapon	ii	286
Horſe-artillery	ii	194
——— brigade of	ii	412
Horſeman's banners	ii	284
Hoſpital at Hereford, for ſuper-annuated non-commiſſioned officers and private ſoldiers	ii	101
Houſeholders, all liable to quarter troops till after 1745	i	339
Howitzer, a modern invention	i	407
Hufken, a light head-piece	ii	243
Huts, uſed in antient times inſtead of tents	ii	29

I. J.

Jack (whence derived jacket), a ſmall coat of mail	ii	247
James II. in his reign, the firſt ſtep taken towards the abolition of the pike, and the origin of the bayonet	ii	339
James the Firſt, defenſive armour in his reign	ii	323
——— offenſive arms		ibid.
Jaſerant, a ſort of military veſtment	ii	246
Jewels of the crown pledged by K. Henry V. as ſecurity for the pay of his troops	i	73
Impriſonment, conſidered as a corporal puniſhment	ii	108
Indenture, a mode of raiſing troops. Biſhop of Norwich, indents with K. Richard II.	i	59
Infantry, after the conqueſt	i	120
——— how divided from the time of the conqueſt	i	182

	VOL.	P.
Infantry, how officered	i	182
Infernals, floating mines conſtructed in ſhips or boats	i	410
——— great deſtruction cauſed by them		ibid.
——— uſed by the Engliſh at St. Maloes		ibid.
——— deſcription of one		ibid.
Inſtructions for the payment of the royal bounty to the widows of officers	ii	96
Invalids, their eſtabliſhment	i	172
Iriſpimithal, tricubital, different kinds of Catapultas	i	375
Iron-hat, or armet	i	242
Judge-advocate-general, for the kingdoms of Suez, Fez, and Morocco, his commiſſion	i	236
Judge-marſhal, ſince called auditor-general or judge-advocate, his office	i	234

K.

Keep, or dungeon	i	3
Kettle-drums and trumpets of the horſe	ii	46
King James I. his ironical praiſe of armour	i	103
Kings frequently wore their crowns on the creſts of their helmets	i	102
King's own, or fourth regiment of foot	ii	216
——— regiment of dragoon-guards	ii	220
Kitchens, how made in camp	ii	36
Knight, his pay	i	273
Knights bannerets	ii	52
——— bachelors		ibid.
——— often ſuffocated from the weight of their armour	ii	303
——— the ſmall number of them killed in engagements	i	103

L.

Lance, or pike	ii	274
——— uſed both by calvalry and infantry	ii	276
——— ornamented with bande-roles, alſo called pencels	ii	277
Lancepeſata, or lance-corporal	i	261
Lance-reſt	ii	295
Lances of the infantry	i	121
Lancier, his arms and armour	i	105
Latch, a kind of croſs-bow	ii	288
Laws and ordinances of war, eſtabliſhed by the Earl of Eſſex, in 1643	ii	71
Lieutenant-colonel, his dignity and duties	i	246
Lieutenant, his neceſſary qualifications and duties	i	253
——— of counties, their duties	i	25
Life-guards, firſt regiment of	ii	205
——— ſecond regiment	ii	206
Light-dragoons, when firſt raiſed	i	112
Lines of contra and circumvallation	ii	6
Lionnois, a machine invented at Lyons, for the defence of a breach.—See plate of one		
Liſt of the army ſent to Ireland, 36 Edw. III.	i	280
——— of the military eſtabliſhment for 1689	ii	73
——— of the royal army intended for the recovery of the Palatinate	ii	149
Long-bow, maintained its place after the invention of fire-arms	ii	272
——— orders for enforcing the uſe of it		ibid.
——— when firſt introduced in England	i	134
Lorica ſquammoſa of the antients	ii	245

M.	VOL.	P.
Mace, an antient weapon, formerly much uſed by the cavalry of all nations	ii	283
——— deſcription and hiſtory of it		ibid.
——— thoſe of Roland and Oliver ſhewn in the abbey of Roncevaux	ii	284
Machicolation, an antient defence	ii	1
——— deſcription of it	ii	3
Machines in uſe about the time of the Norman invaſion	i	366
Madrier, a ſtrong plank, about 18 inches ſquare	i	409
Mail of two kinds, chain and plate, deſcribed	ii	244
Mallet of arms, a weapon formerly much uſed	ii	281
Mallets, deſcription of them	i	128
Man at arms	i	100
Mangonel, a ſmall machine	i	381
Mangona, a large machine	i	381
Manner of attacking and defending an antient fortification	ii	5
Manubaliſta, a term ſometimes applied to the long-bow	i	381
Marching. or billet-money	i	348
Mareſchal, or marſhal, antiquity of that office	i	192
——— his droits and fees	i	193
——— his principal duties, rights, and privileges	i	196
——— his pay	i	272
Marines, their origin	i	167
——— account given of them in Burchet's naval hiſtory	i	168
——— formed into three diviſions	i	171
——— their arms and clothing	i	172
Maſter of the ordnance, next officer to the marſhal	i	198
——— his office	i	200
——— ſucceſſion of maſter-general of the ordnance to the preſent time	i	206
Mata funda	i	382
Match-boxes, till lately worn by our grenadiers, origin of them	ii	294
Mategriffin	i	382
Muſkets, when firſt uſed, called hand-cannon	ii	291
Men at arms	i	8
Mercenary troops, the method of raiſing them	i	71
Military diſcipline in 1686	ii	72
——— muſic	ii	41
——— the common inſtruments		ibid.
——— rewards	ii	83
——— puniſhments	ii	103
Militia, when firſt eſtabliſhed	i	20
Mines employed in antient ſieges	ii	5
Miſericorde, or dagger	i	103
——— or dagger	ii	264
Morion	ii	241
——— by whom worn	ii	244
Morions, or ſteel-hats	i	157
Morning ſtars	ii	284
Morris, or mooriſh pike	i	129
——— or mooriſh pike, much in faſhion about the reign of Henry VIII. and Elizabeth	ii	280
——— directions for the exerciſe of them		ibid.
Mortars cut in the rocks at Malta	i	407
——— at Gibraltar		ibid.
Moveable towers, or belfreys	ii	5
Muſic, military	ii	41
Muſket, a heavier kind of harquebuſs, carrying alſo a large ball	ii	292
——— account of the antient muſket	ii	293
——— value of one in 1620, with bandaliers and reſt	ii	294
——— ſucceed the harquebuſs	i	157
Muſters, their antiquity and object	i	183
——— regulations for them	i	185
——— commiſſaries of, deſcribed	i	183

	VOL.	P.
Mutiny act, the firſt	ii	7
N.		
Naccaiſe, a kettle-drum	ii	42
Navy of Q. Elizabeth	i	125
Nead, his treatiſe called the Double-armed Man, obtains a patent of King Charles the Firſt, for teaching the uſe of the bow and pike	i	354
Nicholas Tartaglia, of Breſcia, in Italy, acquainted in 1538 with the method of throwing red hot ſhot from mortars	i	406
Norfolk, Duke of, his orders reſpecting clothing, 36 Hen. VIII.	i	324
Norman laws reſpecting feudal ſervice	i	4
——— ſhields	ii	255
Norton, Robert, author of a treatiſe entitled, The Gunner, 1664	i	392
Number of companies not a definite one for a regiment	i	242
Number of men to be raiſed for the militia in the ſeveral counties	i	34
Nye's directions for making gunpowder	i	397
O.		
Offenſive arms of a horſeman, or man at arms	i	103
——— arms, or weapons	ii	261
Officers appointed to the militia	i	44
Old Buffs, or third regiment of foot	ii	215
Old Engliſh march, as deſcribed by Sir John Hawkins, in his hiſtory of muſic	ii	44
——— revival of it in the reign of Charles I.	ii	45
——— copy of the warrant for reviving it	ibid.	
Old Engliſh march, notes of it	ii	46
Oliver and Roland, heroes of romance, their maces	ii	284
Onager, a kind of Baliſta	i	380
Orders for the Engliſh army, in the year 1486	ii	70
Ordnance, Rauf Bigod, the firſt maſter	i	198
——— different officers of the ordnance, temp. Richard III.	i	199
——— eſtabliſhment of ditto, an. 1557	i	200
——— maſter of the ordnance, his office and duty	i	201
——— ſucceſſion of maſter's-general, to the preſent time	i	206
Ordonances of war, for the army of King Charles I.	ii	70
Ordonnances of King Richard II.	ii	64
——— of K. Henry V. at Mans	ii	69
Ordonnances of war of K. Henry VIII.	ii	59
Off-reckonings	i	335
Oudenarde, the garriſon of it terrified by a marvellous large bombard	i	400
Out-penſioners of Chelſea hoſpital	ii	93
Owen, John, the firſt Engliſh founder who caſt braſs-guns	i	402
Oxford blues	i	98
——— or royal regiment of horſe-guards, an account of this reg.	ii	210
P.		
Parole of honour, copy of one	ii	204
Paſs-guards	ii	254
Patent granted to William Drummond, in 1625	ii	165
Pavais, or pavacke, or tallevas, a large ſhield	ii	257
Paviſors in the army that accompanied King Edward III. to Calais	ii	257

	VOL.	P.
Pavoiſes, a kind of large ſhields	ii	4
Pay-maſter-general's office, new regulation in it	ii	175
Pay-maſter-general, ſome particulars reſpecting him	ii	152
Pay of the army in the time of K. William	i	304
——— additions made to it in the reign of Geo. I.	i	310
——— to the preſent time	i	312
——— of the militia officers	i	37
——— of the army in the reign of Henry VII.	i	285
——— in the time of Q. Mary	i	286
——— under Q. Elizabeth	i	288
——— of the army in Ireland, under the Earl of Eſſex, in 1598	i	290
——— of the army raiſed by Charles I. 1639	i	291
——— of the parliamentary troops, 1647	i	297
——— of the forces in England and Wales, 1659	i	299
Pecuniary puniſhments	ii	108
Pencils and other enſigns	ii	51
Pennons	ii	52
Pennons and banners	i	180
Penſions granted to officers' widows	ii	96
——— according to the lateſt regulations	ii	100
Perforated ſhields	ii	261
Petard, a machine uſed to burſt open gates	i	408
——— different ſizes of it		ibid.
——— manner of loading it		ibid.
——— when invented	i	409
Petrary	i	382
Petrinal, or poitrinal	i	153
Petrinels	i	105
Petronel, or poitrinel, a medium between the harquebuſs and the piſtol	ii	292
Phipps, Captain, his letter, deſcribing the mortar cut in the rock of Gibraltar	ii	161
Phyſicians to the armies	i	238
Picket, a corporal puniſhment	ii	107
Pike, exerciſe of it	i	355
Pikemen	i	132
Pike, or lance	ii	274
——— an antient weapon	ii	277
——— introduced into France by the Swiſs		ibid.
——— its ordinary length	ii	278
——— London price of one, anno 1631		ibid.
——— when firſt uſed	i	131
Piſtols, where invented	i	155
Plaquet, what	ii	252
Plaſtron	i	101
Plate armour	i	104
——— purchaſed only by men of fortune	ii	302
——— introduced both here and into France, about the middle of the 14th century	ii	303
Poitrinal, pectoral, or breaſt-plate for horſes	ii	260
Pole-axe, deſcription of it	i	123
Pole-axes	ii	285
Portable mantlets	ii	5
Poſſe Comitatus, or power of the county	i	9
Pot, an iron hat, deſcribed	ii	244
Pouldrons	i	105
Pouldrons	ii	252
Preſent eſtabliſhment of the army	i	99
——— mode of recruiting our armies	i	97
Preſident of the high court of war	ii	60
Preſſing for ſoldiers	i	97
Proceedings at generals courts-martial	ii	79
Proclamation for the uſe of the bow		

	VOL.	P.
and pike together in military diſcipline	ii	173
Prods, what	ii	292
Proſtitutes, puniſhment of, by the ordonnances of war	ii	70
Provoſt-marſhal of the artillery, his authority and power	i	202
——— his office and duties	i	215
Proviant-maſter-general, or commiſſary-general, his office, as deſcribed by Sir James Turner	i	229
Pryck-ſpur	ii	258
——— with a ſingle point	i	102
Pugio, or dagger, uſed by the Romans, a ſpecies of it alſo worn by the Saxons	ii	264
Puniſhments, military	ii	103
Q.		
Qualifications for the militia	i	36
Quarreaux, or quarrels, ſhot from croſs-bow	i	149
Quarter-maſters of foot and horſe, the difference between them	i	269
Quarters, laws reſpecting them, enacted from the revolution	i	342
Queen Elizabeth, in a treaty with K. Charles IX. of France, engaged to furniſh him with ſix thouſand men, armed part with long and part with croſs bows	ii	305
Queen's, or ſecond regiment of foot, account of it	ii	214
——— regiment of dragoon-guards	ii	222
Quilted linen, a covering for horſes	ii	259
Quintyn, St. liſt of the army that ſerved there A. D. 1557, with their pay	i	286
Quiver, or arrow-caſe	ii	270
R.		
Raiſing, forces at the counties' charge	i	74
Ram, battering, deſcription and manner of uſing that machine	i	384
——— when uſed		ibid.
Rank of militia officers	i	50
——— of officers of cavalry and infantry	i	209
Ranſom of priſoners of war	ii	112
Reaſon for a ſoldier's coat being red	i	326
Rebellion in Ireland, in 1798, ſome particulars relating to it	ii	226
Reformados, or reformed officers	i	262
Regards, a douceur, in addition to pay	i	284
Regiments, parliamentary, diſbanded, and raiſed for the ſervice of K. Charles II.		
——— when this term firſt came into uſe	i	242
Regulations for encampments, in the time of Henry VIII.	ii	12
——— in the time of Queen Elizabeth	ii	13
——— in 1686	ii	29
——— as laid down in Bland's Military Diſcipline	ii	32
——— of Queen Elizabeth	i	79
Report of a committee of the houſe of commons, reſpecting the clothing of the army	ii	155
Reprimand, how generally given	ii	111
Reſt, for ſupporting a lance	ii	254
Reſtoration, armour and weapons, directed to be uſed by the militia after it	ii	338
——— of horſes	i	187
——— preſent indemnification to officers for horſes loſt in the ſervice	i	189
Reſt to a muſket	ii	292
——— uſed with the matchlock	i	156

	VOL.	P.
Revival of the croſs-bow, by King Richard I.	ii	303
Ribaudequin	i	382
Riding the wooden-horſe	ii	106
Rigid treatment of priſoners of war in antient times	ii	116
Robinet	i	382
Roland and Oliver's maces	ii	284
Rouelle, or wheel-ſpur	i	102
——— or wheel-ſpear	ii	258
Round and ſquare ſhields	ii	300
Roundel, or rondache	ii	254
——— different kinds of them	ii	256
Round towers	ii	1
Royal fuſileers	ii	220
——— Iriſh, or 18th regiment of foot, a ſingular ſtory of it	i	63
——— ſtandard bearer	ii	51
Rules and articles of war, in the time of James II.	ii	71
Running the gantelope	ii	107
Ruptarii, routers, or ryters, foreign cavalry occaſionally hired by our kings	i	57

S.

Salade, ſalet, or celate, deſcribed	ii	243
Saxon infantry and cavalry, appointed and formed	i	3
——— puniſhment for cowardice		ibid.
——— laws reſpecting perſons obliged to bear arms, and perform public ſervices	i	1
Schedule, containing the new rates and prices of the ſeveral parts of arms for horſe and foot	ii	335
Scorpion, deſcription of it	i	367
Scots brigade, formerly in the ſervice of Holland, an account of it	ii	170
Scowt-maſter, his duties	i	222
Scull, a head-piece	ii	243
Scutifer, or ſhield-bearer, why reckoned an honourable office	ii	257
Second, or queen's regiment of foot, an account of it	ii	214
——— or royal North Britiſh dragoons, called the Scots Greys	ii	225
Serjeant-major-general, or major-general, his office and duties	i	210
Serjeant of a company	i	258
——— major, or major, the duties of his office	i	247
Surgeons of the antient armies, their number	i	236
Serjeants at arms	i	61
——— at arms, when firſt inſtituted	i	173
——— their duty, pay, and allowances	i	174
——— preſent number	i	175
——— of the militia, their number and duties	i	38
Servientes, ſubſtitutes for tenants in capite	i	100
Seventh regiment of foot, or royal fuſileers	ii	219
Shaftſteria	i	369
Sheaf of arrows, its number	ii	269
Shields, different kinds of	ii	254
——— uſed in the army of King Edward Firſt, at the ſiege of Karlaverſk, an. 1300	ii	306
——— a ſort of, wore by the Scots at the battle of Muſſelborough, deſcribed by Paton	ii	307
Ships of Queen Elizabeth	i	125
Shooting, the only capital puniſhment, beſides hanging, in the Engliſh army	ii	104
Shoulder-ſhield	ii	260
Side-drum, why ſo called	ii	42
Silk gown, French hood, velvet bonnet, &c. worn by women un-		

	VOL.	P.
der a certain rank or eſtate, ſubjected their huſbands to find a horſe for the ſervice of the country	i	16
Sixth regiment of foot	ii	218
Sling, a weapon of great antiquity	ii	273
——— how made, and its uſe	ii	274
Small arms not generally eſtabliſhed in England at the time of the Spaniſh armada	ii	310
Soldiers, ſometimes engaged for a certain time, as for three years, or during a war	i	97
——— preſſed in the time of Q. Elizabeth		ibid.
——— act for impreſſing ſoldiers in 1799	i	98
——— departing from the army, without the king's licence, guilty of felony	i	65
Soldier-conſtables, and eſquire-ſoldiers	i	274
Sow, a covered machine	i	387
——— its uſe in antient ſieges	ii	4
Spear, lance, or pike	ii	274
Splints, a defence for the arms	ii	253
Spurs of two kinds	ii	258
Squads	i	182
Staff of the army in Great Britain and Ireland, 1799	ii	201
Standards	ii	52
Standing forces, their commencement	i	61
Stakes, to protect archers	ii	273
Stipendiary troops	i	7
St. Cuthbert, his ſtandard	ii	53
St. George, the antient Engliſh cry	ii	9
Stock-purſe, or non-effective fund	ii	157
Stone-ſhot, 7000 ordered to be cut in the quarries of Maidſtone	i	400
St. Quintins, the army employed there, A. D. 1587	i	181
Subſtitutes for the militia	i	43
Supplementary militia	i	54
Suſpenſion, for a ſtated time, a puniſhment inflicted both on commiſſion and non-commiſſion officers	ii	110
Sword, the firſt artificial weapon	ii	262
——— their various kinds	ii	262

T.

Turner, Sir James, his account of the officers of a troop of cavalry	i	268
Turkiſh bow	i	158
Trumpet, its antiquity	ii	41
——— number appointed to each corps	ii	43
——— the ſounds or ſignals given by it	ii	49
——— chiefly uſed by the cavalry	ii	50
Trumpeter, formerly not allowed to wear any offenſive arms, unleſs a ſword, with the point broken; the form of his trumpet, banner, and furniture	i	267
Tables of the pay of the forces	i	313
——— of a captain of infantry's allowances	i	321
Tactics, exerciſe, &c. new changes in them	ii	188
——— of our antient armies	i	349
——— improvements made in them to the preſent time	i	357
Target, or buckler, deſcribed	ii	255
Taſſel-cloſe, a field in London, where the croſs-bow makers uſed to exerciſe themſelves	ii	305
Taſſets, or ſkirts	ii	253
Tenant in capite	i	6
Third, or Prince of Wales's regiment of dragoon-guards	ii	222
Tilting armour	ii	254
——— lances	ii	276

	VOL.	P.
Tilting lances, when firſt uſed -	ii	277
Tortoiſes, machines uſed in antient ſieges - - - - -	ii	4
Training and exerciſe of the militia	i	47
Train of artillery under Charles I.	i	292
Treaſurer, or high treaſurer of the army, the duties of his office -	i	212
Trebuchet - - - -	i	382
Trench-maſter, his command -	i	223
Trophy-money - - -	i	31
U. V.		
Umbo of the ſhield - -	ii	261
Valets, what - - - - -	i	273
Vambaſium, or Wambaſium, what	ii	247
Vambraces - - - - -	ii	252
——— or braſſarts - - -	i	105
Vamplat, or avant-plat - -	ii	277
Venetians, a kind of long breeches (ſimilar to the preſent pantaloons) worn by Q. Elizabeth's ſoldiers in Ireland - - - - -	i	328
Verſtegan attributes the introduction of the croſs-bow to Hengiſt and Horſa - - - - -	ii	304
Vingtners - - - - -	i	182
Viſors - - - - - -	i	102
Volunteer companies - -	i	45
Volunteers and yeomanry cavalry, account of their inſtitution -	ii	233
——— from the militia, to enliſt in the regulars - - -	i	56
W.		
Waggon-maſter, particulars of his office, as deſcribed by Sir James Turner - - - -	i	224
Waggon-train, eſtabliſhment of them - - - - - -	ii	200
Wambaſium - - - -	ii	247
War-carts, a ſpecies of artillery, each carrying two peteraros -	i	407
War carts, firſt uſed in Scotland -	i	407
War-ſaddle - - - - -	i	102
War-wolf, a military machine -	i	382
Weapons to be kept by perſons of different eſtates - - -	ii	316
Welſh glaive, or bill - -	ii	285
Whipping, almoſt the only corporal puniſhment now in uſe -	ii	107
Whirligig, an inſtrument of puniſhment for diſorderly perſons -	ii	111
Whores, to be turned out of the army, their money taken from them, and their left arms to be broken - - - - -	ii	70
Widows' penſions - - -	ii	156
William the Conqueror, the arms offenſive and defenſive worn in his time - - - - -	ii	299
——— had croſs-bows in his army at the battle of Haſtings -	ii	304
Wolfe, general, his recommendation on charging bayonets -	ii	10
Women, who follow an army on horſeback, ſometimes put into companies, and commanded by females, called in Germany Hureweibles, or marſhals of the whores - - - - -	i	226
——— who followed an army, how they were to be ordered -	i	226
Wooden-horſe, a puniſhment formerly much in uſe - -	ii	106
Wyfflers - - - -	i	208
Y.		
Yeomen of the guard, raiſed by Henry VII. - - -	i	175
——— their eſtabliſhment to the preſent time - - -	i	176
——— their origin - -	i	19
Yeomanry cavalry, and volunteer infantry - - - -	ii	233

DIRECTIONS FOR PLACING THE CUTS IN THE SECOND VOLUME.

The entrance of a ſtreet, defended by a chain, as a Frontiſpiece.

ANTIENT fortifications.—Pl. 1. . . . . to face page 2

Machines uſed in antient ſieges 4
Battering machines 4
An antient machine for defending a paſs 4
The lyonnois, a machine for defending a breach 4

Front of a fortified place attacked according to the antient manner 6
Ancient manner of beſieging towns 6

Fortification 8

Royal tents, 2 plates 12

Antient tents and huts 16

A trebucket, with the ruyters' manner of lodging 18

Caſtrametation, 4 plates 30

Plan of the encampment of a regiment of dragoons 32

Plan of the encampment of a battalion of foot, of 9 companies, each conſiſting of 70 private men 40

Plan of the encampment of a battalion of foot, of 9 companies, each conſiſting of 100 private men 37

Modern tents, plates 1 and 2 . . . . . *ibid.*
Bell-tents, colours, ſtand, and camp kitchen . . . . . *ibid.*

Inſtruments of military muſick 42

Chelſea College, as originally intended 89

Military puniſhments 111

Scipio receiving the keys of Carthage, and the title of the Treatiſe on Antient Armour, to face each other . . . . . between pages *236 and 237

Antient Armour, Pl. 1. to 61 . . . . . to follow page 371

UA
649
G75
1801
v.2

Grose, Francis
Military antiquities respecting a history of the English army New ed.

Erindale College

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET